This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Über dieses Buch

Dies ist ein digitales Exemplar eines Buches, das seit Generationen in den Regalen der Bibliotheken aufbewahrt wurde, bevor es von Google im Rahmen eines Projekts, mit dem die Bücher dieser Welt online verfügbar gemacht werden sollen, sorgfältig gescannt wurde.

Das Buch hat das Urheberrecht überdauert und kann nun öffentlich zugänglich gemacht werden. Ein öffentlich zugängliches Buch ist ein Buch, das niemals Urheberrechten unterlag oder bei dem die Schutzfrist des Urheberrechts abgelaufen ist. Ob ein Buch öffentlich zugänglich ist, kann von Land zu Land unterschiedlich sein. Öffentlich zugängliche Bücher sind unser Tor zur Vergangenheit und stellen ein geschichtliches, kulturelles und wissenschaftliches Vermögen dar, das häufig nur schwierig zu entdecken ist.

Gebrauchsspuren, Anmerkungen und andere Randbemerkungen, die im Originalband enthalten sind, finden sich auch in dieser Datei – eine Erinnerung an die lange Reise, die das Buch vom Verleger zu einer Bibliothek und weiter zu Ihnen hinter sich gebracht hat.

Nutzungsrichtlinien

Google ist stolz, mit Bibliotheken in partnerschaftlicher Zusammenarbeit öffentlich zugängliches Material zu digitalisieren und einer breiten Masse zugänglich zu machen. Öffentlich zugängliche Bücher gehören der Öffentlichkeit, und wir sind nur ihre Hüter. Nichtsdestotrotz ist diese Arbeit kostspielig. Um diese Ressource weiterhin zur Verfügung stellen zu können, haben wir Schritte unternommen, um den Missbrauch durch kommerzielle Parteien zu verhindern. Dazu gehören technische Einschränkungen für automatisierte Abfragen.

Wir bitten Sie um Einhaltung folgender Richtlinien:

+ *Nutzung der Dateien zu nichtkommerziellen Zwecken* Wir haben Google Buchsuche für Endanwender konzipiert und möchten, dass Sie diese Dateien nur für persönliche, nichtkommerzielle Zwecke verwenden.

+ *Keine automatisierten Abfragen* Senden Sie keine automatisierten Abfragen irgendwelcher Art an das Google-System. Wenn Sie Recherchen über maschinelle Übersetzung, optische Zeichenerkennung oder andere Bereiche durchführen, in denen der Zugang zu Text in großen Mengen nützlich ist, wenden Sie sich bitte an uns. Wir fördern die Nutzung des öffentlich zugänglichen Materials für diese Zwecke und können Ihnen unter Umständen helfen.

+ *Beibehaltung von Google-Markenelementen* Das "Wasserzeichen" von Google, das Sie in jeder Datei finden, ist wichtig zur Information über dieses Projekt und hilft den Anwendern weiteres Material über Google Buchsuche zu finden. Bitte entfernen Sie das Wasserzeichen nicht.

+ *Bewegen Sie sich innerhalb der Legalität* Unabhängig von Ihrem Verwendungszweck müssen Sie sich Ihrer Verantwortung bewusst sein, sicherzustellen, dass Ihre Nutzung legal ist. Gehen Sie nicht davon aus, dass ein Buch, das nach unserem Dafürhalten für Nutzer in den USA öffentlich zugänglich ist, auch für Nutzer in anderen Ländern öffentlich zugänglich ist. Ob ein Buch noch dem Urheberrecht unterliegt, ist von Land zu Land verschieden. Wir können keine Beratung leisten, ob eine bestimmte Nutzung eines bestimmten Buches gesetzlich zulässig ist. Gehen Sie nicht davon aus, dass das Erscheinen eines Buchs in Google Buchsuche bedeutet, dass es in jeder Form und überall auf der Welt verwendet werden kann. Eine Urheberrechtsverletzung kann schwerwiegende Folgen haben.

Über Google Buchsuche

Das Ziel von Google besteht darin, die weltweiten Informationen zu organisieren und allgemein nutzbar und zugänglich zu machen. Google Buchsuche hilft Lesern dabei, die Bücher dieser Welt zu entdecken, und unterstützt Autoren und Verleger dabei, neue Zielgruppen zu erreichen. Den gesamten Buchtext können Sie im Internet unter `http://books.google.com` durchsuchen.

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES
3 3433 07024051 4

A

COMPLETE

PRACTICAL GRAMMAR

OF THE

GERMAN LANGUAGE

BY

CHARLES BENJAMIN SCHADE.

FIFTH EDITION,

thoroughly altered and improved in every part of speech by many additions.

LEIPSIC, 1837.

PRINTED FOR J. C. HINRICHS.

LONDON, SOLD BY BLACK AND ARMSTRONG.

PHILADELPHIA, SOLD BY CAREY AND LEA.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
218592
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
1901

PREFACE.

THIS Grammar which is designed for the use of Englishmen who intend to learn the German language, was first published in 1805.

Since that time it was thrice reprinted, and although by the numerous additions and improvements to each respective impression, the fourth edition had already come out quite a new work, yet the author considered it a duty incumbent on him still to continue improving his labour by a careful and thorough revision, so as to render the present edition more useful to the learner.

Conscious of his best endeavours in this performance he hopes his labours will meet with a favourable reception from a discerning public — the best reward for his pains.

S.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

	Page
Introduction to German grammar. . . .	1—32
Pronunciation of the German letters. . .	4—17
Of the accent of the German words. . . .	18—25

CHAPTER II.

Two exercises in reading with German characters.	32—36

CHAPTER III.

Of the German article.	37—44

CHAPTER IV.

Of the German substantive.	44—109

CHAPTER V.

Of the German adjectives.	109—176
1. The attributive adjectives.	109—118
Of the degrees of comparison. . . .	113—118
2. The numeral adjectives (the numbers).	118—122
3. The possessive adjectives (the possessive pronouns).	122, 133
4. The demonstrative adjectives (the demonstrative pronouns).	123
5. The determinative adjectives (the determinative pronouns).	123
6. The connective adjectives (the relative pronouns).	123

Page

7. The interrogative adjectives (the interrogative pronouns). 124

CHAPTER VI.

Of the German pronouns. . . . . 177—184

CHAPTER VII.

Miscellaneous words. . . . . 184—191

CHAPTER VIII.

Of the German verb. . . . . 191—340
The irregular German verbs. . . . . 235—273

CHAPTER IX.

Of the German prepositions. . . . . 340—402

CHAPTER X.

Of the German adverbs. . . . . 402—418

CHAPTER XI.

Of the German conjunctions. . . . . 418—433

CHAPTER XII.

Of the German interjections. 434

CHAPTER XIII.

Of German orthography. . . . . 434—462

CHAPTER XIV.

Of the signs of punctuation. . . . . 462—471

CHAPTER XV.

Of German versification. . . . . 471—486

CHAPTER XVI.

Some familiar dialogues. . . . . 486—506

A

GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.

CHAPTER I.

Introduction to German grammar.

Grammar teaches to speak and to write correctly and perspicuously.

Grammar in general, or *universal grammar*, explains the principles, which are common to all languages. The grammar of any particular language, as the *grammar of the German language (die deutsche Sprachlehre)*, applies those common principles to that particular language, according to the established usage of it.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts, of which they are compounded. *Sentences (Sätze)* consist of words; *words (Wörter)*, of one or more syllables; *syllables (Sylben)*, of one or more letters; so that letters, syllables, words, and sentences make up the whole subject of grammar.

Letters.

Letters (die Buchstaben) are the constituent parts or elements of syllables. There are two kinds of letters: *vowels* and *consonants*.

A *vowel (ein Selbstlaut* or *Gründlaut)* is a simple *articulate sound, formed by itself, without the aid of another letter.

There are also *double vowels*. A *double vowel* or *diphthong (ein Doppellaut)* is a sound, which is

* An *articulate sound (ein articulirter Laut)* is the sound of the human voice, formed by the organs of speech.

formed by the union of two vowels pronounced by a single impulse of the voice.

A *consonant (ein Mitlaut)* is a compound articulate sound, which cannot be formed without the aid of a vowel; so that it cannot be perfectly pronounced by itself.

In German there are twenty six letters: —

Figures.		Names.	Figures.		Names.
𝔄,	a.	aw.	𝔒,	o.	oh
𝔅,	b.	bay.	𝔓,	p.	pay.
ℭ,	c.	tsay.	𝔔,	q.	koo.
𝔇,	d.	day.	𝔯,	r.	err.
𝔈,	e.	ay.	𝔖,	ſ, s.	es.
𝔉,	f.	ef.	𝔗,	t.	tay.
𝔊,	g.	yay.	𝔘,	u.	oo.
𝔥,	h.	haw.	𝔙,	v.	fou (as in *now.*)
𝔦,	i.	ee.			
𝔍,	j.	yot.	𝔚,	w.	vay.
𝔎,	k.	kaw.	𝔛,	x.	iks.
𝔩,	l.	el.	𝔜,	y.	ypsilon or the Greek *i.*
𝔪,	m.	em.			
𝔫,	n.	en.	𝔷,	z.	tset.

Compound letters.

ch, ck, ff, ſch, ſſ, ß, ſt, tz.

Observations.

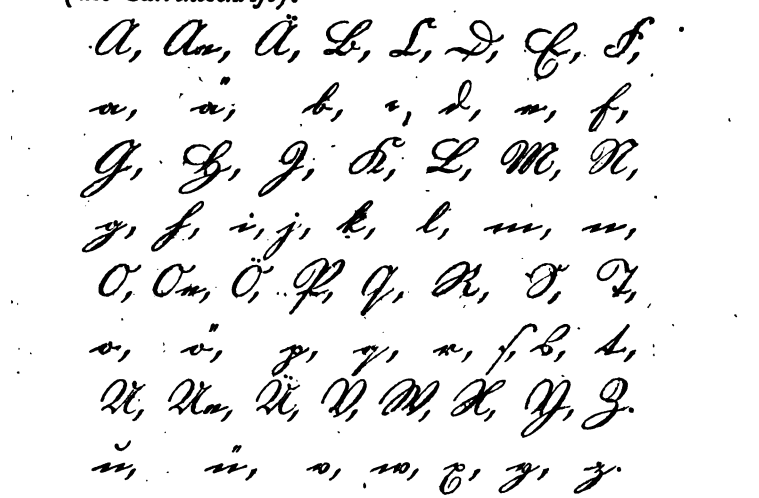
1. These characters are used in printing. Though many German works have, in later times, been printed in the Roman type, that practice, however, is not become general, and the greatest number of publications continue to appear in the German characters.

2. Six of the German letters are vowels, and the rest of them are consonants. The vowels are a, e, i, y, o, u. Besides these six vowels, there are yet three sounds, which also must be considered

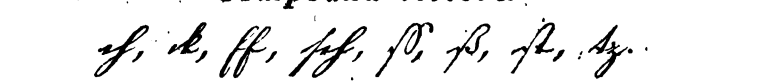
as vowels. These three sounds are ä, ö, ü. The Germans have but one capital letter for the vowel i and for the consonant j. The following sounds are diphthongs: ai, au, äu, ei, eu, oi, ui.

Writing-characters.

In writing the Germans use the following characters, which are called the *current hand-writing (die Currentschrift):*



Compound letters.



Besides these characters, there are yet two kinds of hand-writing, called *die Fractūrschrift* (the *broken characters*), and *die Kanzleīschrift* (the *chancery-writing*). The former is used for inscriptions and for the first lines of any formal writing; the latter serves commonly for engrossing.

Pronunciation of the German letters. *

I.

Pronunciation of the vowels and diphthongs.

A.

A approaches the sound of *a* in *ah*, *father*, and that of *au* in *aunt*, *gauntlet*. It has a long sound and a short one. It has a long sound in the following words: *der Adel*, 4. nobility. *Die Art*, 7. species. *Der Bart*, 1. beard. *Die Jagd*, 7. chase. *Das Schaf*, 1. sheep. *Die Sprache*, 7. speech. *Er las*, he read. *Ich vergaſs*, I forgot. It has a short sound in the following words: *der Anfang*, 1. beginning. *Die Abreise*, 7. departure. *Das Pfand*, 2. pawn, pledge.

Aa and *ah* have the sound of long *a*. For instance: *der Aal*, 1. eel. *Die Gefahr*, 7. danger. Two vowels of the same sound joined together in one syllable render its pronunciation more full, and long.

Ä has a long sound and a short one. When it has a long sound, it is pronounced like the English *ai* in the word *air*, or like the French *ê ouvert long*. For instance: *ein Schäfchen*, 4. a little sheep. *Ein Städtchen*, 4. a small town. The same long open sound has also *äh*. For instance: *ähnlich*, similar. *Die Ähre*, 7. ear (of corn). In words derived from the Latin language, *ä* sounds like the English *ai* in the word *maid*, or like the French *é fermé* in the word *vérité*. For instance: *die Majestät*, 7. majesty. This word has the accent on the last syllable, like all the words, which have the same termination. When *ä* has a short sound, it is pronounced like the English *a* in the word *fan*, or like the French *è ouvert bref*. For instance: *ändern*, to change. *Die Ältern*, parents.

Ä and *Äh* as capital letters, are also thus written: *Ae*, *Aeh*. The first manner of writing, however, is preferable.

* The Germans pronounce all the letters of their words.

Ai and *ay* correspond to the sound of the English *i* in the word *lion*. For instance: *der Kaiser*, 4. emperor. *Die Waise*, 7. orphan. *Der May*, 1. May. The last of these words is better written *Mai*.

Au sounds like the English *ou* in the word *cloud*. For instance: *das Haus*, 2. house. In foreign proper names, the two vowels *au* form two syllables. For instance: *Archela-us*.

Äu (Aeu) has nearly the sound of the English *oy* in the word *boy*. For instance: *ein Äugelchen*, 4. a little eye.

E.

E has three different sounds, and is either long, or short. For the first, it has the sound of the English *a* in the word *name*, or that of the French *é fermé*. Secondly, it has the sound of the English *a* in the word *care*, or that of the French *é ouvert long*. Thirdly, it has frequently a very short and somewhat obscure sound, which is only a little heard, and exactly corresponds to the French *e* in the word *petit*. But the *e* must also, in this case, be pronounced and be made audible.

The first of these sounds is in the following words: *der Egoist*, 6. egotist. *Das Elend*, 1. misery. *Ewig*, eternal. *Der Weg*, 1. way. But in *weg*, away, the *e* is short. There are also several words, in which the *e* has not entirely the sound of the French *é fermé*. Such words are *der Esel*, 4. ass. *Edel*, noble. *Legen*, to lay. *Reden*, to speak. *Wegen*, by reason of, on account of.

The second sound is in the following words: *die Erde*, 7. earth. *Die Feder*, 7. pen. *Das Leben*, 4. life. *Er*, he. *Geben*, to give. *Weben*, to weave. *Werden*, to become. But there are also many words, in which the *e* has the sound of the English *a* in the word *man*. The *e* corresponds, in this case, to the French *è ouvert bref*. For instance: *der Erbe*, 6. heir. *Heftig*, vehemently. *Hell*, clear.

The third sound is found in the initial syllables *be*, *ent*, *ge*, *ver*, *zer*, and the final syllables *e*, *el*,

em, *en*, *er*, *ern*, *es*, *est*, *et*. For instance: *bewundern*, to admire. *Entdecken*, to discover. *Der Gewinn*, 1. gain. *Verlieren*, to lose. *Zerschmelzen*, to melt. *Die Liebe*, 7. love.

Ee and *eh* are pronounced like the English *ey* in the word *prey*, or like the French *é fermé*. For instance: *der See*, 3. lake. *Vermehren*, to augment. This *ee* and *eh* is only the long *e*, and must be uttered as one sound.

In the following words *ee* and *eh* sound like the English *a* in the word *share*, or like the French *é ouvert long*: *der Heerd*, 1. hearth. *Die Heerde*, 7. herd. *Scheel*, oblique; envious. *Die Scheere*, 7. scissors. *Scheeren*, to shear. *Befehlen*, to command. *Begehren*, to desire. *Dehnen*, to stretch. *Empfehlen*, to recommend. *Entbehren*, to want. *Die Fehde*, 7. quarrel. *Fehlen*, to fail. *Der Fehler*, 4. fault, failing, error. *Die Kehle*, 7. throat. *Das Mehl*, 1. meal. *Nehmen*, to take. *Sehen*, to see. *Die Sehne*, 7. sinew. *Sich sehnen*, to long. *Die Sehnsucht*, 7. longing, ardent desire. *Stehlen*, to steal. *Der Stehler*, stealer. *Verfehlen*, to miss. *Vornehm*, of quality. *Zehen* or *zehn*, ten. The five first of these words are now more commonly written *Herd; Herde; shel; Schere; scheren.*

The double *e* forms in several words two syllables. For instance: *die See-en* (instead of *die See-en*), lakes. *Beerdigen*, to inter.

Ei sounds like the English personal pronoun *I*. For instance: *das Eisen*, 4. iron.

The numeral word *eilf* is commonly pronounced as if written *elf*.

Eu has the sound of the English *oy* in the word *boy*. For instance: *heute*, to-day.

I.

I has a long sound and a short one. When it has a long sound, it is pronounced like the long *e* of the English, or like their *ee*. For instance: *dir*, to thee. *Mir*, to me. *Wir*, we. When it has a short sound, it is pronounced like the English *i* in the word *milk*. For instance: *das Zinn*, 1. tin.

Ie and *ih* have the sound of the English *ie* in the word *field*, and answer, consequently, to the long *i*. For instance: *das Thier*, 1. animal. *Hier*, here. *Ihr*, her. *E* and *h*, after the vowel *i*, serve only to render its sound long.

Ie are separately pronounced at the end of foreign words and of proper names, when the accent is not on the final syllable. Examples: *die Á-rie*, 7. air. *Die Histōri-e*, 7. history. *Die Komōdi-e*, 7. comedy. *Schlēsi-en*, 4. Silesia. *Der Spāni-er*, 4. Spaniard. When the final syllable has the accent, *ie* has the sound of long *i*. For instance: *die Geographīe*, 7. geography. *Die Melodīe*, 7. melody. *Die Poesīe*, 7. poesy. *Der Barbīer*, 1. barber. But when the first three words stand in the plural number, the two vowels *ie* are pronounced in two syllables, and sound like *i-e*. *Die Geographīen*, *die Melodīen*, *die Poesīen*, instead of *die Geographie-en*, *die Melodie-en*, *die Poesie-en*.

O.

O has a long sound and a short one. It has a long sound, when it forms alone a syllable, or is succeeded by a single consonant. For instance: *die Ode*, 7. ode. *Die Oper*, 7. opera. *Oder*, or. *Der Tōd*, 1. death. *Das Lōb*, 1. praise. *Schōn*, already. When *o* is succeeded by two consonants, it is short. For instance: *der Ort*, 2. place. *Das Wȯrt*, 2. word. *Das Opfer*, 4. sacrifice. *Er gosz*, he poured. *Sondern*, but. The long *o* sounds like the English *o* in the word *hope*.

This rule, however, admits of several exceptions. For instance: *Ob*, whether, if. *Ostern*, easter. *Das Kleīnod*, 1. jewel. In the first and the last of these words, the *o* is short; and in the second, it is long. But in the word *die Obacht*, 7. heed, the *o* is long; and in the word *der Ost*, east, it is short. The *o* is also long in the following words: *der Trost*, 1. consolation. *Blosz*, naked. *Grosz*, great. *Todt*, dead.

Oo and *oh* have the sound of long *o*, and are pronounced, consequently, like the English *oo* in the

word *door*. For instance: *das Loos*, 1. lot. *Das Moos*, 1. moss. *Der Schooſs*, 1. lap. *Der Lohn*, 1. reward. *Der Sohn*, 1. son. *Das Ohr*, 3. ear. The letters *o* and *h*, standing after the *o*, are not sounded at all; they serve only to render its pronunciation long. Several words, which were formerly written with *oo* and *oh*, are now written with a simple *o*. For instance: *holen*, to fetch. *Geboren*, born. *Oo* form in the word *die Zoologie* two syllables.

Ö and *öh* sound like the French *eu* in the words *eux* and *feu*. For instance: *der König*, king. *Das Öl (Oel)*, 1. oil. *Gewöhnen*, to accustom. *Das Ohr (Oehr)*, 1. ear, handle. In these words *ö* and *öh* are long. In the following words the *ö* is short: *örtlich*, local. *Oestlich*, eastern. *Öffnen*, to open. *Öfters*, often. In this manner the German *ö* is pronounced, when it is followed by more than one consonant. When short, the German *ö* resembles the English *u* in *gull*, *dull*, *us*. The word *Poët* must be pronounced in two syllables.

Oi (oy) has nearly the sound of the English *oy* in the word *boy*. The word *der Voigt*, 1. steward, which is now written *Vogt*, is pronounced long, and the *oi* sounds in it like *o*.

U.

U has a long sound and a short one. When it has a long sound, it is pronounced like the English *oo* in the word *moon*. For instance: *der Uhu*, 1. hornowl. *Die Ursache*, 7. cause. *Die Flur*, 7. field. *Die Schnur*, 8. string. *Das Blut*, 1. blood. *Nur*, but. When *u* is pronounced short, it sounds like the English *u* in the word *full*. For instance: *der Guss*, 1. fusion. *Die Lust*, 8. delight. *Die Ulme*, 7. elm. *Und*, and. These instances show, that the *u* is long, when it forms alone a syllable, or when it is succeeded by a single consonant; and that it is short, when it is followed by two consonants. There are, however, several exceptions. For instance: *der Gruſs*, 1. salute. *Grüſsen*, to salute. *Der Ruſs*, 1. soot. *Die Buſse*, 7. penitence. *Südlich*, southern. *Büſsen*,

to expiate. In all these words the *u* is long. The *u* of the initial syllable *ur* is long. The following words, in which it is short, are excepted: *die Urne*, 7. urn. *Das Úrtheil*, 1. judgment. *Urtheilen*, to judge.

In order to mark the long sound of *u*, the letter *h* is added to it in several words. In some words, the *h* stands before the *u*; in others, after it. For instance: *das Heīdenthum*, 2 heathenism. *Der Ruhm*, 1. glory. In the word *der Thurm*, 1. tower, the *u* is short, because it is succeeded by two consonants.

Ü has the sound of the French vowel *u*. For instance: *ein Stübchen*, 4. a little room. *Über*, over. *Das Übel (das Uebel)*, 4. evil. In these words, the *ü* is long. In the following words, it is short: *ein Hündchen*, 4. a little dog. *Ein Würmchen*, 4. a little worm. *Üh* has the sound of long *ü*. For instance: *ein Ührchen (ein Uehrchen)*, 4. a little watch.

Ui has a sound, which must be explained by oral instruction.

Y.

Y sounds like the English *i* in the word *in*.

II.

Pronunciation of the consonants.

B.

B is pronounced like the English *b*, and must well be distinguished from *p*.

C.

C sounds like *k* before *a*, *o*, *u*, and all consonants. For instance: *der Cardinūl*, 1. cardinal. *Die Cohorte*, 7. cohort. *Die Cūr*, 7. cure. *Die Classe*, 7. class.

Before *ä*, *ö*, *e*, *i*, and *y*, the pronunciation of *c* resembles that of the two letters *ts*, a particular stress being laid upon the *t*. For instance: *Cäcilia*, Cecily. *Cönobit*, 6. Coenobite. *Die Ceder*, 7. cedar. *Die Citrone*, 7. lemon. *Die Cypresse*, 7. cypress. In the words *Cärnthen*, *Cöln*, *Cöthen*, *Cörper*, which are

now written *Kärnthen*, *Köln*, *Köthen*, *Körper*, the *c* is pronounced like *k*.

Cc, before *ä*, *e*, *i*, *o*, and *y*, are pronounced like *kz*. For instance: *Iccius*.

Ch, at the end of a syllable, is pronounced like the Greek *χ*, and cannot be explained by any sound of the English language. It has two sounds, a hard and a soft one. It is hard after a short vowel. For instance: *der Bach*, 1. brook. *Das Dach*, 2. roof. *Die Frucht*, 8. fruit. *Die Furcht*, 7. fear. *Die Küche*, 7. kitchen. *Das Licht*, 2. light. *Die Macht*, 8. power. *Die Milch*, 7. milk. *Acht*, eight. *Die Rache*, 7. revenge. *Rächen*, to revenge. *Brechen*, to break. *Kochen*, to cook. *Machen*, to make. *Sprechen*, to speak. *Rache*, *rächen*, *brechen*, *kochen*, *machen* and *sprechen* are pronounced *Rach-e*, *räch-en*, *brech-en*, *koch-en*, *mach-en*, *sprech-en*. In the following foreign words, commencing with *ch*, the hard sound of *ch* takes also place: *der Chalcedonier*, 4. calcedonius. *Das Chamäleon*, 1. chameleon. *Das Chaos*, chaos. *Der Cherub*, cherub. *China*, China. *Das Chirägra*, the gout in the hand. *Die Chirurgie*, 7. surgery. *Chirurgisch*, chirurgical. *Der Chirurgus*, surgeon. *Die Chromatik*, 7. chromatic. *Chromatisch*, chromatic. *Der Chrysolith*, 6. chrysolite. *Der Chrysöpras*, 1. chrysoprase. *Der Chylus*, chyle. *Die Chymie* or *die Chemie*, 7. chymistry. *Der Chymiker* or *der Chemiker*, 4. chymist. *Chymisch* or *chemisch*, chymical. *Die Cichörie*, 7. succory. Before a long vowel, the *ch* has a soft sound. For instance: *das Būch*, 2. book. *Der Flūch*, 1. curse. *Flūchen*, to curse. *Das Mädchen*, 4. girl. *Das Tūch*, 2. cloth. *Der Nächste*, the nearest. *Zunächst*, next. *Sūchen*, to seek. *Ich brūch*, I broke. *Ich sprūch*, I spoke.

Before *a*, *o*, *u*, and *r*, at the beginning of words, the *ch* is pronounced like *k*. For instance: *der Charakter*, 4. character. *Die Chārwoche*, 7. the holy-week. *Das Chörhemd*, 3. alb, surplice. *Der Chūrfürst**, 6. elector. *Der Christ*, 6. christian. *Der Chro-*

* This word is derived from the verb *küren*, which signifie to elect, and must, consequently, be written *Kurfürst*.

nolūg, 6. chronologer. Also before *s*, at the end of a syllable, the *ch* sounds like *k*. For instance: *der Dachs*, 1. badger. *Der Ochs*, 6. ox. *Das Wachs*, 1. wax. *Wachsen*, to grow. *Der Wūchs*, 1. growth. *Sechs*, six. These words are pronounced as if written *Daks*; *Oks*; *Waks*; *waks-en*; *Wuhks*; *seks*. In the words *hōchst*, extremely, *nāchst*, next, and *mein Nāchster*, my neighbour, the *ch* retains its guttural sound. Many Germans, however, pronounce also in these words the *ch* like *k*. When *chs* stands in words contracted, or when the *s* does not appertain to the same syllable, in which the *ch* stands, the *ch* has also a guttural sound. For instance: *des Dachs*, of the roof, instead of *des Daches*. *Er sprach's*, he said it, instead of *er sprach es*. *Wāch-sam*, vigilant. *Nāch-sehen*, to look after.

In French words, the *ch* is pronounced like the English *sh*. For instance: *die Charpie*, 7. lint. *Die Chocolāte*, 7. chocolate.

Ck is pronounced like double *k*. For instance: *die Glocke*, 7. bell. *Beglücken*, to make happy. These words are pronounced as if written *Glok-ke; beglük-ken*.

Cz, in words from the Slavonic languages, is pronounced like the German *tsch*, and the simple *c* has always in them the sound of the German *z*. For instance: *Czaslau*. The word *Czar* must be written and pronounced *Zār*.

D.

D is pronounced like the English *d*, and must carefully be distinguished from *t*. Also at the end of a word the *d* is pronounced by correct speakers with its soft sound.

Dt occurs only in words contracted. For instance: *gesandt*, sent, instead of *gesendet*.

F.

F sounds like the English *f*, and has a softer sound than the French *f* at the beginning of words. For instance: *das Fenster*, 4. window.

G.

G, at the beginning of a syllable, has exactly the sound of the English *g* in the words *garden*; *God*; *to get*; *to give*. For instance: *der Garten*, 4. garden. *Der Gaul*, 1. horse. *Gêben*, to give. *Gern*, willingly. *Der Geist*, 2. ghost. *Die Gier*, 7. eagerness. *Das Gift*, 1. poison. *Gott*, 2. God. *Göttlich*, divine. *Gūt*, good. *Die Güte*, 7. goodness. *Das Glück*, 1. happiness. *Die Gnade*, 7. grace. *Der Grāf*, 6. count. *Groſs*, great. At the end of a syllable, and preceded by a long vowel, the *g* has the same sound. For instance: *der Tag*, 1. day. *Der Wēg*, 1. way. *Der Sieg*, 1. victory. *Der Trūg*, 1. trough. *Der Krūg*, 1. pitcher. These words have also this sound, when they are inflected.

When the *g* ends an unaccented syllable, it is pronounced like *ch*, and, consequently, with an aspiration. For instance: *blumig*, flowery. *Der Essig*, 1. vinegar. *Gütig*, kind. *Die Gütigkeit*, 7. kindness. These words are pronounced as if written *blumich*; *Essich*; *gütich*; *Gütichkeit*. They are also pronounced in the same manner, when they are inflected.

When the *g*, at the end of a syllable, is preceded by *n*, it is pronounced like *gk*. This letter has then the sound of the English *k* in the word *ink*. For instance: *der Gesang*, 1. song. *Der Ring*, 1. ring. *Der Sprung*, 1. leap. *Lang* (adjective), long. These words are pronounced as if written *Gesangk*; *Ringk*; *Sprungk*; *langk*. But when these words are inflected, they sound then as the English *g* in the word *bringer*.

When the two letters *ng* are followed by *en*, they are pronounced like the English *ng* in the word *bringing*. For instance: *dingen*, to hire. *Gelingen*, to succeed. *Klingen*, to sound. *Ringen*, to wrestle. *Singen*, to sing. *Springen*, to spring. These words are pronounced *ding-en*; *geling-en*, &c. The same pronunciation have the two letters *ng* also in the following words: *der Klang*, 1. sound. *Es klang*, it sounded. *Es gelang ihm*, he met with success.

Er rang, he wrestled. *Er sang* *, he sung. *Er sprang*, he sprung. *Er umschlâng*, he embraced closely; from *umschlingen*. *Bang'* (instead of *bange*), anxious. *Eng'* (instead of *enge*), narrow. *Lang'* (instead of *lange*), long, a long time. It is, however, to be observed, that *ng* in these words (with exception of *bang'*, *eng'* and *lang'*) are pronounced by many Germans like *ngk*. But this vicious pronunciation is avoided by all those who pronounce elegantly. Also in the word *Gesang*, with its derivatives, *ng* ought to be pronounced like *ng* in the English word *song*.

In words borrowed from the French language, the *g* sounds as in French. For instance: *das Genie*, genius.

H.

H, at the beginning of a word, is pronounced with a strong aspiration. For instance: *der Held*, 6. hero. *Der Hut*, 1. hat. *Hören*, to hear.

After the vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, and *u*, the *h* serves to lengthen their sound. For instance: *die Zahl*, 7. number. *Mehr*, more. *Ihn*, him. *Der Floh*, 1. flea. *Der Mohn*, 1. poppy. *Die Uhr*, 7. watch.

When the *h* stands between two *e*, it is not sounded at all. For instance: *gehen*, to go. *Sêhen*, to see.

J.

J, before a vowel and called in German *jot*, has, as consonant, the sound of the English *y* in the word *yet*. For instance: *das Jahr*, 1. year.

K.

K sounds in German as in English. It is also pronounced before the *n*, which is not the case in English. For instance: *das Knie*, 1. knee.

L. M. N.

L, *m*, and *n* are pronounced in German as in

* *Er sang* must be distinguished from *er sank*, he sunk, preterimperfect of the irregular verb *sinken*, to sink.

English. For instance: *das Lêben*, 4. life. *Der Mund*, 2. mouth. *Nêhmen*, to take.

P.

P sounds in German as in English. For instance: *das Pech*, 1. pitch. *P* is also pronounced, when standing before the *f*. For instance: *das Pférd*, 1. horse. The characteristic sound of *pf* is peculiar to the German language. It must be pronounced very strong, which is effected by pressing the lips forcibly together.

Ph sounds in German as in English, and, consequently, like *f*. For instance: *die Philosophie*, 7. philosophy.

Q.

Q has the sound of *k*, and is constantly followed by *u*, pronounced like *w*. These two letters sound, consequently, like *kw*. For instance: *die Quelle*, 7. spring, source.

R.

R is pronounced as in English. For instance: *der Rabe*, 6. raven. The *h* is always silent after the *r*. For instance: *der Rhein*, 1. Rhine. *Die Rhetŭrik*, 7. rhetoric.

S.

S has always a soft sound, and is pronounced like the English *s* in the word *easy*. For instance: *das Silber*, 4. silver. *Seyn*, to be. *Reisen*, to travel. Before *k*, *p*, and *t*, at the beginning of a word, the *s* is pronounced in the greatest part of Germany like the English *sh*. For instance: *der Sklave*, 6. slave. *Die Sprāche*, 7. speech. *Der Stein*, 1. stone. *Der Durst*, 1. thirst. But this hissing pronunciation, which is given to the letter *s* before *k*, *p*, and *t* at the beginning of words, ought to be avoided by all correct speakers. *S* must, therefore, be pronounced also before *k*, *p*, and *t* like the English *s* in the words *slave; speech; stone; thirst.*

When the *s* commences a word or syllable, it is thus printed and written: ſ, *ſ*. It is, therefore, called the long *s*. For instance: ſalzen, *ſalzen*, to salt. Verſalzen, *verſalzen*, to salt too much. But when the *s* ends a word or a syllable, it is thus printed and written: s, *s*. It is, therefore, called the short *s*. For instance: was, *was*, what. Glashart, *glashart*, hard like glass.

When two *s* are found in a word, the first of them belongs to the one, and the second to the other syllable, and the vowel, by which they are preceded, is pronounced short. For instance: *die Rosse*, horses. *Die Küsse*, kisses. *Hassen*, to hate. These two *s* are thus printed and written: ſſ, *ſſ*. For instance: vergeſſen, *vergeſſen*, to forget. When two *s* end a word, or a syllable followed by a consonant, they are formed in printing and writing in this manner: ß, *ß*. For instance: der Fluß, *der Fluß*, 1. river. Häßlich, *häßlich*, ugly. The vowels *u* and *ü* of these words are short.

When two *s* stand in the middle or at the end of a word after a long vowel or a diphthong, they are printed and written thus: ß, *ß*. For instance: die Straße, *die Straße*, 7. street. Heißen, *heißen*, to be called. Verſüßen, *verſüßen*, to sweeten. Reißen*, *reißen*

* This word is not to be confounded with *reisen*, to travel.

Reißen, to tear. Der Fuß, der Fuß, 1. foot; die Füße, die Füße, feet.

In order to indicate exactly the short or long sound of the vowel or diphthong, by which the double *s* is preceded, it is necessary to print and to write ff, ff, when the foregoing vowel or diphthong is short; and ß, ß, when they are long. For this reason ff and ff ought to be employed always at the end of a word or syllable, when the preceding vowel or diphthong has a short sound. For instance: der Kuff, der Kuff, and not Kuß, Kuß, kiss. näfflich, näfflich, and not näßlich, näßlich, somewhat wet. das Roff, das Roff, and not Roß, Roß, horse. Ich muff, ich muff, and not muß, muß, I must. In the present Grammar the short sound of the preceding vowel or diphthong is always marked by *ss*, and the long sound of them by *ß*.

Sch sounds like the English *sh*. For instance: *die Schande*, 7. shame. *Der Mensch*, 6. man. But *sch* must form one character, in order to be pronounced thus. In the following word, this pronunciation does not take place: *ein Rös-chen*, a little rose.

T.

T is pronounced like the English *t* in the word *table*. For instance: *die Tugend*, 7. virtue.

Th sounds like the simple *t*, and the foregoing

and following vowel are always pronounced long. For instance: *der Wérth*, 1. value. *Die That*, 7. action. *Das Thor*, 1. gate. *Thun*, to do. Excepted are the words *der Thurm*, 1. tower, and *der Wirth*, 1. landlord, in which the vowel is not lengthened by the *h*.

Ti, before a vowel, is pronounced like *zi* or *tsi* in words derived from the Latin language. For instance: *die Natiōn*, 7. nation. But in words derived from the Greek, the syllable *ti* retains its original sound. For instance: *die Demokratie*, 7. democracy.

Tz is pronounced like a double *z*. For instance: *die Katze*, 7. cat. This word is pronounced as if written *Kaz-ze*.

V.

V sounds like *f*. For instance: *der Vogel*, 4. bird. In words derived from the Italian or French language, the *v* is pronounced like *w*. For instance: *der Virtuose*, 6. virtuoso.

W.

W is pronounced like the English *v*. For instance: *der Wein*, 1. wine. *Die Welt*, 7. world. *Das Wêsen*, 4. being.

X.

X sounds like *ks*.

Z.

Z sounds always like the two English letters *ts*. For instance: *der Zorn*, 1. anger. *Zeigen*, to show.

The two letters *zz* are written thus: *tz*. *Tz* sounds, of course, like *zz*. For instance: *verletzen*, to hurt.

Two consonants make the foregoing vowel short. For instance: *das Fell*, 1. skin. *Der Schatz*, 1. treasure. This, however, is not always the case. There are several words, in which the vowel preceding two consonants is pronounced long. For instance: *die Māgd*, 8. maid.

Of the accent of the German words.

I.

The full accent.

In order to read well the German language, not only the sound of every letter must be expressed with propriety, but it is also necessary to give every word its just accent. The accent is not to be confounded with the *quantity*, by which is understood the measure of time in pronouncing a syllable. *Accent (der Accent)* is called that stronger percussion of voice, by which one syllable of a word is pronounced with more force than the other syllables. The accent, therefore, regulates the pronunciation of words, and is subject to fixed rules. From the *verbal accent* must be distinguished the *oratorial* or *declamatory accent*, by which the tone of whole sentences is commanded. The former *(der Wortaccent)* determines the force of certain syllables; the latter *(der Redeaccent)* modifies the relative energy of words. The syllable, which has the accent, is called the *accented* syllable *(die accentuirte* or *betonte Sylbe)*. The accent, in this case, is called the *complete* or *full accent (der volle Accent)*, or the *principal accent (der Hauptaccent)*. That syllable, on the contrary, over which the voice passes with the greatest swiftness, and has, consequently, but a very short sound, is called an *unaccented* or *accentless* syllable *(eine unbetonte* or *tonlose Sylbe)*.

Only to words, which have more than one syllable, the verbal accent does refer. To monosyllables, therefore, which are only susceptible of the oratorial accent, the verbal accent cannot be applied. The accented syllable, in this Grammar, has either the mark ¯ or ^, or the mark ´ or `. The first of these marks indicates, at the same time, that the sound of the vowel, over which it stands, is long. For instance: *mündlos*, moonless. *Lösketten*, to unchain. When the accented syllable has an *e*, which sounds like the French *é ouvert long*, it is marked with the circumflex. For instance: *lêben*, to live.

Néhmen, to take. *Vergéblich*, in vain. The second mark, denotes the short sound of the vowel of the accented syllable. The mark ` indicates, that the *e*, over which it stands, is pronounced like the French *è ouvert bref*. For instance: *verfèrtigen*, to make.

The full accent is placed on the last syllable in the substantives and adjectives, which end in *ei*; in many words derived from the Greek or Latin; in some other words not properly German; and lastly, in the compound adverbs and conjunctions, which begin with *als*, *an*, *bis*, *da*, *der*, *die*, *ein*, *em*, *ent*, *fort*, *für*, *gleich*, *her*, *hier*, *hin*, *in*, *je*, *mit*, *nách*, *nún*, *ob*, *so*, *über*, *um*, *vór*, *wo*, *zu*. Examples: *die Árzeneī*, 7. medicine. *Allerleī*, of all kinds. *Mancherleī*, diverse. *Vielerleī*, of many kinds. *Der Alaún*, 1. alum. *Der Altár* (or *Áltar*), 1. altar. *Der Barbár*, 6. barbarian. *Der Barón*, 1. baron. *Der Canál*, 1. canal, channel. *Die Cloák*, 7. a common sewer. *Der Faeán*, 3. pheasant. *Die Figúr*, 7. figure. *Das Kamēel*, 1. camel. *Der Kapaún*, 3. capon. *Das Klystíer*, 1. clyster. *Die Musík*, 7. music. *Die Natión*, 7. nation. *Das Orgán*, 1. organ. *Die Persón*, 7. person. *Der Prophēt*, 6. prophet. *Der Regént*, 6. regent. *Der Rubín*, 3. ruby. *Der Tyránn*, 6. tyrant. *Homér*, *Virgíl*, *Horáz*; from *Homerus*, *Virgilius*, *Horatius* *. *Der Barbíer*, 1. barber. *Der Bombást*, 1. bombast. *Der Husár*, 6. hussar. *Der Krakēel*, 1. quarrel. *Der Lackeī*, 6. lackey. *Der Morást*, 1. morass. *Das Revíer*, 1. district, quarter. *Der Saffián*, 1. Morocco leather. *Der Soldát*, 6. soldier. *Der Spinát*, 1. spinage. *Der Spión*, 1. spy. *Allein*, alone, only, but. *Allgemein*, generally. *Allemál*, every time. *Allenfálls*, perhaps. *Allerdings*, surely. *Allerérst*, first of all. *Allerhánd*, of all kinds. *Allerseíts*, on every side. *Allerwárts*, everywhere. *Allesámmt*, all together. *Alsbáld*, presently. *Alsdánn*, then. *Anjétzt* (better *jetzt*), now. *Bishér*, till now. *Daférn*, *woférn*, provided, if. *Daselbst*, in that place. *Daraús*, thereout. *Dereínst*, *dermaleínst*,

* *Pindar*, from *Pindarus*, has the accent on the first syllable.

futurely. *Dieweīl* (better *weil*), because. *Einmāl*, once, one day; but *einmal*, once, one time, a single time. *Empōr*, on high. *Entzweī*, in two. *Fortán*, *forthín*, henceforth. *Fürwāhr*, in truth. *Gleichwīe*, as. *Herāb*, *hināb*, down. *Hierhér*, hither. *Indém*, when, as. *Indéss* (instead of *indéssen*), in the mean time, while. *Jedóch*, however. *Mithín*, of course. *Nachhér*, afterwards. *Nunmēhr* (sometimes pronounced *nūnmehr*), now. *Obgleīch*, *obschōn*, *obwōhl*, though. *Sogleīch*, directly, presently. *Überáll*, everywhere. *Uberaūs*, exceedingly. *Überhaūpt*, generally. *Umsónst*, gratis, in vain. *Warúm*, why. *Vorhér*, *zuvōr*, before, formerly. *Wodúrch*, whereby. The following words are excepted: *der Ánis*, 1. anise; *allenthálben*; *allmālich*; *úllzu* (instead of *zu*), too; *beisámmen*; *biswēilen*; *dagégen*; *dahínter*; *darūber*; *darúnter*; *dawīder*; *dazwischen*; *dérgleichen*; *dérmalen*; *dérmafsen*; *gleīchfalls*; *hernīeder*; *herúnter*; *hiergégen*; *hiernīeden*; *hierūber*; *hierúnter*; *hierwīder*; *inzwischen*; *jedénnoch*; *jémals*; *Jémand*; *mitúnter*; *nachgerāde*; *nāchmals*; *vūrmals*; *vorūber*; *worūber*; *worúnter*; *zuwīder*.

The full accent is placed on the last syllable but one in words of two syllables: in several compound adjectives and substantives of three or four syllables; in many compound verbs; in the adverbs and conjunctions named before; and lastly, in several foreign words of three syllables. Examples: *das Wúnder*, 4. miracle. *Nénnen*, to name. *Allweīse*, all-wise. *Die Allweīsheit*, 7. the infinite wisdom. *Allgewáltig*, omnipotent. *Erfreūen*, to rejoice. *Vollénden*, to finish. *Vollstrécken*, to execute. *Die Cabāle*, 7. cabal. *Die Fusēle*, 7. a kind of bean. *Das Kapitel*, 4. chapter. *Die Mechānik*, 7. mechanics. *Das Register*, 4. index.

The full accent is placed on the last syllable but two in words of three syllables. For instance: *die Ménschlichkeit*, 7. humanity. *Der Schriftsteller*, 4. writer, author. *Úndankbar*, unthankful. *Billigen*, to approve. *Éndigen*, to end. *Frōhlocken*, to shout. *Lōbpreisen*, to praise. *Vóllmachen* (better *voll machen*), to fill, to replenish.

Not only all the words from the Greek or Latin, which have been germanized by a change in their termination, but also many other German words are excepted. Such words are, for instance, the following: *das Axiōm*, 1. axiom. *Der Elephánt*, 6. elephant. *Der Generāl*, 1. general. *Die Millīōn*, 7. million. *Der Patriót*, 6. patriot. *Verschwénden*, to lavish, &c.

The full accent is placed on the first or second syllable in words of four or more syllables. For instance: *die Nōthwendigkeit*, 7. necessity. *Die Männermörderin*, 7. the murderess of her husband. *Die Verbindlichkeit*, 7. obligation. *Vereīnigen*, to unite. *Die Geréchtigkeitspflege*, 7. the administration of justice. Exceptions are the words *der Marketénder*, 4. sutler. *Marketéndern*, to be a sutler. *Offenbāren*, to manifest, to reveal.

In order to give every word in the German language its just accent, the following general rules concerning the German accent must be carefully observed.

First general rule on the German accent.

The initial syllables be, emp, ent, er, ge, ver, zer, *and the final syllables* chen, e, el, els, en, end, er, ern, ers, et, *are accentless.*

For instance: *beweīsen*, to demonstrate. *Empfángen*, to receive. *Entwénden*, to purloin. *Erwérben*, to acquire. *Gestēhen*, to avow. *Vermeīden*, to avoid. *Zerstören*, to destroy. *Das Mädchen*, 4. girl. *Die Freūde*, 7. joy. *Der Löffel*, 4. spoon. *Die Tūgend*, 7. virtue. *Der Māler*, 4. painter. *Er līebet*, he loves.

In some words, *be* and *ge* are radical syllables, and, consequently, accented. Of this kind are: *der Bésen*, 4. broom. *Béten*, to pray. *Gében*, to give. *Gēhen*, to go. *Gégen*, against.

Second general rule on the German accent.

In the derivatives, the radical syllable, as it does

contain the principal notion of the word, has the full accent.

For instance: *die Armuth*, 7. poverty. *Die Freiheit*, 7. liberty. *Die Gesellschaft*, 7. society. *Die Handlung*, 7. action. *Der Herzog* (from *Heer* and *ziehen*), 1. duke. *Der Oheim*, 1. uncle. *Dichterisch*, poetical. *Öffentlich* (from *offen*), public. *Unbeantwortlich*, unanswerable. *Wahrscheinlich*, probable. *Vereinfachen*, to simplify. In the word *gebet*, give, the first syllable, and in the word *Gebét*, prayer, the last syllable is accented. The root of the first word, consequently, is *geb*, and that of the second word, *bet*.

The exceptions to this rule are the adjectives ending in *alisch* and *atisch*; the words *balsámisch*, *lebéndig*, *offenbár*, *willkómmen*, &c.; the words ending in *ei*, which always place the full accent on the last syllable; and lastly, the verbs terminating in *iren*. The adjectives ending in *alisch* and *atisch*, and the verbs terminating in *iren*, have the full accent on the penultimate syllable. For instance: *musikálisch*, musical. *Problemátisch*, problematical. *Balsamíren*, to balm. The words *balsámisch*, balsamic, *lebéndig*, living, lively, *offenbár*, manifest, and *willkómmen*, welcome, being derived from *Bálsam*, balm, *lében*, to live, *óffen*, open, and *will*, an old adverb, which signifies well, ought to be accented *bálsamisch*, *lébendig*, *óffenbar*, *willkommen*. But the substantive *der Willkommen* has the full accent on the first syllable.

Third general rule on the German accent.

In compound words, the word expressing the principal notion has the full accent.

For instance: *die Bármherzigkeit*, 7. mercy. *Die Fássungskraft*, 8. the power to comprehend, the comprehension. *Die Grósmuth*, magnanimity. *Das Jáhrhundert*, 1. century. *Der Ménschenfeind*, 1. misanthrope. *Das Stúndenglas*, 2. hourglass. *Ehrwür-*

dig, venerable. *Vóllkommen*, perfect. *Die Vóllkommenheit*, 7. perfection.

Sometimes, however, the principal word has the full accent. For instance: *die Allgégenwart*, 7. omnipresence. *Allgégenwärtig*, omnipresent. *Allgewáltig*, omnipotent; from *die Allgewalt*, 7. the almighty power. *Allgütig*, infinitely benign. *Allmächtig*, almighty; from *die Allmacht*, 8. almightiness. *Allsé-hend*, all-seeing. *Allwáltend*, all-governing. *Allwissend*, all-knowing, omniscient. *Die Allwissenheit*, 7. omniscience.

Fourth general rule on the German accent.

In the substantives, adjectives, and verbs, which are compounded with one of the prepositions an, auf, aus, bei, durch, für, gegen, hinter, in, mit, nach, nêben, über, um, unter. vōr, wider, zu, zwischen, *the full accent must be placed on the preposition.*

For instance: *die Ándacht*, 7. devotion. *Ándächtig*, devout. *Die Vōrsehung*, 7. Providence. *Der Vórtheil*, 1. advantage. *Der Nāchtheil*, 1. disadvantage. *Aūsgehen*, to go out. *Bēfügen*, to join, to add. *Úmbilden*, to give a new form.

Besides several adjectives and adverbs, the following words are also excepted from this rule: *ausdrücklich*, express, expressly. *Ausnéhmend*, exceeding. *Unaussprechlich*, inexpressible, inexpressibly. *Vornéhmlich*, principally. *Vortréfflich*, excellent, excellently. *Vorzüglich*, eminent, eminently. When *ausdrücklich* signifies expressible, it is thus accented: *aūsdrücklich*. When *ausnehmend* signifies taking out or excepting, it has also the full accent on the first syllable. *Aūssprechlich*, utterable, is accented in the same manner.

Also several verbs composed with a preposition are: to be excepted to the fourth rule. Such verbs are: *durchschérzen*; *umármen*; *umfássen*; *umríngen*; *umschleīern*; *umschwében*; *umwölken*; *umwühlen*; *umzāunen*; *umzingeln*; *widerfāhren*; *widerlégen*; *wider-*

rūfen; sich widersétzen; widersprèchen *; *widerstē-hen* **; *widerstreben; widerstrāten*, &c.

The fourth rule takes also place for the words, which are composed with *ab, after, ant, dār* ***, *ein, fort, hér, hin, lōs, miss, nieder, ob, ober, ún, ur, weg, zurück, zusámmen.* For instance: *ábschrecken*, to deter. *Áfterreden*, to speak ill of others. *Die Ántwort*, 7. answer. *Dārbieten*, to offer. *Der Ēīnfluss*, 1. influence. *Fórtsenden*, to send away. *Hérsagen*, to recite. *Hínfallen*, to fall down. *Lōsknüpfen*, to untie. *Missfallen*, to displease. *Die Óbliegenheit*, 7. duty. *Beúnruhigen*, to disquiet. *Úrtheilen*, to judge. *Wéggehen*, to go away. *Zurückbringen*, to bring back. *Die Zusámmenkunft*, 8. meeting.

In the verbs, which are composed with one of the prepositions *durch, über, um, unter*, the accent varies, according as they have another signification. For instance: *hínterbringen*, to get down; *hinterbringen*, to report. *Dúrchschauen*, to look through; *durchschaūen*, to penetrate. *Überführen*, to conduct over; *überführen*, to convince. *Úmgeben*, to put on; *umgében*, to surround. This difference of the accent and meaning have not those verbs, when their action does not admit of the idea of motion to a place. For instance: *überhōren*, to miss hearing. *Überlében*, to survive. *Übertréffen*, to surpass.

II.

The demi-accent.

The *demi-accent (der halbe Accent)*, which is also called the *secondary accent (der Nébenaccent)*, gives, though it has not the strongest sound in a

* In the derivative *der Widerspruch*, 1. contradiction, the full accent is placed on the preposition.

** But the substantive *der Widerstand*, 1. resistance, has the full accent on the first syllable.

*** The adverbs *darán, daraūf, daraūs, darein, darín, darnāch, darūber, darúnter*, are excepted. This is also the case with the adverbs compounded with *ein, fort, her* and *hin.*

word, and is, therefore, inferior in energy to the full accent, yet to the syllable, to which it belongs, a more distinct and forcible pronunciation, than those syllables have, which are devoid of accent.

The demi-accent is peculiar to the vowels at the end of words, with the exception of *e*, which is unaccented, and to the syllables *ahm, and, ard, at, bār, eim, haft, heit, ig, in, itz, lein, lich, ling, mūth, niss, old, rath, sāl, sām, schaft, thūm, ung.* For instance: *der Heīland*, 1. saviour. *Der Bāstard*, 1. bastard. *Der Mōnat*, 1. month. *Nāchahmbar*, imitable. *Mūhsam*, painful. *Die Neūheit*, 7. newness. Those syllables are not pronounced all in the same manner. Some of them have a longer, others, a shorter sound.

Words beginning with *un* place commonly the principal accent on this *un*; but *un* has also frequently the secondary accent. Examples: *úngehorsam*, disobedient. *Unglücklich*, unhappy. *Unéndlich*, infinite. *Unschätzbar*, inestimable. *Unstérblich*, immortal. *Unzählig*, innumerable. All these words have, besides the principal accent, two secondary accents.

Syllables.

A *syllable** (*eine Sylbe*) is an assemblage of letters, pronounced by a single impulse of the voice, and constituting a word or part of a word. There are also some syllables, which consist of only one vowel. For instance: *a-ber*, but.

A word composed of only one syllable, such as *der*, the, *denn*, for, *nein*, no, is called a *monosyllable (ein einsylbiges Wort)*. A word of two syllables is called a *dissyllable (ein zweisylbiges Wort)*; a word of three syllables, a *trisyllable (ein dreisylbiges Wort)*; a word of many syllables, a *polysyllable (ein vielsylbiges Wort)*. Examples: *die Pflau-me*, 7. plum. *Das Ver-gnü-gen*, 4. pleasure. *Lie-bens-wür-dig*, lovely.

There are two kinds of syllables: *simple* and

* This term comes from the Greek word *συλλαβή*, which signifies *assemblage*.

compound. The *simple syllable (die einfache Sylbe)* consists of a vowel or diphthong. For instance: *o-der*, or. *Das Ei*, 2. egg. The *compound syllable (die zusammengesetzte Sylbe)* consists of one or more consonants joined to a vowel or diphthong. For instance: *du*, thou. *Das Kind*, 2. child. *Der Baum*, 1. tree.

To *pronounce* a language (*eine Sprāche aūssprechen*) signifies to give every word its proper sound and accent.

To *spell*, that is, to name letters singly, in order to form words of them, is called in German *buchstabīren*. The act of pronouncing singly the syllables, of which a word is composed, is called in German *syllabīren*. To read, that is, to pronounce a series of words joined together, by which is formed a phrase or sentence and conveyed any idea to the mind, is called in German *lēsen*.

W o r d s.

Words (Wörter) are articulate sounds, which consist of one or more syllables, and are used by common consent as signs of ideas or notions.

More words, rightly put together, in order to present an idea to the mind, are called a *phrase (ein Satz)*. An assemblage of words, expressed in proper form, and ranged in proper order, and concurring to make a complete sense, are called a *sentence* or *period (eine Periode)*.

There are in German nine sorts or classes of words (*Wörterarten* or *Wörterclassen*), or, as they are commonly called, parts of speech (*Redetheile*).

These nine parts of speech are: —

1. The *article (der Artikel)*, which is put before a substantive, in order to pointing or singling out from the common mass the individual, of which we mean to speak. The article is called by many German grammarians *das Geschlechtswort* (the term of gender), because it marks, at the same time, the gender of the substantive, before which it stands.

2. The *substantive (das Substantīv* or *das sēlbst-*

ständige Wort), which betokens any thing, that subsists by itself, or of which we have a complete notion. In German it is called *das Hauptwort* (the principal word), in order to mark its importance in discourse. It is, indeed, the foundation of all grammar, and may be considered as the most ancient part of speech.

3. The *adjective (das Beiwort)*, which is added to a substantive, to signify some quality, circumstance, or manner of being of it. For this reason, it is also called in German *das Eigenschaftswort* or *das Beschäffenheitswort* (the term of quality). But this appellation cannot be applied to all the adjectives.

The substantives and adjectives are called *nouns (Nennwörter)*, because they serve to name something. This something is either a *substance*, as the earth, a tree; or a *quality*, as red, white, good, bad. To the adjectives belong also the *numerals (die Zählwörter)*.

4. The *pronoun (das Fürwort)*. Pronouns, which are the class of words most nearly related to substantive nouns, are, as the name imports, representatives or substitutes of them.

5. The *verb (das Aussagewort)*, which says or affirms something of the subject of the phrase. It ascribes, therefore, an action, or a suffering, or any state or condition to some person or thing. It expresses also the time, to which that, which it affirms of the subject, has relation. This double function of the verb is that, which chiefly distinguishes it from the other parts of speech, and gives it its most conspicuous power. Hence there can be no phrase or sentence without a verb either expressed or implied. For this reason, this part of speech is called *verb*, from the Latin *verbum*, or *the word* by way of distinction. The verb is commonly called in German *das Zeitwort* (the term of time), because it also expresses the time, in which an action or a suffering takes place. But this term is not well chosen, because it does not express the true nature of the

verb, but only an external quality of it. The verb is also called in German *das Zūstandswort* (the term of state), because it signifies the state or condition of some person or thing.

6. The *preposition* (*das Vŭrwort*), which is put before substantives and pronouns, and serves to point out those relations of objects, which cannot be expressed by the declension of words. The preposition is, therefore, also called in German *das Verhältniswort* (the term of relation).

7. The *adverb* (*das Nebenwort*), which is added to verbs, and also to adjectives and other adverbs, and serves to modify or to denote some circumstance of an action or of a quality, relative to its time, place, order, degree, and the other properties of it, which we have occasion to specify. For this reason, it is also called in German *das Umstandswort* (the term of circumstance).

8. The *conjunction* (*das Bindewort*), whose use is to join words or sentences together.

9. The *interjection* (*das Zwischenwort*), which is arbitrarily inserted in any sentence, in order to express any emotion or affection of the mind. For this reason, it is also called in German *das Empfindungswort* (the term expressing our feelings).

The five first of these parts of speech are inflected; but the four others admit of no variations, and are, therefore, called the indeclinable classes of words. To *inflect* a word (*ein Wort beugen*) signifies to vary it in its terminations, in order to point out the reference of the several words of a sentence to one another.

The four first parts of speech are *declined*, and the fifth part of speech is *conjugated*.

To *decline* a word (*ein Wort decliniren* or *abändern*) signifies to express the different relations of a word to another by the endings, of which it is susceptible. The terminations, which are produced by declining a word, are called *syllables of inflection* (*Beugungssylben*). *Declension* (*die Declinatiŭn* or *die Abänderung*) is, consequently, the variation of a

word according to the relations, which it bears to another in a sentence. The declension of the German language is very imperfect, and very different from that of the ancient learned languages.

The different endings of a word, by which it is declined, are called *cases (Fälle* or *Beügefälle* or *Verhältnissfälle)*.

There are five cases in German, which are called *nominative, genitive, dative, accusative*, and *vocative*.

1. The *nominative case (der Nominativ* or *der Nénnefall)*, which simply expresses the name of the thing, and is, therefore, the word itself, is employed to answer to the question: *who? which* or *what?* For instance: *Der Bruder schreibt.* The brother writes. *Who* writes? Answer: *der Bruder*, the brother. *Das Feuer brennt*, the fire burns. *What* burns? Answer: *das Feuer*, the fire. This case, which always is the subject of the verb, is put before it. But if the phrase be interrogative, it must be placed after its verb.

2. The *genitive case (der Genitīv* or *der Zeügefall)* is placed after another substantive, to answer to the question: *of whom?* For instance: *Der Bruder des Fürsten schreibt.* The brother of the prince writes. *Of whom* is he the brother? Answer: *des Fürsten*, of the prince This case may be placed before the substantive, by which it is governed. In this case, that substantive loses its article. For instance: *des Fürsten Bruder*, the prince's brother.

To answer to the question: *when?* or *how many times?* the words *Mórgen, Ábend, Mūnat, Jahr*, as also the days of the week, are placed in the genitive case. For instance: *Wann kommt er zu Ihnen?* When does he come to you? Answer: *des Morgens und des Abends*, the morning and the evening. Instead of *an dem Morgen und an dem Abende*, in the morning and in the evening. *Wie viele Male schreibt er Ihnen des Monats, des Jahres?* How many times does he write to you in a month, in a year? *Die Póst kommt wöchentlich zweimāl an.* The post ar-

rives twice a week. *When?* Answer: *des Sónntags und dis Mittwoche**, sunday and wednesday.

The genitive case is also called in German *der Besitzfall* (the possessive case), the relation of possession being often expressed by it. It is also called *Abhängigkeitsfall*, because it depends on the nominative, by which it is governed.

3. The *dative case* (*der Datīv* or *der Gébefall*), which signifies the person, to whom any thing is given, is employed to answer to the question: *to whom?* or *to what?* For instance: *Ich habe es dem Vater gegében.* I have given it to the father. *To whom* have you given it? Answer: *dem Vater*, to the father.

This case is also called in German *der Zwéckfall*, because it expresses, to what purpose something is done.

4. The *accusative case* (*der Accusatīv* or *der Klāgefall*) is placed after a verb active, to answer to the question: *whom?* or *what? Ich habe den König geséhen.* I have seen the king. *Whom* have you seen? Answer: *den König*, the king. *Ich habe den Brief geschrieben.* I have written the letter. *What* have you written? Answer: *den Brief*, the letter.

This case is called by the German grammarians *der Zīelfall* or *der Wirkfall*, because it expresses the aim of an action, and denotes, of course, the object, to which the action expressed by the verb is directed.

5. The *vocative case* (*der Vocatīv* or *der Rūfefall*), which never differs from the nominative, serves to call or to invoke. For instance: *Bruder, komm zu mīr.* Brother, come to me. *O mein Gott!* O my God!

Whatever is spoken of, is represented as one or more in number. There are, consequently, two *numbers* (*Zāhlverhältnisse*) in grammar. When only one thing is expressed, the *singular number* (*die einfache Zahl* or *die Einzahl*) takes place. When more

* Not *des Mittwochs*. This day of the week, being of the feminine gender, is excepted.

things than one are signified, the *plural number (die mēhrfache Zahl* or *die Mēhrzahl)* is employed.

There are three *genders* in German: the *masculine (das männliche)*, the *feminine (das weibliche)*, and the *neuter gender** *(das sächliche Geschlecht)*.

The masculine and feminine gender ought to be applied only to the names of animals; and all the inanimate things ought to be of the neuter gender. But this is not the case in German. In the English, on the contrary, all the substantive nouns, which are not names of living creatures, are neuter without exception. *He*, *she* and *it* are the marks of the three genders, and *it* is always used in speaking of any object, where there is no sex, or where the sex is not known.

The verb is subject to many variations. These variations are, what is called the *conjugation (die Conjugatiōn* or *die Abwandelung)* of the verb. To *conjugate* a verb *(ein Aussagewort conjugīren* or *abwandeln)* signifies, consequently, to recite a verb with all its variations.

The grammar of the German language, as that of every other language, is divided into *two* parts. The *first* part is called the *etymology (die Förmenlehre)*, and delivers the inflections *(die Beugungen)* of nouns and verbs. The *second* part is called the *syntax (die Wörtfügung)*, and teaches the construction of words.

The latter part of grammar treats of the relation, which words bear to one another, when placed together, and of the order and arrangement of words in a sentence. It shows, that in those words, which are susceptible of variations, certain modifications take place. Words either agree with one another, or govern one another. The agreement consists in this, that they are put in the same gender, number, case, person, tense. One word is said to govern the other, when, by the power of the former, the latter must necessarily assume a particular shape, for example,

* That is, neither the one, nor the other gender.

a certain case in declension, or such and such a mood in conjugation. The author of this book has not separately treated of the two parts of grammar, but has combined them.

CHAPTER II.

Two exercises in reading with German characters, in order to apply the rules given on the pronunciation of the German language.

I.

Die Sprache, welche der Gegenstand dieser Sprachlehre ist, war ursprünglich eine Mundart, die einer kleinen Gegend in Deutschland eigenthümlich war; und bis auf den heutigen Tag wird sie von den anderen Sprecharten durch den Namen des Hochdeutschen unterschieden. Sie wird durch diese Benennung von dem Niederdeutschen, welches die an-

gestammte Sprache der nördlichen Theile Deutschlandes ist, abgesondert. Die Sprache des südlichen Deutschlandes hieß das Oberdeutsche. Auch von diesem ist das Hochdeutsche verschieden. Aber der Name scheint hauptsächlich im Gegensatze gegen das Niederdeutsche eingeführt worden zu seyn, weil diese neue Mundart einer Gegend angehörte, welche höher hinauf, das heißt, mehr gegen Süden liegt. Auf diese Art waren um die Zeit der Kirchenverbesserung drei große Abtheilungen der deutschen Sprache

vorhanden, das Oberdeutsche, das Niederdeutsche oder das Plattdeutsche, und endlich, das Hochdeutsche. Die letztere Mundart begann zuerst zur Zeit der Kirchenverbesserung bekannt zu werden; und das Kurfürstenthum Sachsen war das Land, welches ihr das Daseyn gab. Aber seit dem sechzehnten Jahrhunderte wurde sie in verschiedenen Provinzen ausgebildet, und endlich als ihre gemeinsame Sprache von Allen angenommen.

I.

English translation of the preceding German exercise in reading with German characters.

The language, which is the subject of this Grammar, was originally a dialect peculiar to a small district in Germany, and is to this day distinguished from the other modes of speech by the name of *High German*. It is by that appellation discriminated from the *Low German*, which is the native language of the northern parts of Germany. That of the south of Germany was called *Upper German*. From this the High German likewise differs. But the name seems to have been chiefly assigned in opposition to the Low German, because that new dialect appertained to a country situated higher up, that is to say, more to the south. In this manner there existed, about the time of the Reformation, three grand divisions of the German language, the *Upper German*, the *Low German*, and lastly, the *High German*. The latter idiom began first to rise into notice at the time of the Reformation; and the electorate of Saxony was the place, that gave it birth. But, since the sixteenth century, it was cultivated in different provinces, and ultimately adopted, as their common tongue, by all.

II.

Vor dieſem Zeitraume wurde jedes wiſſenſchaftliche Werk, welches in der deutſchen Sprache abgefaſſt wurde, in der oberdeutſchen Mundart geſchrieben. Das Hochdeutſche war Luthers Mutterſprache, und durch den Einfluſſ ſeines Beiſpieles ſtand es zuerſt als Mitbewerber um den Vorrang mit der erſteren Mundart

II.

Before that era, every literary production, which was composed in the German tongue, was written in the Upper German. The High German was the native dialect of Luther, and by the influence of his example it began to be raised to a competition with the former idiom, and was soon spread throughout

auf; und bald verbreitete es sich durch die ganze Nation. Die Bibel, und andere Werke von höher Wichtigkeit in jenem Zeitraume, welche in dieser Mundart herausgegeben wurden, und die Menge protestantischer Geistlichen, welche aus dem Kurfürstenthume Sachsen hervorgingen, machten sie in den entfernteren Theilen des Landes bekannt. Sie wurde überall gelesen und verstanden, und nach und nach zur allgemeinen Sprache von ganz Deutschland ausgebildet. Sie verdrängte das Oberdeutsche von dem höheren Platze, welchen es bis jetzt inne gehabt hatte, und nahm an seiner Stelle von den Gebieten der Literatur und Wissenschaft Besitz. Das Hochdeutsche ist folglich die Sprache der allgemeinen Mittheilung geworden, da hingegen die übrigen Mundarten auf den gesprächlichen Verkehr ihrer eigenen Provinzen beschränkt sind, und sogar dort auch größtentheils von dem Gebrauche der gebildeten und höheren Stände ausgeschlossen werden. Es ist die Sprache der ganzen Nation, und muss vorzugsweise verstanden werden, wenn das Deutsche erwähnt wird.

the whole nation. The Bible, and other works of high interest at that period, published in this dialect, and the number of protestant divines, which issued from the electorate of Saxony, made it known in the remoter parts of the country. It was read and understood everywhere, and, by degrees, cultivated as the general language of all Germany. It drove the Upper German from that preeminence, which it had hitherto occupied, and, in its stead, possessed itself of the fields of literature and science. The High German is, consequently, become the language of general communication, whereas the remaining idioms are confined to the colloquial intercourse of their own provinces, and even there, in a considerable degree, excluded from the practice of the well-educated and higher classes. It is the language of the whole nation, and must, by preference, be understood, when the German is mentioned.

CHAPTER III.

Of the article.

Containing

I. The declension of the two German articles.
II. The use of the two German articles.
III. Position of the German article.

Section I.

The declension of the two German articles.

The article marks the gender, number and case of the noun substantive, to which it is prefixed. When it stands alone, it has no signification. It must, therefore, always be joined to a substantive. When it stands before an adjective, it either refers to a substantive preceding or following, or turns the adjective into a substantive.

There are, as in English, two articles in the German language: the *definite (der bestimmende)* and the *indefinite article (der nicht bestimmende Artikel)*. These articles are *der, die, das*, and *ein, eine, ein*. The former answers to the English *the*, and the latter to the English *a* or *an*.

The German articles are declined. No German substantive noun has such a complete declension as the article.

The definite article has two numbers, the *singular* and the *plural*. The indefinite has only the singular number. A substantive, therefore, to which the indefinite article is prefixed, has in the plural number no article at all. For instance: *ein groſser Mann*, a great man; *groſse Männer*, great men.

In the singular, both the articles have distinct endings for the three genders of grammar, the *masculine*, the *feminine*, and the *neuter*. In the plural of the definite, one termination serves for all three genders.

The German indefinite article is the same word with the numeral *ein, eine, ein*, that is distinguished

from it by the stronger accent, with which it is pronounced. The English language, on the contrary, has two particular words for the indefinite article and the numeral *ein*. For it expresses the latter by *one*.

Definite article.

Singular.			*Plural.*
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*	*For all three genders.*
Nom. *Der*,	*die*,	*das*, the;	Nom. *Die*, the;
Gen. *des*,	*der*,	*des*, of the;	Gen. *der*, of the;
Dat. *dem*,	*der*,	*dem*, to the;	Dat. *den*, to the;
Acc. *den*,	*die*,	*das*, the.	Acc. *die*, the.

Indefinite article.

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neuter.*
Nom. *Ein*,	*eine*,	*ein*, a;
Gen. *eines*,	*einer*,	*eines*, of a;
Dat. *einem*,	*einer*,	*einem*, to a;
Acc. *einen*,	*eine*,	*ein*, a.

Section II.

The use of the two German articles.

The definite article is used: —

1. Before nouns appellative, and, consequently, in order to give to a substantive noun its largest extent. Examples: *Der Mensch ist sterblich.* Man is mortal. *Der Mensch* stands instead of *alle Menschen*, all men. *Die menschliche Sprache*, human speech.

The English do not employ here the article. They omit it, when a general idea is expressed by a noun substantive. They say: Virtue leads to happiness. In German the article must be added. *Die Tugend führt zur Glückseligkeit.* There are also certain expressions in English, in which the article is not employed, but where the German language uses it. Such expressions are the following; history, *die Geschichte.* Holy Writ, *die heilige Schrift.* In town, *in der Stadt.* In church, *in der Kirche.* At school, *in der Schule.* To go to church, to school, *in die Kirche, in die Schule gehen.* In time of need, *zur*

Zeit der Nöth. To plunge into perdition, *in das Verderben stürzen.* Next year, *das nächste Jahr.* Paradise lost, Paradise regained, *das verlörne Paradies, das wieder gewonnene Paradies.*

2. In order to determine the substantive noun, to which it is prefixed. Examples: *die Tugend der Fürsten,* the virtue of princes. *Die Schönheit der Unschuld,* the beauty of innocence. *Das Vermögen zu sprechen,* the power of speech. *Die Regeln der Sprüchlehre,* the rules of grammar. *Die Werke des Friedens,* the works of peace. *Die meisten seiner Zeitgenossen,* most of his cotemporaries.

3. In order to denote an object already known. Examples: *Der König wird wohl sterben.* The king is like to die. *Ich kenne den Mann.* I know the man. *Ich habe die Bücher erhalten.* I have received the books.

The definite article is left out: —

1. Before the vocative case, because, when a person or any other object is spoken to, it is by this circumstance sufficiently marked.

2. Before the nominative case, when it stands after the genitive case, which is governed by it. For instance: *des Vaters Haus,* the father's house.

3. Before one or more substantives of the same gender and number, when they are preceded by a substantive, which has the same gender and number with them. For instance: *Ich bewundere die Liebe, Güte und Nachsicht dieser Mutter.* I admire the affection, goodness, and indulgence of this mother. These three substantives are of the same gender and number. One article is, therefore, sufficient for all. This is also the case before two adjectives. For example: *die reichste und angenehmste Belehrung,* the most rich and agreeable instruction. But when the gender or number is different, the article must be put before each substantive. For instance: *Die Seele und der Körper sind auf das innigste mit einander verbunden.* Soul and body are intimately connected together. *Die Gestalt und die besonderen Ei-*

genschaften dieser Thiere, the form and properties of these animals.

It must also be observed, that the definite article ought always to be repeated before each substantive, and before two or more adjectives, referring to the same substantive, when they express different notions. For instance: *der Rabe und der Fuchs*, the raven and the fox. *Die grofsen und die kleinen Buchstaben*, the large and the small letters.

4. Before *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *unser*, *euer*, *ihr*, *dieser*, *jeder*, *alle*, and the cardinal numbers, when no determinative word is joined to the latter. For instance: *Er ist gütig gegen alle Menschen*. He is kind to all men. *Alle Bücher, die ich gelesen habe*, all the books I have read.

5. Before the adjectives *Deutsch*, *Englisch*, *Griechisch*, *Lateinisch*, &c., after the verbs *lernen*, to learn; *können*, to know; *verstehen*, to understand. For instance: *Sprechen Sie Deutsch?* Do you speak German? Instead of *Sprechen Sie Deutsches*, that is to say, *das Deutsche?*

6. Before the word *Gott*, God, when no determinative word is joined to it. The article is, consequently, only then used, when a heathen deity is signified. The word *Gott* has then in the plural *die Götter*.

7. Before titles, when these are placed without a determinative adjective after proper names. For example: *Georg, König von England*, George, King of England. *Kaiser Joseph*, Emperor Joseph, or better, *der Kaiser Joseph*, the Emperor Joseph. The article is also omitted, when the title is put before the name. *Doctor Luther, Professor Clodius*, &c.

8. Before names of months, when the date is indicated. For instance: *am dreizehnten Junius, am vierten August*, instead of *am 13ten Tage des Mūnates Junius, am 4ten Tage des Mūnates August*, on the 13th day of June, on the 4th of August.

9. In inscriptions and titles of books, and before proper names of deities, men, women, countries and towns, when they are not preceded by an adjective

or some determining substantive. Examples: *Deutsche Sprāchlehre*, a Grammar of the German language. *Erster Abschnitt*, first Section. *Venus, Cicero, Deūtschland, Sachsen, Jerusalem.* But the article is employed in the following instances: *Die deutsche Sprachlehre, welche Sie heraūsgegēben haben, ist nicht fehlerfrei.* The grammar of the German language, which you have published, is not faultless. *Die Schönheit der Venus*, the beauty of Venus. *Der ältere Plinius*, the elder Pliny. *Die Wèrke des Cicero*, the Works of Cicero. *Das gelehrte Deutschland*, the learned Germany. *Das Königreich Sachsen*, the kingdom of Saxony. *Das befreite Jerusalem des Torquato Tasso*, the Jerusalem delivered of Torquato Tasso.

Proper names of persons are placed with the definite article, when they are used in the plural number, or when they are employed as nouns appellative, and, consequently, denote another person. The plural number is used figuratively, or when it happens, that there are more persons of the same name. For instance: *Die Alexander sind selten.* The Alexanders are rare. *Die beiden Scipiōne*, the two Scipios. Thus some great conqueror is called *der Alexander seines Zeītalters*, the Alexander of his age.

The following names of countries are never employed without the definite article: *die Barbarei; die Krimm; die Lausitz; die Levante; die Lombardei; die Mark; die Möldau; die Pfalz; die Schweiz; die Tatarei; die Türkei; die Ukrāne; die Wallachei; die Wetterau*; and a few more.

10. Before some expressions, in which the article ought not to be omitted. Such expressions are the following: *(der) Überbringer dieses*, the bearer of this. *In bessler Ordnung* (instead of *in der besten Ordnung)*, in the best order. *Vōr Endigung* (instead of *vor der Endigung) des Schaūspieles*, before the conclusion of the drama. To which may be added the two following phrases: *Ich habe es in (den) Händen.* I have it in my hands. *Ich habe es vor (den) Augen.* I have it before my eyes.

11. Before a few appellatives, which occur in

the language of the law, and properly ought to have the definite article. Such words are the following: *Beklägter* (instead of *der Beklagte*), defendant. *(Der) Kläger*, plaintiff. *(Der) Inhaber*, holder, proprietor. *(Der) Appellánt*, he that appeals. *(Der) Supplicánt*, petitioner.

12. Before the words *Osten*, *Westen*, *Süden*, *Norden*, when they are employed with a preposition, and the synonymous terms *Morgen*, *Abend*, *Mittag*, *Mitternácht*. To which may be added the words *Weihnachten*, *Ostern*, *Pfingsten*, &c.

13. In the following and similar expressions: *aus Güte*, out of kindness. *Bei Tage*, in the day-time. *Bei Nacht* (or *bei der Nacht*), in the night. *Bei Licht*, by candlelight. *Um Mittag*, about noon. *Zu Anfange*, in the beginning. *Zu Fusse*, on foot. *Zu Pferde*, on horseback.

14. Before more substantive nouns, which are joined together without or by *and*, and either are taken in a general sense, or spoken with fire. Examples: *Aufrichtigkeit, Treue, Gerechtigkeit, sind sehr schätzbare Tugenden.* Sincerity, fidelity, justice, are very valuable virtues. *Bürger, Fremde, Völker, Könige, Kaiser, beweinen und verehren ihn.* Citizens, strangers, nations, kings, emperors, weep and revere him. As for the first instance, it may also be said: *Die Aufrichtigkeit, die Treue, und die Gerechtigkeit sind*, &c.

The indefinite article is used: —

1. In order to mark any one individual of a species, that individual being either unknown, or left undetermined. For instance: *Ich bin ein Deutscher, ein Engländer.* I am a German, an Englishman. *Ich séhe einen Knaben.* I see a boy. In the following phrases must, therefore, the definite article be employed: *Er nahm den Titel des Hérzogs an.* He assumed the title of duke. *Das geehrte Publicum*, the honoured public. *Die löbliche Universität*, the honourable university. *Der hochweise Rath*, the most wise senate. *Die hohe Obrigkeit*, the worshipful magistrates.

The indefinite article must be repeated before each noun substantive. For instance: *Cicero wär ein groſser Rēdner und ein rechtschaffener Mann.* Cicero was a great orator and an honest man.

The indefinite article can, from its nature, only have the singular number. If, therefore, a substantive noun is employed in the plural number in an indefinite manner, it is placed without article. For instance: *Weise Männer gēben gern gute Lehren.* Wise men love to give good precepts. *Er schickte mīr Bücher und Zeitungen.* He sent me books and newspapers.

In English *some* is employed, when an indefinite part of a thing is to be expressed. But the Germans name only the substantive, without prefixing any article, or without adding any other word, when they denote an indefinite part of a thing. For instance: *Gēben Sie mīr Brōt, Fleisch, Wasser.* Give me some bread, some meat, some water.

2. After the verbs *haben, wünschen,* &c. Examples: *Dieses Mädchen hat eine schöne Nase, einen kleinen Mund, und blaue Augen.* This girl has a beautiful nose, a little mouth, and blue eyes. *Meine Schwester hat einen hōchgebildeten Geist.* My sister is of a highly cultivated mind. *Dieser Mann hat ein groſses Vermögen.* This man has a large fortune. *Ich wünsche Ihnen einen guten Morgen, eine gute Nacht.* I wish you a good morning, a good night.

3. Before proper names of persons, when they are used as nouns appellative. For example: *Er hat den Mūth eines Achilles.* He has the courage of an Achilles. But it must be said: *So spricht der heilige Paulus* (not *ein heiliger Paulus*), thus speaks Saint Paul.

The indefinite article is also used in an absolute sense. Then it ends in *er, e,* and *es: einer, eine, eines,* one. Examples: *Haben Sie einen Hūt?* Have you a hat? *Hier ist einer.* Here is one. *Haben Sie ein Messer?* Have you (got) a knife? *Hier ist eines,* Here is one.

Section III.

Position of the German article.

The German article always stands before its substantive noun, also, when the English article has another position. Examples:* *Ein solcher Mann*, such a man. *Ein zu kleiner Rock*, too little a coat. *Er ist ein so grofser Lügner als Sie.* He is as great a liar as you. *Eine so geringe Sache*, so small a matter. *Was für eine kurze Zeit*, how short a time. *Von einer etwas lebhaften Gesichtsfarbe*, of somewhat a lively complexion. *Die ganze Welt*, all the world. *Die halbe Stadt*, half the town. *Eine halbe Meile*, half a mile. *Das doppelte Geld*, double the money. *Die beiden Brüder (beide Brüder)*, both the brothers.

In the following instances the definite article stands after the proper name: *Alexander, der Grofse*, Alexander the great. *König Georg der Dritte*, King George the third.

CHAPTER IV.

Of the substantive.

Containing

I. The different kinds of the German substantives.
II. The gender of the German substantives.
III. The declension of the German substantives.
IV. The use of the cases of the German substantives.
V. Exercises on the German substantives.

Section I.

The different kinds of the German substantives.

There are four kinds of substantive nouns, with regard to their signification.

* *Solch ein Mann* or *so ein Mann* is a fault, which is frequently committed.

1. The *proper name (der Eigenname)*, by which is understood the name appropriated to an individual. Such proper names are the names of persons and places. Examples: *Karl*, Charles. *Italien*, Italy. *Neapel*, Naples.

2. The *common substantive (das gemeinsame Hauptwort)* or the *noun appellative (der Gattungsname* or *das Classensubstantiv)*, by which is meant a name common to all the objects of the same class or species. For example: *die Eiche*, 7. oak. *Das Schaf*, 1. sheep.

3. The *abstract noun (der Name eines abgezogenen Begriffes)*, by which is signified a quality, which only exists in our understanding, that abstracts or separates it from an object. For instance: *die Liebe*, 7. love. *Der Liebreiz*, 1. grace.

4. The *collective noun (der Sammelname)*, by which is expressed a multitude, though itself be singular. For example: *das Volk*, 2. people.

The substantive nouns are, with respect to their origin, either *primitive*, or *derivative*.

1. The *primitive substantive (das ursprüngliche Hauptwort)* is that, which is not derived or formed from another word. For example: *der Freund*, 1. friend. The primitive word is also called the *radical word (das Würzelwort)*, because other words issue from its root.

2. The *derivative substantive (das abgeleitete Hauptwort)* is that, which is derived or formed from another word. For instance: *die Freundschaft*, 7. friendship. When a word is derived from a derivative, the latter word is called in German *das Stammwort* of the former. For instance: *menschlich* (from *Mensch*), human; *die Menschlichkeit*, humanity. *Menschenfreunlich* (from *Mensch* and *Freund*), humane, kind; *die Menschenfreundlichkeit*, kindness.

The derivative substantives are formed either from other substantives, or from adjectives, or from verbs, or from cardinal and ordinal numbers, or from prepositions.

1. The following substantives are formed from other substantives: *die Feindschaft*, 7. enmity. *Der Fleischer*, 4. butcher. *Der Tischler*, 4. joiner. *Die Narrheit*, 7. foolishness. *Das Vögelchen*, 4. the little bird. These words come from the substantives *der Feind*, 1. enemy; *das Fleisch*, 1. flesh, meat; *der Tisch*, 1. table; *der Narr*, 6. fool; *der Vogel*, 4. bird.

2. The following substantives are formed from adjectives: *die Freiheit*, 7. freedom, liberty. *Die Gewissheit*, 7. certainty. *Die Freudigkeit*, 7. joyfulness. These substantives come from the adjectives *frei*, free; *gewiss*, certain; *freudig*, joyful.

3. The following substantives are formed from verbs: *der Schneider*, 4. tailor. *Der Betrüg*, 1. cheat. *Der Genuss*, 1. enjoyment. *Der Verlust*, 1. loss. *Die Bewunderung*, 7. admiration. These words come from the verbs *schneiden*, to cut; *betriegen*, to cheat; *geniessen*, to enjoy; *verlieren*, to lose; *bewundern*, to admire.

4. The following substantives are formed from cardinal and ordinal numbers: *der Einer*, 4. unit. *Der Zehner*, 4. the tenth. *Das Drittel*, 4. the third part. These words come from the numerals *ein*, one; *zehn*, ten; *der dritte*, the third.

5. The following substantives are formed from prepositions: *der Hintere*, 6. breech. *Die Gesammtheit*, 7. totality. These words come from the prepositions *hinter*, behind; *sammt*, together with.

The German substantives are, with respect to their formation, either *simple* or *compound*.

The *simple substantive (das einfache Hauptwort)* is that, which is not composed of two or more words. For instance: *der Apfel*, 4. apple. *Die Sonne*, 7. sun. *Das Land*, 2. country.

The *compound substantive (das zusämmengesetzte Hauptwort)* is that, which is formed from two or more words.

The compound substantives are formed: —

1. From two or more substantives. Examples: *der Äpfelbaum*, 1. apple-tree. *Das Dämpfschiff*, 1.

steam-vessel. *Die Eisenbahn*, 7. iron-rail-road. *Der Landmann*, peasant. *Der Landsmann*, countryman, compatriot. *Der Sonntag*, 1. sunday. *Die Herzensgüte*, 7. the goodness of heart. *Die Erfahrungsseelenkunde*, 7. the empirical psychology. These substantives are formed from *Apfel* and *Baum*; from *Dampf* and *Schiff*; from *Eisen* and *Bahn*; from *Land* and *Mann*; from *Sonne* and *Tag*; from *Herz* and *Güte*; from *Erfahrung*, *Seele*, and *Kunde*.

2. From an adjective or the pronoun *selbst* and a substantive. Examples: *der Grossvater*, 4. grandfather. *Die Freischule*, 7. freeschool. *Das Süssholz*, 2. licorice. *Die Selbstliebe*, selflove. These substantives are formed from *gross* and *Vater*; from *frei* and *Schule*; from *süss* and *Holz*; from *selbst* and *Liebe*.

3. From a verb and a substantive. Examples: *die Esslust*, 8. appetite. *Die Lesewuth*, 7. the rage for reading. *Die Schreibkunst*, 8. the art of writing. These substantives come from *essen* and *Lust*; from *lesen* and *Wuth*; from *schreiben* and *Kunst*.

4. From a cardinal number and a substantive. Examples: *der Einklang*, 1. unison. *Der Zweikampf*, 1. duel. *Der Dreifuss*, 1. tripod. *Die Dreieinigkeit*, 7. the trinity. These substantives come from *ein* and *Klang*; from *zwei* and *Kampf*; from *drei* and *Fuss*; from *drei* and *Einigkeit*.

5. From a preposition and a substantive. Examples: *die Vorrede*, 7. preface. *Der Widerruf*, 1 recantation. These substantives come from *vor* and *Rede*; from *wider* and *Ruf*.

6. From an adverb and a substantive. Examples: *der Fortschritt*, 1. progress. *Der Wohlstand*, 1. decency. These substantives come from *fort* and *Schritt*; from *wohl* and *Stand*.

By means of the particles *aber*, *after*, *erz*, *miss* and *un* are likewise formed compound substantives. Examples: *der Aberglaube*, 5. superstition. *Der Afterwitz*, 1. the false wit. *Ein Erzdieb*, 1. an arrant thief. *Der Misston*, 1. dissonance. *Die Unruhe*, 7.

disquietness. Also *nicht* must be added. Die *Nichterscheinung*, 7. non-appearance.

7. From two adjectives. Examples: *die Dümmdreistigkeit*, 7. foolhardiness; *die Hártherzigkeit*, hard-heartedness. These substantives come from *dumm* and *dreist*; from *hart* and *herzig*.

Observations.

1. The first term of the compound substantive is called the *determining word (das Bestimmungswort)*, because it determines and limits the other; and the second, the *fundamental word (das Grúndwort)*.

2. The greatest number of the German compound substantives are formed from two substantives, the first of which always contains the principal idea, and should be, for the most part, put in the genitive case, if the compound were discomposed. Sometimes it may be explained by a preposition and its government, or an adjective. Examples: *die Schúldforderung*, 7. demand, instead of *die Forderung der Schuld*. *Die Fraūenliebe*, 7. the love of women, instead of *die Liebe der Frauen*. *Die Lēndenschmerzen*, the pains in the loins, instead of *die Schmerzen in den Lenden*. *Der Strōhhut*, 1. straw-hat, instead of *der Hūt von Stroh*. *Der Schūterhaufen*, 4, the funeral pile, instead of *der Haufen von Scheiten*. *Die Ménschenhilfe*, 7. the human assistance, instead of *die Hilfe der Menschen*, or *die menschliche Hilfe*.

3. Many compound substantives remain unaltered in their composition. Examples: *die Ápfelschale*, 7. apple-paring; from *der Apfel* and *die Schale*. *Der Gánsbraten* (not *Gänsebraten*), 4. roasted goose; from *die Gans* and *der Braten*. *Die Ábendstunde*, 7. evening-hour; from *der Abend* and *die Stunde*. *Das Zuckerrohr*, 1. sugar-cane; from *der Zucker* and *das Rōhr*. But when the first substantive ends in *e*, this *e* is commonly omitted. Examples: *der Ehrgeiz*, 1. ambition; from *die Ehre* and *der Geiz*. *Der Kirschbaum* 1. cherry-tree; from *die Kirsche* and *der*

Baum. Die Endsylbe, 7. final syllable; from *das Ende* and *die Sylbe*. There are some exceptions to this rule. For instance: *das Wonnegefühl*, 1. the inmost delight.

4. When the two words, from which the compound substantive is formed, begin with a consonant, an *e* is sometimes added to the first of them. Examples: *die Tagereise*, 7. a day's journey; from *der Tag* and *die Reise*. *Das Herzeleid*, 1. the affliction of heart; from *das Herz* and *das Leid*. *Das Schweinefleisch*, 1. pork; from *das Schwein* and *das Fleisch*. *Die Missethat*, 7. misdeed; from *miss* and *die That*.

5. The first substantive of the compound substantives is placed, according to the rule, very often in the genitive singular. Examples: *der Todesschlummer*, 4. the slumber of death. *Der Kalbsbraten* (not *Kälberbraten*), 4. roasted veal. *Der Rindsbraten* (not *Rinderbraten*), roast beef. *Die Geisteskraft*, 8. the power of mind. *Das Himmelslicht*, 2. the light of heaven. *Der Hirtenstab*, 1. the shepherd's hook.

6. The feminine substantives, when they stand at the beginning of compound substantives, take frequently the letter *s* in their composition. This is done especially in substantives ending in *heit*, *keit*, *schaft*, and *ung*. Examples: *der Geburtstag*, 1. the birthday. *Die Liebeserklärung*, 7. the declaration of love. *Das Hilfsmittel*, 4. the means of assistance. *Der Freiheitssinn*, 1. the spirit of liberty. *Die Freundschaftsbetheurung*, 7. the protestation of friendship. *Das Reinigungsmittel*, 4. purge. 7. The adjectives, which are employed for the formation of compound substantives, are placed before them without any change. Those adjectives, which have a finale *e*, omit it. Examples: *der Neumond*, 1. new-moon. *Die Hochschule*, 7. university. *Das Weifsbier*, 1. white beer, pale ale. Some words are excepted; for instance, *der Hoheprïester*, 4. the high priest. *Der Bösewicht* (instead of *der böse Wicht*), the wicked wretch.

8. In the nouns substantive formed from a verb and a substantive, the infinitive loses its two last letters. Examples: *der Schreibmeister*, 4. writing-master. *Die*

Reitschule, 7. riding-school. *Das Trinkglas*, 2. drinking-glass. These substantives come from *schreiben* and *Meister*; from *reiten* and *Schule*; from *trinken* and *Glās*. When the radical consonant of the verb is a *g*, an *e* is joined to it. For example: *das Pflegekind*, 2. fosterchild; from *pflegen* and *Kind*.

Lastly, the German substantives are to be considered with regard to their final syllables. Their principal endings are the following: —

1. *Chen* and *lein*. By means of these final syllables are formed the diminutives. For instance: *das Söhnchen*, 4. the little son; from *der Sohn*, 1. son. *Das Büchlein*, 1. the little book; from *das Būch*, 2. book.

2. *D*, *de*, marking an action, or a state Words ending in *d* or *de* are formed from verbs. Examples: *die Jāgd*, 7. chase; from *jagen*, to chase. *Die Freude*, 7. joy; from *freuen*, to rejoice.

3. *E*, denoting a thing of the feminine gender, or an action, or a quality, or a state. Words ending in *e* are either primitive substantives, or formed from verbs or adjectives. The latter substantives commute the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, which are found in their radical words, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*. This commutation of the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, is called by the German grammarians *der Úmlaut*. Examples: *die Beere*, 7. berry. *Die Leuchte*, 7. lantern; from *leuchten*, to light. *Die Liebe*, 7. love; from *lieben*, to love. *Die Stärke*, 7. strength; from *stark*, strong. *Die Röthe*, 7. redness; from *rōth*, red. *Die Güte*, 7. goodness; from *gūt*, good.

4. *Ei (ey)*, denoting an action, a state, a place, or the collective body of a class of men. Words ending in *ei* are formed from substantives, or verbs. Examples: *die Tyrannei*, 7. tyranny; from *Tyránn*, 6. tyrant. *Die Heuchelei*, hypocrisy; from *heucheln*, to play the hypocrite. *Die Sklaverei*, slavery; from *Sklave*, 6. slave. *Die Brauerei*, the brewing, or the brewhouse; from *Brauer*, 4. brewer. *Die Reiterei*,

the going on horseback, or the cavalry; from *Reiter*, horseman.

5. *El*, denoting an instrument for any work or purpose, and sometimes a quality, or a state. Examples: *der Schlüssel*, 4. key; from *schliessen*, to open the lock. *Der Ekel*, disgust. *Der Schwindel*, giddiness.

6. *Em*, *en*, denoting something serving for any purpose. Examples: *der Schlitten*, 4. sledge. *Der Athem*, 4. breath.

7. *Er*, signifying one who performs any thing, or belongs to any nation or place; or denoting the male of some animals, or an instrument, or an action, or a state. Examples: *der Maurer*, 4. mason; from *mauern*, to mure. *Der Römer*, Roman. *Der Kater*, the male cat. *Der Tauber*, cock-pigeon. *Der Hammer*, hammer. *Der Seufzer*, sigh. *Das Alter*, age.

8. *Heit*, denoting the collective body of a class of men, or a quality, or a state. Words ending in *heit* are formed from substantives, or adjectives. Examples: *die Christenheit*, 7. christendom; from *Christ*, 6. christian. *Die Blindheit*, blindness; from *blind*, blind.

9. *Ich*, *ig*, denoting several things and persons. For instance: *der Fittich*, 1. wing. *Der Fähnrich*, 1. ensign. *Der Käfich (Käfig)*, 1. cage. *Der Pfennig*, 1. fenning. *Der König*, 1. king.

10. *Icht*, denoting several collective nouns. For example: *das Kehricht*, 1. sweepings.

11. *In* (*inn*), denoting a person of the female sex. For example: *die Fürstin*, 7. princess; from *der Fürst*, 6 prince.

12. *Ing*, forming only some words. For example; *der Häring (Hering)*, 1. herring. *Das Messing*, 1. latten.

13. *Keit*, denoting a quality, or a state. Words ending in *keit* are formed from the adjectives in *bar*, *er*, *ig*, *lich* and *sam*. To the adjectives, which are radical words, the syllable *ig* must be added, in order to form from them new words. Examples: *die Dankbarkeit*, 7. gratitude. *Die Bitterkeit*, bitterness.

Die Billigkeit, equity. *Die Kleinigkeit*, trifle; from *klein*, little. *Die Mattigkeit*, faintness; from *matt*, faint. *Die Süfsigkeit*, sweetness; from *süfs*, sweet. *Die Fröhlichkeit*, merriness. *Die Mühsamkeit*, painfulness.

14. *Ling*, denoting several animals and persons. Examples: *der Grünling*, 1. greenfinch. *Der Bücking*, 1. red-herring. *Der Fündling*, foundling; from *der Fund*, 1. found. *Der Flüchtling*, fugitive; from *die Flucht*, flight. *Der Jüngling*, youth, young man. *Der Schützling*, one whom we take into protection; from *der Schutz*, protection. *Ling* expresses also contempt. For instance: *der Dichterling*, poetaster. *Der Frömmling*, devotee. *Der Römling*, papist. *Der Witzling*, 1. witling.

15. *Niss*, denoting an action, or a state. Examples: *die Erlaubniss*, 8. permission; from *erlauben*, to permit. *Das Bekenntniss*, 1. confession; from *bekennen*, to confess. *Die Fäulniss*, 1. putrefaction; from *faulen*, to putrefy.

16. *Sal*, *sel*, denoting only inanimate objects. For Example: *das Labsal*, 1. refreshment. *Der Stöpsel*, 4. stopple, cork.

17. *Sam*, denoting a state. For instance: *der Gehorsam*, 1. obedience.

18. *Schaft*, denoting the collective body of a class of men, or a quality, or a state. Examples: *die Bürgerschaft*, 7. all the citizens of a town. *Die Dorfschaft*, all the inhabitants of a village; also instead of *Dorf*, village. *Die Wissenschaft*, 7. science.

10. *Thum*, denoting the state or dignity of any thing, or person. For example: *das Priesterthum*, 2. priesthood. *Das Christenthum*, christianism.

20. *Ung*, expressing an action, or a state, or signifying a noun collective. Examples: *die Verbergung*, 7, hiding; from *verbergen*, to hide. *Die Waldung*, woods; from *Wald*, 2. forest, wood.

The initial syllable *ge* signifies the frequent repetition of an action. Examples: *das Gebrüll*, 1. the repeated roaring; from *brüllen*, to roar. *Das Geheul*, the repeated howling; from *heulen*, to howl.

Section II.

The gender of the German substantives.

It is impossible to give rules, which indicate the gender of all the German substantives. The gender of the most part of them must, therefore, be learned by practice. For this reason, the three genders of the German substantives offer one of the greatest difficulties in learning the German language.

The general rules concerning the gender of the German substantives are the following: —

Of the masculine gender are: —

1. The name of God, the names of spirits, of men, and of the male part of animals. The diminutives and some compound words are excepted.

2. The names of winds, seasons, months, and days. *Das Jahr*, 1. year, and some compound words are excepted.

3. The names of stones. Examples: *der Stein*, 1. stone. *Der Kiesel*, 4. flint. *Der Smarágd*, 1. emerald. *Der Diamánt*, 6. diamond.

4. Many words ending in *el*. *Die Gabel*, fork, for instance, is excepted.

5. Many words ending in *en*. The following words are excepted: *das Almosen*, 4. alms. *Das Becken*, basin. *Das Füllen*, foal. *Das Kissen*, cushion. *Das Lehen*, fief. *Das Wappen*, the coat of arms. *Das Zeichen*, sign. Likewise all the infinitives, when they are used as substantives; consequently, also the following words: *das Érdbében*, earthquake. *Das Gebrechen*, failing. *Das Gewissen*, conscience. *Das Lében*, life. *Das Leiden*, suffering. *Das Vergnügen*, pleasure. *Das Verhalten*, conduct. *Das Vermögen*, the power of doing any thing; also fortune, riches. *Das Vórhaben*, purpose. *Das Wésen*, being. Lastly, all the diminutives.

6. Most substantives ending in *er*. The following words are excepted: *die Féder*, 7. pen. *Die Folter*, rack. *Die Halfter*, halter. *Die Kelter*, wine-press. *Die Klammer*, cramp. *Die Klapper*, rattle. *Die Leier*,

leero-viol. *Die Leiter*, ladder. *Die Schleuder*, sling. *Die Cither*, cithern. *Das Messer*, 4. knife. *Das Ruder*, oar.

7. All the substantives ending in *ing* and *ling*. Exceptions: *das Ding*, 1. thing. *Das Messing*, 1. latten.

Of the feminine gender are: —

1. Those substantives, which denote subjects of the female sex, such as women, goddesses, female animals. Besides the diminutives and some compound substantives, the two words *das Weib*, 2. woman, wife, and *das Mensch*, 2. wench, a low, common woman, are excepted.

2. The names of trees, fruits, and flowers, when ending in *e*.

3. The names of the greatest part of rivers. Examples: *die Dūnau*, Danube. *Die Themse*, Thames.

4. All the abstract substantives ending in *e*, which, for the most part, are derived from adjectives, or verbs. For instance: *die Schwere*, 7. heaviness. *Die Freude*, joy. *Die Wonne*, delight.

5. Many other substantives ending in *e*. For example: *die Blume*, 7. flower. *Die Mütze*, cap. *Die Weste*, waistcoat.

6. All the substantives ending in *ei (ey)*, *keit*, *heit*, *schaft*, and *ung*. Exceptions: *der Brei*, 1.; *das Ei*, 2.; *das Geschrei*, 1.; *der Schaft*, 1.; *der Hornung*, 1.; *der Sprung*, 1.

7. Many words ending in *el*. Examples: *die Amsel*, 7.; *die Deichsel*; *die Distel*; *die Eichel*; *die Fackel*; *die Gurgel*; &c.

8. Substantives ending in *ucht*, *unft*, and *unst*. Examples: *die Bucht*, 7. bay. *Die Flucht*, 8. flight. *Die Frucht*, 8. fruit. *Die Sucht*, rage, passion. *Die Zucht*, discipline, order. *Die Ankunft*, 8. arrival. *Die Zunft*, 8. guild. *Die Brunst*, 8. ardor. *Die Kunst*, 8. art.

9. Several substantives ending in *niss*. Examples: *die Bekümmerniss*, 1. grief, sorrow. *Die Besorgniss*, apprehension. *Die Betrübniss*, affliction. *Die Be-*

wandtniss, state, condition. *Die Empfängniss*, conception. *Die Erlaubniss*, permission. *Die Faulniss*, putridness. *Die Finsterniss*, darkness. *Die Kenntniss*, knowledge. *Die Verdammniss*, damnation. *Die Wildniss*, wilderness.

Of the neuter gender are: —

1. The letters of the alphabet. For Example: *das a*; *das b*; &c.

2. The names of metals. Exceptions: *die Platina*, platina. *Der Stahl*, 1. steel. *Der Tomback*, 1. pinchbeck. *Der Zink*, 1. zinc. *Der Zinnober*, 4. cinnabar.

3. The names of towns, villages, and countries. Several names of countries and places are excepted.

4. All the diminutives. Examples: *das Mädchen**, 4. girl. *Das Söhnchen*, the little son. *Das Töchterchen*, the little daughter. *Das Fräulein*, 4. a young lady of noble extraction.

5. All the parts of speech, not being substantives, when they are employed substantively, consequently, also the infinitive, when it is used as substantive. Examples: *das Grün*, 3. the green. *Das theure Ich*, the dear I. *Das Gehen*, 4. the going. *Das Lésen*, the reading. *Das Stèrben*, the dying. *Das letzte Lebewōhl*, the last farewell. *Das Aber*, the but.

6. Many substantives beginning with *ge*. Examples: *das Gebälk*, 1.; *das Gebét*, 1.; *das Gebiet*, 1.; *das Gebiss*, 1.; *das Geblūt*, 1.; *das Gebōt*, 1.; *das Gedicht*, 1.; *das Gefäfs*, 1.; *das Gefühl*, 1.; *das Geheifs*, 1.; *das Gehör*, 1.; *das Gelübde*, 1.; *das Gemach*, 2.; *das Gemälde*, 1.; *das Gemurmel*, 4.; *das Gemüth*, 2.; *das Geschöpf*, 1.; *das Geschoss*, 1.; *das Gespann*, 1.; *das Gespräch*, 1.; *das Gesūch*, 1.; *das Gewühl*, 1.; *das Gezänk*, 1. The following substantives are excepted: *der Gebrauch*, 1.; *der Gedanke*, 5.; *der Gehalt*, 1.; *der Gehörsam*, 1.; *der Gelass*, 1.;

* Instead of *das Mägdchen*, which properly signifies the little maid, from *die Magd*, 8. maid. This word is not to be confounded with *das Mädchen*, the little maggot or mite, from, *die Made*, 7. maggot, mite.

der Genuss, 1.; *der Geruch*, 1.; *der Gesang*, 1.; *der Geschmack*, 1.; *der Gestank*, 1.; *der Gewinn*, *der Gewinnst*, 1.; *die Gebühr*, 7.; *die Geburt*, 7.; *die Geduld*, 7.; *die Geführ*, 7.; *die Gemeinde*, 7.; *die Genüge*, 7.; *die Geschichte*, 7.; *die Geschwulst*, 8.; *die Gestalt*, 7.; *die Gewalt*, 7.; *die Gewühr*, 7.

7. The following substantives ending in *niss*. *Das Ärgerniss*, 1.; *das Bedürfniss*; *das Begräbniss*; *das Behältniss*; *das Bekenntniss*; *das Bildniss*; *das Bündniss*; *das Erforderniss*; *das Gedächtniss*; *das Gefängniss*; *das Geheimniss*; *das Geständniss*; *das Gleichniss*; *das Hinderniss*; *das Verhältniss*; *das Verhängniss*; *das Verlöbniss*; *das Vermächtniss*; *das Verständniss*; *das Verzeichniss*; *das Zeugniss*.

8. The substantives, which end in *thum*. The following words are excepted: *der Beweisthum* *, proof. *Der Irrthum*, 2. error. *Der Reichthum*, 2. riches. It must be said *das Wachsthum*, growth, and not *der Wachsthum*.

Observations.

1. The names of some animals, of which the male and female are discriminated by appropriate denominations, are of the neuter gender, because no regard is had to sex in them. For example: *das Pferd*, 1. horse, is of the neuter gender, being the appellative for the equine species, of which the male is called *der Hengst*, 1. stallion, and the female *die Stute*, 7. mare. Thus *das Rind*, 2. the general name for black cattle, has the same gender, the male being termed *der Stier* (*der Bulle*, 5.), 1. bull, and the female *die Kuh*, 8. cow. Of this kind are also the following words: *das Schwein*, 1. swine, hog. *Der Eber*, 4. boar; *die Sau*, 8. sow. *Das Hühn*, 2. fowl. *Der Hahn*, 1. cock; *die Henne*, 7. hen. The words *das Kind*, 2. child, *das Ferkel*, 4. a young pig, *das Füllen*, 4. foal, *das Kalb*, 2. calf, *das Küchlein*, 4. chicken, *das Lamm*, 2. lamb, are, likewise, of the neuter gender, because they include the two sexes.

* This word is not much in use.

2. The compound substantives have the gender of their last word. Examples: *der Birnbaum*, 1. pear-tree; from *die Birn* and *der Baum*. *Der Druckerlohn*, 1. pay given for printing. *Die Jährszeit*, 7. season; from *das Jahr* and *die Zeit*. *Die Mannsperson*, 7. man; from *der Mann* and *die Persōn*. *Das Mannsbild*, 2. man; from *der Mann* and *das Bild*. *Die Mittwoche*, 7. wednesday; from *die Mitte* and *die Woche*. *Das Frauenzimmer*, 4. woman; from *die Frau* and *das Zimmer*. *Das Rāthhaus*, 2. senatehouse, townhouse; from *der Rāth* and *das Haus*. *Der Ēdelmuth*, *der Freīmuth*, *der Gleīchmuth*, *der Hēldenmuth*, *der Hōchmuth*, *der Kleinmuth*, *der Löwenmuth*, *der Missmuth*, *der Übermuth*, *der Ūnmuth*, *der Wankelmuth*, *der Zweifelmuth*, are of the masculine gender. The following substantives compounded with *der Mūth* have the feminine gender: *die Anmuth*; *die Dēmuth*; *die Grofsmuth*; *die Langmuth*; *die Sänftmuth*; *die Schwērmuth*; *die Wēhmuth*. The words *der Abscheu*, from *die Scheu*, *der Verhaft*, from *die Haft*, *die Antwort*, from *das Wort*, deviate also from the rule.

3. Substantives derived from a foreign language retain ordinarily their original gender. Examples *der Canāl*, 1. canal. *Die Geographīe*, 7. geography; *der (das) Krokodill*, 1. crocodile. *Die Periōde*, 7. period. *Das Sacramēnt*, 1. sacrament. *Die Schule*, 7. school. *Das (der) Scēpter*, 4. sceptre. *Die* (not *der*) *Syntax*, 7. syntax. The following words are excepted: *das Almosen*, 4. alms. *Der Altār*, 1. altar. *Das Echo* (*Ech-o*), 1. echo. *Das Fenster*, 4. window. *Das Fieber*, 4. fever. *Das Genie*, 1. genius. *Der Gyps*, 1. plaster. *Der Körper*, 4. body. *Das Labyrinth*, 1. labyrinth. *Das Pulver*, 4. powder. *Der Punct*, 1. point. *Der Tempel*, 4. temple.

4. Some substantives have a double gender. Such words are the following: *der* and *das Honig*, 1. honey. *Der* and *das Vōgelbauer*, 4. bird-cage. *Der Honig* and *das Vogelbauer* are preferable.

5. The word *Sonne*, 7. sun, is in German of the feminine, the word *Mōnd*, 1. moon, of the mascu-

line, and the word *Schiff*, 1. ship, of the neuter gender.

6. Several substantives, having but one gender, are used both of the male and female sex. Examples: *der Kunde*, 6. customer. *Der Mündel*, 4. pupil. *Die Waise*, 7. orphan. *Der Zwilling*, 1. twin. *Der Fündling*, foundling. *Der Liebling*, favourite. *Ein Sonderling*, a strange fellow. Other words, having but one ending, have two genders. For instance: *der Pathe*, 6. godfather, godson; *die Pathe*, 7. godmother, goddaughter.

7. Several substantives change with their gender their signification. Such words are the following: *Der Band*, 1. the binding of a book, also a volume; *das Band*, 2. bond, ligament, ribon. *Der Bauer*, 4. peasant; *das Bauer*, cage. *Der Bruch*, 1. breach, rupture, fracture, fraction; *das Brūch*, a low and moist ground. *Der Buckel*, 4. hump; *die Buckel*, 7. boss. *Der Bulle*, 6. bull, the male of a cow; *die Bulle*, 7. bull, a letter published by the Pope. *Der Bund*, 1. league, confederacy; *das Bund*, bundle. *Der Chūr*, 1. chorus; *das Chūr*, choir, quire. *Der Erbe*, 6. heir; *das Erbe*, 1. inheritance. *Der Geisel*, 4. hostage; *die Geiſsel*, 7. scourge. *Der Geschōss*, 1. tax, impost; *das Geschōss*, 1. a missile weapon, also a story. *Der Hūrz*, 1. the Hercynian forest; *das Hūrz*, 1. rosin. *Der Heide*, 6. pagan; *die Heide*, 7. heath. *Der Hūt*, 1. hat; *die Hūt*, 7. heed. *Der Kaper* (better *Caper*), 4. privateer; *die Kaper*, 7. caper. *Der Kiefer*, 4. jaw; *die Kiefer*, 7. a sort of fir. *Der Kunde*, 6. customer; *die Kunde*, 7. notice. *Der Legāt*, 6. legate; *das Legāt*, 1. legacy. *Der Leiter*, 4. guide; *die Leiter*, 7. ladder. *Der Mangel*, 4. want; *die Mangel* (or *die Mandel*), 7. a machine for dressing linen. *Die Mark*, 7. mark; *das Mark*, 1. marrow. *Der Mast*, 1. the mast of a vessel; *die Mast*, 7. the mast, the fruit of the oak and beech. *Der Mensch*, 6. man; *das Mensch*, 2. an opprobrious term for a maid, wench. *Der Messer*, 4. measurer; *das Messer*, knife. *Der Ohm* (for *Ōheim*), 1. uncle; *die Ohm*, 7. a certain measure for wine. *Der Reiſs*, 1. rice;

das Reis, 2. sprig. *Der Schild*, 1. shield; *das Schild*, 2. the sign of a house. *Der See*, 3. lake; *die See*, 7. sea. *Der (die) Sprosse*, 3. shoot, sprout; *die Sprosse*, 7. the step of a ladder. *Der Stift*, 1. a thin peg; *das Stift*, 2. bishoprick, and in general an ecclesiastical establishment. *Der Thōr*, 6. fool; *das Thōr*, 1. gate. *Der Verdienst*, 1. gain, profit; *das Verdienst*, 1. merit. *Der Zeug*, 1. stuff; *das Zeug*, 1. tools.

8. In order to form a feminine substantive from a masculine one, *in (inn)* is joined to the termination of the latter; and if it be either an appellative, or the proper name of a nation, the vowels *a*, *au*, *o*, *u*, are changed into *ä*, *äu*, *ö*, *ü*. At the same time, the final *e* of those masculine substantives, which end in this vowel, is suppressed. Examples: *der Schäfer*, 4. shepherd; *die Schäferin*, 7. shepherdess. *Der König*, 1. king; *die Königin*, 7. queen. *Der Löwe*, 6. lion; *die Löwin*, lioness. *Der Grāf*, 6. count; *die Gräfin*, countess. *Der Bauer*, 4. countryman, peasant; *die Bäuerin*, countrywoman. *Der Wolf*, 1. wolf; *die Wölfin*, the bitch-wolf. *Der Franzōse*, 6. the Frenchman; *die Französin*, the Frenchwoman. *Der Hund*, 1. dog; *die Hündin*, bitch. *Der Jude*, 6. jew; *die Jüdin*, jewess. The vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, are not converted into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, in all the feminine substantives in *in*. Examples: *Der Hèrzōg*, 1. duke; *die Herzogin*, 7. dutchess. *Der Sachse*, 6. the Saxon; *die Sachsin*, the Saxon woman. *Der Pole*, 6. the Pole; *die Polin*, the Pole. *Der Schotte*, 6. the Scot; *die Schottin*, the Scot. The feminine substantive of *Prinz* is thus formed: *die Prinzessin*.

Those substantives, which denote both sexes, and those, the sex of which is expressed by a particular name, do not assume the feminine termination *in*. Examples: *der Mensch*, 6. man (in general). *Der Fisch*, 1. fish. *Der Vogel*, 4. bird. *Das Pfêrd*, 1. horse; *der Hèngst*, 1. stonehorse; *die Stute*, 7. mare.

When the feminine gender serves for the appellation of the species, the male sex assumes the termination *er* or *rich*. Examples: *Die Taube*, 7. pigeon;

der Tauber, 4. the male of the pigeon. *Die Gans*, 8. goose; *der Ganser*, 4. or *der Gänserich*, 1. gander. *Die Ente*, 7. duck; *der Enter*, 4. or *der Enterich*, 1. drake. *Die Katze*, 7. cat; *der Kater*, 4. the he-cat.

9. In order to form a diminutive, the syllable *chen* or *lein* * is joined to a substantive; and the vowels *a*, *aa*, *au*, *o*, *u*, are changed into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*. When a substantive ends in *e*, *en*, or *l*, these final letters are suppressed in the diminutive formed from it. Examples: *Das Thier*, 1. animal; *das Thierchen*, 4. the little animal. *Der Sack*, 7. sack, bag; *das Säckchen*, 4. the little bag. *Der Knabe*, 6. boy; *das Knäbchen* or *das Knäblein*, 4. the little boy. *Der Saal*, 1. hall; *das Sälchen*, 4. the little hall. *Der Baum*, 1. tree; *das Bäumchen*, 4. the little tree. *Das Wort*, 2 word; *das Wörtchen*, 4. the little word. *Die Glocke*, 7. bell; *das Glöckchen*, 4. the little bell. *Die Blume*, 7. flower; *das Blümchen*, 4. the little flower. *Das Buch*, 2. book; *das Büchlein*, the little book. *Der Kuchen*, 4. cake; *Küchlein* or *das Küchelchen* **, 4. the little cake. *Der Engel*, 4. angel; *das Engelchen* or *das Engelein*, 4. the little angel. Some proper names do not change the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*. For instance: *Karl*, *Karlchen*. But it must be said *Fränzchen*, *Röschen*, &c. from *Franz*, *Rose*.

Those diminutives, which are formed from substantives ending in *ch* or *g*, join to these terminations the two syllables *elchen* and not the simple syllable *chen*. For example: *Das Buch*, 2. book; *das Büchelchen*, 4. a book of small compass. *Der Ring*, 1. ring; *das Ringelchen*, 4. ringlet.

Section III.

The declension of the German substantives.

Some German grammarians adopt five, others

* This termination is now used only in some words.

** When the first syllable of *Küchlein* is pronounced short, it is another word, and signifies a chicken.

four, others three, others two, and others eight declensions. I shall follow in the present Grammar, with some necessary mutations, those who adopt eight declensions, because, in my opinion, with regard to the foreigners, who learn the German language, the German nouns substantive are most conveniently arranged under eight declensions.

There are some general observations to be made on the declension of the German substantives.

1. Those substantives, which have in the genitive case of the singular number the termination *es*, end in the dative case of the same number in *e*. But those, the genitive of which terminates only in *s*, do not add an *e* in the dative singular to the nominative.

2. The accusative singular of the feminine and neuter substantives never differs from the nominative.

3. All the substantives feminine, with the exception of some proper names, are subject to no variation in the singular number.

4. The genitive and accusative of the plural number never differ from the nominative of it.

5. The dative plural always ends in *n*. This final *n* is added to the nominative plural, if this case does not already terminate in *n*. But if the nominative plural already ends in *n*, the dative plural never differs from the nominative plural.

6. When a substantive is compounded of two or more substantives, it is declined after the declension of the last of them. For instance: *das Strümpfband*, 2. garter; in the plural number, *die Strumpfbänder*, garters.

7. Those substantives, which terminate in the nominative singular in *in*, double in the plural the *n* of this syllable. For example: *die Königin*, 7. queen; in the plural, *die Königinnen*, queens.

8. There are several nouns substantive, which, from the nature of their signification, or from the peculiar usage of the German tongue, occur only in the singular. These substantives are: —

a. The names of metals, &c. Examples: *Das*

Gold, 1. gold. *Das Silber*, 4. silver. *Das Eisen*, 4. iron. *Das Zinn*, 1. tin. *Das Kupfer*, 4. copper. *Das Blei*, 1. lead. *Das Elfenbein*, 1. ivory. *Die Erde*, 7. earth. *Das Holz*, 2. wood. *Das Fleisch*, 1. flesh. *Der Speck*, 1. bacon. *Das Getreide*, 1. corn. *Die Gerste*, 7. barley. *Der Haber (Hafer)*, 4. oats. *Der Weizen*, 4. wheat. *Der Hopfen*, 4. hops. *Der Hanf*, 1. hemp. *Der Flachs*, 1. flax. *Der Klee*, 1. clover. *Der Spargel*, 4. asparagus. *Der Knōblauch*, 1. garlick. *Die Kresse*, 7. cresses. *Der Kohl*, 1. cabbage. *Das Mēhl*, 1. meal. *Die Butter*, 7. butter. *Die Milch*, 7. milk. *Der Honig*, 1. honey. *Das Wachs*, 1. wax. *Der Rūfs*, 1. soot. *Der Regen*, 4. rain. *Der Schnee*, 1. snow. *Der Hagel*, 4. hail. Of some of these words the plural may be used technically, to denote the species. *Die Zinne; die Eisen; die Bleie; die Erden; die Hölzer*; &c.

b. The following and many other words: *Das Gemurmel*, 4. murmuring. *Das Gewimmer*, 4. whimpering. *Das Gewölk*, 1. clouds. *Die Wäsche*, 7. linen.

c. The most part of abstract terms. Examples: *Der Geiz*, 1. avarice. *Der Neid*, 1. envy. *Die Armūth*, 7. poverty. *Der Hunger*, 4. hunger. *Der Dürst*, 1. thirst. *Der Schlāf**, 1. sleep. *Die Hitze*, 7. heat. *Die Kälte*, 7. cold. *Die Stärke*, 7. strength. Those abstract terms are excepted, which may be used as nouns appellative.

d. The neuter adjectives employed substantively. For instance: *das Erhabene*, the sublime. *Das Schöne*, the beautiful.

e. The infinitives used as substantives. For example: *das Sprechen*, 4. speaking. *Das Schreiben*, writing. When the last word signifies a letter, it has the plural number. For instance: *Ich habe heute zwei Schreiben von ihm erhalten.* I have received to-day two letters from him.

9. The following substantives have no singular: *die Beinkleider*, breeches. *Die Briefschaften*, letters,

* *Die Schläfe* or *der Schlaf*, the temples.

papers. *Die Einkünfte*, revenue. *Die Fasten*, lent. *Die Franzōsen*, the veneral disease. *Die Gebrüder*, the brothers. *Die Geschwister*, the brothers and sisters. *Die Gefälle*, the taxes. *Die Graupen*, peeled barley. *Die Insignien*, the insignia. *Die Kaldaunen*, *die Kutteln*, tripes. *Die Kosten*, costs, expenses. *Die Leute*, men, people. *Die Molken*, whey. *Die Naturālien*, the natural products. *(Die) Ōstern*, Easter. *(Die) Pfingsten*, Whitsuntide. *(Die) Weihnachten*, Christmas. *Die Repressālien*, reprisals. *Die Rötheln*, the red measles. *Die Sporteln*, the fees. *Die Tréber*, groundmalt. *Die Trester*, the recrement of grapes. As for the words *die Ahnen*, ancestors, *die Ältern* (instead of *die Älteren*), parents, *die Gliedmaſsen*, limbs, *die Hefen*, barm, dregs, *die Hosen*, breeches, *die Schranken*, lists, bounds, *die Truppen*, troops, *die Trümmer*, the ruins, *die Waffen*, weapons, arms, *die Zeitläufe*, the course and events of the times, they have all, though, for the most part, employed in the plural, yet also a singular. This singular is: *der Ahn*, 6.; *der Ältere*, the elder; *das Gliedmaſs*, 3.; *die Hefe*, 7.; *die Hose*, 7.; *die Schranke*, 7.; *der Trupp*, 3.; *der Trumm*, 2.; *die Waffe*, 7.; *der Zeitlauf*, 1.

I shall now speak of the variations, to which the substantives of the German language are subject, or of the eight declensions of them. The six first contain only masculine and neuter substantives, and the two last but feminine words.

First declension.

The first declension contains, with the exception of the words, which end in *el*, *en*, and *er*, substantives of every termination. All the derivatives ending in *ing* or *ling*, all the neuter substantives terminating in *niss*, and those neuter words, which commence with the syllable *ge*, and often end in *e*, belong to this declension.

The substantives of the first declension end in the genitive of the singular number in *es*, and in the dative of the same number in *e*. These letters

are added to the nominative. If the nominative terminates in *e*, the genitive ends in *s*, and the dative is like the nominative. The nominative, genitive and accusative plural add an *e* to the nominative singular. But if the nominative singular already terminates in *e*, the three named cases of the plural do not differ from it. The dative plural ends in *n*, which is added to the nominative plural.

The substantives of this declension, which have an *a*, or an *o*, or an *u* in the final syllable of the nominative singular, change these vowels into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, in all the plural cases. Those substantives, which have *aa* or *au* in the final syllable, change these vowels into *ä* and *äu* in the plural. To this change of the vowels *a*, *aa*, *au*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *äu*, *ö*, *ü*, are not subject the neuter substantives of the first declension, and those words, in the final syllable of which the named vowels do not stand. For this reason, it must be said *die Herzoge*, and not *die Herzöge*.

Examples.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Der Freund*, the friend;	Nom.	*Die Freunde*, the friends;
Gen.	*des Freundes*, of the friend;	Gen.	*der Freunde*, of the friends;
Dat.	*dem Freunde*, to the friend;	Dat.	*den Freunden*, to the friends;
Acc.	*den Freund*, the friend.	Acc.	*die Freunde*, the friends.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Das Gemälde*, the picture;	Nom.	*Die Gemälde*, the pictures;
Gen.	*des Gemäldes*, of the picture;	Gen.	*der Gemälde*, of the pictures;
Dat.	*dem Gemälde*, to the picture;	Dat.	*den Gemälden*, to the pictures;
Acc.	*das Gemälde*, the picture;	Acc.	*die Gemälde*, the pictures.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Der Platz*, the place;	Nom.	*Die Plätze*, the places;
Gen.	*des Platzes*, of the place;	Gen.	*der Plätze*, of the places;
Dat.	*dem Platze*, to the place;	Dat.	*den Plätzen*, to the places;
Acc.	*den Platz*, the place.	Acc.	*die Plätze*, the places.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Der Saal*, the parlour;	Nom.	*Die Säle*, the parlours;
Gen.	*des Saales*, of the parlour;	Gen.	*der Säle*, of the parlours;
Dat.	*dem Saale*, to the parlour;	Dat.	*den Sälen*, to the parlours;
Acc.	*den Saal*, the parlour.	Acc.	*die Säle*, the parlours.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Der Gebrauch*, the use;	Nom.	*Die Gebräuche*, the uses;
Gen.	*des Gebrauches*, of the use;	Gen.	*der Gebräuche*, of the uses;
Dat.	*dem Gebrauche*, to the use;	Dat.	*den Gebräuchen*, to the uses;
Acc.	*den Gebrauch*, the use;	Acc.	*die Gebräuche*, the uses;

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Der Rock*, the coat;	Nom.	*Die Röcke*, the coats;
Gen.	*des Rockes*, of the coat;	Gen.	*der Röcke*, of the coats;
Dat.	*dem Rocke*, to the coat;	Dat.	*den Röcken*, to the coats;
Acc.	*den Rock*, the coat.	Acc.	*die Röcke*, the coats;

Singular		Plural.	
Nom.	*Der Strumpf*, the stocking;	Nom.	*Die Strümpfe*, the stockings;
Gen.	*des Strumpfes*, of the stocking;	Gen.	*der Strümpfe*, of the stockings;
Dat.	*dem Strumpfe*, to the stocking;	Dat.	*den Strümpfen*, to the stockings;
Acc.	*den Strumpf*, the stocking.	Acc.	*die Strümpfe*, the stockings.

In this manner are declined the following masculine and neuter substantives: *Der Ahorn*, maple. *Der Amboſs*, anvil. *Der Anwalt (Anwald)*, attorney. *Der Ast*, branch. *Der Bach*, brook. *Der Bart*, beard. *Der Bastard*, bastard. *Der Bauch*, belly. *Der Baum*, tree. *Das Beet*, the bed of a garden. *Der Blick*, look. *Der Block*, block. *Der Bock*, buck. *Der Brand*, burning. *Der Bräutigam*, bridegroom. *Der Brief*, letter. *Das Cabinett*, cabinet, closet. *Das Camisōl*, jacket. *Das Clavier*, harpsichord. *Der Cardinal*, cardinal. *Der Damm*, dam. *Der Darm*, gut. *Das Decret*, decree. *Der Dieb*, thief. *Der Dunst*, vapor. *Der Eidam*, son-in-law. *Das Epigramm*, epigram. *Der Fall*, fall. *Der Federkiel*,

quill. *Der Feind*, enemy. *Der Fisch*, fish. *Der Floh*, flea. *Der Flūr*, tiffany. *Der Fluss*, river. *Der Frosch*, frog. *Der Fūchs*, fox. *Das Gedicht*, poem. *Der Gehōrsam*, obedience. *Der Gesang*, song. *Das Gewölbe*, vault. *Der Grenadīer*, grenadier. *Der Gruſs*, salutation. *Das Haar*, hair. *Der Hābicht*, hawk. *Der Hahn*, cock. *Der Hals*, neck. *Der Hárnisch*, harness. *Der Hérold*, herald. *Der Hieb*, stroke. *Der Hōf*, court. *Der Hūt*, hat. *Das Jahr*, year. *Der Kamm*, comb. *Der Käse*, cheese. *Der Kloſs*, dumpling. *Der Klotz*, block, stock. *Der Knecht*, servant. *Der Knopf*, button. *Der Kōbold*, goblin, in the plural, *die Kobolde*. *Der Kōch*, cook. *Der König*, king. *Der Kopf*, head. *Der Korb*, basket. *Der Kranich*, crane. *Das Kreuz*, cross. *Der Krieg*, war. *Der Krūg*, pitcher. *Der Kūrass*, cuirass. *Der Kuss*, kiss. *Der Lauf*, course. *Der Leīchnam*, corpse. *Das Maal*, mark, mole. *Der Markt*, market. *Das Maſs*, measure. *Das Metáll*, metal. *Der Mūnat*, month. *Das Ōbst*, fruits. *Der Officīer*, officer. *Der Ōheim*, uncle. *Der Palast*, palace. *Das Papīer*, paper. *Der Pāpst*, pope. *Der Pfahl*, pile, post. *Das Prädicāt*, predicate. *Der Pflock*, peg. *Der Prōpst*, provost. *Der Raum*, room, space. *Das Reich*, empire. *Das Recépt*, receipt. *Der Ring*, ring. *Der Sárg*, coffin. *Der Schatz*, *treasure*. *Das Schāf*, sheep. *Das Scheit*, a piece of wood. *Das Schicksāl*, destiny, fate. *Der Schild*, shield. *Der Schirm*, screen. *Das Seil*, rope. *Das Sieb*, sieve. *Der Sieg*, victory. *Der Sinn*, sense. *Der Sohn*, son. *Das Spiel*, game. *Der Stahl*, steel, in the plural, *die Stähle*, certain instruments, made of steel. *Der Stand*, state. *Der Stern*, star. *Der Stein*, stone. *Das Stück*, piece. *Der Stuhl*, chair. *Das Subjéct*, subject. *Das Thier*, animal. *Der Túrban*, turban. *Der Tisch*, table. *Der Tōd*, death. *Der Tōn*, tone. *Der Trōg*, trough. *Der Trúnkenbold*, drunkard. *Der Verdácht*, suspicion, in the plural, *die Verdächte*. *Das Vieh*, cattle. *Das Werk*, work. *Der Wīedehopf*, whoop. *Der Wind*,

wind. *Der Zahn*, tooth. *Der Zaum*, bridle. *Der Zaun*, hedge. *Das Zelt*, tent.

Observation.

1. The *s* of the genitive singular of the first declension may be suppressed in all those words, in which the pronunciation permits it. For instance: *des Stuhls*, instead of *des Stuhles*. In some words, the *e* is always left out. For example: *des Bräutigams; des Gehörsams; des Substantivs; des Adjectivs; des Particips; des Adverbs.* But when the pronunciation of the word becomes difficult or disagreeable by the suppression of the *e*, the two letters *es* ought not to be contracted into *s*. It must, therefore, always be said *Gottes*, and never *Gotts*. Several words cannot be pronounced at all, when the *e* of the genitive singular is omitted. For instance: *des Platzes; des Tisches.* The same must be observed of the substantives of the second and third declension.

2. The characteristic *e* of the dative singular is frequently suppressed both in speaking and in writing. But this practice is not, at least very seldom, to be imitated. Only the poets must be allowed to suppress that *e*, when the metre of a verse requires this. There are, however, some words, in which that *e* is not added to the nominative. For example: *dem Bräutigam; dem Gehöream; dem Substantiv; dem Adjectiv; dem Particip; dem Adverb.* As the substantives of the second and third declension take also an *e* in the dative singular, the second observation is, likewise, to be applied to them.

3. Those substantives of the first declension, which change their vowel in the plural, are subject also to this change of it, when a compound word is formed from them, and the final syllable has no more the accent. For instance: *der Anfang*, beginning; in the plural, *die Anfänge. Der Pflaumbaum*, plumtree; in the plural, *die Pflaumbäume. Der Vorhang*, curtain; in the plural, *die Vorhänge. Der Auftrag*, commission, charge; in the plural, *die Aufträge.*

4. Several masculine substantives of the first de-

clension do not change in the plural number the vowels *a, aa, o, u*, into *ä, ö, ü*. These substantives are the following: *Der Aal*, eel; in the plural, *die Aale*. *Der Aar*, eagle; in the plural, *die Aare*. *Der Act* *, the act of a drama; in the plural, *die Acte*. *Der Admirāl*, admiral; in the plural, *die Admirale*. *Der Arm*, arm; in the plural, *die Arme*. *Der Barōn*, baron; in the plural, *die Barone*. *Der Bau*, building; in the plural, *die Baue*. *Der Contrast*, contrast; in the plural, *die Contraste*. *Der Dachs*, badger; in the plural, *die Dachse*. *Der Damāst*, damask; in the plural, *die Damaste*. *Der Docht*, wick; in the plural, *die Dochte*. *Der Dolch*, poniard; in the plural, *die Dolche*. *Der Gemahl*, consort; in the plural, *die Gemahle*. *Der Generāl*, general; in the plural, *die Generale*. *Der Grād*, degree; in the plural, *die Grade*. *Der Gurt*, girdle; in the plural, *die Gurte*. *Der Halm*, halm; in the plural, *die Halme*. *Der Hauch*, breath; in the plural, *die Hauche*. *Der Hūf*, hoof; in the plural, *die Hufe*. *Der Hund*, dog; in the plural, *die Hunde*. *Der Kux*, the portion of a mine; in the plural, *die Kuxe*. *Der Lachs*, salmon; in the plural, *die Lachse*. *Der Laut*, sound; in the plural, *die Laute*. *Der Luchs*, lynx; in the plural, *die Luchse*. *Der Magistrāt*, senate; in the plural, *die Magistrate*. *Der Molch*, salamander; in the plural, *die Molche*. *Der Mōnd*, moon; in the plural, *die Monde*. *Der Ornāt*, ornament; in the plural, *die Ornate*. *Der Ort*, place; in the plural, *die Orte*. *Der Patrōn*, patron; in the plural, *die Patrone*. *Der Pfād*, path; in the plural, *die Pfade*. *Der Pfau*, peacock; in the plural, *die Pfaue*. *Der Plan*, plan; in the plural, *die Plane*. *Der Pocāl*, a drinking-cup; in the plural, *die Pocale*. *Der Pōl*, pole; in the plural, *die Pole*. *Der Punct*, point; in the plural, *die Puncte*. *Der Salāt*, salad; in the plural, *die Salate*. *Der Schuh*, shoe; in the plural, *die Schuhe*. *Der Senāt*, senate; in the plural, *die Senate*. *Der Skorpiōn*, scorpion; in the plural, *die Skorpione*. *Der Spiōn*, spy; in the plural, *die*

* *Die Acte*, in the plural *die Acten*, belongs to the seventh declension.

Spione. *Der Staar*, stare; in the plural, *die Staare.* *Der Stāhl*, steel; in the plural, *die Stahle*, kinds of steel. *Der Stoff*, stuff, matter; in the plural, *die Stoffe.* *Der Strauſs*, ostrich; in the plural, *die Strauſse.* *Der Tact*, time, musical measure; in the plural, *die Tacte.* *Der Tag*, day; in the plural, *die Tage.* *Der Thrōn*, throne; in the plural, *die Throne.* *Das Tūch*, cloth; in the plural, *die Tuche.* *Der Verlust*, loss; in the plural, *die Verluste.* *Der Zoll*, inch; in the plural, *die Zolle.*

Instead of *die Baue*, also the form *die Bauten* is frequently used. When the word *der Mōnd* signifies a month, it is declined after the third declension. For instance: *Maria blieb bei ihr gegen drei Mondn.* Mary abode with her about three months. The plural *die Orte* signifies places in a general sense. Instead of this form, another plural, *die Örter*, is yet in use. It is employed, when individual places are expressed. Then the word *der Ort* is declined after the second declension. Some Germans say regularly *die Plätze.* The word *der Patrōn* is not to be confounded with the word *die Patrōne*, 7. cartouch. When the word *der Strauſs* signifies a nosegay, it is declined after the second declension, and its plural number is then formed in a regular manner: *die Sträuſser.* The plural number of *Thrōn* is also formed after the third declension. But this form, *die Thronen*, must be avoided. By the plural *Tūche* are meant kinds of cloth. But in order to express parts of dress, such as neckcloths, they say in the plural of this word *die Tücher.* Then it is declined after the second declension. When the word *der Zoll* signifies the toll, its plural number is formed in a regular manner: *die Zölle.*

5. But very few masculine substantives, having not the accent on the last syllable, are subject in the plural number to the change of the vowels, *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*. For example: *Der Altar*, altar; in the plural, *die Altäre.* *Der Marschall*, marshal; in the plural, *die Marschälle.* *Der Bischof*, bishop; in the plural, *die Bischöfe.*

6. The following neuter substantives of the first declension change their vowel in the plural number:

Das Arsenäl (better *das Zeughaus*), arsenal; in the plural, *die Arsenäle*. *Das Boot*, boat; in the plural, *die Böte*. *Das Chōr*, choir; in the plural, *die Chöre*. *Das Floss*, float, raft; in the plural, *die Flösse*. *Das Tribunāl*, tribunal; in the plural, *die Tribunäle*.

7. The word *das Ding*, thing, has a double plural: *die Dinge* and *die Dinger*. The former belongs to the first, and the latter, to the second declension. They say: *Ihre Schwester ist ein hübsches Ding*. Your sister is a pretty girl. In this sense the plural *die Dinger* is used.

8. *Der Kerl*, a familiar appellation for a man, answering to the English *fellow*, and belonging to the first declension, is declined in the following manner: *Der Kerl, des Kerls, dem Kerl, den Kerl. Die Kerle, der Kerle, den Kerlen, die Kerle.*

9. The following substantives, belonging to the first declension, are seldom used in the plural number, when they are employed to denote quantity, weight, or measure: *Das Alphabēt; das Band; das Dutzend; der Fuss; der Grād; der Grān; das Lōth; das Māfs; das Paar; das Pfund; das Rieſs; das Schock; der Schuh; der Stein; das Stück; der Zoll.* Examples: *Sechs Bund Stroh*, six trusses of straw. *Zwei Dutzend Strümpfe*, two dozens of stockings. *Sechs geometrische Fuſs*, six geometrical feet. *Hundert Grad*, a hundred degrees. *Geben Sie mir vier gute Paar Schuhe.* Give me four good pairs of shoes. *Schicken Sie mir sechs Pfund feinen Zucker.* Send me six pounds of fine sugar. *Zwei Schock Äpfel*, six scores of apples. *Vierzehn Stein schwer*, fourteen stone weight. *Sieben Stück Tuch*, seven pieces of cloth. *Vier Stück Rindvieh*, four heads of cattle. *Fünf Zoll breit*, five inches broad. When these substantives, in the said sense, are used with a preposition, they are put in the plural number. For example: *Ein Feld von hundert geometrischen Fuſsen*. Nāch Dutzenden, nach Paaren, nach Pfunden, nach Schocken, nach Stücken verkaufen*, to sell by

* When the word *der Fūſs* signifies a measure, its plural has, instead of *die Fūſse*, the form *die Fuſse*.

dozens, by pairs, by pounds, by threescores, by pieces. But when they stand not alone, they are not placed in the plural number. For instance: *Mit vier guten Paar Schuhen*, with four good pairs of shoes. *Mit sieben Stück fettem Viehe*, with seven heads of fat cattle.

10. The regular plural of the word *das Kleinod*, a small thing, a jewel, is *die Kleinode*. Besides this plural, another form, *die Kleinödien*, is sometimes used. This latter plural has been made of *clenodium*; in the plural, *clenodia*.

11. The word *das Mäl*, belonging to the first declension, must always be put in the plural number, when numerals stand before it. For instance: *zwei Male*, twice; *drei Male*, three times; *vier Male*, four times. It may also be said and written: *zweimal*, *dreimal*, *viermal*; in which case those words have been converted into adverbs.

12. Some substantives of the first declension have yet another ending, by which they belong to another declension. For example: *Der Daum* 1. *der Daumen*, 4. thumb.

13. The three following words of the first declension have no plural number; *Der Dank*, thanks. *Das Lob*, praise. *Der Räth*, counsel, advice. If the plural be required, it must be supplied by a synonymous word. It must then be said: *die Danksagungen*; from *die Danksagung*, thanksgiving. *Die Lobeserhebungen*; from *die Lobeserhebung*, 7. praise. *Die Räthschläge*; from *der Rathschlag*, 1. counsel. When the word *der Rath* signifies council, senate, counsellor, it is used in the plural number: *die Räthe*.

14. The words *das Capitäl*, *das Minerāl*, *das Regale*, have in the plural *die Capitalien**, *die Mineralien*, *die Regalien*. But *das Regäl* has in the plural *die Regale*.

Second declension.

The second declension comprehends many substantives neuter, and some substantives masculine.

* Instead of *Capitalien* they say also *Capitale*.

All the substantives, which belong to this declension, end in a consonant. Excluded are those, which terminate in *el*, *en*, and *er*.

The singular of the substantives of the second declension is like that of the first declension. They take, consequently, *es* in the genitive, and *e* in the dative. The nominative, genitive, and accusative of the plural number take the syllable *er*, which is added to the nominative singular. The dative plural ends in *n*, which is added to the nominative plural. Besides these variations, the vowels *a*, *aa*, *au*, *o*, *u*, when they stand in the final syllable of the nominative singular, are commuted into *ä*, *äu*, *ö*, *ü*, in the plural cases. For instance: *Der Wald*, forest; in the plural, *die Wälder*. *Das Aas*, carrion; in the plural, *die Äser*. *Das Haupt*, head; in the plural, *die Häupter*. *Das Volk*, nation; in the plural, *die Völker*. *Der Wurm*, worm; in the plural, *die Würmer*.

Example:

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Das Gemüth*, the mind;	Nom.	*Die Gemüther*, the minds;
Gen.	*des Gemüthes*, of the mind;	Gen.	*der Gemüther*, of the minds;
Dat.	*dem Gemüthe*, to the mind;	Dat.	*den Gemüthern*, to the minds;
Acc.	*das Gemüth*, the mind.	Acc.	*die Gemüther*, the minds.

In this manner are declined the following substantives: —

Das Älterthum, antiquity. *Das Amt*, office. *Das Bad*, bath. *Das Bild*, image. *Das Bisthūm*, bishoprick. *Das Blatt*, leaf. *Das Brēt*, board. *Das Būch*, book. *Das Dach*, roof. *Das Dorf*, village. *Das Ei*, egg. *Das Fach*, drawer. *Das Fass*, barrel. *Das Feld*, field. *Das Fürstenthūm*, principality. *Der Geist*, ghost, spirit. *Das Geld*, money. *Das Gemach*, room, chamber. *Das Geschlecht*, sex; gender; generation. *Das Gespenst*, spectre. *Das Gewand*, garment. *Das Glās*, glass. *Das Glied*, member. *Gott*, God. *Das Grāb*, grave. *Das Grās*, grass. *Das*

Gūt, good. *Das Haus*, house. *Das Herzōgthūm*, dukedom. *Das Holz*, wood. *Das Hospitūl*, hospital. *Das Hūhn*, hen. *Der Hundsfott*, scoundrel. *Der Irrthum*, error. *Das Kalb*, calf. *Das Kind*, child. *Das Kleid*, habit. *Das Korn*, grain. *Das Kraut*, herb. *Das Lamm*, lamb. *Der Leib*, body. *Das Lied*, song. *Das Loch*, hole. *Der Mann*, man; husband. *Das Maul*, the mouth of beasts. *Der Mund*, the mouth of men. *Das Nest*, nest. *Das Pfand*, pawn. *Das Rad*, wheel. *Der Rand*, border, margin. *Der Reīchthūm*, riches. *Das Reis*, a small twig. *Das Rind*, neat. *Das Schild*, the sign of a house. *Das Schloss*, lock; palace. *Das Schwert*, sword. *Der Strauch*, shrub. *Das Thāl*, valley. *Der Vōrmund*, guardian. *Das Wamms*, doublet. *Das Weib*, wife.

Observations.

1. The two substantives *das Dénkmāl* and *das Grābmal*, coming from the word *das Maal*, mark, have a double plural: *die Denkmäler*, *die Denkmale*, the monuments; *die Grabmäler*, *die Grabmale*, the tombs. The word *das Mérkmal*, being derived from the same root, has but one plural: *die Merkmale*, the marks, the signs. The two substantives: *das Mahl und das Gástmahl*, meal, repast, have also a double plural: *die Mähler*, *die Mahle*; *die Gastmähler*, *die Gastmahle*. Instead of the plural *die Geschlechter*, poets may also say *die Geschlechte*.

2. The two substantives *das Parlamént* and *das Regimént* belong to the second declension; but the word *das Testamént* is declined after the first declension.

3. The following substantives, belonging to the first declension, are declined by some Germans after the second declension: *der Bösewicht*; *der Brand*; *der Klofs*; *der Klotz*; *das Zelt*. But these words must be declined after the first declension. Some substantives, on the contrary, belonging to the second declension, are faultily declined by some Germans af-

ter the first declension. Such words are: *der Strauch; der Strauſs*; &c.

4. The dative case of *Gott*, denoting the Supreme Being, has no *e*; but when this word signifies a heathen deity, an idol, the dative case has an *e*.

5. The following substantives are declined after the second and first declension, and have, therefore, in the plural number two terminations, by which they receive a different signification: *das Band; das Horn; das Gesicht; das Land; das Wort.* The word *Band* has in the plural *die Bänder*, when it signifies a tie or ribbon. Then this word is of the neuter gender. When *Band* is of the masculine gender, it has in the plural *die Bände* and *die Bande.* The former plural is used, when this word signifies the binding or volume of a book, and the latter, when it expresses a chain for a criminal, or when it is taken figuratively. For instance: *Jemanden in Ketten und Bande legen*, to put somebody in fetters. *Die Bande der Freundschaft*, the ties of friendship. The word *Horn* has in the plural *die Hörner*, when it signifies individual horns, and *die Horne*, when it denotes species or kinds of that substance. The word *das Gesicht* has in the plural *die Gesichter* and *die Gesichte.* The former plural termination expresses sights or faces, and the latter, visions. The word *das Land* has in the plural *die Länder* and *die Lande.* The former plural ending signifies individual countries, and the latter, the territory or dominions of some sovereign. *Das Wort* has in the plural *die Wörter* and *die Worte.* The former plural ending denotes words not united together to form a phrase, and the latter, words joined together to form a phrase or sentence. For example: *Ich lerne täglich zehn deutsche Wörter.* I learn every day ten German words. *Ich kann nicht alle meine Gefühle durch Worte ausdrücken.* I cannot express all my feelings by words.

Also the word *das Licht* has two plural forms: *die Lichter* and *die Lichte.* By both these endings

a difference in signification is expressed. The former signifies lights in general, and the latter, candles, that is, lights made of tallow or wax. These two terminations, however, are not to be approved, as the plural form *die Lichter* ought to be used also of candles.

6. The words *Buch*, *Fass* and *Mann* are not used in the plural, when implying quantity, or weight. For example: *Drei Buch Papier*, three quires of paper. *Zwölf Fass Bier*, twelve casks of beer. *Die Compagnie ist hundert Mann stark*, the company is a hundred men strong.

7. The compound substantives, which terminate in *mann*, take in the plural number *leute* (folks) instead of *männer*. Such words are the following: *der Amtmann*, bailiff. *Der Edelmann*, nobleman. *Der Fuhrmann*, cartman. *Der Kaufmann*, merchant. *Der Zimmermann*, carpenter. In the plural, *die Amtleute; die Edelleute; die Fuhrleute; die Kaufleute; die Zimmerleute.* Excepted are *der Biedermann*, the honest man, and *der Ehemann*, the husband, which have in the plural *die Biedermänner*, *die Ehemänner.*

Third declension.

The substantives of the third declension are declined in the singular after the first or second declension. They take therefore the syllable *es* in the genitive, and an *e* in the dative. All their plural cases terminate in *en.* Those substantives, the nominative singular of which ends in a vowel, add in the plural number only an *n* to it. But those, the nominative singular of which terminates in a consonant, add in the plural number the two letters *en* to it. It is yet to be observed, that the substantives of this declension do not commute the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, in the plural number into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*.

Examples.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Das Auge*, the eye;	Nom.	*Die Augen*, the eyes;
Gen.	*des Auges*, of the eye;	Gen.	*der Augen*, of the eyes;
Dat.	*dem Auge*, to the eye;	Dat.	*den Augen*, to the eyes;
Acc.	*das Auge*, the eye.	Acc.	*die Augen*, the eyes.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Das Ohr*, the ear;	Nom.	*Die Ohren*, the ears;
Gen.	*des Ohres*, of the ear;	Gen.	*der Ohren*, of the ears;
Dat.	*dem Ohre*, to the ear;	Dat.	*den Ohren*, to the ears;
Acc.	*das Ohr*, the ear.	Acc.	*die Ohren*, the ears;

In this manner are declined the following substantives: *Der Affect*, affect. *Das Bett*, bed. *Der Dialōg*, dialogue. *Das Ende*, end. *Der Fasān*, pheasant. *Das Glīedmafs*, limb. *Das Hemd*, shirt. *Der Impost*, impost. *Das Insect*, insect. *Das Juwēl*, jewel. *Der Kapaūn*, capon. *Der Pfau*, peacock *Das Pistōl*, pistol. *Der Psalm*, psalm. *Der Quast*, tassel. *Der Quell*, source. *Der Rubān*, ruby. *Der Ruīn*, ruin. *Der Schmerz*, ache. *Der See*, lake. *Der Spōrn*, spur. *Der Staat*, state. *Der Strahl*, ray, beam. *Der Trupp*, troop. *Der Zierrath*, ornament. *Der Zins*, rent; interest.

Observations.

1. The plural number of *Ende (die Enden)* is employed to express the extremities of any thing. *Der Dorn*, is declined after the third and second declension. It has in the plural *die Dornen*, when it signifies the thorns in general, and *die Dörner*, when it expresses the single thorns, the prickles.

2. Instead of *Juwel*, *Pistol*, *Quast* and *Quell*, are more usual *die Juwele*, *die Pistole*, *die Quaste*, *die Quelle*, which all belong to the seventh declension.

3. The plural number of *Ruin* is used as that of *ruin* in English: *die Ruinen*, the ruins.

4. The genitive *des Schmerzens*, instead of *des Schmerzes*, is still in use.

5. They write commonly instead of *des See-es*, *dem See-e*, *die See-en*: *des Sees*, *dem See*, *die Seen*.

6. The plural form *die Sporen*, instead of *die Spornen*, must be avoided. They say, however, *der Sporer*, the spurrier, in order to distinguish this word from *der Sporner*, spurrer.

7. The word *Zierrath*, being composed of *Zier* and *Rath*, is incorrectly written by many Germans *Zierath*.

8. The word *Herz*, heart, belonging also to the third declension, is in its literal meaning regularly declined, but has in its figurative sense an irregular singular, which is thus declined: *das Herz*; *des Herzens*; *dem Herzen*; *das Herz*.

Fourth declension.

The substantives of the fourth declension terminate all in *el*, *en* and *er*. Only the genitive singular and the dative plural of this declension add a letter to the nominative singular. All the other cases are alike. The genitive singular receives an *s*, which is added to the nominative singular. The dative plural receives in the words, that end in *el* and *er*, an *n*, which is likewise added to the nominative singular. But when the nominative singular already terminates in *en*, the dative plural does not differ from it.

It is yet to be observed, that the substantives of the fourth declension, which end in *el*, and have in the singular one of the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, in the syllable before the last, change these vowels in the plural into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*. For instance: *der Schnabel*, beak; in the plural, *die Schnäbel*. *Der Vogel*, bird; in the plural, *die Vögel*. Excepted are the following words: *Der Adel*, nobility. *Der Apostel*, apostle. *Der Bakel* (from *baculus*), stick for castigating. *Der Buckel*, bunch. *Der Hagel*, hail. *Der Haspel*, reel. *Der Hobel*, plane. *Der Knorpel*, cartilage. *Der Marmel*, marble. *Der Pudel*, spaniel. *Der Stapel*, staple. *Der Strudel*, whirlpool. *Der Zobel*, sable.

The substantives of the fourth declension, which terminate in *en* or *er*, and have in the singular one of the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, in the syllable before the

last, do not commute these vowels in the plural into *ä, ö, ü*. Excepted are the following words: *Der Boden*, loft. *Der Garten*, garden. *Der Graben*, ditch. *Der Hafen*, harbour, port. *Der Ofen*, oven, stove. *Der Schaden*, damage. *Der Acker*, field. *Der Bruder*, brother. *Der Hammer*, hammer. *Das Klöster*, cloister, convent. *Das Lager*, camp. *Der Schwager*, brother in law. *Der Vater*, father. As for the word *Lager*, it has in the plural *die Lager*, when it does not signify a camp.

Examples:

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Das Heilmittel*, the remedy;	Nom.	*Die Heilmittel*, the remedies;
Gen.	*des Heilmittels*, of the remedy;	Gen.	*der Heilmittel*, of the remedies;
Dat.	*dem Heilmittel*, to the remedy;	Dat.	*den Heilmitteln*, to the remedies;
Acc.	*das Heilmittel*, the remedy;	Acc.	*die Heilmittel*, the remedies.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Der Balken*, the balk;	Nom.	*Die Balken*, the balks;
Gen.	*des Balkens*, of the balk;	Gen.	*der Balken*, of the balks;
Dat.	*dem Balken*, to the balk;	Dat.	*den Balken*, to the Balks;
Acc.	*den Balken*, the balk.	Acc.	*die Balken*, the balks.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Das Zimmer*, the room;	Nom.	*Die Zimmer*, the rooms;
Gen.	*des Zimmers*, of the room;	Gen.	*der Zimmer*, of the rooms;
Dat.	*dem Zimmer*, to the room;	Dat.	*den Zimmern*, to the rooms;
Acc.	*das Zimmer*, the room.	Acc.	*die Zimmer*, the rooms.

Observations.

1. The substantives of the fourth declension are for the most part of the masculine gender. It contains, however, also many words neuter, of the number of which are all the diminutives. It must therefore be said in the plural *die Mädchen*; *die Fräulein*; and not *die Mädchens*; *die Fräuleins*. The substantives feminine ending in *el* or *er* belong to the seventh declension. Only the two substan-

tives feminine *Mutter*, mother, and *Tochter*, daughter, are excepted in regard of their plural number, which is declined after the fourth declension. At the same time, the vowels *u* and *o* are changed in the plural of these words into *ü* and *ö*: *die Mütter; die Töchter*. Their singular number belongs to the seventh declension.

2. The word *der Charakter* has in the plural, according to the rule, *die Charakter*, when signifying a title or dignity. But when this word denotes the personal qualities of any man, it has in the plural *die Charaktēre*. Some Germans, however, say also in this sense *die Charakter*.

3. The words *der Bogen, der Schwibbogen*, arch, *der Triúmphbogen, der Siegesbogen*, triumphal arch, commute their vowel *o* in the plural into *ö*: *die Bögen; die Schwibbögen*; *die Triumphbögen; die Siegesbögen*. But when the word *Bogen* signifies a bow, or a sheet of paper, it does not change its vowel *o* in the plural into *ö*: *die Bogen*.

4. The following two words commute, according to the rule, in the plural number their vowel: *Der Faden*, thread; *die Fäden*. *Der Hammel*, mutton; *die Hämmel*. Many Germans, however, say: *die Faden; die Hammel*. As for the word *der Laden*, it has in the plural *die Läden*, when it signifies the shop; but when it means the shutter of a window, the vowel is not altered. It has then in the plural *die Laden*. Some Germans say: *die Kästen; die Mägen; die Wägen*; plurals of *der Kasten*, chest; *der Magen*, stomach; *der Wagen*, waggon, carriage, coach. But the vowel of these words is not to be altered in the plural number. It must, consequently, be said; *die Kasten; die Magen; die Wagen*.

5. The word *der Acker*, when it signifies the acre, is not used in the plural number. For instance: *zehn Acker Land*, ten acres of land.

6. The following substantives take an *n* in all the plural cases: *Der Bauer*, peasant; in the plural, *die Bauern*. *Der Flitter*, spangle; in the plural, *die*

Flittern. *Der Gevatter*, godfather; in the plural, *die Gevattern.* *Der Hummer*, lobster; in the plural, *die Hummern.* *Der Lorber*, laurel; in the plural, *die Lorbern.* *Der Muskel*, muscle; in the plural, *die Muskeln.* *Der Pantoffel*, slipper; in the plural, *die Pantoffeln.* *Der Satyr*, satyr; in the plural, *die Satyrn.* *Der Stachel*, sting; in the plural, *die Stacheln.* *Der Stiefel*, boot; in the plural, *die Stiefeln.* *Der Vetter*, cousin; in the plural, *die Vettern.*

7. The following names of nations terminating in *er* take also an *n* in all the plural cases: *Der Baier*, the Bavarian; in the plural, *die Baiern.* *Der Caffer*, the Caffree; in the plural, *die Caffern.* *Der Pommer*, the Pomeranian; in the plural, *die Pommern.*

8. The substantives terminating in *ar*, when this *ar* is unaccented, belong also to the fourth declension. These substantives take likewise in the plural number an *n*. Examples: *Der Náchbar*, neighbour; in the plural, *die Nachbarn.* *Der Ungar*, the Hungarian; in the plural, *die Ungern.* The word *der Tātar* forms its plural in a double manner: *die Tātarn*, *die Tatāren.* Also the word *der Consul* has in the plural *die Consuln.* Others say *die Consuls*, contracted from the Latin *consules.*

When the final syllable *ar* is accented, the words terminating in this accented *ar* belong to the sixth declension. For instance: *Der Barbār*; in the plural, *die Barbāren.* *Der Husār*; in the plural, *die Husaren.* Excepted are the two words *der Singulār* and *der Plurāl*, which are declined after the first declension, and have, consequently, in the plural *die Singulare; die Plurale.*

9. Several foreign substantives of the fourth declension take in the plural an *s*. For example: *Der Pater; die Paters* (formed from *patres*). *Der Ambassadeur; die Ambassadeurs.* Instead of the last term the German word *der Gesandte* must be employed.

10. The following substantives of the fourth declension, which are taken from the Latin, have in

the plural number the final syllable *en: der Autor (der Verfasser, der Schriftsteller); die Autören. Der Cántor; die Cantören. Der Pástor; die Pastören. Der Professor; die Professören. Der Réctor; die Rectören.* The syllable *or* of the singular of these words is unaccented; but in the plural it has the accent. When the word ending in *or* places in the singular number the accent on this *or*, it is declined after the first declension. For instance: *Der Majór; die Majóre. Der Matadór; die Matadore.* Except *der Hallór*, 6. salt-maker.

11. Also some foreign words terminating in *um* are declined in the singular after the fourth declension. They take consequently an *s* in the genitive, and in the other cases they remain unvaried. Such words are: *das Adverbium; das Participium; das Studium.* These words have in the plural *die Adverbien; die Participien; die Studien.*

12. The substantives ending in *ier* belong to the first declension. For example: *der Barbíer; die Barbiere. Das Clavíer; die Claviere. Der Officier; die Officiere.*

Fifth declension.

The fifth declension contains only those words, which have had or have yet two terminations. The following substantives belong therefore to this declension: *der Búchstabe*, letter. *Der Fels*, rock. *Der Friede*, peace. *Der Funke*, spark. *Der Gedanke*, thought. *Der Glaube*, faith. *Der Haufe*, heap. *Der Name*, name. *Der Same*, seed. *Der Schade*, damage. *Der Schreck*, fright, terror. *Der Wille*, will. All these words terminated formerly in *n* or *en*. Only the words *Funke, Haufe, Same* and *Schade* have yet a double termination, and end, consequently, also in *n;* and *Schreck* in *en*. This ending determines the declension of these words, also of those, which have lost that *n*. They are therefore declined as the substantives of the fourth declension, and take, consequently, in the genitive singular the two letters *ns;* in the dative and accusative singular, and in all

the plural cases an *n*. The words *Fels*, instead of which they say also *Felsen*, and *Schreck*, instead of which they say better *Schrecken*, take in the genitive the syllable *ens*. It is yet to be observed, that the substantives of the fifth declension do not change their vowel in the plural number, with the exception of the word *Schade*, which has in the plural *die Schäden*.

Example.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Der Buchstabe*, the letter;	Nom.	*Die Buchstaben*, the letters;
Gen.	*des Buchstabens* (*des Buchstaben* of the letter;	Gen.	*der Buchstaben*, of the letters;
Dat.	*dem Buchstaben*, to the letter;	Dat.	*den Buchstaben*, to the letters;
Acc.	*den Buchstaben*, the letter.	Acc.	*die Buchstaben*, the letters.

Sixth declension.

The sixth declension includes substantives, which are for the most part of the masculine gender. However, there are also some substantives neuter, which are declined after this declension. The words terminating in *el*, *en*, and *er* are excluded from it.

The substantives of the sixth declension, the nominative singular of which ends in *e*, take an *n* in all the other cases, both of the singular and plural. Those, the nominative singular of which terminates in a consonant, take the syllable *en* in all the other cases, both of the singular and plural. Also the substantives of the sixth declension do not change their vowel in the plural number.

Example.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Der Löwe*, lion;	Nom.	*Die Löwen*, the lions;
Gen.	*des Löwen*, of the lion;	Gen.	*der Löwen*, of the lions;
Dat.	*dem Löwen*, to the lion;	Dat.	*den Löwen*, to the lions;
Acc.	*den Löwen*, the lion.	Acc.	*die Löwen*, the lions.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. *Der Bär*, the bear;	Nom. *Die Bären*, the bears;
Gen. *des Bären*, of the bear;	Gen. *der Bären*, of the bears;
Dat. *dem Bären*, to the bear;	Dat. *den Bären*, to the bears;
Acc. *den Bären*, the bear.	Acc. *die Bären*, the bears.

In this manner are declined the following and many other substantives: *Der Affe*, monkey. *Der Bote*, messenger. *Der Bube*, boy, knave. *Der Bürge*, bail. *Der Bursche*, boy, fellow. *Der Drache*, dragon. *Der Erbe*, heir. *Der Fink*, finch. *Der Fürst*, sovereign. *Der Gatte*, consort, husband. *Der Geck*, *der Laffe*, fop. *Der Gesell*, journeyman. *Der Götze*, idol. *Der Grāf*, count. *Der Hāgestolz*, an old bachelor. *Der Hase*, hare. *Der Heide*, heathen. *Der Held*, hero. *Der Hirt*, herdsman. *Der Jude*, jew. *Der Junge*, *der Knabe*, boy. *Der Laïe*, layman. *Der Matrōse*, sailor. *Der Mensch*, man. *Der Mohr*, moor. *Der Narr*, *der Thōr*, fool. *Der Rabe*, raven. *Der Riese*, giant. *Der Schütze*, shooter. *Der Sklave*, slave. *Der Sprosse*, sprout. *Der Unterthan*, subject. *Der Verwandte*, kinsman. *Der Vōrfahr*, predecessor. *Der Zeuge*, witness.

Observations.

1. The substantives masculine ending in *e* belong for the most part to the sixth declension. Many of them are names of nations. Examples: *Der Böhme*; *der Britte*; *der Celte*; *der Däne*; *der Franke*; *der Franzōse*; *der Gothe*; *der Grieche*; *der Hesse*; *der Pole*; *der Portugīese*; *der Preusse*; *der Russe*; *der Sachse*; *der Schwede*; *der Türke*.

2. The adjectives masculine and neuter, when they are employed as substantives, are declined after the sixth declension. For instance: *Der Weise*, the wise man. *Ein Weiser*, a wise man; *eines Weisen*, of a wise man; *einem Weisen*, to a wise man; *einen Weisen*, a wise man. *Der Zehnte*, tithe. *Das Erhabene im Schreiben*, the sublime in writing. *Das Beste des Landes*, the good of the country.

3. According to the sixth declension are also declined the foreign words, which end in *ach*, *ak*, *ant*,

ant, aph, ar, arch, ard, ast, at, ent, et, ik, inz, ist, it, og, oph, ot, uck, ur, and have the accent on the final syllable. Examples: *Der Wallách*; der Kosāk; der Polāk; der Tyránn; der Diamánt; der Elephánt; der Trabánt; der Paragrāph; der Barbār; der Bulgār; der Husār; der Monárch; der Patriárch; der Leopárd; der Dynást; der Advocāt; der Candidāt; der Croāt; der Soldāt; der Dissidént; der Präsidént; der Regént; der Studént; der Poēt; der Prophēt; der Katholik; der Prinz; der Atheist; der Christ; der Pietist; der Eremit; der Israelit; der Philosóph; der Theolōg; der Idiót; der Patriót; der Kalmück; der Pandūr.*

4. *Der Sēraph* is declined after the first declension. When the word *Christ* is a proper name, it has in the genitive *Christs*, in the dative *Christen*, and in the plural *Christe.*

5. The word *Herr*, master, belongs also to the sixth declension. But instead of *des Herren, dem Herren, den Herren*, they say *des Herrn, dem Herrn, den Herrn.* In the plural number the vowel *e* is not suppressed. They say, consequently, *die Herren.*

Seventh declension.

The seventh declension contains only feminine substantives. They terminate in *ahl, ahn, al, ar, ät, au, cht, d, de, e, ee, ei, eit, el, er, eu, heit, ie, in, keit, m, rt, schaft, tung, ur.* Examples: *Die Anzahl*, number. *Die Bahn*, path, way. *Die Quāl*, torment. *Die Schār (Schaar)*, troop. *Die Universität*, university. *Die Frau*, woman. *Die Absicht*, intention. *Die Andacht*, devotion. *Die Gegend*, country. *Die Tugend*, virtue. *Die Freude*, joy. *Die Seide*, silk. *Die Seite*, side. *Die Armēe*, army. *Die See*, sea. *Die Lumperei*, trifle. *Die Zeit*, time. *Die Wachtel*, quail. *Die Ader*, vein. *Die Scheu*, fear. *Die Krankheit*, sickness. *Die Akademīe*, academy. *Die Schäferin*, shepherdess. *Die Süfsigkeit*, sweetness. *Die Schām*, shame. *Die Art*, manner. *Die Antwort*, answer. *Die Feindschaft*, enmity. *Die Gestalt*, shape. *Die*

* Another word is *der Wállach*, 1. gelding.

Welt, world. *Die Tröstung*, consolation. *Die Spūr*, trace. *Die Uhr*, watch.

The singular number of the substantives of the seventh declension is subject to no variation. In all the cases of the plural number an *n* is added to the nominative singular, when it terminates in *e*. But when the nominative singular ends in another vowel, or in *ei*, *eu*, or in a consonant, the syllable *en* is added to it in all the plural cases. The words ending in *el* or *er* add only an *n* to the nominative singular in the plural number. When one of the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, occurs in the last syllable of the singular of the substantives, which belong to the seventh declension, this vowel remains unchanged in the plural.

Examples:

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Die Taube*, the pigeon;	Nom.	*Die Tauben*, the pigeons;
Gen.	*der Taube*, of the pigeon:	Gen.	*der Tauben*, of the pigeons;
Dat.	*der Taube*, to the pigeon;	Dat.	*den Tauben*, to the pigeons;
Acc.	*die Taube*, the pigeon.	Acc.	*die Tauben*, the pigeons.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Die Feder*, the pen;	Nom.	*Die Federn*, the pens;
Gen.	*der Feder*, of the pen;	Gen.	*der Federn*, of the pens;
Dat.	*der Feder*, to the pen;	Dat.	*den Federn*, to the pens;
Acc.	*die Feder*, the pen.	Acc.	*die Federn*, the pens.

Observations.

1. The termination *n* or *en* was formerly given to the singular number of the seventh declension. We find remains of it in the following phrases: *auf Erden*, on earth; for *auf der Erde*. *Zu Ehren*, in honour of; for *zu der Ehre*. *Von Seiten*, on the part of; for *von der Seite*. *Mit Freuden*, joyfully. *Vor Freuden*, for joy. *Zu Schanden werden*, to be disgracefully disappointed. That termination is also found in the following compound words: *der Ehrenschänder; ehrenrührig; das Freudenfest; die Höllenfahrt; die Frauenkirche*.

2. They say: *die Rechte; die Linke;* instead of *die rechte Hand*, the right hand; *die linke Hand*, the left hand. These adjectives employed substantively preserve their declension and take, consequently, in the genitive and dative *en*: *der Rechten; der Linken.*

3. The word *die Trübsāl*, tribulation, is declined in the plural number after the first declension: *die Trübsale.* The reason of it is, because the form *das Trübsal* formerly was in use.

4. The words ending in *ee* or *ie* are written in a double manner in the plural cases. For instance: *Die Allee;* in the plural, *die Allee-en* or *Alle-en. Die Harmonie;* in the plural, *die Harmonie-en* or *Harmoni-en.*

Eighth declension.

Also the eighth declension contains only feminine substantives, which end all in a consonant, and likewise are subject to no variation in the singular number. Their plural number is declined after the first declension, and takes, consequently, in the nominative, genitive, and accusative an *e*, and in the dative *en*. When one of the vowels *a*, *au*, *o*, *u*, occurs in the last syllable of the substantives of this declension, they commute these vowels in the plural cases into *ä*, *äu*, *ö*, *ü*.

All the feminine substantives ending in *niss* belong to the eighth declension. For instance: *die Betrübniss*, afflictedness. *Die Hörniss*, hornet. *Die Kenntniss*, knowledge. All the other substantives of the eighth declension, with the exception of some compound words, have only one syllable. Examples: *Die Angst*, anguish. *Die Ankunft*, arrival. *Die Armbrust*, cross-bow. *Die Axt*, axe. *Die Bank*, bench. *Die Braut*, bride. *Die Brunst*, rut. *Die Brust*, breast. *Die Faust*, fist. *Die Gans*, goose. *Die Gruft*, vault. *Die Hand*, hand. *Die Haut*, hide. *Die Kluft*, gulf. *Die Kraft*, power. *Die Kuh*, cow. *Die Kunst*, art. *Die Laus*, louse. *Die Luft*, air. *Die Lust*, lust; delight. *Die Macht*, power. *Die Mägd*, maid. *Die Maus*, mouse. *Die Nacht*, night.

Die Nakt, seam. *Die Nōth*, need. *Die Nuss*, nut. *Die Sau*, sow. *Die Schnūr*, string, lace. *Die Stadt*, town. *Die Wand*, wall. *Die Wurst*, pudding, sausage. *Die Zunft*, guild. But the following substantives, though they have only one syllable, are declined after the seventh declension, and do not change their vowel in the plural number: *Die Birn*, pear. *Die Brūt*, brood. *Die Bûcht*, bay. *Die Cūr*, cure. *Die Fahrt*, conveyance. *Die Flūr*, field. *Die Flūth*, flood. *Die Fôrm*, form. *Die Frâcht*, freight. *Die Glūth*, a vehement fire. *Die Jāgd*, chase. *Die Last*, burthen. *Die List*, cunning. *Die Mark*, the boundary, and a species of coin. *Die Pflicht*, duty. *Die Pracht*, pomp. *Die Post*, post, post-office. *Die Schlacht*, battle. *Die Schrift*, writing. *Die Schuld*, debt. *Die Stirn*, forehead. *Die Thāt*, deed. *Die Trâcht*, the mode of dress. *Die Trift*, pasture. *Die Wahl*, choice.

Example.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Die Frucht*, the fruit;	Nom.	*Die Früchte*, the fruits;
Gen.	*der Frucht*, of the fruit;	Gen.	*der Früchte*, of the fruits;
Dat.	*der Frucht*, to the fruit;	Dat.	*den Früchten*, to the fruits;
Acc.	*die Frucht*, the fruit.	Acc.	*die Früchte*, the fruits.

Observations.

1. The feminine substantives ending in *niss* denote the action itself; but the neuter words terminating in this syllable express that which has been effected by the action. For example: *Er hat sich eine Versäumniss zu Schulden kommen lassen*, that is, *er hat Etwas versäumt*. He has rendered himself guilty of a neglection, he has neglected something. *Er ist verantwortlich für das Versäumniss des heutigen Tages*. He is accountable for that which has been neglected by him to day. *Die Erkenntniss* signifies knowledge, and *das Erkenntniss* the cognizance.

2. When the word *die Bank* signifies a bank,

where pecuniary concerns are transacted, it has in the plural number *die Banken.*

3. When the word *die Sau* denotes the female of a wild boar, it has not in the plural number *die Säue*, but *die Sauen.*

Of the declension of proper names.

There are five ways of declining proper names.

I.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Friedrich*, Frederic;	Nom.	*Die Friedriche*, the Fredericks;
Gen.	*Friedrichs*, of Frederic;	Gen.	*der Friedriche*, of the Fredericks;
Dat.	*Friedrichen*, to Frederic;	Dat.	*den Friedrichen*, to the Fredericks;
Acc.	*Friedrichen*, Frederic.	Acc.	*die Friedriche*, the Fredericks.

In this manner are declined all the proper names of men, which do not end in a vowel, and in *al, ar, el, en, er, o, or, ur;* the names of men, which are composed of *Mann;* and the names of women ending in *d, g, th.* Examples: *Adolf; Albert; August*; Bārth; Catūll; Ernst; Christ; Franz; Fritz; Opitz; Fuchs; Gellert; Wieland; Georg; Heinrich; Joseph; Kant; Kirsch; Klaus; Lessing; Lucān; Max; Pfaff; Pitt; Schütz; Theophrast; Virgīl; Wilhelm; Wolf; Zahn; Zopf; Ackermann; Adelheid; Gertrud; Hedwig; Elisabeth.* Also the proper names of men ending in *e* are declined after *Friedrich.* Their plural does not differ from their singular. For instance: *Göthe, Göthes, Göthen, die Göthe.* When the syllable *er* has the accent, the proper name ending in it is also declined after *Heinrich.* For example: *Homēr; Homers; Homeren; die Homere.* As for the proper names of men terminating in *anz, aus, che, itz, pf, sch, ss, x, z,* they

* This word has the accent on the first syllable, when it is the Christian name: or when it signifies the name of the eighth month. But when it denotes the name of the first Roman emperor, it has the accent on the last syllable.

take the two letters *es* in the genitive case: *Franzes*; Klauses; Fritzes; Opitzes; Fuchses; Zopfes; Kirsches; Vosses; Maxes; Schulzes.* The names *Terénz, Horāz, Propérz* take likewise *es* in the genitive case. They have, consequently, in this case *Terenzes; Horazes; Properzes***. The addition of the simple *s* would here create an offensive harshness. It must yet be observed, that proper names do not change their vowel in the plural number.

II.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. *Peter*, Peter;	Nom. *Die Peter*, the Peters;
Gen. *Peters*. of Peter;	Gen. *der Peter*, of the Peters;
Dat. *Peter*n, to Peter;	Dat. *den Peter*n, to the Peters;
Acc. *Peter*, Peter.	Acc. *die Peter*, the Peters.

Thus are declined the proper names of men, which end in *el, en, er*. Examples: *Daniel; Degen; Asien; Luther.*

III.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. *Cāspar*, Caspar;	Nom. *Die Caspars*, the Caspars;
Gen. *Caspars*, of Caspar;	Gen. *der Caspars*, of the Caspars;
Dat. *Caspar*n, to Caspar;	Dat. *den Caspar*n, to the Caspars;
Acc. *Caspar*, Caspar.	Acc. *die Caspars*, the Caspars.

In this manner are declined, besides some names of women ending in *o*, the proper names of men, which terminate in *a, i, o, al, ar, or, ur*. Examples: *Dido; Sappho; Hannibal; Karl; Amor; Timur*. As to the proper names of men ending in *a* or *o*, they take, according to the rule, an *s* in the genitive, and an *n* in the dative and accusative singular; but they may also be declined with the definite article. For instance: *Catilina; Catilinas* or

* But it must be said: *die Tugenden Frans des Ersten*, the virtues of Francis the first.

** The forms *Terenzens, Horazens, Properzens*, must not be used.

des Catilina; dem Catilina; den Catilina. Cicero; Ciceron or *des Cicero; Ciceron* or *dem Cicero; Ciceron* or *den Cicero.* The form *dem Cicero* and *den Cicero* is preferable to the form *Ciceron.* Instead of *Didon, Sapphon,* in the dative and accusative cases, it is better to employ the article: *der Dido, die Dido; der Sappho, die Sappho.*

IV.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Sophia,* Sophia;	Nom.	*Die Sophien,* the Sophias;
Gen.	*Sophias, Sophiens, der Sophia,* of Sophia;	Gen.	*der Sophien,* of the Sophias;
Dat.	*Sophien, der Sophia,* to Sophia;	Dat.	*den Sophien,* to the Sophias;
Acc.	*Sophien, die Sophia,* Sophia.	Acc.	*die Sophien,* the Sophias.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Clementine,* Clementina;	Nom.	*Die Clementinen,* the Clementinas;
Gen.	*Clementinens,* of Clementina;	Gen.	*der Clementinen,* of the Clementinas;
Dat.	*Clementinen,* to Clementina;	Dat.	*den Clementinen,* to the Clementinas;
Acc.	*Clementinen,* Clementina.	Acc.	*die Clementinen,* the Clementinas.

In this manner are declined the proper names of women, which end in *a* or *e.* Examples: *Anna; Aspasia; Diana; Eleonorā; Flora; Ida; Laura; Chloe; Daphne; Friederike; Wilhelmine.* As to the proper names *Africa* and *America,* they take only an *s* in the genitive, and in the other cases they remain unvaried. Also the word *Jehovā* is declined after *Sophia.* The proper names of countries and towns ending in *a,* which are of the neuter gender, remain unvaried, except in the genitive, where they take an *s.* For instance: *Achaja, Achajas; Sparta, Spartas.*

V.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Solon,* Solon;	Nom.	*Die Solone,* the Solons;
Gen.	*Solons,* of Solon;	Gen.	*der Solone,* of the Solons;

Dat.	*Solon*, to Solon;	Dat.	*den Solonen*, to the Solons;
Acc.	*Solon*, Solon.	Acc.	*die Solone*, the Solons.

After this word are declined all the proper names of men, which end in *qm*, *an*, *on*, and many names of countries and towns. Examples: *Abraham; Antōn; Quintilīān; Deutschland; England; Holland; Russland; Dänemark; Frankreich; Athen; Hamburg; Leipzig; London; Rom.* In the same manner the plural number of the proper names, which terminate in *o*, is commonly declined. They say consequently: *die Catone; die Cicerone;* instead of *die Catos; die Ciceros.* As for the proper name *Otto*, it is declined after *Solon*, when it denotes the name of the German emperors. But when it signifies the Christian name, it is declined after *Caspar*, and has, consequently, in the genitive *Ottōs*, in the dative and accusative singular *Otton*, and in the plural number *die Ottos.*

Observations.

1. The genitive case of the proper names of towns ending in *s* or *z* is formed by putting the preposition *von* before their nominative. For instance: *die Einwohner von Parīs, von Mainz*, the inhabitants of Paris, of Mainz.

2. The declension of the proper names of men, which end in *as, es, eus, os, us*, is only formed by the definite article. For instance: *Alcibiades; des Alcibiades;* &c. Most names of those endings are from the Greek or Latin. In the following instance the Latin termination of the genitive is used: *die Leiden Christi*, the sufferings of Christ.

3. The names of countries and rivers, which are of the feminine gender, are declined according to the seventh declension. They are declined with the definite article. For example: *die Schweiz; die Elbe;* &c. All the other proper names, which are used with the definite article, are declined after the declension, to which they belong.

4. When proper names are declined with the

definite article, they remain unvaried in the oblique cases, that is to say, in the genitive, dative, and accusative. It must, consequently, be said: *die Ilias des Homer; die Aeneis des Virgil;* instead of *Homers Ilias; Virgils Aeneis;* which mode of speaking is more usual.

5. When a substantive, having the article, stands before a proper name, the latter remains undeclined. For instance: *des Kaisers Joseph,* of the Emperor Joseph. But if the substantive is not attended with the article, the proper name is declined. For example: *König Friedrichs Siege,* king Frederic's victories. It is, however, better said: *die Siege des Königs Friedrich.*

6. When the surname is preceded by one or more Christian names, the surname only is declined. Examples: *Johann Georg Heinrich Féders Schriften,* the writings of John George Henry Feder. *Ewald Christian von Kleists Gedichte,* the poems of Ewald Christian of Kleist.

7. An appellative, being in apposition to a proper name, must be put in the same case. For instance: *das Lêben Karls des Zwölften, Königs von Schweden,* the life of Charles the twelfth, king of Sweden. It appears at the same time by this example, that the genitive case must sometimes be expressed by the preposition *von.* Yet one instance is the following: *die Könige von England,* for *Englands Könige,* the kings of England.

8. In the genitive case of the proper names ending in *a* or *o* the apostrophe is used by many Germans. But this practice is not to be imitated, the apostrophe being here unnecessary.

9. The accusative of the proper names is always used without the article, when it denotes only the name of any person. *Ich habe Schillern viermāl geséhen,* I have seen Schiller four times. But when by the name of any man at the same time are signified the works he has written, the article is added to the accusative. *Ich lêse den Homer, den Virgil,*

den Schiller mit Vergnügen. I read Homer, Virgil, Schiller with pleasure.

10. When the names of countries, towns, and villages are preceded by an appellative, they remain unvaried. *Das Herzogthum Sachsen*, the dutchy of Saxony; *des Herzogthumes Sachsen*, of the dutchy of Saxony. *Der Monat März*, the month of March; *des Monates März.*

Section IV.

On the use of the cases of the German substantives.

1.

On the use of the nominative case.

The Germans put in the following and similar instances two nominatives, of which the latter in English must stand in the genitive case: *ein Glas Wasser*, a glass of water. *Ein Sack Wolle*, a sack of wool. *Ein Stück Brōt*, a piece of bread. *Eine Hérde Schafe*, a flock of sheep. *Eine Menge Fische*, a quantity of fish. *Zéhn Ellen Tūch*, ten yards of cloth. *Ein Regiment Soldaten*, a regiment of soldiers. The genitive, however, takes place, when to the second substantive is joined an adjective or a pronoun. For example: *ein Regiment guter Soldaten*, a regiment of good soldiers. *Ein Gericht schöner Fische*, a dish of fine fish. *Zehn Ellen dieses Tuches*, ten yards of this cloth. The genitive case is also used in the following examples. *Eine Summe Geldes*, a sum of money. *Ein Haufen Goldes*, a heap of gold. *Eine Menge Volks*, a crowd of people.

Two or more substantives, forming an apposition, are put in the same case. For example: *der König, unser Freund und Vater*, the king, our friend and father. The two last substantives, determining the first word, stand in the same case with it.

2.

On the use of the genitive case.

The genitive case is used in the following in-

stances absolutely, that is to say, without being governed by any other word: *Anfangs; des Abends* or *Abends; des Morgens* or *Morgens; Mittags; Montags; Dienstags; heutiges Tages; meines Erachtens; meines Wissens; unverrichteter Sache; stehenden Fūßes; gerades Weges; ich meines Ortes; ich meines Theiles; dieses Ortes; aller Orten; gehörigen Ortes.*

The governing word, though put after the genitive, keeps sometimes the article. But then the genitive is deprived of it. For instance: *Volks die Menge*, a multitude of people. *Freude die Fülle*, abundance of joy. It must yet be observed, that the genitive stands before the adjectives, by which it is governed. For example: *des Lobes würdig*, worthy of praise.

It is a fault to put a substantive, instead of the genitive, in the dative and to add *sein* or *ihr*. For instance: *meinem Vater sein Garten*, for *meines Vaters Garten. Meiner Schwester ihr Kleid*, for *meiner Schwester Kleid.*

The genitive case is frequently supplied by a preposition. Examples: *den Schein von Redlichkeit haben*, instead of *den Schein der Redlichkeit haben*, to have the appearance of honesty. *Ein Herr von hohem Adel, von alter Herkunft*, instead of *ein Herr hohen Adels, alter Herkunft*, a gentleman of high nobility, of ancient origin. *Einer von meinen Freunden*, instead of *einer meiner Freunde*, a friend of mine. Also a preposition is used to avoid the repetition of the same endings, or to render the meaning of the phrase perspicuous. Examples: *die Ursache von dem sonderbaren Betragen des Mannes*, instead of *die Ursache des sonderbaren Betragens des Mannes*, the reason of the singular conduct of the man. *Die Liebe zu Gott*, the love to God, for *die Liebe Gottes*, the love of God. But when the genitive case renders the meaning of the phrase perfectly clear, it is a fault to employ a preposition. It must, consequently, be said, instead of *der Verfasser von den Büchern, der Verfasser der Bücher*, the author of the books; instead of *die Classiker*

von Deutschland, die Classiker Deutschlandes, the classics of Germany.

The dative is sometimes used in English, where in German the genitive is employed. Examples: *Ich bin ein Freund der Wahrheit, und ein Feind der Falschheit.* I am a friend to truth, and an enemy to falsehood. *Er ist ein Sklave seiner Leidenschaften.* He is a slave to his passions. *Er ist Geheimschreiber des Herzogs.* He is secretary to the duke. *Ein Vater der Armen,* a father to the poor.

3.

On the use of the dative case.

The dative has its place after the verb, and if there be an objective case, before this case. *Er giebt dem Manne das Buch.* He gives the book to the man. The dative *dem Manne* here stands between the verb and the object. When the dative is to be marked with an emphasis, it is moved from its place, either before the verb, or after the object. *Dem Manne giebt er das Buch. Er giebt das Buch dem Manne.* The first position is the most powerful; the second does not so much alter the force of the sentence. If the object be a monosyllable, and the dative case consist of more syllables, the former is put first, because a long word finishes the sentence better than a short one. For instance: *Er sagte es dem Vater.* He told it to the father. *Es* is the object, and comes before the dative.

4.

On the use of the accusative case.

This case is employed to mark time both as to date and duration. Examples: *vorigen Dienstag,* last tuesday. *Den zehnten Tag nach der Schlacht,* the tenth day after the battle. *Den neunten Julius,* the ninth of July. *Dreimal die Woche,* thrice a week. *Ich werde noch einen Monat in der Stadt bleiben.* I shall remain yet a month in town. *Ich bin den ganzen Tag zu Hause gewesen.* I have been at

home the whole day. *Verweilen Sie zwei Augenblicke.* Stay two moments.

The accusative case follows after certain adjectives and verbs, signifying weight, measure, extent, age, price, value. Examples: *Es wiegt zwei Pfund.* It weighs two pounds. *Einen Fūss breit*, a foot broad. *Einen Monat alt*, a month old. *Dieses Buch kostet blos einen Thaler.* This book costs only one dollar.

The accusative case is also used to express space and motion. *Ich werde einen langen Wēg gehen.* I shall go a long way. *Er geht einen guten Schritt.* He walks a good pace. *Den Berg hinunter laufen*, to run down the mountain.

The accusative case is put after the verb. *Ich liebe meinen Freund.* I love my friend. When a stress is laid upon the accusative case, it is placed in the beginning of the sentence. *Den Homēr lēse ich mit Bewunderung.* Homer I read with admiration.

Section V.

Exercises on the German substantives.

I.

The temple of Diana at Ephesus was one of the seven wonders of the world. The situation of Hamburgh is advantageous for trade. We are insensibly trained on from one vice to another. Charon transported the shades in a boat over the Styx. Women entertain themselves very often with trifles. Francis the first, king of France, was the implacable enemy of the emperor Charles V. Some excellent authors have written upon the right use of human life. This book is written for the use of all who wish to learn the German language. Göthe, one of the most eminent German authors, has written in his youth the Sorrows of young Werther.

* The temple, *der Tempel*, 4. of Diana, *der Diana*, at Ephesus, *zu Ephesus.* was, *war.*

* In order to construe the phrases in the translation, the words must be exactly placed in the same order, in which they stand in the vocabulary.

one, *eines*.
of, *von*; a preposition, which governs the dative.
seven, *sieben*.
the wonder, *das Wunder*, 4.
the world, *die Welt*, 7.
the situation, *die Lage*, 7.
Hamburgh, *Hamburg*.
is, *ist*.
advantageous, *vórtheilhaft*.
for, *für*; a preposition, which governs the accusative.
trade, *der Handel*, 4.
we are, *wir wérden*.
insensibly, *unvermerkt*.
from, *von*.
one, *ein, eine, ein*.
vice, *das Laster*, 4.
to another, *zum andern*.
trained on, *fórtgerissen*.
transported, *führte*.
the shade, *der Schatten*, 4.
in, *in*. *In* and *über* (over) govern the dative on the question: *quo loco (wo)?* and the accusative on the question: *in quem locum (wohin)?*
the boat, *das Boot*, 1. In the plural, *die Böte*.
over, *über*.
the Styx, *der Styx*, 1.
woman, *das Frauenzimmer*, 4. *die Frau*, 7.
entertain themselves, *unterhálten sich*.
very often, *sehr oft*.
with, *mit*. *Mit* is a preposition, which governs the dative.
trifle, *die Kleinigkeit*, 7.
Francis the first, *Franz der Erste*, 6.
king of France, *König von Frankreich*.
the implacable enemy, *der unversöhnliche Feind*, 1.
the emperor, *der Kaiser*, 4.
Charles V., *Karl der Fünfte*, 6.
some excellent, *einige vortreffliche*.
author, *der Schriftsteller*, 4.
have, *haben*.
upon, *über*, with the accusative.
right, *rechten*.
the use, *der Gebrauch*, 1.
of human, *des menschlichen*.
life, *das Lében*, 4.
written, *geschrieben*.
this book, *dieses Büch*, 2.
for the, *zum* (instead of *zu dem*).
of all who, *Aller, welche*.
the German language, *die deutsche Sprache*, 7.
to learn, *zu lernen*.
wish, *wünschen*.
one of the most eminent German, *einer der ausgezeichnetsten deutschen*.
has, *hat*.
in his, *in seiner*.
youth, *die Jugend*, 7.
the sorrow, *das Leiden*, 4.
of young, *des jungen*.

II.

They speak every where with great regard of the excellent governor of my brother. The poor lamb struggled under the knife of the butcher. I have surrendered all my goods to my creditors. He wore a seal-ring on his finger. Unheard of crimes were committed in France. Goldsmith is the author of the Vicar of Wakefield. The days are short in winter. I have put him to silence. In the time of

Augustus the Romans stood on the pitch of their glory.

They speak, *man spricht.*
every where, *überáll.*
with great, *mit grōſser.*
regard, *die Áchtung*, 7.
of, *von.*
the governor, *der Hōfmeister*, 4.
of my, *meines.*
the poor lamb, *das arme Lamm*, 2.
struggled, *sträubte sich.*
under, *unter*; a preposition, which governs the dative on the question: *quo loco (wo)?*
the knife, *das Messer*, 4.
the butcher, *der Fleischer*, 4.
I have, *ich habe.*
all my, *alle meine.*
good, *das Gūt*, 2.
to my, *meinen.*
the creditor, *der Gläubiger*, 4.
surrendered, *überlässen.*
he wore, *er trūg.*
the seal-ring, *der Siegelring*, 1.
on his, *an seinem.*
the finger, *der Finger*, 4.
Unheard of, *unerhörte.*
the crime, *das Verbrechen*, 4.
were, *wurden.*
in France, *in Frankreich.*
committed, *begangen.*
the author, *der Verfasser*, 4.
the vicar, *der Dórfprediger*, 4.
of, *von.*
the day, *der Tag*, 1.
are, *sind.*
short, kurz.
in, *im* (instead of *in dem*).
winter, *der Winter*, 4.
him, *ihn.*
to, *zum* (instead of *zu dem*).
silence, *das Schweigen*, 4.
put, *gebracht.*
in the, *zur* (instead of *zu der*).
Zu governs the dative case.
the time, *die Zeit*, 7.
stood, *standen.*
the Roman, *der Römer*, 4.
on, *auf*, with the dative.
the pitch, *der Gipfel*, 4.
of their, *ihres.*
glory, *der Ruhm*, 1.

III.

A forest is very pleasant in the heat of summer. The preservation of our life requires meat and drink. A good boy follows the advice of his prudent father. Learned men carry their best treasures about them. My spaniel entertained us for a time with many of his tricks, which I had taught him. The heads of those girls were tricked with flowers. Can you play with such trifles? Her folly repels me, while her charms attract me. The hand of death is upon him. He killed her upon a mere suspicion. The rose yields a very agreeable smell. That is not to my taste. They have won him by presents.

A forest, *ein Wald*, 2.
very pleasant, *sehr ángenéhm.*
the heat, *die Hitze*, 7.
summer, *der Sommer*, 4.
the preservation, *die Erhaltung*, 7.
of our, *unsers.*
requires, *erfordert.*

meat and drink, *Speise und Trank.*
a good boy, *ein guter Knabe*, 6.
follows, *befolgt.*
the advice, *der Rath*, 1.
of his prudent, *seines verständigen.*
the father, *der Vater*, 4.
learned men, *die Gelehrten.*
carry, tragen.
their best, *ihre besten.*
the treasure, *der Schatz*, 1.
about them, *bei sich.*
my spaniel, *mein Pudel*, 4.
entertained, *unterhielt.*
us, *uns.*
for a time, *eine Zeit lang.*
with many of his, *mit vielen seiner.*
the trick, *das Kunststück*, 1.
which I, *die ich.*
him, *ihm.*
taught, *gelehrt.*
had, *hatte.*
the head, *der Kopf*, 1.
of those, *jener.*
the girl, *das Mädchen*, 4.
were, *waren.*
with, *mit.*
a flower, *eine Blume*, 7.
tricked, *geschmückt.*
can you, *können Sie.*
with such, *mit solchem.*
the trifles, *das Puppenwerk*, 1.
play, *spielen.*
her folly, *ihre Thorheit*, 7.
repels me, *treibt mich zurück.*
while, *während.*
me, *mich.*
her, *ihre.*
the charm, *der Reiz*, 1.
attract, *anziehen.*
the hand, *die Hand*, 8.
death, *der Tod*, 1.
is upon him, *liegt auf ihm.*
he killed her, *er tödtete sie.*
upon, *aus*, with the dative.
mere, *bloßem.*
suspicion, *der Verdacht*, 1.
the rose, *die Rose*, 7.
yields, *giebt von sich. Von sich* must stand at the end of the sentence.
very, *sehr.*
agreeable, *angenehmen.*
smell, *der Geruch*, 1.
that, *(jenes) dieses.*
to, *nach*, with the dative.
my, *meinem.*
taste, *der Geschmack*, 1.
they have, *sie haben.*
him, *ihn.*
by, *durch*, with the accusative.
the present, *das Geschenk*, 1.
won, *gewonnen.*

IV.

The subject of this tragedy is taken from the bible. In every part of our body is air. I live; but animals live likewise. The butterflies live only one year. Trees and stones do not live. God has endowed my sons with eminent talents. The courage of lions does them less honour than their generosity. Princes often love flatterers, and flatterers often deceive princes. The diamonds were all rough. Geography and chronology are the two eyes of history. The Germans have many writers of merit. Wise princes love their subjects. The tongue is the interpreter of our thoughts. We owe obedience to our

superiors. The flesh of horses is only fit to satiate wolves and ravens. Whole droves of vigorous cows obey the commands of the shepherd. Reason is implanted in the soul of man. The elephants are docile. This accident weakened the resolution of our soldiers.

The subject, *der Gégenstand*, 1.
of this, *dieses*.
tragedy, *das Trauerspiel*, 1.
from, *aus*, with the dative.
the bible, *die Bibel*, 7.
taken, *genommen*.
in every, *in jedem*.
the part, *der Theil*, 1.
of our, *unsers*.
the body, *der Körper*, 4.
the air, *die Luft*, 8.
I live, *ich lébe*.
but, *aber*.
animal, *das Thier*, 1.
live likewise, *leben auch*.
the butterfly, *der Schmetterling*, 1.
only, *blófs*.
one, *Ein*.
the year, *das Jahr*, 1.
the tree, *der Baum*, 1.
the stone, *der Stein*, 1.
do not live, *leben nicht*.
God, *Gótt*.
my, *meine*.
the son, *der Sohn*, 1.
with eminent, *mit hervorragenden*.
the talent, *das Talent*, 1.
endowed, *begábt*.
the courage, *der Muth*, 1.
the lion, *der Löwe*, 6.
does them less honour, *macht ihnen weniger Ehre*.
than their generosity, *als ihre Grósmuth*.
the prince, *der Fürst*, 6.
love, *lieben*.
often, *oft*.
the flatterer, *der Schmeichler*, 1.
deceive, *hintergéhen*.
the diamond, *der Diamánt*, 6.
were all, *waren alle*.
rough, *ungeschliffen*.
geography, *die Erdbeschreibung*, 7.
chronology, *die Zeitrechnung*, 7.
are, *sind*.
two, *zwei*.
the eye, *das Auge*, 3.
history, *die Geschichte*, 7.
the German, *der Deutsche*, 6.
many, *viele*.
the writer, *der Schriftsteller*, 4.
of merit, *von Verdienst*.
wise, *weise*.
their, *ihre*.
the subject, *der Unterthán*, 6.
the tongue, *die Zunge*, 7.
the interpreter, *der Dólmetscher*, 4.
of our, *unserer*.
the thought, *der Gedanke*, 5.
we owe, *wir sind schuldig*. *Schuldig* must be put after the word *superiors*.
the obedience, *der Gehórsam*, 1.
to our, *unseren*.
the superior, *der Vórgesetzte*, 6.
the flesh, *das Fleisch*, 1.
the horse, *das Pférd*, 1.
is only fit, *ist blofs tauglich*, *taugt blofs*.
the wolf, *der Wolf*, 1.
the raven, *der Rabe*, 6.
to satiate, *zu sättigen*.
whole, *ganze*.
the drove, *die Hérde*, 7.
of vigorous, *starker*.
the cow, *die Kuh*, 8.
obey, *gehorchen*, with the dative.
the command, *der Befékl*, 1.
the shepherd, *der Hirt*, 6.
reason, *die Vernunft*, 8.
the soul, *die Seele*, 7.

implanted, *eingepflanzt, gelegt.*
the elephant, *der Elephant*, 6.
docile, *gelehrig.*
this accident, *dieser Vorfall*, 1.
weakened, *schwächte.*
the resolution, *die Entschlossenheit*, 7. *der Muth*, 1.
of our, *unserer.*
the soldier, *der Soldat*, 6.

V.

A delicacy of taste is favourable to love and friendship, by confining our choice to few people, and making us indifferent to the company and conversation of the greater part of men. Love is seldom the friend of virtue. It is a thing incomprehensible, that so few well-matched couples are seen; and that persons endued with so many uncommon accomplishments, who make the joy and pleasure of all companies, live together only, to make one another unhappy. The very things, of which we are apprehensive, often become the cause of happiness of a prudent person, who places his reliance on Providence. The first of all sciences is that which shows how to live. When we are sick, we learn to know the value of health. Plants are possessed of their qualities. All times have produced men of distinguished merit. Women are the most charming class of society. They comfort us in every situation of life, raise our minds, constitute our happiness, and have no other vices besides those which we communicate to them. I may easily do an injury to my limbs. An ox serves man with its flesh, its skin, and its horns. It is always for the good of children, when their parents punish them.

A delicacy of taste, *ein feiner Geschmack*, 1.
love, *die Liebe*, 7.
friendship, *die Freundschaft*, 7.
favourable, *günstig.*
by confining, *weil er einschränkt. Einschränkt* must be put after the word *people.*
our, *unsere.*
the choice, *die Wahl*, 7.
to few people, *auf wenige Menschen.*
and making us, *und weil er uns macht. Macht* must be put after the word *man.*
indifferent, *gleichgiltig.*
to, *gegen*, with the accusative.
the company, *die Gesellschaft*, 7.
the conversation, *der Umgang*, 1.
of the greater, *des grösseren.*
the part, *der Theil*, 1.
seldom, *selten.*
the friend, *die Freundin*, 7.
virtue, *die Tugend*, 7.
it is, *es ist.*

incomprehensible, *unbegreifliche.*
a thing, *eine Sache*, 7.
that, *dass.*
so few well-matched, *so wenige passende.*
the couple, *das Ehepaar*, 1. In the plural, *die Ehepaare.*
are seen, *gesehen wêrden.*
with so many uncommon, *mit so vielen seltenen.*
the accomplishment, *die Vôllkommenheit*, 7. *der Vôrzug*, 1. In the plural *die Vorzüge.*
endued, *begâbte, geschmückte.*
the person, *die Persôn*, 7.
who, *welche.*
the joy, *die Freude*, 7.
the pleasure, *das Wôhlgefallen*, 4.
of all, *aller.*
make, *machen.*
live together only, *blôß zusammen lêben.*
to make one another unhappy, *um einander unglücklich zu machen.*
the very, *gerade die.*
the thing, *das Ding*, 1.
of which we are apprehensive, *vôr welchen wir uns fürchten.*
often become, *wêrden oft.*
the cause, *die Ursache*, 7. *die Quelle*, 7.
happiness, *die Glückseligkeit*, 7.
of a prudent, *einer verständigen.*
who, *welche.*
his, *ihre.*
the reliance, *die Zûversicht*, 7. *das Vertrauen*, 4.
on, *auf*; with the accusative.
Providence, *die Vôrsehung*, 7.
places, *setzt.*
the first, *die êrste.*
of all, *aller.*
science, *die Wissenschaft*, 7.
that, *diejenige, die.*
which shows, *welche zeigt.*
how to live, *wie wir lêben sollen.*
when, *wenn.*
we, *wir.*
sick, *krank.*
are, *sind.*
we learn, *dann lernen wir.*
the value, *der Wêrth*, 1.
health, *die Gesundheit*, 7.
to know, *kennen.*
plant, *die Pflanze*, 7.
are possessed, *besitzen, haben*, with the accusative.
their, *ihre.*
the quality, *die Eigenschaft*, 7.
all, *alle.*
time, *die Zeit*, 7.
have, *haben.*
a man, *ein Mann*, 2.
of distinguished merit, *von ausgezeichneten Verdiensten.*
produced, *hervôrgebracht.*
woman, *die Frau*, 7. *das Weib*, 2.
the most charming class, *die bezauberndste, die reizendste, die anziehendste Classe.*
society, *die Gesellschaft*, 7.
they comfort, *sie stärken, sie erquicken, sie trösten.*
us, *uns.*
in every, *in jeder.*
situation, *die Lage*, 7.
life, *das Lêben*, 4.
raise, *erheben.*
our, *unsere.*
mind, *das Gemüth*, 2.
constitute, *machen.*
our, *unser.*
happiness, *das Glück*, 1.
and have, *und haben.*
no other, *keine andern.*
a vice, *ein Fehler*, 4.
besides those which, *ausser denen, welche.*
we communicate to them, *wir ihnen mittheilen.*
I may, *ich kann.*
easily, *leicht.*
to my, *meinen*; dative.
the limb, *das Glied*, 2.
do an injury, *eine Verletzung zufügen.*

an ox, *ein Ochs*, 6.
serves, *dient*; with the dative.
man, *der Mensch*, 6.
with its, *mit seinem*.
the flesh, *das Fleisch*, 1.
its, *seinem*.
the skin, *das Fell*, 1.
its, *seinen*.
the horn, *das Horn*, 2.
it is always, *es geschieht immer*.
for the good, *zum Besten*.
the child, *das Kind*, 2.
when their parents punish them, *wenn ihre Ältern sie bestrafen*.

VI.

The warm countries of Europe give birth to the generous olive-tree. Philosophy is a noble science. A brave and generous man never fights for an unjust cause. Man is not the sport of a blind destiny. He who has no tear for the griefs of a friend, is unworthy of the title of a man. I made him a present of a coat. Give me some paper, pens, and ink. I want to write some letters, that they may send me some money. When I have done writing, bring me some books. The grand dutchy of Tuscany produces much corn, wine, oil, silk, cotton, and brimstone. Your brother lately said to my eldest sister, on presenting a nosegay to her: Handsome girls are like fine flowers. Their beauty lasts but a very short time.

The warm, *die warmen*.
the country, *das Land*, 2.
Europe, *Europa*.
give birth, *sind das Vaterland*.
to the generous, *des edlen*.
the olive-tree, *der Ölbaum*, 1.
philosophy, *die Philosophie*, 7.
noble, *edle*.
science, *die Wissenschaft*, 7.
brave, *wackerer*.
generous, *edler*.
man, *der Mann*, 2.
never fights, *kämpft niemals*.
for, *für*; with the accusative.
unjust, *ungerechte*.
the cause, *die Sache*, 7.
man, *der Mensch*, 6.
the sport, *das Spiel*, 1.
blind, *blinden*.
destiny, *das Verhängniss*, 1.
he who, *dér, welcher*.
no tear, *keine Thräne*.
the griefs, *der Kummer*, 4.
the friend, *der Freund*, 1.
has, *hat*.
the title, *der Name*, 5.
unworthy, *únwürdig*.
I made him, *ich machte ihm*.
the present, *das Geschenk*, 1.
of, *mit*; with the dative.
the coat, *der Rock*, 1.
give me, *gében Sie mir*.
some is not expressed in German.
paper, *das Papier*, 1.
the pen, *die Féder*, 7.
ink, *die Tinte*, 7.
I want to, *ich will*.
the letter, *der Brief*, 1.
write, *schreiben*.
that they, *damit man*.
me, *mir*.

money, *das Geld*, 2.
may send, *schicke.*
when I have done writing, *wenn ich geschrieben haben wérde.*
book, *das Büch*, 2.
the grand dutchy, *das Groſs-herzogthum*, 2.
Tuscany, *Toscana.*
produces, *erzeugt.*
much, *viel.*
corn, *das Getreide*, 1.
oil, *das Oel*, 1.
silk, *die Seide*, 7.
cotton, *die Baumwolle*, 7.
brimstone, *der Schwéfel*, 4.
your brother, *Ihr Bruder.*
said, *sägte.*
lately, *neulich.*
to my eldest, *zu meiner ältesten.*
the sister, *die Schwester*, 7.
on presenting to her, *indém er ihr überreichte.*
the nosegay, *der Blumenstrauſs*, 2.
This word must be put before *überreichte.*
handsome *hübsche.*
a girl, *ein Mädchen*, 4.
are like, *gleichen.*
fine, *schönen.*
a flower, *eine Blume*, 7.
their, *ihre.*
beauty, *die Schönheit*, 7.
lasts, *dauert.*
but, *nur.*
very short, *sehr kurze.*
time, *die Zeit*, 7.

VII.

If I had money, say many people, I would do much good to the poor. When one has to do with people who possess judgment and knowledge, and a good heart, one may lay aside those measures of caution, which must be observed with people who do not possess the mentioned qualities. Religion is the strongest tie of human society. The tie of true friendship is indissoluble. Poverty is one of the greatest evils of men. For the poor man is exposed to cold, hunger, and a great number of other inconveniences, which are unknown to the rich. But riches alone do not make a man happy; and he may be poor without being unhappy on that account. The source of true happiness is in the heart of man; and the greatest pleasure consists in the practice of virtue.

If I, *wenn ich.*
money, *das Geld*, 2.
had, *hätte.*
say many people, *sagen viele Leute*, 1.
I would, *so würde ich.*
the poor man, *der Arme*, 6.
much good, *viel Gutes.*
do, *thun, erweisen.*
when one, *wenn man.*
with, *mit.*
people, *Leute.*
who, *welche.*
judgment, der Verstand, 1.
knowledge, *die Einsicht*, 7.
a good, *ein gutes.*

heart, *das Herz*, 5.
possess, *besitzen.*
to do, *zu thun.*
has, *hat.*
one may, *so kann man.*
those, *jene.*
the measure of caution, *die Vorsichtsmafsregel*, 7.
lay aside, *unterlassen.*
which, *welche.*
with, *bei*; with the dative.
who do not possess, *die nicht besitzen.* *Besitzen* must be put after *qualities.*
the mentioned, *die erwähnten.*
the quality, *die Eigenschaft*, 7.
must be observed, *beobachtet wérden müssen.*
religion, *die Religiön*, 7.
the strongest, *das stärkste.*
the tie, *das Band*, 1.
of human, *der menschlichen.*
society, *die Gesellschaft.*
of true, *der wahren.*
friendship, *die Freundschaft*, 7.
indissoluble, *unauflöslich.*
poverty, *die Armuth*, 7.
of the greatest. *der gröfsten.*
the evil, *das Übel*, 4.
man, *der Mensch*, 6.
for, *denn.*
is, *ist.*
cold, *die Kälte*, 7.
hunger, *der Hunger*, 4.
to a great, *einer grofsen.*
the number, *die Menge*, 7.
of other, *anderer.*
the inconvenience, *die Ungemächlichkeit*, 7.
exposed, *aügesetzt.*
which, *welche.*
the rich man, *der Reiche*, 6.
unknown, *unbekannt.*
are, *sind.*
riches, *der Reichthum*, 2.
alone, *allein.*
do not make, *macht nicht.*
happy, *glücklich.*
he may, *er kann.*
poor, *arm.*
be, *seyn*
without, *ohne.*
on that account, *desswegen.*
unhappy, *unglücklich.*
being, *zu seyn.*
the source, *die Quelle*, 7.
happiness, *die Glückseligkeit*, 7.
the heart, *das Herz*, 3.
the greatest, *das gröfste.*
the pleasure, *das Vergnügen*, 4.
consists, *besteht.*
the practice, *die Ausübung*, 7.
virtue, *die Tugend*, 7.

VIII.

The learning of a professor must be profound. Bentley was esteemed for the profoundness of his learning. There is a great difference between the German and French tongue. The Russians pronounce all tongues best. My brother has seen a thousand strange animals on his travels and voyages. He has purchased from the Dutch coffee, tea, sugar, cinnamon, pepper, tobacco, cheese, and herrings. Those who govern, are like the heavenly bodies, which have much splendour and no repose. There are two affections implanted in our nature, hunger and thirst. These always point out to us the time for eating and drinking. We must eat till our hunger

is appeased. We must drink till our thirst is quenched. He who eats more than is necessary to appease his hunger, is guilty of intemperance. He who drinks more than is necessary to allay his thirst, is likewise guilty of intemperance. Calamity calls out the fortitude, that distinguishes a spirit truly noble. Love, that deserves the name, obliges the lover to seek the satisfaction of the beloved object more than his own. Heroes have their fits of fear; cowards their brave moments; and virtuous women their critical moments.

Learning, *die Gelehrsamkeit*.
a professor, *ein Professor*, 4.
must, *muss*.
profound, *gründlich*.
be, *seyn*.
was, *wurde*.
for, *wegen*; with the genitive.
profoundness, *die Gründlichkeit*, 7.
of his, *seinen*.
esteemed, *geachtet*.
there is, *es ist*.
great, *gröſser*.
the difference, *den Unterschied*, 1.
between, *zwischen*; with the dative.
German, *deutschen*.
French, *französischen*.
the tongue, *die Sprache*, 7.
the Russian, *der Russe*, 6.
pronounce, *sprechen aus*. *Aus* must be put after the word *best*.
all, *alle*.
best, *am besten*.
has, *hat*.
a thousand strange, *tausend fremde*.
animal, *das Thier*, 1.
on, *auf*; with the dative.
his, *seinen*.
the travel, *die Landreise*, 7.
the voyage, *die Seereise*, 7.
seen, *gesehen*.
he has, *er hat*.
from, *von*.
the Dutch, *die Holländer*, 4.
coffee, *der Kaffee*, 1.
tea, *der Thee*, 1.
sugar, *der Zucker*, 4.
cinnamon, *der Zimmet*, 1.
pepper, *der Pfeffer*, 4.
tobacco, *der Taback*, 1.
cheese, *der Käse*, 1.
the herring, *der Häring*, 1.
purchased, *gekauft*.
those who, *diejenigen, welche*.
govern, *regieren*.
are like, *gleichen*; with the dative.
the heavenly body, *der Himmelskörper*, 4.
which, welche.
much, vielen.
the splendour, *der Glanz*, 1.
no, *keine*.
the repose, *die Ruhe*, 7.
have, *haben*.
there are two.... implanted, *es liegen zwei*....
the affection, *den Trieb*, 1.
our, *unsere*.
nature, *die Natur*, 7.
hunger, *der Hunger*, 4.
the thirst, *der Durst*, 1.
these, *diese*.
point out to us, *bestimmen uns*.
always, *immer*.
the time, *die Zeit*, 7.
for, *zum* (instead of *zu dem*).
eating, *das Essen*, 4.

drinking, *das Trinken*, 4.
we must eat, *wir müssen essen.*
till, *bis.*
our, *unser.*
appeased, *gestillt.*
is, *ist.*
drink, *trinken.*
quenched, *gelöscht.*
he who, *wer.*
more, *mehr.*
eats, *isst.*
than, *als.*
necessary, *nöthig.*
his, *seinen.*
to, *zu.*
appease, *stillen.*
is, *macht sich.*
intemperance, *die Unmäßigkeit*, 7.
guilty, *schuldig.*
drinks, *trinkt.*
his, *seinen.*
to, *zu.*
allay, löschen.
likewise, *gleichfalls.*
calamity, *das Unglück*, 1.
calls out, *erfordert.*
the fortitude, *die Seelenstärke*, 7.
that, *welche.*
truly noble, *wahrhaft edlen.*
the spirit, *der Geist*, 2.
distinguishes, *kenntlich macht, auszeichnet.*
love, *die Liebe*, 7.
the name, *der Name*, 5.
deserves, *verdient.*
obliges, *legt ... die Verbindlichkeit auf*; with the dative.
the lover, *der Liebende*, 6.
the satisfaction, *die Zufriedenheit*, 7.
beloved, *geliebten.*
the object, *der Gegenstand*, 1.
more, *mehr.*
than his own, *als seine eigene.*
to seek, *zu suchen.*
hero, *der Held*, 6.
have, *haben.*
their, *ihre.*
the fit, *der Anfall*, 1.
of, *von.*
the fear, *die Furcht*, 7.
coward, *der feige Mensch*, 6. *der Feige*, 6.
brave, *muthigen.*
the moment, *der Augenblick*, 1.
virtuous, *tugendhafte.*
woman, *das Frauenzimmer*, 4. *die Frau*, 7.
critical, *bedenklichen.*

IX.

Henry the great, king of France, was walking one day along with the duke of Mayenne, who had disputed with him the possession of the crown. This gentleman was a bad walker, because he was very lusty. The king took a delight in tiring him out by walking very fast with him a long time. On the return from their walk, Henry the fourth said to him: This is, my cousin, the only revenge I shall ever take on you. The mother of Gustavus had a thousand good qualities. Charles was with his father in the open field. The rain made them quite wet. This was unpleasant to Charles. Gustavus was sociable; but Christian was a quarreller. The boys did not love Christian; but they loved Gustavus.

The Jupiter of the heathens was the son of Saturn. Alexander the great was the son of Philip. The victory of Hohenfriedberg crowned the soldiers of Frederic with glory. This king had acquired in the school of Voltaire his taste, and the art of sarcasm. The character of Rousseau was that of a misanthrope.

Henry, *Heinrich.*
the great, *der Große*, 6.
the king, *der König*, 1.
of, *von.*
France, *Frankreich.*
was walking, *ging spazieren.* *Spazieren* must be put after *Mayenne.*
one day, *eines Tages.*
along with, *mit.*
the duke, *der Herzog*, 1.
who, *welcher.*
with him, *ihm.*
the possession, *der Besitz*, 1.
the crown, *die Krone*, 7.
had disputed, *streitig gemacht hatte.*
this gentleman, *dieser Herr.*
was, *war.*
bad, *schlechter.*
the walker, *der Fußgänger*, 4.
because he, *weil er.*
very lusty, *sehr stark.*
was, war.
took, *fand.*
the delight, *das Vergnügen*, 4.
in tiring him out, *daran, dass er ihn müde machte.*
by, *indém er.*
long, *lange*
time, *die Zeit*, 7.
with him, *mit ihm.*
very fast, *sehr geschwind.*
walking, *ging.*
on, *bei;* with the dative.
the return, *die Rückkehr*, 7.
from, *von.*
their, *ihrem.*
the walk, *der Spaziergang*, 1.
Henry the fourth said to him, *sägte Heinrich der Vierte zu ihm.*
this is, my cousin, the only revenge, *dieses ist, mein Vetter, die einzige Rache.*
I ever, *die ich jemals.*
on you, *an Ihnen.*
shall take, *ausüben würde.*
Gustavus, *Gústav*, 1.
a thousand good, *tausend gute.*
Charles, *Karl*, 3.
was, *war.*
with his, *mit seinem.*
in the open field, *auf freiem Felde.*
the rain, *der Regen*, 4.
made them, *machte sie.*
quite, *gänzlich, völlig.*
wet, *nass.*
this was, *dieses war.*
unpleasant, *unangenehm.* This word must be put after the words *to Charles.*
sociable, *verträglich.*
but, *allein.*
Christian, *Christian*, 1.
a quarreller, *ein Zänker*, 4.
the boy, *der Knabe*, 6.
did not love, *liebten nicht.*
but they loved, *sie liebten aber.*
the heathen, *der Heide*, 6.
Philip, *Philipp*, 1.
the victory, *der Sieg*, 1.
of Hohenfriedberg, *bei Hohenfriedberg.*
crowned, *krönte.*
the soldier, *der Soldät*, 6.
Frederic, *Friedrich*, 1.
with, *mit.*
the glory, *der Ruhm*, 1.
this king, *dieser König*, 1.
had, *hatte sich.*
the school, *die Schule*, 7.
his, *seinen.*

taste, *der Geschmack*, 1.
the art, *die Kunst*, 8.
the sarcasm, *der Spott*, 1.
acquired, *erworben*.
the character, *der Charakter*, 4. *die Gemüthsart*, 7.
that, *dér*.
a misanthrope, *ein Menschenfeind*, 1.

CHAPTER V.

Of the German adjectives.

Containing.

I. The seven kinds of the German adjectives.
II. The declension of the German adjectives.
III. The use of the German adjectives.
IV. Exercises on the German adjectives.

Section I.

The seven kinds of the German adjectives.

The *adjective* is a word added to a substantive, to determine it more exactly.

There are seven kinds of German adjectives:

1. The *attributive adjectives (die beilegenden Beiwörter)*. 2. The *numeral adjectives (die zählenden Beiwörter)*. 3. The *possessive adjectives (die zueignenden Beiwörter)*. 4. The *demonstrative adjectives (die zeigenden* or *hinweisenden Beiwörter)*. 5. The *determinative adjectives (die bestimmenden Beiwörter)*. 6. The *connective adjectives (die verknüpfenden Beiwörter)*. 7. The *interrogative adjectives (die fragenden Beiwörter.)*

1.

The attributive adjectives.

The *attributive adjectives*, which are also called *terms of quality (Eigenschaftswörter* or *Beschaffenheitswörter)* are words added to a substantive, to signify any quality or manner of being, which is

attributed to it. They are either *primitive*, or *derivative*; *simple*, or *compound*.

The *primitive attributive adjectives* are those which are not derived or formed from another word. For example: *weiſs*, white; *schwarz*, black; *grün*, green.

The *derivative attributive adjectives* are those which are derived or formed from another word. They are formed either from a substantive, which is either an appellative, or a proper name; or from another attributive adjective; or from a verb; or from a preposition; or from an adverb.

The following attributive adjectives are formed from a substantive: *freudig*, joyous; from *Freude*, joy. *Königlich*, kingly; from *König*, king. *Tugendhaft*, virtuous; from *Tugend*, virtue. *Sächsisch*, Saxon; from *Sachsen*, Saxony.

The following attributive adjectives are formed from another attributive adjective: *Bläulich*, bluish; from *blau*, blue. *Kränklich*, sickly; from *krank*, sick. *Gemeinsam*, common; from *gemein*, common.

The following attributive adjectives are formed from a verb: *begreiflich*, comprehensible; from *begreifen*, to comprehend. *Spärsam*, sparing; from *sparen*, to spare. *Reizend*, charming; from *reizen*, to charm. *Gelehrt*, learned; from *lehren*, to teach.

The following attributive adjectives are formed from a preposition: *hintere; vördere; vorige; untere; widrig*; from *hinter; vör; unter; wider*.

The following attributive adjectives are formed from an adverb: *dasig; dortig; gestrig; heutig; jetzig*; from *da; dort; gestern; heute; jetzt*.

The *simple attributive adjectives* are those which are not formed from two words, and, consequently, are derived from only one word. For instance: *freundlich*, friendly; from *Freund*, friend. *Prächtig*, pompous; from *Pracht*, pomp.

The simple attributive adjectives end:

1. In *bar* and *lich*. These endings either indicate, that the notion expressed by the substantive, from which the attributive adjective is formed, is ascribed to a person, or thing, or refers to them;

or they denote the possibility of a thing. Examples: *ehrbar*, honest. *Schiffbar*, navigable, *Glücklich*, happy. *Sprāchlich*, referring to language. *Nāchahmlich* or *nāchahmbār*, imitable. *Lich* expresses in several words a diminutive power. Example: *süfslich*, sweetish. The syllable *bar* derives from the verb *bären* (in English *to bear*), which signifies to carry, to produce, but is no more in use. *Fruchtbar*, for instance, signifies, consequently, bearing fruit, fruitful, fertile.

2. In *en* and *ern*. These endings signify, that something has been made or consists of the matter denoted by the substantive, to which they are added. Examples: *golden*, golden. *Seiden*, silken. *Wollen*, woollen. *Irden* (from *Erde*), earthen. *Bleiern*, leaden. *Hölzern*, wooden. *Silbern*, silver, made of silver.

3. In *er*. This ending denotes the dwelling-place of somebody. Example: *ein amsterdamer Kaufmann*, a merchant from Amsterdam.

4. In *haft*. This ending signifies, that the notion expressed by the radical word is ascribed to a person or thing. Example: *herzhäft*, courageous. *Zāghaft* (from *zagen*), fainthearted.

5. In *icht*. This ending indicates, that the adjective formed by it contains a part or any quality of the thing expressed by the radical word. Examples: *Holzicht; steinicht; süfslicht;* (better *süfslich*); *röthlicht* (better *röthlich*); *salzicht*. In the same manner are used the endings *ārtig* and *haltig*, which form compound adjectives. Examples: *eisenartig*, irony. *Eisenhaltig*, ferruginous. *Probehaltig*, of due standard.

6. In *ig*. This ending indicates, that the thing expressed by the radical word is copiously attributed to an object. Examples: *blutig*, bloody. *Erdig*, earthy. *Haarig*, hairy. *Holzig*, woody. *Steinig*, stony. *Salzig*, salt, abounding with salt. *Giltig* (from *gelten*), valid. This ending expresses in some words a certain time or place. Examples: *gestrig; heutig; hiesig; jenseitig*.

7. In *isch*. This termination denotes a contemp-

tible propensity or resemblance, or a bad character. Examples: *diebisch*, thievish. *Kindisch*, childish. *Närrisch*, foolish. The ending *isch* is also employed to form adjectives denoting names of countries. Examples: *hŏlländisch*; *preufsisch*; *russisch*; *schwedisch*.

8. In *sam*. This termination signifies a disposition to any thing good or bad. Examples: *arbeitsam*, laborious. *Friedsam*, peaceable. *Grausam* cruel. *Sam* has sometimes the meaning of *bar*. Example: *wundersam* or *wunderbar*, wondrous.

The *compound attributive adjectives* are those which are composed of two words, that is, which are formed by the union of two words. These two words are:

1. A substantive and an attributive adjective. Examples: *eiskált*, cold as ice; from *Eis* and *kalt*. *Freūdenleer*, void of joy; from *Freude* and *leer*. *Gŏldgelb*, yellow as gold; from *Gold* and *gelb*. *Hilfsbedürftig*, wanting help; from *Hilfe* and *bedürftig*. *Kraftvoll*, full of strength; from *Kraft* and *voll*. *Tūgendreich*, rich in virtue; from *Tugend* and *reich*.

2. Two attributive adjectives. Examples: *áltklūg*, wise as an old man. *Héllroth*, light-red. *Taūbstumm*, deaf and dumb.

3. A numeral word and an attributive adjective. Examples: *dreēeckig*, three-cornered, triangular. *Séchsfüfsig*, six-footed. *Achtsēitig*, having eight sides.

4. A verb and an attributive adjective. Examples: *liebenswürdig*, lovely, amiable; from *lieben* and *würdig*. *Hābsüchtig*, covetous; from *haben* and *süchtig*. *Rēdselig*, talkative; from *reden* and *selig*.

5. A preposition and an attributive adjective. Examples: *überreif*, over-ripe. *Vūrschnell*, over-hasty.

6. An adverb and an attributive adjective. Examples: *wōhlthätig*, beneficent. *Hochbegābt*, endowed with great faculties.

7. A particle and an attributive adjective. Ex-

amples: *abhängig*, dependent. *Sprachlos*, speechless. *Ungerecht*, unjust.

Most compound attributive adjectives consisting of a masculine or feminine substantive and an attributive adjective are joined together without any variation. Examples: *segenreich* (instead of *reich an Segen*); *engelrein* (instead of *rein wie ein Engel*); *menschenarm* (instead of *arm an Menschen*). This is also done, when the substantive is of the feminine gender, and does not end in *heit*, *keit*, *ung*. Examples: *liebevoll*; *wonnetrunken*. But when the feminine substantive terminates in *heit*, *keit*, *ung*, it commonly assumes an *s*. Examples: *wahrheitsliebend*; *gerechtigkeitsliebend*; *erfindungsreich*; *vergnügungssüchtig*. Many compound attributive adjectives are formed by uniting a substantive, or an adverb with the present or past participle of a verb Examples: *ehrliebend* (instead of *die Ehre liebend*), loving honour. *Gesetzgebend* (instead of *Gesetze gebend*), legislative. *Blumenbekränzt* (instead of *mit Blumen bekränzt*), crowned with flowers. *Schnee-bedeckt* (instead of *mit Schnee bedeckt*), covered with snow.

Of the degrees of comparison.

An attributive adjective is a word joined to a substantive to express its quality. But the quality, which an attributive adjective expresses, admits of different degrees. The attributive adjective is therefore subject to certain variations, by which it denotes those different degrees. These degrees are called by the grammarians the *degrees of comparison* (*die Grade* or *die Stufen der Vergleichung* or *der Steigerung*).

There are two degrees of comparison: the *comparative degree* (*der Comparativ* or *die erste Vergleichungsstufe*), and the *superlative degree* (*der Superlativ* or *die höchste Stufe* or *die zweite Vergleichungsstufe*). When a quality is simply expressed by an attributive adjective without any comparison, it is then in the *positive degree*. The positive degree (*der Positiv*) represents, consequently, the attri-

butive adjective such as it is, that is, in its primitive state. For this reason it cannot be called a degree of comparison.

Of the comparative degree.

An attributive adjective is in the *comparative degree*, when it expresses a quality with reference to another subject, that possesses the same quality. Then a comparison is made between two or more subjects, the result of which is expressed by the comparative denoting the higher degree of a quality. Example: *Heinrich der Vierte war grōfsmüthiger als Philipp der Zweite.* Henry the fourth was more generous than Philip the second. In this instance the attributive adjective *grofsmüthig* is in the comparative degree.

The German comparative degree is formed by adding to the positive the syllable *er*, or the simple letter *r*, when the attributive adjective ends in *e*, and by changing the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, when they occur in the last syllable. Examples: *heilig*, holy; *heiliger*, holier. *Gelehrt*, learned; *gelehrter*, more learned. *Weise*, wise; *weiser*, wiser. *Arm*, poor; *ärmer*, poorer. *Grofs*, great; *gröfser*, greater. *Roth*, red; *röther*, redder. *Kurz*, short; *kürzer*, shorter. *Au* remains unaltered. Example: *blau*, blue; *blauer*, bluer. *Rauh*, rude; *rauher*, ruder.

In the following words the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, are not commuted into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*. *Blass*, pale; *blasser*, paler. *Bunt*, party-coloured; *bunter*, party-coloured in a higher degree. *Fahl*, fallow; *fahler*, fallower. *Falsch*, false; *falscher*, falser. *Froh*, glad; *froher*, gladder. *Gesund*, healthy; *gesunder*, healthier. *Glatt*, smooth; *glatter*, smoother. *Hohl*, hollow; *hohler*, hollower. *Kahl*, bald; *kahler*, balder. *Karg*, niggard; *karger*, more niggard. *Klar*, clear; *klarer*, clearer. *Knapp*, narrow; *knapper*, narrower. *Lahm*, lame; *lahmer*, lamer. *Lass*, weary; *lasser*, wearier. *Matt*, faint; *matter*, fainter. *Morsch*, friable; *morscher*, more friable. *Nackt*, naked; *nackter*, more naked. *Platt*, flat; *platter*, flatter. *Plump*, heavy;

plumper, heavier. *Roh*, raw; *roher*, rawer. *Rund*, round; *runder*, rounder. *Sacht*, low, not loud, not noisy; *sachter*, lower. *Sanft*, soft; *sanfter*, softer. *Satt*, satiate; *satter*, more satiate. *Schlaff*, loose; *schlaffer*, looser. *Schlank*, slender; *schlanker*, more slender. *Starr*, torpid; *starrer*, more torpid. *Stolz*, proud; *stolzer*, prouder. *Straff*, tight; *straffer*, tighter. *Stumm*, dumb, mute; *stummer*, muter. *Stumpf*, dull, blunt; *stumpfer*, duller. *Toll*, mad; *toller*, madder. *Voll*, full; *voller*, fuller. *Zahm*, tame; *zahmer*, tamer. Some Germans, however, say: *blässer*; *gesünder*; *glätter*; *klärer*; *münter*; *ründer*; *sätter*.

Also the participles, and such words as are shaped like participles, though they cannot be deduced from existing verbs, are exempt from the transmutation. Of this description are: *bejährt*; *bekannt*; *betägt*; *gewandt*; *verbühlt*; *verhasst*; *verrücht*.

When the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, are not in the last or in the radical syllable of the word, they are not changed into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*. Examples: *herzhaft*, courageous; *herzhafter*, more courageous. *Furchtsam*, timorous; *furchtsamer*, more timorous. *Gerade*, straight; *gerader*, straighter. *Gottlos*, impious; *gottloser*, more impious.

Those attributive adjectives, which end in *el*, omit the *e* before the *l* in the comparative degree. Examples: *edel*, noble; *edler* (for *edeler*), nobler. *Dunkel*, dark; *dunkler* (for *dunkeler*), darker. But in those attributive adjectives, which terminate in *en* and *er*, the *e* is not to be omitted in the comparative degree. Examples: *Trocken*, dry; *trockener*, more dry. *Offen*, open; *offener*, more open. *Bitter*, bitter; *bitterer*, more bitter. *Tapfer*, valiant, brave; *tapferer*, more valiant. *Sauer*, sour, is excepted. It has in the comparative degree *saurer*, instead of *sauerer*.

If the comparative degree cannot be easily pronounced, it must be formed by *mehr*, which is prefixed to the positive degree. Example: *Ein mehr geläuterter Geschmack*, a more refined taste, instead of *ein geläuterterer Geschmack*. Also *mehr* is used, when two different attributive adjectives are compared

with one another. Example: *Er ist mehr gelehrt als weise.* He is more learned than wise.

Ch is changed into *h* in the comparative degree of the word *hūch*, high. It must therefore be said *höher*, and not *höcher*. But the superlative degree is regular: *der hōchste*, the highest.

Gūt, good, has an irregular comparative degree: *besser*, better, instead of *bässer;* from the old word *bass*, which signifies good, but is no more in use. Only as adverb *bass* is sometimes employed for *sehr* or *mehr*.

Some words have the appearance of the comparative degree, though all of them do not have a comparative signification. They are: *der mittlere*, the middle one. *Der äufsere*, the exterior. *Der innere*, the interior. *Der obere*, the superior. *Der untere*, the inferior. *Der vordere*, the anterior. *Der hintere*, the posterior. They all have a superlative degree: *der mittelste; der äufserste; der innerste; der oberste; der unterste; der vorderste; der hinterste.*

If an equality results from the comparison of different qualities of the same subject, or also of different subjects with regard to the same quality, this result is expressed by *so* or *eben so*, which is prefixed to the positive degree. Example: *Er ist so* or *eben so reich als sein Bruder.* He is as rich as his brother. *Ich bin nicht so grofs als er.* I am not as tall as he.

An attributive adjective is in the *superlative degree*, when it attributes a quality to a subject in the highest degree. Example: *Nero wār der rūchloseste aller römischen Kaiser.* Nero was the most wicked of all the Roman emperors. In this example the attributive adjective *ruchlos* is in the superlative degree.

The German superlative degree is formed by adding to the positive degree the syllable *ste*, and by changing the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, when they occur in the last syllable. Examples: *schön*, fine; *schönste*, finest. *Weise*, wise; *weiseste*, wisest. *Arm*, poor; *ärmste*, poorest. *Klūg*, prudent, wise;

klügste, wisest. Many attributive adjectives add to their positive degree the two syllables *este*, because the simple syllable *ste* renders their pronunciation difficult and disagreeable. Examples: *Leicht*, easy; *leichteste*, easiest. *Grofs*, great; *gröfseste* or *gröfste*, greatest. *Kurz*, short; *kürzeste*, shortest.

The attributive adjectives, which do not commute their vowel in the comparative degree, remain also unaltered in the superlative degree.

The vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, are not changed into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, when they are not in the last or in the radical syllable of the word. For instance: *Furchtbar*, terrible; *der furchtbarste*, the most terrible.

H is changed into *ch* in the superlative degree of the word *nahe*, near. It must therefore be said *der nächste*, the nearest, instead of *der näheste* or *nähste*. But the comparative degree is regularly formed: *näher*.

Gut, good, has in the superlative degree *der bessste (beste)*, the best, instead of *der bässeste* or *besseste*; from *bass*.

In order to enforce the notion of the superlative degree, the genitive plural *aller*, of all, is prefixed to it. For instance: *der allerbesste*; *der allerschönste*.

It must yet be observed, that several attributive adjectives are not capable of degrees of comparison. Such words are: *blutwärm*, blood-warm. *Schneeweiss*, snow-white. *Äpfelgrün*, apple-green. *Schwärzlich*, blackish. *Kreisförmig*, circular. *Viereckig*, square. *Golden*, golden. *Hölzern*, wooden. *Jährlich*, yearly. *Brittisch*, British.

In order to attribute a quality to a subject in an eminent degree, the Germans use the following adverbs, which they put before attributive adjectives: *sehr*, *recht*, *gar*, very. *Überaus*, *ungemein*, exceedingly. *Aufserordentlich*, extraordinarily. *Unvergleichlich*, incomparably. *Äufserst*, extremely. *Höchst*, most. Examples: *Dieses Buch ist sehr nützlich.* This book is very useful. *Die Königin ist überaus gnädig, unvergleichlich schön und aufserordentlich gelehrt.* The queen is exceedingly gracious, incompa-

rably beautiful, and extraordinarily learned. *Fránkreich ist ein höchst völkreiches Land.* France is a most populous country. Also the words *érz*, *Stein*, *Stock*, are employed in the same manner. Examples: *Er ist erzreīch*, *steinreīch.* He is extremely rich. *Sie ist erzdúmm, stockdúmm.* She is extremely stupid.

When a quality is expressed in an inferior degree, the Germans employ the adverb *weniger* or *minder*, less. Example: *Er ist weniger* or *minder gelehrt als ich.* He is less learned than I.

2.

The numeral adjectives.

The *numeral adjectives*, which are also simply called the *numerals (die Zāhlwörter)*, serve to mark a quantity of things, and are divided into *cardinal* and *ordinal numbers.*

The *cardinal numbers (die Gründzahlwörter)* are the root of the ordinal numbers, and those which properly mark the number of things.

The *ordinal numbers (die Ordnungszahlwörter)*, derived from the cardinal numbers, are those which distinguish the class of things, and mark, consequently, the order, in which they follow after one another.

The cardinal numbers.

Eins, one.
Zwei, two.
Drei, three.
Vier, four.
Fünf, five.
Sechs, six.
Sieben, seven.
Acht, eight.
Neun, nine.
Zéhen or *zéhn*, ten.
Eilf, *elf*, eleven.
Zwölf, twelve.
Dreīzehn, thirteen.
Vierzehn, fourteen.
Fúnfzehn, fifteen.
Séchzehn, sixteen.
Siebenzehn, seventeen.
Achtzehn, eighteen.
Neūnzehn, nineteen.
Zwanzig, twenty.
Ein und zwanzig, twenty one.
Zwei und zwanzig, twenty two.
Drei und zwanzig, twenty three.
Vier und zwanzig, twenty four.
Fünf und zwanzig, twenty five.
Sechs und zwanzig, twenty six.
Sieben und zwanzig, twenty seven.
Acht und zwanzig, twenty eight.
Neun und zwanzig, twenty nine.
Dreissig, thirty.
Ein und dreissig, thirty one.

Zwei und dreissig, thirty two.
Vierzig, forty.
Funfzig, fifty.
Sechzig, sixty.
Siebenzig, seventy.
Achtzig, eighty.
Neunzig, ninety.
Hundert, hundred.
Hundert und eins, hundred and one.
Tausend, thousand.
Tausend und eins, thousand and one.

From *ein* are derived the numeral adjectives *einzeln*, single, and *einzig*, only.

Eilf is pronounced *elf*, and is commonly written in this manner. *Funfzehn*, *funfzig*, and *sechzehn* are said instead of *fünfzehn*, *fünfzig*, and *sechszehn*. *Siebenzehn* and *siebenzig* are pronounced *siebzehn* and *siebzig*.

Zwanzig and *dreißig* are said instead of *zweizig* and *dreizig*. *Zig* signifies ten. *Zweizig* signifies therefore twice ten, that is, twenty; and *dreizig*, thrice ten, that is, thirty.

The ordinal numbers.

Der erste, the first.
Der zweite, the second.
Der dritte, the third.
Der vierte, the fourth.
Der fünfte, the fifth.
Der sechste, the sixth.
Der siebente, the seventh.
Der achte, the eighth.
Der neunte, the ninth.
Der zehnte, the tenth.
Der eilfte or *elfte*, the eleventh.
Der zwölfte, the twelfth.
Der dreizehnte, the thirteenth.
Der vierzehnte, the fourteenth.
Der fünfzehnte, the fifteenth.
Der sechzehnte, the sixteenth.
Der siebenzehnte, the seventeenth.
Der achtzehnte, the eighteenth.
Der neunzehnte, the nineteenth.
Der zwanzigste, the twentieth.
Der ein und zwanzigste, the twenty first.
Der zwei und zwanzigste, the twenty second.
Der dreissigste, the thirtieth.
Der ein und dreissigste, the thirty first.
Der zwei und dreissigste, the thirty second.
Der viersigste, the fortieth.
Der ein und viersigste, the forty first.
Der zwei und viersigste, the forty second.
Der funfzigste, the fiftieth.
Der sechzigste, the sixtieth.
Der siebenzigste, the seventieth.
Der achtzigste, the eightieth.
Der neunzigste, the ninetieth.
Der ein und neunzigste, the ninety first.
Der hundertste, the hundredth.
Der tausendste, the thousandth.

The German ordinal numbers are formed by adding to the cardinal numbers the final syllable *te* and *ter*, *ste* and *ster*. Eighteen cardinal numbers

receive the final syllable *te* after the definite article, and the final syllable *ter* after the indefinite one. Example: *der zweite; ein zweiter.* Instead of *der erste* they say *der erste*, for *eherste*, the superlative degree of *eher;* and instead of *der dreite*, they say *der dritte.* It is also said *der allererste*, the very first, in order to give an emphasis to this numeral. The final syllable *ste* is added to all the other cardinal numbers after the definite article, and the final syllable *ster* after the indefinite one. Example: *der zwanzigste; ein zwanzigster.*

Siebenzehnte and *siebenzigste* are pronounced *siebzehnte* and *siebzigste. Funfzigste* is said instead of *fünfzigste.*

In order to express the Latin words *bini*, *terni*, *quaterni*, &c. the Germans use the conjunction *und*, or the adverb *je*, which signifies *ever*, and here denotes *at a time.* Example: *zwei und zwei*, or *je zwei*, two and two, two at a time, every two.

Certain adjectives are formed from the cardinal numbers. These adjectives are made by adding *erlei*, *fach*, *fältig*, *eckig*, *pfündig*, to them. Examples: *einerlei*, of the same kind. *Zweierlei*, of two different kinds, sorts. *Dreierlei*, of three different kinds, sorts. *Einfach*, simple, uncompounded. *Zweifach* or *zwiefach*, twofold. *Dreifach*, threefold. *Einfältig*, simple, silly. *Zweifältig*, twofold. *Dreifältig*, threefold. *Dreieckig*, threecornered. *Zweipfündig*, of two pounds.

The following adjectives are composed of the ordinal numbers, and the word *halb*, half: *drittehalb* *, two and a half. *Viertehalb*, three and a half. *Fünftehalb; sechstehalb; siebentehalb; achtehalb;* &c. For instance: *drittehalb Wochen*, two weeks and a half. It is not usual to say *zweitehalb*, but *anderthalb* **, instead of *anderehalb*, one and a half. For example: *anderthalb Münate*, one month and a half.

* Literally: The third (number) half, that is, two whole ones, and the third half.

** Literally: One whole, and the second half.

Also adverbs are formed out of numerals. The word *Māl* is added for this purpose to the cardinal numbers, and *ns* to the ordinal numbers. *Einmal*, once. *Zweimal*, twice. *Dreimal*, thrice. *Viermal*, four times. *Fünfmal*, five times. *Hundertmal*, a hundred times. *Erstens*, for the first. *Zweitens*, secondly. *Drittens*, thirdly. *Viertens*, fourthly. *Fünftens*, fifthly. Instead of these adverbs may also be said *zum ersten, zum zweiten, zum dritten, zum vierten, zum fünften*, in the first, second, third, fourth, fifth place. They say also: *ērst*, first; *zuērst*, firstly; *zu allerērst*, first of all. *Erst jetzt*, but now. *Dann erst*, but then.

The *fractional numbers (die Brúchzahlen)*, with the exception of *halb*, are derived from the ordinal numbers. *Das Drittel*, 3. the third part. *Das Viertel;* the fourth part. *Das Fünftel; das Sechstel; das Siebentel; das Achtel; das Neuntel; das Zéhntel; das Sechzehntel; das Zwanzigstel.* They are substantives, and of the neuter gender. The letter *l*, which is added to the ordinal numbers, is a corruption of the word *das Theil*, the part. *Das Drittel, das Viertel, das Sechzehntel, das Zwanzigstel*, are said instead of *das dritte Theil, das vierte Theil, das sechzehnte Theil, das zwanzigste Theil.* This was contracted into one word, *das Drittheil, das Viertheil, das Sechzehntheil, das Zwanzigtheil*, and at last into *das Drittel*, &c. *Halb* is a numeral adjective, and from it the substantive *die Hälfte*, the half of a thing, is deduced.

It must yet be observed, that instead of *der zweite* another word is sometimes used. This word is *der andere*, which corresponds both to the Latin *alius* and to *alter.* In the latter sense it serves for the second ordinal number. Instead of *zum zweiten*, is therefore also said *zum andern*, in the second place.

There are several substantives, which may be called *collective numbers (Sammelzahlwörter).* For instance: *Ein Zweier, Dreier, Vierer, Fünfer, Sechser, Siebener, Achter, Neuner; ein Zéhent; ein Zwilling; ein Drilling; eine Millión*; &c. Such substan-

tives are also the following: *Das Dutzend*, 1. dozen. *Ein halbes Dutzend*, half a dozen. *Eine Mandel*, 7. a number of fifteen. *Die Siege*, 7. score, twenty. *Das Schock*, 1. threescore, sixty. *Ein halbes Schock*, thirty. *Das Pfund*, 1. pound. *Ein Viertelpfund*, a quarter of a pound. *Ein Viertelhundert*, twenty five. *Das Paar*, 1. pair, couple. From these substantives are formed the adverbs *dutzendweise*, by dozens; *schockweise*, by threescores; *pfundweise*, by pounds; *paarweise*, by pairs, by couples.

3.

The possessive adjectives.

The *possessive adjectives*, which are commonly called *possessive pronouns*, signify a possession.

There are two kinds of possessive adjectives.

The possessive adjectives of the first kind are connected with substantives, or stand by themselves. These are: *Mein*, my, or mine. *Dein*, thy, or thine. *Sein*, his. *Ihr*, her, or hers. *Sein*, its. *Unser*, our, or ours. *Euer*, your, or yours. *Ihr*, their, or theirs.

These possessive adjectives are called possessive adjectives of the first, second, and third person, because they appropriate something either to the first, or second, or third person singular or plural. For instance: *Mein Buch*, my book, that is, the book, which belongs to me. These possessive adjectives may also be called *possessive conjunctive adjectives*, because they are joined with substantives.

The possessive adjectives of the second kind are not joined with substantives, and may therefore be denominated *possessive absolute adjectives*. They are always used with the definite article, and stand instead of a possessive conjunctive adjective, and of the substantive, to which they refer. They are formed from the possessive conjunctive adjectives by adding the two syllables *ige* to them. *Der meinige*, mine. *Der deinige*, thine. *Der seinige*, his. *Der ihrige*, hers. *Der unserige* or *unsrige*, ours. *Der eurige* (for *euerige*), yours. *Der ihrige*, theirs. *Der meinige* refers to the first, *der deinige*, to the second,

der seinige and *der ihrige*, to the third person. Instead of these possessive obsolute adjectives may also be said: *Der meine*, or *meiner*. *Der deine*, or *deiner*. *Der seine*, or *seiner*. *Der ihre*, or *ihrer*. *Der unsere*, *der unsre*, or *unserer*. *Der eure* (for *euere*), or *eurer* (for *euarer*). *Der ihre*, or *ihrer*.

4.

The demonstrative adjectives.

The *demonstrative adjectives*, which are usually called *demonstrative pronouns*, are employed to show a person or a thing. They are: *Dieser*, *diese*, *dieses*, this. *Jener*, *jene*, *jenes*, that.

5.

The determinative adjectives.

The *determinative adjectives*, which are commonly called *determinative pronouns*, are *dérjenige* or *dér*, *diejenige* or *die*, *dásjenige* or *das*, that, and *derselbe*, *dieselbe*, *dasselbe*, the same. They determine the substantive, before which they stand. Examples: *Dérjenige Mensch, welcher Úngerechtigkeit liebt, ist ein Bösewicht.* That man, who loves injustice, is a villain. *Derselbe Mann, welcher Sie liebt, liebt auch mich.* The same man, who loves you, loves also me. It is seen by these instances, that the determinative adjectives always refer to the connective adjective *welcher*, which stands after them.

6.

The connective adjectives.

The *connective adjectives*, which are usually called *relative pronouns (beziehende Fürwörter)*, serve to connect the following part of the sentence with the foregoing. *Die Liebe ist eine Leidenschaft. Die Liebe machte viele Menschen únglücklich.* These words form two separated phrases. But when a connective adjective is used, these two phrases are united together by it. *Die Liebe ist eine Leidenschaft, welche* (instead of *welche Liebe*) *viele Menschen unglücklich machte.* Love is a passion, that rendered many men

unhappy. The connective adjectives are therefore also used, in order to connect the inserted part of a sentence with its principal part. Example: *Der Mann, welcher mir diesen Brief schrieb, starb diesen Morgen.* The man, who wrote me this letter, died this morning. The foregoing substantive, to which they refer, is called the *antecedent (das vorhérgehende Haūptwort).*

The connective adjectives are *welcher, welche, welches,* who, which; *der, die, das,* that has the same signification; and *wér* and *was.* The two last words, which are employed substantively, stand instead of *dérjenige, welcher, dasjenige, welches,* and are rendered in English by *he who, he that, what.*

7.

The interrogative adjectives.

The *interrogative adjectives,* which are commonly denominated *interrogative pronouns,* are used in asking questions. They are: *welcher? welche? welches?* who? which? what? *Wér?* who? *Was?* what? *Was für ein? was für eine? was für ein?* what?

Section II.

The declension of the German adjectives.

1.

The declension of the attributive adjectives.

There are two ways of employing the German attributive adjectives.

The first mode of using them is, when they are mediately joined to a substantive, that is, when they are connected with a substantive by means of the verbs *seyn* and *wérden.* For instance: *Der Garten ist groſs.* The garden is large. *Die Tage werden kurz.* The days grow short. An attributive adjective employed in this manner is not declined at all, and may be called an *attributive absolute adjective,* or an attributive adjective in its primitive state *(ein Eigenschaftswort in seiner Grundform).*

The second mode of using the German attributive adjectives is, when they are immediately joined to a substantive. For instance: *Ein groſser Mann*, a great man. *Eine schöne Stimme*, a fine voice. *Ein gutes Weib*, a good wife. An attributive adjective employed in this manner is declined, and must agree with its substantive in gender, number, and case, and may therefore be termed an *attributive constructive adjective.*

There are three ways of declining attributive constructive adjectives: I. without article; II. with the definite article *der, die, das;* III. with the indefinite article *ein, eine, ein.*

I.

Gut, good.

Masculine gender.

Singular.

Nom. *Guter Wein*, good wine;
Gen. *gutes* or *guten Weines*, of good wine;
Dat. *gutem Weine*, to good wine;
Acc. *guten Wein*, good wine.

Feminine gender.

Singular.

Nom. *Gute Mutter*, good mother;
Gen. *guter Muter*, of good mother;
Dat. *guter Mutter*, to good mother;
Acc. *gute Mutter*, good mother.

Neuter gender.

Singular.

Nom. *Gutes Kind*, good child;
Gen. *gutes* or *guten Kindes*, of good child;
Dat. *gutem Kinde*, to good child;
Acc. *gutes Kind*, good child.

Plural for all three genders.

Nom. *Gute Weine, Mütter, Kinder*, good wines, mothers, children;
Gen. *guter Weine, Mütter, Kinder*, of good wines, mothers, children;
Dat. *Guten Weinen, Müttern, Kindern*, to good wines, mothers, children;
Acc. *Gute Weine, Mütter, Kinder*, good wines, mothers, children.

Observations.

1. It is seen by this example, that an attributive adjective immediately joined to a substantive without article takes the last letters of the article *der, die, das.*

2. In this manner is also declined the comparative degree of the attributive adjectives, when it is used without article. For example: *Besserer Wein*, better wine. *Kältere Milch*, colder milk. *Stärkeres Bier*, stronger beer. *Schönere Gärten*, finer gardens.

3. The genitive singular masculine and neuter ends also in *en*. Examples: *Ein Glas rothen Weines*, instead of *ein Glas rothes Weines*, a glass of red wine. It is, however, more usual to say *ein Glas rothen Wein. Trockenen Fußes*, with a dry foot. *Guten Muthes*, of good cheer. *Widrigen Falles*, in a contrary case. *Anderen Theiles*, on the other hand. *Guten Theiles*, in a great degree. To the vocative case an *n* is commonly added. Example: *Lieben Leute*, good people. For *liebe Leute.*

4. When two or more attributive adjectives are joined to a substantive masculine or neuter, they are declined in the following manner: —

Singular.

Nom. *Guter rother Wein*, good red wine;
Gen. *guten rothen Weines*, of good red wine;
Dat. *gutem rothen Weine*, to good red wine;
Acc. *guten rothen Wein*, good red wine.

Plural.

Nom. *Gute rothe Weine*, good red wines;
Gen. *guter rothen Weine*, of good red wines;
Dat. *guten rothen Weinen*, to good red wines;
Acc. *gute rothe Weine*, good red wines.

In the following and similar examples, however, the ending *en* does not take place in the genitive plural: *eine Reihe wohlklingender deutscher Verse*, a series of harmonious German verses. *Übersetzungen alter griechischer und lateinischer Schriftsteller*, translations of ancient Greek and Latin authors.

When between two or more attributive adjectives a comma is placed, without joining them by the conjunction *und* together, each of them receives

an *m* in the dative singular. Example: *Mein Bruder ist von sehr sanftem, einschmeichelndem Betragen.* My brother is of very soft, insinuating manners.

5. The fourth observation is also appliable to the following plurals: *alle*, all. *Einige, etliche, manche*, some. *Mehrere*, several. *Selbige*, those. *Solche*, such. *Viele*, many. *Alle reiche Leute. Einige, etliche, manche gute Menschen. Mehrere treffliche Dichter. Selbige fleifsige Kinder. Solche gelehrte Männer. Viele edle Frauen.*

6. It is usual to suppress the final syllable *es*, which denotes the neuter gender of the first mode of declining the attributive adjectives. For instance: *schön Wetter*, instead of *schönes Wetter*, fine weather. *Ein reizend Weib*, instead of *ein reizendes Weib*, a charming woman. But this custom is not to be imitated; and only poets may suppress that *es*.

7. Some attributive adjectives are not declined at all. Those which end in *er*, *hand*, *lei*, are of this kind. Examples: *berliner; allerhánd; allerlei; mancherlei; vielerlei; zweierlei*; &c.

II.

Grōfs, great.

Masculine gender.

Singular.

Nom.	*Der grofse Mann*, the great man;
Gen.	*des grofsen Mannes*, of the great man;
Dat.	*dem grofsen Manne*, to the great man;
Acc.	*den grofsen Mann*, the great man.

Feminine gender.

Singular.

Nom.	*Die grofse Stadt*, the great town;
Gen.	*der grofsen Stadt*, of the great town;
Dat.	*der grofsen Stadt*, to the great town;
Acc.	*die grofse Stadt*, the great town.

Neuter gender.

Singular.

Nom.	*Das grofse Verbrechen*, the great crime;
Gen.	*des grofsen Verbrechens*, of the great crime;
Dat.	*dem grofsen Verbrechen*, to the great crime;
Acc.	*das grofse Verbrechen*, the great crime.

Plural for all three genders.

Nom. *Die groſsen Männer, Städte, Verbrechen*, the great men, towns, crimes;
Gen. *der groſsen Männer, Städte, Verbrechen*, of the great men, towns, crimes;
Dat. *den groſsen Männern, Städten, Verbrechen*, to the great men, towns, crimes;
Acc. *die groſsen Männer, Städte, Verbrechen*, the great men, towns, crimes.

Observations.

1. In this manner are declined the comparative and superlative degree of the attributive adjectives, when the definite article stands before them. For instance: *Der gröſsere Mann*, the greater man. *Die gröſsere Stadt*, the greater town. *Das gröſsere Verbrechen*, the greater crime. *Der gröſseste Mann*, the greatest man. *Die gröſseste Stadt*, the greatest town. *Das gröſseste Verbrechen*, the greatest crime.

2. The declension of the attributive adjective *groſs* with the definite article shows, that the nominative singular takes an *e*, and when the definite article is connected with a substantive feminine or neuter, also the accusative singular ends in *e*. All the other cases both of the singular and plural take the syllable *en*. This is also the case, when two or more attributive adjectives are associated with a substantive. Example: Nom. sing. *Der kluge, tapfere Mann;* Gen. *des klugen, tapferen* or *tapfern Mannes;* Dat. *dem klugen, tapferen* or *tapfern Manne;* Acc. *den klugen, tapferen* or *tapfern Mann.* Nom. plur. *Die klugen, tapferen* or *tapfern Männer;* Gen. *der klugen, tapferen Männer*, &c.

3. In the same manner are declined the attributive adjectives, when *derselbe, dieser, jener, jeder*, are prefixed to them. Nom. sing. *Derselbe, dieser, jener, jeder gute Mensch;* Gen. *desselben, dieses, jenes, jedes guten Menschen;* Dat. *demselben, diesem, jenem, jedem guten Menschen;* Acc. *denselben, diesen, jenen, jeden guten Menschen.* Nom. plur. *Dieselben, diese, jene guten Menschen*, &c. This is also the case, when the singular of *ein solcher, welcher*, and *man-*

cher goes before. Nom. sing. *Welcher gute Mensch?* which good man? Gen. *Welches guten Menschen?* Dat. *Welchem guten Menschen?* Acc. *Welchen guten Menschen?* Nom. sing. *Mancher gute Mensch*, many a good man; Gen. *manches guten Menschen;* Dat. *manchem guten Menschen;* Acc. *manchen guten Menschen.* But when the plural of *ein solcher*, *welcher*, and *mancher* is used, the attributive adjectives do not receive in the nominative plural the syllable *en*, but only an *e*. Nom. plur. *Welche gute Menschen?* Gen. *Welcher guten Menschen?* &c. Nom. plur. *Manche gute Menschen;* Gen. *mancher guten Menschen;* Dat. *manchen guten Menschen*, &c. When the plural of the possessive adjectives *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *ihr*, *unser*, *euer*, and that of the personal pronouns are prefixed to the attributive adjectives, their plural takes the termination *en*. *Meine, deine, seine, ihre, unsere, eure guten Söhne, Töchter, Kinder. Wir ungelehrten Menschen. Ihr guten Kinder.* What has been said in this third observation, must also be applied to the comparative and superlative degree of the attributive adjectives.

4. Some participles, which are used in a demonstrative sense, have the same power before the attributive adjectives. Of this description are: *Besagt; gedacht; folgend.* For instance: *Besagter alte Mann*, the said old man. *Besagte alten Männer*, the said old men. *Gedachtes neue Haus*, the new house mentioned. *Folgendes schöne Werk*, the following beautiful work.

III.

Jung, young.

Masculine gender.

Nom. *Ein junger Mann*, a young man;
Gen. *eines jungen Mannes*, of a young man;
Dat. *einem jungen Manne*, to a young man;
Acc. *einen jungen Mann*, a young man.

Feminine gender.

Nom. *Eine junge Frau*, a young woman;
Gen. *einer jungen Frau*, of a young woman;

Dat. *einer jungen Frau*, to a young woman;
Acc. *eine junge Frau*, a young woman.

Neuter gender.

Nom. *Ein junges Kind*, a young child;
Gen. *eines jungen Kindes*, of a young child;
Dat. *einem jungen Kinde*, to a young child;
Acc. *ein junges Kind*, a young child.

Observations.

1. This example shows, that the masculine gender has in the nominative singular the termination *er*, and in all the other cases *en*; that the feminine gender ends in the nominative and accusative in *e*, and the neuter gender in the same cases in *es*; and that the feminine and the neuter gender have in the other cases *en*.

2. In the same manner is declined the comparative degree of the attributive adjectives. Example: *ein jüngerer Mann*, a younger man. *Eine jüngere Frau*, a younger woman. *Ein jüngeres Kind*, a younger child. As for the superlative degree, it is never accompanied with the indefinite article.

3. In this manner are also declined the attributive adjectives, when they are connected with the words *mehr*, *viel*, *wenig*; with the singular of the word *kein*; with that of the possessive adjectives *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *ihr*, *unser*, *euer*; and with that of the personal pronouns. *Mehr guter Wein*, more good wine. *Viel schönes Geld*, much fine money. *Wenig frisches Brōt*, little fresh bread. *Kein guter Mann*, no good man. *Keine gute Frau*, no good woman. *Kein gutes Kind*, no good child. *Mein, dein, sein, ihr, unser, euer guter Bruder*, my, thy, his, her, our, your good brother. *Ich armer Mann*, I poor man. *Ich arme Frau*, I poor woman. *Ich armes Kind*, I poor child. *Du frommes Kind*, thou quiet child. *Sie gelehrter Mann*, you learned man.

4. In order to express the plural number of this third mode of declining the attributive adjectives, they are employed without article. For example:

Arme Kinder, poor children. *Keine gute Männer*, no good men.

2.

The declension of the numeral adjectives.

I.

The cardinal numbers.

The cardinal numbers are indeclinable adjectives, except *eins*, *zwei*, and *drei*. When *eins*, which is the contracted neuter *eines*, is joined to substantives, it has in the nominative *ein*, *eine*, *ein*, and is declined like the indefinite article, from which it is distinguished only by a stronger accent. When it stands by itself, the syllables *er* and *es* are added to the nominative: *einer*, *eine*, *eines*. *Er* denotes the masculine, and *es* the neuter gender. *Ein*, *eine*, *ein*, may have the definite article before it. Then it is declined after the second mode of declining the attributive adjectives, and, consequently, in the following manner: —

Singular.

Nom. *Der eine*, *die eine*, *das eine*, the one;
Gen. *des einen*, *der einen*, *des einen*, of the one;
Dat. *dem einen*, *der einen*, *dem einen*, to the one;
Acc. *den einen*, *die eine*, *das eine*, the one.

Plural for all three genders.

Nom. *Die einen*, the ones;
Gen. *der einen*, of the ones;
Dat. *den einen*, to the ones;
Acc. *die einen*, the ones.

Zwei and *drei* are thus declined: —

Nom. *Zwei*, two;	Nom. *Drei*, three;
Gen. *zweier*, of two;	Gen. *dreier*, of three;
Dat. *zweien*, to two;	Dat. *dreien*, to three;
Acc. *zwei*, two.	Acc. *drei*, three.

All the other cardinal numbers, with the exception of *sieben* and *zehn*, take the termination *en* in the dative, when they are not joined to a substantive.

Instead of *nicht ein, nicht eine, nicht ein,* is used *kein, keine, kein,* no; and instead of *nicht einer, nicht eine, nicht eines, keiner, keine, keines,* none.

Beide, both, which may also be considered as a numeral word, is declined like *zwei: beide; beider; beiden; beide.*

Zween, zwo, zwei, are no more in use, *zwei* now being employed for all three genders.

II.

The ordinal numbers.

The ordinal numbers are declined like the other adjectives. Example: —

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom. *Der zweite,* the second;	*Die zweite,* the second;	*Das zweite,* the second;
Gen. *des zweiten,* of the second;	*der zweiten,* of the second;	*des zweiten,* of the second;
Dat. *dem zweiten,* to the second;	*der zweiten,* to the second;	*dem zweiten,* to the second;
Acc. *den zweiten,* the second.	*die zweite,* the second.	*das zweite,* the second.
Nom. *Ein zweiter,* a second;	*Eine zweite,* a second;	*Ein zweites,* a second;
Gen. *eines zweiten,* of a second;	*einer zweiten,* of a second;	*eines zweiten,* of a second;
Dat. *einem zweiten,* to a second;	*einer zweiten,* to a second;	*einem zweiten,* to a second;
Acc. *einen zweiten,* a second.	*eine zweite,* a second.	*ein zweites,* a second.

When the ordinal numbers are added to the names of princes, they are declined in the same manner. Example: —

Nom. *Heinrich der Vierte,* Henry the fourth;
Gen. *Heinrichs des Vierten,* of Henry the fourth;
Dat. *Heinrich dem Vierten,* to Henry the fourth;
Acc. *Heinrich den Vierten,* Henry the fourth.

When a title goes before the name of a prince, this title is not declined. *König Heinrichs des Vierten,* of king Henry the fourth.

Ander and *letzt,* which may also be considered as numeral adjectives, are declined in the same manner. *Der, die, das andere,* the other; *des, der,*

des anderen or *andern; dem, der, dem anderen* or *andern; den anderen* or *andern, die andere, das andere. Die anderen* or *andern*, the others; *der anderen* or *andern; den anderen* or *andern. Ein anderer, eine andere, ein anderes*, another; *eines, einer, eines anderen* or *andern; einem, einer, einem anderen* or *andern; einen anderen* or *andern, eine andere, ein anderes.* Instead of *einer den andern*, the contracted form *einander* is used. *Brüder müssen einander lieben, und einander Freude machen.* Brothers ought to love one another and must give each other joy. *Einander* is not variable.

Nom. *Der, die, das letzte*, the last; Gen. *des, der, des letzten*; Dat. *dem, der, dem letzten*; Acc. *den letzten, die letzte, das letzte. Die, der, den, die letzten.*

3.

The declension of the possessive adjectives.

The possessive conjunctive adjectives are declined in the singular as the indefinite article *ein, eine, ein.* They are always directly accompanied by their substantive, if they be not separated from it by some adjective, which takes then the terminations *er, e,* and *es* in the singular, and the ending *en* in the plural. For instance: *mein guter Vater*, my good father. *Meine gute Mutter*, my good mother. *Mein gutes Kind*, my good child. *Meine guten Brüder*, my good brothers.

The possessive absolute adjectives are used with the definite article *der, die, das*, and declined like the substantives of the sixth declension. They refer either to the first, or the second, or the third person.

I.

Possessive conjunctive adjectives.

First person singular.

Singular.

	Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom.	*Mein Bruder*, my brother;	*Meine Schwester*, my sister;

Gen.	*meines Bruders*, of my brother;	*meiner Schwester*, of my sister;
Dat.	*meinem Bruder*, to my brother;	*meiner Schwester*, to my sister;
Acc.	*meinen Bruder*, my brother.	*meine Schwester*, my sister.

Neuter.

Nom. *Mein Kind*, my child;
Gen. *meines Kindes*, of my child;
Dat. *meinem Kinde*, to my child;
Acc. *mein Kind*, my child.

Plural.

	Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom.	*Meine Brüder*, my brothers;	*Meine Schwestern*, my sisters;
Gen.	*meiner Brüder*, of my brothers;	*meiner Schwestern*, of my sisters;
Dat.	*meinen Brüdern*, to my brothers;	*meinen Schwestern*, to my sisters;
Acc.	*meine Brüder*, my brothers.	*meine Schwestern*, my sisters.

Neuter.

Nom. *Meine Kinder*, my children;
Gen. *meiner Kinder*, of my children;
Dat. *meinen Kindern*, to my children;
Acc. *meine Kinder*, my children.

Second person singular.

Singular.

	Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom.	*Dein Bruder*, thy brother;	*Deine Schwester*, thy sister;
Gen.	*deines Bruders*, of thy brother;	*deiner Schwester*, of thy sister;
Dat.	*deinem Bruder*, to thy brother;	*deiner Schwester*, to thy sister;
Acc.	*deinen Bruder*, thy brother.	*deine Schwester*, thy sister.

Neuter.

Nom. *Dein Kind*, thy child;
Gen. *deines Kindes*, of thy child;
Dat. *deinem Kinde*, to thy child;
Acc. *dein Kind*, thy child.

Plural.

	Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom.	*Deine Brüder*, thy brothers;	*Deine Schwestern*, thy sisters;
Gen.	*deiner Brüder*, of thy brothers;	*deiner Schwestern*, of thy sisters;

Dat. *deinen Brüdern*, to thy brothers; *deinen Schwestern*, to thy sisters;
Acc. *deine Brüder*, thy brothers. *deine Schwestern*, thy sisters.

Neuter.

Nom. *Deine Kinder*, thy children;
Gen. *deiner Kinder*, of thy children;
Dat. *deinen Kindern*, to thy children;
Acc. *deine Kinder*, thy children.

Third person singular masculine.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom. *Sein Bruder*, his brother;	*Seine Schwester*, his sister;
Gen. *seines Bruders*, of his brother;	*seiner Schwester*, of his sister;
Dat. *seinem Bruder*, to his brother;	*seiner Schwester*, to his sister;
Acc. *seinen Bruder*, his brother.	*seine Schwester*, his sister.

Neuter.

Nom. *Sein Kind*, his child;
Gen. *seines Kindes*, of his child;
Dat. *seinem Kinde*, to his child;
Acc. *sein Kind*, his child.

Plural.

Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom. *Seine Brüder*, his brothers;	*Seine Schwestern*, his sisters;
Gen. *seiner Brüder*, of his brothers;	*seiner Schwestern*, of his sisters;
Dat. *seinen Brüdern*, to his brothers;	*seinen Schwestern*, to his sisters;
Acc. *seine Brüder*, his brothers.	*seine Schwestern*, his sisters.

Neuter.

Nom. *Seine Kinder*, his children;
Gen. *seiner Kinder*, of his children;
Dat. *seinen Kindern*, to his children;
Acc. *seine Kinder*, his children.

Third person singular feminine.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom. *Ihr Bruder*, her brother;	*Ihre Schwester*, her sister;
Gen. *ihres Bruders*, of her brother;	*ihrer Schwester*, of her sister;
Dat. *ihrem Bruder*, to her brother;	*ihrer Schwester*, to her sister;
Acc. *ihren Bruder*, her brother.	*ihre Schwester*, her sister.

Neuter.

Nom. *Ihr Kind*, her child;
Gen. *ihres Kindes*, of her child;
Dat. *ihrem Kinde*, to her child;
Acc. *ihr Kind*, her child.

Plural.

Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom. *Ihre Brüder*, her brothers;	*Ihre Schwestern*, her sisters;
Gen. *ihrer Brüder*, of her brothers;	*ihrer Schwestern*, of her sisters;
Dat. *ihren Brüdern*, to her brothers;	*ihren Schwestern*, to her sisters;
Acc. *ihre Brüder*, her brothers.	*ihre Schwestern*, her sisters.

Neuter.

Nom. *Ihre Kinder*, her children;
Gen. *ihrer Kinder*, of her children;
Dat. *ihren Kindern*, to her children;
Acc. *ihre Kinder*, her children.

First person plural.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom. *Unser Bruder*, our brother;	*Unsere Schwester*, our sister;
Gen. *unseres* or *unsers Bruders*, of our brother;	*unserer Schwester*, of our sister;
Dat. *unserem* or *unserm Bruder*, to our brother;	*unserer Schwester*, to our sister;
Acc. *unsern Bruder*, our brother.	*unsere Schwester*, our sister.

Neuter.

Nom. *Unser Kind*, our child;
Gen. *unseres* or *unsers Kindes*, of our child;
Dat. *unserem* or *unserm Kinde*, to our child;
Acc. *unser Kind*, our child.

Plural.

Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom. *Unsere Brüder*, our brothers;	*Unsere Schwestern*, our sisters;
Gen. *unserer Brüder*, of our brothers;	*unserer Schwestern*, of our sisters;
Dat. *unseren* or *unsern Brüdern*, to our brothers;	*unseren* or *unsern Schwestern*, to our sisters;
Acc. *unsere Brüder*, our brothers.	*unsere Schwestern*, our sisters.

Neuter.

Nom. *Unsere Kinder*, our children;
Gen. *unserer Kinder*, of our children;

Dat. *unseren* or *unsern Kindern*, to our children;
Acc. *unsere Kinder*, our children.

Second person plural.

Singular.

	Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom.	*Euer Bruder*, your brother;	*Eure Schwester*, your sister;
Gen.	*eures Bruders*, of your brother;	*eurer Schwester*, of your sister;
Dat.	*eurem Bruder*, to your brother;	*eurer Schwester*, to your sister;
Acc.	*euren Bruder*, your brother.	*eure Schwester*, your sister.

Neuter.

Nom. *Euer Kind*, your child;
Gen. *eures Kindes*, of your child;
Dat. *eurem Kinde*, to your child;
Acc. *euer Kind*, your child.

Plural.

	Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom.	*Eure Brüder*, your brothers;	*Eure Schwestern*, your sisters;
Gen.	*eurer Brüder*, of your brothers;	*eurer Schwestern*, of your sisters;
Dat.	*euren Brüdern*, to your brothers;	*euren Schwestern*, to your sisters;
Acc.	*eure Brüder*, your brothers.	*eure Schwestern*, your sisters.

Neuter.

Nom. *Eure Kinder*, your children;
Gen. *eurer Kinder*, of your children;
Dat. *euren Kindern*, to your children;
Acc. *eure Kinder*, your children.

Third person plural.

Singular.

	Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom.	*Ihr Bruder*, their brother;	*Ihre Schwester*, their sister;
Gen.	*ihres Bruders*, of their brother;	*ihrer Schwester*, of their sister;
Dat.	*ihrem Bruder*, to their brother;	*ihrer Schwester*, to their sister
Acc.	*ihren Bruder*, their brother.	*ihre Schwester*, their sister.

Neuter.

Nom. *Ihr Kind*, their child;
Gen. *ihres Kindes*, of their child;

Dat. *ihrem Kinde*, to their child;
Acc. *ihr Kind*, their child.

Plural.

Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom. *Ihre Brüder*, their brothers;	*Ihre Schwestern*, their sisters;
Gen. *ihrer Brüder*, of their brothers;	*ihrer Schwestern*, of their sisters;
Dat. *ihren Brüdern*, to their brothers;	*ihren Schwestern*, to their sisters;
Acc. *ihre Brüder*, their brothers.	*ihre Schwestern*, their sisters.

Neuter.

Nom. *Ihre Kinder*, their children;
Gen. *ihrer Kinder*, of their children;
Dat. *ihren Kindern*, to their children;
Acc. *ihre Kinder*, their children.

II.

Possessive absolute adjectives.

First person singular.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom. *Der meinige*, mine;	*Die meinige*, mine;	*Das meinige*, mine;
Gen. *des meinigen*, of mine;	*der meinigen*, of mine;	*des meinigen*, of mine;
Dat. *dem meinigen*, to mine;	*der meinigen*, to mine;	*dem meinigen*, to mine;
Acc. *den meinigen*, mine.	*die meinige*, mine.	*das meinige*, mine.

Plural through all three genders.

Nom. *Die meinigen*, mine; Dat. *den meinigen*, to mine;
Gen. *der meinigen*, of mine; Acc. *die meinigen*, mine.

Second person singular.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom. *Der deinige*, thine;	*Die deinige*, thine;	*Das deinige*, thine;
Gen. *des deinigen*, of thine;	*der deinigen*, of thine;	*des deinigen*, of thine;
Dat. *dem deinigen*, to thine;	*der deinigen*, to thine;	*dem deinigen*, to thine;
Acc. *den deinigen*, thine.	*die deinige*, thine.	*das deinige*, thine.

Plural through all three genders.

Nom. *Die deinigen*, thine; Dat. *den deinigen*, to thine;
Gen. *der deinigen*, of thine; Acc. *die deinigen*, thine.

Third person singular masculine.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom. *Der seinige*, his;	*Die seinige*, his;	*Das seinige*, his;
Gen. *des seinigen*, of his;	*der seinigen*, of his;	*des seinigen*, of his;
Dat. *dem seinigen*, to his;	*der seinigen*, to his;	*dem seinigen*, to his;
Acc. *den seinigen*, his.	*die seinige*, his.	*das seinige*, his.

Plural through all three genders.

Nom. *Die seinigen*, his; Dat. *den seinigen*, to his;
Gen. *der seinigen*, of his; Acc. *die seinigen*, his.

Third person singular feminine.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom. *Der ihrige*, hers;	*Die ihrige*, hers;	*Das ihrige*, hers;
Gen. *des ihrigen*, of hers;	*der ihrigen*, of hers;	*des ihrigen*, of hers;
Dat. *dem ihrigen*, to hers;	*der ihrigen*, to hers;	*dem ihrigen*, to hers;
Acc. *den ihrigen*, hers.	*die ihrige*, hers.	*das ihrige*, hers.

Plural through all three genders.

Nom. *Die ihrigen*, hers; Dat. *den ihrigen*, to hers;
Gen. *der ihrigen*, of hers; Acc. *die ihrigen*, hers.

First person plural.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom. *Der unserige*, ours;	*Die unserige*, ours;	*Das unserige*, ours;
Gen. *des unserigen*, of ours;	*der unserigen*, of ours;	*des unserigen*, of ours;
Dat. *dem unserigen*, to ours;	*der unserigen*, to ours;	*dem unserigen*, to ours;
Acc. *den unserigen*, ours.	*die unserige*, ours.	*das unserige*, ours;

Plural through all three genders.

Nom. *Die unserigen*, ours; Dat. *den unserigen*, to ours;
Gen. *der unserigen*, of ours, Acc. *die unserigen*, ours.

Second person plural.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom. *Der eurige*, yours;	*Die eurige*, yours;	*Das eurige*, yours;
Gen. *des eurigen*, of yours;	*der eurigen*, of yours;	*des eurigen*, of yours;
Dat. *dem eurigen*, to yours;	*der eurigen*, to yours;	*dem eurigen*, to yours;
Acc. *den eurigen*, yours.	*die eurige*, yours.	*das eurige*, yours.

Plural through all three genders.

Nom. *Die eurigen*, yours;	Dat. *den eurigen*, to yours;
Gen. *der eurigen*, of yours;	Acc. *die eurigen*, yours.

Third person plural.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom. *Der ihrige*, theirs;	*Die ihrige*, theirs;	*Das ihrige*, theirs;
Gen. *des ihrigen*, of theirs;	*der ihrigen*, of theirs;	*des ihrigen*, of theirs;
Dat. *dem ihrigen*, to theirs;	*der ihrigen*, to theirs;	*dem ihrigen*, to theirs;
Acc. *den ihrigen*, theirs.	*die ihrige*, theirs.	*das ihrige*, theirs.

Plural for all three genders.

Nom. *Die ihrigen*, theirs;	Dat. *den ihrigen*, to theirs;
Gen. *der ihrigen*, of theirs;	Acc. *die ihrigen*, theirs;

4.

The declension of the demonstrative adjectives.

I.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom. *Dieser*, this;	*diese*, this;	*Dieses*, this;
Gen. *dieses*, of this;	*dieser*, of this;	*dieses*, of this;
Dat. *diesem*, to this;	*dieser*, to this;	*diesem*, to this;
Acc. *diesen*, this.	*diese*, this.	*dieses*, this.

Plural for all three genders.

Nom. *Diese*, these;	Dat. *diesen*, to these;
Gen. *dieser*, of these;	Acc. *diese*, these.

II.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom. *Jener*, that;	*Jene*, that;	*Jenes*, that;
Gen. *jenes*, of that;	*jener*, of that;	*jenes*, of that;
Dat. *jenem*, to that;	*jener*, to that;	*jenem*, to that;
Acc. *jenen*, that.	*jene*, that.	*jenes*, that.

Plural for all three genders.

Nom *Jene*, those;	Dat. *jenen*, to those;
Gen. *jener*, of those;	Acc. *jene*, those.

Also *selbiger*, *selbige*, *selbiges*, that, may be considered as a demonstrative adjective. It is declined like *dieser*, *diese*, *dieses*. *Selbiger Mann*, that man, or the said man. *Zu selbiger Zeit*, at that time.

5.

The declension of the determinative adjectives.

I.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom. *Dérjenige*, *dér*, that;	*Diejenige*, *die*, that;	*Dásjenige*, *das*, that;
Gen. *désjenigen*, *dessen*, of that;	*dérjenigen*, of that;	*desjenigen*, *dessen*, of that;
Dat. *démjenigen*, *dém*, to that;	*dérjenigen*, *dér*, to that;	*demjenigen*, *dem*, to that;
Acc. *dénjenigen*, *dén*, that.	*diejenige*, *die*, that.	*dasjenige*, *das*, that

Plural for all three genders.

Nom. *Diejenigen*, *die*, those;	Dat. *denjenigen*, *denen*, to those;
Gen. *dérjenigen*, *dérer*, of those;	Acc. *diejenigen*, *die*, those.

Dérjenige, *welcher*, *diejanige*, *welche*, *diejenigen*, *welche*, are expressed in English by *he that*, *he who*; *she that*, *she who*; *they that*, *they who*, *those who*. Example: *Diejenigen*, *welche in der Stadt wohnen*, they that live in town.

II.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom. *Derselbe*, the same;	*Dieselbe*, the same;	*Dasselbe*, the same;

Gen. *desselben*, of the same;	*derselben*, of the same;	*desselben*, of the same;
Dat. *demselben*, to the same;	*derselben*, to the same;	*demselben*, to the same;
Acc. *denselben*, the same.	*dieselbe*, the same.	*dasselbe*, the same.

Plural for all three genders.

Nom. *Dieselben*, the same;	Dat. *denselben*, to the same;
Gen. *derselben*, of the same;	Acc. *dieselben*, the same.

Observations.

1. *Der, die, das*, when serving as a determinative adjective, is pronounced with a stronger accent than the definite article. Example: *Dér Mensch ist weise, welcher* — That man is wise, who — *Der Mensch ist weise, wenn er* — Man is wise, if he — The genitive plural should always be *dérer*; but nevertheless it is sometimes expressed by *déren*, in order to ameliorate its sound. For instance: *déren Einer*, instead of *derer Einer*, one of those.

2. *Derselbe* has sometimes the adverb *eben* before it, by which a greater energy is given to that word. *Eben derselbe, eben dieselbe, eben dasselbe*, the very same. Also the first numeral is added to it, which still increases its meaning. *Ein und eben derselbe*, one and the same. Instead of *eben derselbe* is also used *eben dér*. *Eben dér Mann*, the same man. *Eben die Frau*, the same woman. *Eben das Kind*, the same child.

3. *Derselbige, dieselbige, dasselbige*, which now is seldom used, is synonymous with *derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe*. Also there is yet another word, which has the same signification, and may be considered as a determinative adjective. This word is: *der nämliche, die nämliche, das nämliche*, the same. It is declined like the other adjectives.

4. When the determinative adjectives are separated from their substantive by some attributive adjective, this adjective is declined like *der eine, die eine, das eine*.

6.

The declenaion of the connective adjectives.

I.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom. *Welcher*, who, which, that;	*Welche*, who, which, that;	*Welches*, who, which, that;
Gen. *welches*, whose, of whom, of which;	*welcher*, whose, of whom, of which;	*welches*, whose, of whom, of which;
Dat. *welchem*, to whom, to which;	*welcher*, to whom, to which;	*welchem*, to whom, to which;
Acc. *welchen*, whom, which, that.	*welche*, whom, which, that.	*welches*, whom, which, that.

Plural for all three genders.

Nom. *Welche*, who, which, that;		Dat. *welchen*, to whom, to which;	
Gen. *welcher*, of whom, which;	of	Acc. *welche*, whom, which, that.	

II.

Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom. *Dér*;	*Die*;	*Das*;
Gen. *dessen*;	*déren*;	*dessen*;
Dat. *dém*;	*dér*;	*dém*;
Acc. *dén*.	*die*.	*das*.

Plural for all three genders.

Nom. *Die*;	Dat. *dénen*;
Gen. *déren*;	Acc. *die*.

III.

Nom. *Wér*, *was*;	Dat. *wem*;
Gen. *wessen*;	Acc. *wen*, *was*.

Observations.

1. The genitive singular masculine and neuter of the connective adjective *welcher*, *welche*, *welches*, is not in use, but instead of them the genitive singular masculine and neuter of the connective adjective *der*, *die*, *das*, is always employed. Example: *Dér Mann, dessen Kinder Sie gesehen haben, ist sehr arm.* The man whose children you have seen, is very

poor. The genitive singular feminine *welcher* is not used before a substantive. The genitive plural *welcher* is in use; but *déren* is yet more in use. Before a substantive *deren* only is used.

2. The genitive plural of the connective adjective *der*, *die*, *das*, is properly *dérer;* but it is always changed into *deren.*

3. The adverb *so*, which was formerly used instead of *welcher*, *welche*, *welches*, is now no more in use in that signification.

7.

The interrogative adjectives.

I.

Singular.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	*Welcher?* who? which? what?	*Welche?* who? which? what?	*Welches?* who? which? what?
Gen.	*Welches?* whose? of which? of what?	*Welcher?* whose? of which? of what?	*Welches?* whose? of which? of what?
Dat.	*Welchem?* to whom? to which? to what?	*Welcher?* to whom? to which? to what?	*Welchem?* to whom? to which? to what?
Acc.	*Welchen?* whom? which? what?	*Welche?* whom? which? what?	*Welches?* whom? which? what?

Plural for all three genders.

Nom. *Welche?* who? which? Dat. *Welchen?* to whom? to which?
Gen. *Welcher?* whose? of which? Acc. *Welche?* whom? which?

II.

	Masculine and feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	*Wer?* who?	*Was?* what?
Gen.	*Wessen?* whose?	— —
Dat.	*Wem?* to whom?	*Von was?* of what?
Acc.	*Wen?* whom?	*Was?* what?

III.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	*Was für ein?* what?	*Was für eine?* what?	*Was für ein?* what?
Gen.	*Was für eines?* of what?	*Was für einer?* of what?	*Was für eines?* of what?

Dat.	*Was für einem?* to what?	*Was für einer?* to what?	*Was für einem?* to what?
Acc.	*Was für einen?* what?	*Was für eine?* what?	*Was für ein?* what?

Observations.

1. *Was für ein? was für eine? was für ein?* which signifies literally *what for a*, has in the plural number *was für?*

2. Instead of *was für ein? was für eine? was für ein?* is sometimes used *welch ein? welch eine? welch ein?*

3. When the interrogative adjective *was für ein?* is used in an absolute sense, it has in the nominative singular masculine *was für einer?* and in the nominative and accusative singular neuter *was für eines* or *eins?*

Section III.

The use of the German adjectives.

1.

The use of the attributive adjectives. Their place.

The attributive adjectives in their constructive state are placed before their substantive. This is also the case with all the other adjectives. Examples: *der gute Knabe*, the good boy. *Die schöne Blume*, the fine flower. *Eine spröde Miene*, a prudish air. *Nöthige Dinge*, things necessary. *Allmächtiger Gott*, God almighty. There are, however, some exceptions. The attributive adjective is placed after its substantive: —

1. When it assumes the function of a relative sentence, and stands by way of apposition. Examples: *Der Held, mächtig im Felde, und weise im Rathe, wird allgemein verehrt.* The hero, powerful in the field, and wise in the council, is generally revered. This stands for: *welcher mächtig im Felde und weise im Rathe ist.* It may also be said: *Der im Felde mächtige und im Rathe weise Held. Dieses*

wär ein Werk, eines groſsen Mannes würdig. This was a work, worthy of a great man. This stands for: *welches eines groſsen Mannes würdig war. Der Minister, nicht weniger gerecht, als staatsklug, that Alles, um diesem Ereignisse vorzubeugen.* The minister, not less just than politic, did every thing to obviate this event. This stands for: *welcher nicht weniger gerecht als staatsklug war. Ich habe heute guten Wein, rothen und weiſsen, getrunken.* I have drunk to-day good wine, red and white. This stands for: *welcher röth und weiſs war.* It may also be said: *Ich habe guten rothen und weiſsen Wein getrunken.*

2. When it is joined to a proper name as a title of distinction. Example: *Alexander, der Grōſse,* Alexander the great.

3. In these and similar expressions: *zwanzig Mark lübeckisch,* twenty marks of Lübeck. *Hundert Fuſs rheinländisch,* one hundred feet Rhenish.

Those words, which immediately relate to an attributive adjective, are put before it. Examples: *dieser Ehre würdig,* worthy of this honour. *Er ist vieler Sprāchen kundig.* He is skilful in many languages. *Zehn Fuſs lang,* ten feet long. *Zwölf Pfund schwēr,* weighing twelve pounds. *Drei Thaler wērth,* worth three dollars. *Funfzig Jahre alt,* fifty years old. *Er ist viel Geld schuldig.* He owes a great deal of money. *Die Gesundheit ist zur Glückseligkeit unentbehrlich.* Health is indispensably necessary to happiness. *Dieser junge Herr war nicht für Sophiens Reize unempfindlich.* This young gentleman was not insensible of the charms of Sophia. *Er ist ein ganz anderer Mann, als Sie sāgten.* He is quite another man than you said. *Er ist ein gründlich gelehrter Mann.* He is a profoundly learned man. *Viele wenig bedeutende Beweise,* many arguments signifying little. *Eine so geringe Sache,* so small a matter. *Ein zu gnädiger König,* too gracious a king. *Von einer etwas lebhaften Gesichtsfarbe,* of somewhat a lively complexion. Sometimes, however, the words relating to an attributive adjective are placed after it.

Example: *Er war ein Prinz, fähig zur Regierung,* He was a prince fit for government.

On the agreement of the attributive adjective with its substantive. To which are added some other observations.

The attributive adjective, as also all the other adjectives, must agree with its substantive in gender, number, and case, when being in its constructive state. This rule must also be applied to the degrees of comparison. The substantive is sometimes omitted. Examples: *Der gute Mann, und der böse,* the good man, and the bad. *Den zwölften dieses Mōnates,* the twelfth of this month. Instead of *den zwölften Tag.*

Almost every attributive adjective may be employed like a substantive masculine or neuter. Examples: *Der Arme,* the poor man; *die Armen,* the poor. *Der Reiche,* the rich man; *die Reichen,* the rich. *Der Ehrgeizige,* the ambitious man; *die Ehrgeizigen,* the ambitious. *Der Gelehrte,* the learned man; *die Gelehrten,* the learned. *Der Gerechte,* the just man; *die Gerechten,* the just. *Die Grofsen,* the great. *Die Alten,* the ancients. *Die Neuern,* the moderns. *Die Vornehmsten,* the principal. *Die Eingebornen,* the natives. *Das Edle,* that which is noble. *Das Erhabene,* that which is sublime. *Das Grofse,* that which is great. *Das Schöne,* that which is beautiful. *Dieser Mann hat keinen Sinn für das Wahre.* This man has no sense for truth. *Alles wāhrhaft Gute und Lōbenswürdige ist der Gegenstand meiner Wünsche.* All what is truly noble and praiseworthy is the object of my wishes. *Wir fürchten immer das Schlimmste,* We always fear the worst. When the attributive adjectives are used like substantives masculine, they have also the indefinite article before them. *Ein Gelehrter, ein Armer, ein Reicher.* In the plural number: *Gelehrte, Arme, Reiche.* It has been already said at another place of this Grammar, that substantives of this kind are declined according to the sixth declension. It must

yet be observed, that the attributive adjectives may also be used like substantives feminine. Examples: *die Schöne*, the fair lady. *Eine Hässliche*, an ugly woman. *Eine Gelehrte*, a learned woman. Substantives of this kind belong to the seventh declension. They say also: *Groſs und Klein sind dagēgen*, instead of *Groſse und Kleine sind dagegen*. Great and little men are against it. *Groſs* and *Klein* (instead of *Groſses* and *Kleines*) are here the neuter gender, and have the signification of substantives.

The following words are also attributive adjectives employed as substantives neuter: *Das Blau*, the quality of being blue, the blue colour. *Das Gelb*, the yellow, the yellow colour. *Das Grün*, the green. *Das Rōth*, the red colour. *Das Schwarz*, the black colour. *Das Weiſs*, the white colour. *Das Rund*, the round. Instead of *das Blaue; das Gelbe; das Grüne; das Rothe; das Schwarze; das Weiſse; das Runde*. But those words are declined after the first declension. The dative case, however, does not take the *e*, which other words require.

It is yet to be observed, that the greatest part of the attributive adjectives may be used as adverbs.

On the government of the attributive adjectives.

There are attributive adjectives, which govern no case. For example: *Muthig*, courageous. *Unerschrocken*, intrepid. *Rēdlich*, honest. But there are also many attributive adjectives, which govern either the genitive, or the dative.

The following govern the genitive: *bedürftig*, in want of. *Benöthigt*, in need of. *Bewusst*, conscious. *Eingedenk*, mindful. *Fähig*, capable. *Froh*, glad, satisfied. *Gewiss*, certain. *Gewohnt*, accustomed. *Kundig*, knowing, skilled. *Mächtig*, eminently skilful. *Müde*, tired. *Satt*, weary. *Schuldig*, guilty. *Theilhaft* or *theilhaftig*, partaking. *Überdrüssig*, tired, weary. *Verdächtig*, suspected. *Voll*, full. *Wérth* or *würdig*, worthy. Examples: *Er ist meines Beistandes bedürftig*. He wants my assistance.

Er ist gār keines Dinges benöthigt. He wants nothing at all. *Ich bin mīr keiner bösen Handlungen bewusst.* I am not conscious of wicked actions. *Er ist meiner Kinder eingedenk.* He is mindful of my children. *Mein Herz ist nicht der Undankbarkeit fähig.* My heart is not capable of ingratitude. *Ich wérde nicht meines Lebens froh.* I do not enjoy my life. *Ich bin seiner Liebe gewiss.* I am sure of his love. *Ich bin der Arbeit gewohnt.* I am accustomed to work. *Er ist des Weges kundig.* He is acquainted with the road. *Ich bin der deutschen Sprache mächtig.* I am master of the German language. *Ich bin des Lebens müde.* I am tired of living. *Ich bin meines Lebens satt.* I am weary of my life. *Sie machte sich einer Schwäche schuldig.* She was guilty of a weakness. *Ich bin dieses Menschen überdrüssig.* I am weary of this man. *Er ist voll Weines.* He is full of wine. *Er ist allgemeīner Achtung würdig.* He is worthy of general esteem. *Er ist der Sorge únwerth*, he is undeserving of the care. *Fähig* is joined with the preposition *zu*, when it signifies fit for any thing. *Froh* is joined with the preposition *über* and the accusative, when it is not followed by *wérden*. *Voll* has ordinarily the nominative after it. Example: *Mein Beutel ist voll Geld.* My purse is full of money. It is also sometimes joined with the preposition *von*. Example: *Voll von dieser Hoffnung, verliefs er mich.* Full of this hope, he left me. The attributive adjectives *fähig* (able), *froh*, *gewiss*, *mächtig* (powerful), *müde*, *satt*, *schuldig*, *verdächtig*, *voll*, *würdig*, are also frequently used in an absolute sense, that is, without being followed by a genitive case.

The following and many other attributive adjectives govern the dative: *ähnlich*, resembling. *Angemessen*, adapted, suitable. *Angenéhm*, agreeable. *Bekannt*, known. *Bequém*, convenient. *Beschwērlich*, troublesome. *Dienlich*, serviceable. *Ergében*, given, addicted, devoted. *Gehōrsam*, obedient. *Gemāfs*, agreeable, suited. *Geneigt*, *gewogen*, favourable, kind. *Gleich*, like. *Nahe*, near. *Nützlich*,

useful. *Schädlich*, hurtful. *Theuer*, dear. *Verwandt*, related. *Zuträglich*, conducible. All these words, with the exception of *gemäfs*, are also employed absolutely. *Geneigt* has also the preposition *zu* after it. Example: *Er ist zur Trunkenheit geneigt.* He is inclined to drunkenness. It may be said: *Ich bin ihm verwandt*, or *mit ihm verwandt*, I am related to him.

Many attributive adjectives have a preposition with its case after them. Examples: *Begierig nach Ruhm*, desirous of glory. *Für gute Eindrücke* (or *guter Eindrücke*) *empfänglich*, susceptible of good impressions. *Reich an Wörtern*, rich in words. *Er ist stolz auf seine Gelehrsamkeit.* He is proud of his learning. *Er ist immer gütig gegen mich.* He is always kind to me. *Er war taub gegen meine Bitte.* He was deaf to my entreaty.

The attributive adjectives govern also an infinitive followed by the word *zu*. Examples: *Ich bin begierig, ihn zu sehen.* I am desirous of seeing him. *Es war mir unmöglich, ihn zu lieben.* It was impossible for me to love him.

Of the use of the comparative and superlative degree.

The comparative degree is used, when two persons or things are compared one with another; and the superlative degree, when more than two subjects are compared one with another. Examples: *Die rechte Hand ist die stärkere.* The right hand is the stronger. *Die Seele ist vollkommener als der Körper; die Seele ist folglich der edlere Theil des Menschen.* The soul is more perfect than the body; the soul is, of course, the nobler part of man. *Crösus war der reichste König.* Croesus was the richest king. *Der reichste König* is elliptically said for: *der reichste aller Könige*, the richest of all kings. The comparative degree is also sometimes employed to express in general a higher degree of any quality. Example: *Glücklich sind diejenigen, welche eine reinere Liebe vereint.* Happy are they whom a purer

love unites. The comparative degree implies also sometimes the notion *ziemlich*, pretty, somewhat. Example: *Seit längerer Zeit*, since longer time, that is, *seit ziemlich langer Zeit*.

The English *than*, which is placed after a comparative degree, is expressed in German by *als*. Example: *Weisheit ist besser als Gold.* Wisdom is better than gold. In the same manner the English *as*, which is used in a comparison, is rendered in German. Example: *Ich bin nicht so gelehrt als er.* I am not as learned as he. The first *as* is translated by *so*. The English *by*, which is sometimes employed in a comparison, is expressed in German by *um*. Examples: *Sie ist um Vieles* (or *bei weitem*) *hübscher als ihre Schwester.* She is prettier by much than her sister. *Er ist um zehn Jahre jünger als ich.* He is younger by ten years than I. *Er ist um einen ganzen Kopf grö̈ßer.* He is taller by a whole head. *Er ist um die Hälfte kürzer.* He is shorter by half. *Um* may, however, be omitted. *Er ist zehn Jahre älter als ich.* He is ten years older than I.

The superlative degree is followed by the genitive case, or by the prepositions *von* and *unter*. Examples: *Cicero wär der gröfste Rēdner der Römer.* Cicero was the greatest orator of the Romans. *Er ist der reichste von uns allen.* He is the richest of us all. *Die Reichen sind nicht die glücklichsten unter allen Menschen.* The rich are not the happiest of all men. Also the superlative degree may be used as a substantive. Example: *Die Zeit ist das Edelste und Kostbarste, welches wir haben.* Time is the most noble and precious gift we have.

The superlative degree is used only with the definite article, when it is mediately joined to a substantive. It is, of course, not said: *Derjenige Mann ist weisest*, but *der weiseste, welcher ein ruhiges Leben führt.* That man is the most wise, who leads a quiet life. Only the compound word *allerliebst*, most lovely of all, is excepted. For instance: *Ihre Schwester ist allerliebst.* Your sister is very

handsome. *Das ist allerliebst.* That is most lovely. The superlative degree may, however, mediately be connected with a substantive by means of a circumlocution. This circumlocution consists in the dative case singular of the second mode of declining the attributive adjectives, to which the word *am* is prefixed. The following English phrase: *It is finest*, is, consequently, expressed in German by: *Es ist am schönsten.* Here are a few examples, in order to illustrate the use of that circumlocution. *Diejenige Frau ist am klügsten, welche ihren Haushalt gut besorgt.* That woman is most prudent, who takes good care of her domestic concerns. *Dasjenige Kind ist am liebenswürdigsten, welches folgsam ist.* That child is most amiable, which is obedient. *Diejenigen Leute sind am vernünftigsten, welche am wenigsten Vorurtheilen unterworfen sind.* Those people are most reasonable, who are least subject to prejudices. *Es wird am besten seyn, heute zu Hause zu bleiben.* It will be best to stay at home to-day. *Der Redner ist dann am größten, wenn er die Leidenschaften anredet.* The orator is then greatest, when he addresses the passions. *Diese Dame ist am schönsten, wenn sie sich nicht schminkt.* This lady is most handsome, when she does not paint herself. In all these instances, with the exception of the two last sentences, the definite article may also be used. *Diejenige Frau ist die klügste*, that woman is the most prudent. *Dasjenige Kind ist das liebenswürdigste*, that child is the most amiable. *Diejenigen Leute sind die vernünftigsten*, those people are the most reasonable. *Es wird das Beste seyn*, it will be the best thing.

The superlative degree is employed in the vocative case in the following examples: *theuerster Bruder*, dearest brother. *Theuerste Schwester*, dearest sister. *Theuerstes Kind*, dearest child. *Würdigste Freunde*, most worthy friends.

In the third mode of declining the attributive adjectives the superlative degree is used only after the pronouns and the possessive adjectives. Exam-

ples: *ich ärmster Mensch*, I poorest man. *Du theuerster Bruder*, thou dearest brother. *Mein theuerster Sohn*, my dearest son.

2.

The use of the numeral adjectives.

When in English the substantive is left out after an attributive adjective, *one* is put in its place. But this is not done in German, where the numeral *ein* is never used to fill the place of the omitted substantive. This is also not necessary, because by the declension of the German adjective its reference to the preceding substantive is already signified. But this is not the case in English. Here is the adjective invariable, and, therefore, *one* must be employed to avoid the repetition of the substantive, to which it relates. Examples: *Das ist eine gute (Féder)*. That is a good one (instead of a good pen). *Holen Sie mir die schwarzen (Strümpfe)*. Fetch me the black ones (instead of the black stockings). The words enclosed, to which those attributive adjectives refer, must be understood after them.

Zwei and *drei* must be inflected in the genitive and dative, when these cases are not otherwise distinguished. Examples: *die Stärke zweier Männer*, the strength of two men. *Die Macht dreier Könige*, the power of three kings. But when the genitive case of the numerals *zwei* and *drei* is determined by the article, or an adjective, it is not inflected. It must, consequently, be said: *die Stärke der zwei Männer*, the strength of the two men. *Die Treue zwei aufrichtiger Freunde*, the faith of two sincere friends. *Die Macht dieser drei Könige*, the power of these three kings. The termination *en* must be added to the numerals *zwei* and *drei*, when they are not followed by a substantive. Examples: *Ich habe es zweien gegében*. I have given it to two. *Mit zweien*, with two. *Ich habe es dreien mitgetheilt*. I have communicated it to three. *Von dreien*, from three. Also all the other cardinal numbers, with the exception of *sieben* and *zéhn*, admit the

termination of the dative in the same circumstances. Examples: *Ich habe es vieren gesagt.* I have told it to four. *Auf allen vieren*, upon all fours. *Mit sechsen*, with six. *Von achten*, of eight. *Ich habe es zwanzigen, hunderten, tausenden mitgetheilt.* I have communicated it to twenty, to a hundred, to a thousand. But when the cardinal numbers are followed by a substantive, their dative does not receive the termination *en*. Example: *Ich habe es zwei, drei, vier, zwanzig, hundert, tausend Leuten gesagt.* I have told it to two, to three, to four, to twenty, to a hundred, to a thousand people. Also in compound numbers the termination *en* is not added. Example: *Vor ein tausend acht hundert sechs und dreißig*, before the year 1836.

As the termination of the genitive is peculiar only to the numerals *zwei* and *drei*, the preposition *von* must be employed, in order to express the genitive of the other cardinal numbers. Example: *die Macht von vier Königen*, the power of four kings.

In English the numbers *hundred* and *thousand* have the indefinite article before them; but in German this is not the case. *Hundert Thaler*, a hundred dollars. *Tausend Pfund*, a thousand pounds.

Fractions of numbers are put before the name of a thing, which is reckoned or numbered. Examples: *Ein, zwei, sieben und ein halber Thaler*, one, two, seven dollars and a half. *Drei und drei Viertel Pfund*, three pounds and three quarters. Instead *ein und ein halber Thaler*, *zwei und ein halber Thaler*, *sieben und ein halber Thaler*, may also be said: *anderthalb*, *dritthalb*, *achthalb Thaler*. In naming the hour of the day, the numbers are either put alone, or the word *Uhr* is added. Examples: *Es schlägt eins* or *ein Uhr*. It strikes one. *Es ist acht* or *acht Uhr*. It is eight o'clock. *Es ist ein Viertel auf acht*. It is a quarter past seven. *Es ist halb acht*. It is half past seven. *Es ist drei Viertel auf eilf*. It is three quarters past ten. *Ich will um halb neun wiederkommen*. I will come again at half an hour after eight. *Es schlägt ein Viertel auf sechs*.

It strikes a quarter past five. *Es schlägt halb sechs.* It strikes half past five. *Es fehlt ein Viertel zu acht.* It wants a quarter to eight.

The cardinal numbers are also used as feminine substantives. *Die Eine, eine Eins. Die Zwei, eine Zwei. Die Drei, eine Drei. Die Vier, eine Vier.* In the plural number: *die Einsen; die Zweien; die Dreien; die Vieren. Drei Sechsen,* three sixes. *Vier Neunen,* four nines. *Alle Achten,* all the eights. *Die Zwölfe* is said for *die zwölf Apostel,* the twelve apostles. *Hundert* and *tausend* are employed as neuter substantives. *Das Hundert,* the hundred. *Das Tausend,* the thousand. In the plural number: *die Hunderte; die Tausende.*

When the cardinal and ordinal numbers are associated with substantives, they stand either with the genitive, or with the prepositions *von* and *unter.* Examples: *Einer seiner Freunde* or *von seinen Freunden,* one of his friends. *Zwei meiner besten Freunde sind tōdt.* Two of my best friends are dead. *Der erste von ihnen, unter ihnen,* the first of them.

When the second of two persons is denoted, *der zweite* is not used, but *der andere.* In the same manner the word *beide* is employed, when but two persons or things are denoted. In this case *zwei* cannot be used. Example: *Karl und Wilhelm sind noch hier. Keiner von Beiden ist nach London gereiset.* Charles and William are yet here. Neither of the two is gone to London. *Sie wurden auf beiden Flügeln angegriffen.* They were attacked on both wings. *Beide sind schōn länget tōdt.* Both are dead long ago. *Wir beide,* both of us. *Sie beide,* both of them. *Diese beiden Gründe,* both these reasons. *Beides,* both, is used as a substantive. *Sie können Beides nehmen, wenn Sie wollen.* You may take both, if you will.

3.

The use of the possessive adjectives.

The possessive conjunctive adjectives are joined with substantives. Examples: *mein Vater,* my father.

Deine Mutter, thy mother. *Sein Kind*, his child. But they stand also by themselves. Examples: *Der Garten ist mein.* The garden is mine. *Die Stube ist dein.* The room is thine. *Das Haus ist sein.* The house is his. *Es ist mein.* It is mine. *Es ist ihr.* It is hers. *Es ist unser.* It is ours. *Es ist euer.* It is yours. When a distinction of the possessors is made, these possessive adjectives, when standing by themselves, receive in the nominative singular masculine the termination *er*, in the nominative singular feminine the termination *e*, and in the nominative and accusative singular neuter the ending *es*. Examples: *Wessen Hund ist das?* Whose dog is that? *Es ist meiner, unserer.* It is mine, ours. *Wessen Fēder ist das?* Whose pen is that? *Es ist seine, unsere.* It is his, ours. *Wessen Būch ist das?* Whose book is this? *Es ist seines, es ist ihres, es ist unseres, es ist eures.* It is his, it is hers, it is ours, it is yours. *Ist dieses meines oder Ihres?* Is this mine or yours?

The possessive conjunctive adjectives must be repeated before every substantive, which has another gender or number than the preceding word. Examples: *mein Sohn und meine Tochter*, my son and daughter. *Mein Rock and mein Geld*, my coat and money. *Meine Töchter und meine Söhne*, my daughters and sons. This repetition takes also place before the attributive adjectives, which denote different things. Example: *Ich kenne seine grofsen und seine kleinen Pferde.* I know his great and his little horses. But when the substantives have the same gender, or a similar signification, the possessive conjunctive adjectives are not repeated. Examples: *meine Tochter und Schwester*, my daughter and sister. *Seine schönsten und bessten Bücher*, his finest and best books. They say: *meines Gleichen; deines Gleichen; seines Gleichen; ihres Gleichen; eures Gleichen;* mean people of an equal situation with me, thee, him, her, them, you. These absolute genitives are to be taken elliptically, and stand for *Einer* or *Jemand meines Gleichen;* &c.

When a substantive is followed by *welcher* or *dêr*, the use of a possessive conjunctive adjective does not take place. Example: *Haben Sie meinen Brief, welchen ich Ihnen geschrieben habe, erhalten?* It must be said: *Haben Sie den Brief, welchen* &c.

When two substantives are in a sentence, to which the possessive conjunctive adjective may be referred, the genitive of *der* and *derselbe* is used, in order to obviate an ambiguity. Examples: *Karl sah Franzen und dessen Schwester.* Charles saw Francis and the sister of him. *Cicero liefs die Mitverschworenen des Catilina in dessen Hause ergreifen.* Cicero ordered the accomplices of Catiline to be seized in his house. Here *dessen* stands for *seine* and *seinem*, and prevents all misconception. But *seine* and *seinem* might be referred to Francis and to Cicero. *Grōfs sind die Wōhlthaten, welche Friedrich seinem Bruder und den Kindern desselben erwiesen hat.* Great are the benefits, which Frederic has conferred upon his brother and the children of him. The genitive of *der* and *derselbe* is also used in speaking of inanimate objects, particularly when they are of the neuter gender. Example: *Der menschliche Körper und dessen Verrichtungen.* The human body and its functions. *Das ist ein schönes Haus. Wer ist dessen Besitzer* or *der Besitzer desselben?* That is a fine house. Who is the possessor of it? *Ich bin dessen überdrüssig.* I am tired of it?

Eure, Seine, and *Ihre* serve for addressing kings. Examples: *Eure Majestät*, your majesty. *Eure königliche Hoheit*, your royal highness. They say also: *Euer Gnaden*, your grace.

The possessive absolute adjectives are used in the following manner: *Wessen Hūt ist das?* Whose hat is that? *Es ist der meine* or *der meinige.* It is mine. *Wessen Uhr ist das?* Whose watch is that? *Es ist die deine* or *die deinige.* It is thine. *Wessen Būch ist das?* Whose book is that? *Es ist das seine* or *das seinige.* It is his. In speaking to a single person, these words are employed as the pronouns.

Dein and *deinige* are used as *du*; *sein* and *seinige* as *er*; *ihr* and *ihrige* as *sie*.

The possessive absolute adjectives are also used as substantives. *Das Meine* or *das Meinige*, my property. *Das Deine* or *das Deinige*, thy property. *Das Seine* or *das Seinige*, his property. *Das Ihre* or *das Ihrige*, her property; your property; their property. *Das Unsere* or *das Unserige*, our property. *Das Eure* or *das Eurige*, your property. *Thue das Deinige*. Do what is thine. *Sie fordert das Ihrige*, she demands what is hers. *Die Meinen* or *die Meinigen*, my family. *Die Deinen* or *die Deinigen*, thy family. *Die Seinen* or *die Seinigen*, his family.

4.

The use of the demonstrative adjectives.

The demonstrative adjectives are not only joined to a substantive, but are also put absolutely.

When *dieser* and *jener* stand before an attributive adjective, this word does not receive the termination masculine and neuter of the dative. Example: *Ich schreibe oft diesem guten Manne.* I often write to this good man.

Dieser relates to that which is near; and *jener* to that which is remote. When *dieser* and *jener* relate to the foregoing words, *dieser* is referred to the latter; and *jener* to the former. Instead of *jener — dieser* are also used *der erstere — der letztere*, the former — the latter.

The neuter singular of the demonstrative adjectives, *dieses* and *jenes*, is also used as a substantive. When it forms the subject of a phrase or sentence, it is placed before and after the verb *seyn* without any distinction of gender, or number. Examples: *Dieses ist ein Mann.* This is a man. *Jenes ist eine Frau.* That is a woman. *Dieses sind gute Menschen.* These are good men. *Was für ein Mann ist dieses?* What man is this? *Was für eine Frau ist dieses?* What woman is this? *Was für Leute sind dieses?* What people are these? Instead of *dieses* may also be said *dies (dies)*.

Instead of *dieser, diese, dieses*, the Germans also use in colloquial conversation the article *der, die, das*, on which then a particular stress is laid. In this case must be said in the genitive singular *dessen, déren, dessen (dass)*; in the genitive plural *dérer*; and in the dative of the same number *dénen*. Examples: *Wie schmeckt Ihnen dér Wein?* How do you like this wine? Instead of *dieser Wein*. *Wessen Haus ist das?* Whose house is that? *Dessen da*. That person's. *Wém gehört es?* To whom does it belong? *Dém da*. To that person. *Wér ist die Persōn?* Who is that person? For *diese Person*. *Das ist der Mann*. That is the man. *Das ist die Frau*. That is the woman. *Das sind die Leute*. Those are the people.

The following adverbs are employed instead of the demonstrative adjective *dieser* governed by a preposition: *damit*, therewith. For *mit diesem* or *mit dém*, with this. *Darán*, thereon. For *an diesem* or *an dém*, on this. *Daraūs*, thereout. For *aus diesem* or *aus dém*, out of this. *Darüber*, thereupon. For *über dieses* or *über das*, upon this. *Davón*, thereof. For *von diesem* or *von dém*, of or from this. *Hierán*, hereon. For *an diesem*, on this. *Hieraūs*, hereout, hence. For *aus diesem*, out of this. *Hiermit*, herewith. For *mit diesem*, with this.

5.

The use of the determinative adjectives.

The determinative adjectives may be joined to substantives, or stand by themselves. Examples: *Diejenigen Menschen*, or simply *diejenigen, dénen irgend ein Sinn mangelt, besitzen die übrigen mit grōſserer Stärke und Lebéndigkeit*. Those who want any one sense, possess the others with greater force and vivacity. *Dér kennt nicht die Menschen, welcher sich auf ihre Versprechungen verlässt*. He knows not men, who trusts in their promises.

The plural cases *dérer* and *dénen* stand instead of a substantive, and are never used before and with it. Examples: *Das Schicksal únglücklicher*

Menschen ist bedauernswürdig; aber das Schicksal dêrer, welche sich ihr Unglück selbst zügezogen haben, ist noch bedauernswürdiger. The fate of unfortunate men is deplorable; but the fate of those is yet more deplorable, who are the cause of their own misfortune. *Wir trauen dênen nicht, welche Unwahrheiten sagen.* We do not trust those who tell falsehoods.

Dêrjenige and *dêr* are also used to avoid the repetition of a substantive before named. Example: *Mein Pfêrd ist besser, als dasjenige Ihres Vaters.* My horse is better than that of your father.

6.

The use of the connective adjectives.

The English apply *who* to persons, and *which* to animals and things; but in German *welcher* and *der* are used in relation to the one and the other. They are promiscuously employed. *Der, die, das,* has the advantage of brevity, and is, therefore, often preferred. It must not only be used, in order to avoid the too frequent repetition of *welcher, welche, welches;* but also, when *ich, du, er, sie, wīr, ihr, sie,* go before. Examples: *ich, der ich viele Bücher gelêsen habe,* I who have read many books. *Du, der du hier stehest,* thou who standest here. *O Gott, der du Alles mit Weisheit regierest,* O God, who governest all things with wisdom. *Wir, die wir hier versammelt sind,* we who are here assembled. *Ihr, die Ihr euer Vaterland liebt,* you who love your country. *Welcher, welche, welches,* which is the original and proper connective adjective, must be employed, when the definite article or a determinative adjective goes before, or when it stands alone with a verb. Examples: *Der Atheist, welcher nicht an Gott glaubt, stirbt ohne Hoffnung.* The atheist, who does not believe in God, dies without hope. *Dêr, welcher die Freundschaft verräth, sollte aus der Gesellschaft ausgestōſsen wêrden.* He who betrays friendship, ought to be banished from society. *Es ist derselbe Mann, welcher schreibt.* It is the same

man, who is writing. *Ein Knabe, welcher liest*, a boy that is reading.

The connective adjectives are put in the plural number, when they relate to more than one substantive. Example: *Weisheit und Tugend sind es, welche uns glücklich machen.* It is wisdom and virtue that make us happy.

The connective adjectives, which in English are sometimes omitted, must in German always be expressed.

When the connective adjectives may be referred to two preceding substantives, or when they may be taken for the nominative or accusative plural, this ambiguity must be obviated by another turn of expression. Examples: *Es ist eine Wirkung der Vorsehung, welche unsere Bewunderung verdient.* It is an effect of Providence which deserves our admiration. *Welche* may be referred in this sentence to *Wirkung* and *Vorsehung*. It must, consequently, be said: *Es ist eine Wirkung der Vorsehung; und diese Wirkung verdient unsere Bewunderung. Die Menschen, welche die Leidenschaften beherrschen, sind nicht weise. Welche* may be in this sentence the accusative or nominative plural. It must, of course, be said: *Die Menschen, welche von den Leidenschaften beherrscht werden, sind nicht weise.* Those men, who are governed by passions, are not wise. Also it is to be remarked, that the connective adjectives must instantly present their antecedent to the mind of the reader without the least obscurity.

Welches relates to a whole sentence. Example: *welches zu beweisen wär*, what was to be proved.

Welcher, welche, welches, expresses also the English *some*. Example: *Dieses ist gutes Obst. Geben Sie mir welches.* This is good fruit. Give me some.

Wer always begins a sentence. Examples: *Wer es sagt, ist ein Lügner.* He who says so, is a liar. *Wer ein gutes Leben führt, wird dafür belohnt werden.* He that leads a good life, will be rewarded for it. *Wer die Wissenschaft verachtet, kennt sie nicht.* They who despise science, do not know

it. When *wer* is but used for *welcher*, *dér* stands at the beginning of the second part of the sentence. Example: *Wer mich liebt, dén liebe ich.* I love those who love me. When *wer* stands alone with the verb, *da* is added to it. Example: *Wer da glaubt, dass dieses so ist, der irrt sich.* He who thinks that this is so, is mistaken. For *welcher glaubt.* When *wer* is followed by *auch* or *auch immer*, it signifies *whoever, whosoever.* Example: *wer auch der Mann seyn mag*, whoever may be the man.

The neuter *was* may either commence a sentence, or be placed after *das; Alles;* &c. Examples: *Was gerecht ist, verdient Lūb.* What is just, deserves praise. *Was Sie sagen, ist nūr zu wahr.* What you say, is but too true. *Das, was Sie mīr gesagt haben*, that which you have told me. *Alles, was ich gesehen habe*, all I have seen. When *was* is followed by *auch* or *auch immer*, it signifies *whatever, whatsoever.* Example: *was auch immer die Folge seyn mag*, whatever may be the consequence. *Was* is also used for *welches.* Example: *das Būch, was Sie mīr geliehen haben*, the book, which you have lent me. Instead of *welches Sie mir* &c.

The following adverbs are employed instead of the connective adjective *welcher, welche, welches*, governed by a preposition: *wodúrch*, where through; for *durch welchen, durch welches, durch welche*, through which. *Womit*, wherewith; instead of *mit welchem, mit welcher, mit welchen*, with which. *Woraūf*, whereon; for *auf welchen, auf welche, auf welches*, upon which. *Woraūs*, whereout; instead of *aus welchem, aus welcher, aus welchen*, out of which. *Worüber*, whereupon, whereover; for *über welchen, über welche, über welches, über welche*, upon which, over which. *Wovon*, whereof; instead of *von welchem, von welcher, von welchen*, of which. *Wozú*, whereto; instead of *zu welchem, zu welcher, zu welchen*, to which.

7.

The use of the interrogative adjectives.

Welcher and *wer* must well be distinguished. *Welcher* determines the person, to which the question refers; but *wer* does not determine the person, of which we speak. *Welcher* may be united with substantives, or stands alone. *Wer* and *was* have no plural; and are never joined with a substantive. *Wer* is applied to persons; and *was* to things.

Welches is used, when after the verb *seyn* a substantive in the singular or plural number is named, which, as the subject of the question, is yet undetermined, and to which *welches* refers. Example: *Welches ist der Stein, den Sie gefunden haben?* Which is the stone you have found? But when the subject of the question is to be determined amongst more objects of its kind, the interrogative adjective *welcher* is put in the gender, to which the subject of the question belongs. Example: *Welcher von diesen (beiden) Steinen ist der härtere?* Which of these (two) stones is the harder?

The following examples will show the use of the interrogative adjective *was für ein? Was für ein Mann ist dieses?* What man is this? *Was für eine Uhr wünschen Sie?* What watch do you wish? *Was für ein Buch lesen Sie?* What book do you read? *Was für einem Kinde haben Sie es gegeben?* To which child have you given it? *Versuchen Sie es, was für ein Freund ich bin.* Try, what a friend I am. *Was für Beweise haben Sie?* What proofs have you? *Was für parteiische Richter sind Liebe und Hass!* What partial judges are love and hatred! The article *ein* is not added to the interrogative adjective *was für?* when it refers to a substantive, that is only employed in the singular. Example: *Was für Gold ist das?* What gold is that? They say, however, also: *in was für Gelde? in was für Münze?* In what money? though both these words are also used in the plural number. It is a fault to separate *für* from *was*. Example: *Was für Bücher haben Sie?* What

books have you? It should be a fault to say; *Was haben Sie für Bücher?*

The interrogative adjectives are also used without interrogation, in order to express admiration or surprise.

Section IV.

Exercises on the German adjectives.

I.

Those children are very happy, who have wise and virtuous parents. Poor people have often nothing to eat, when they are hungry. Obedient children have the love and confidence of good men. Quarrelsome boys are not loved. Amongst the grass are some fine flowers. Healthy limbs are requisite for all that we undertake. Excellent qualities do honour to man. I have always a great pleasure, when I give to poor people a trifle. It is a small expence to me to assist them. But this little is a great relief to them. The grass of this meadow is very high. Brave and trusty men are generally humane, tender and merciful; while men of base and low minds are usually tyrannical, cruel, insolent, when they have power. He who pays a sacred regard to divine and human laws, has no reason to fear a wicked man. Religious considerations will lighten to a mind rightly turned the heaviest misfortunes. Few things are necessary to make the wise man happy.

Very happy, *sehr glücklich.*
wise, *weise.*
virtuous, *tugendhaft.*
the parents, *die Ältern.*
have, *habe.*
poor, *arm.*
people, *die Leute,* 1.
have, *haben.*
often, *oft.*
nothing, *Nichts.*
to eat, *zu essen.*
when, *wenn, wann.*
they, *sie.*
hungry, *hungrig.*
are, *sind.*
obedient, *gehörsam.*
the love, *die Liebe,* 7.
the confidence, *das Vertrauen,* 4.
quarrelsome, *zänkisch.*
the boy, *der Knabe,* 6.
are not loved, *wérden nicht geliebt.*
amongst, *unter* (dat).

the grass, *das Grās*, 2.
are, *sind*, *stehen*.
some is not expressed in German.
fine, *schön*.
the flower, *die Blume*, 7.
healthy, *gesund*.
the limb, *das Glied*, 2.
are, *sind*.
for all that, *zu Allem*, *was*.
we undertake, *wir vörnehmen*.
requisite, *erforderlich*.
excellent, *vortréfflich*.
the quality, *die Eigenschaft*, 7.
dò, *bringen*.
man, *der Mensch*, 6.
honour, *Ehre*.
always, *immer*.
the pleasure, *die Freude*, 7.
I, *ich*.
the trifle, *die Kleinigkeit*, 7.
give, *gebe*.
small, *klein*.
the expence, *die Aūsgabe*, 7.
to me, *für mich*.
to assist them, *wenn ich ihnen helfe*.
but this little, *allein dieses Wenige*.
the relief, *die Erleichterung*, 7.
to them, *für sie*.
the meadow, *die Wiese*, 7.
high, *hōch*.
brave, *rechtschaffen*.
trusty, *zuverlässig*.
generally, *im Allgemeinen*.
humane, *menschlich*, *menschenfreundlich*.
tender, *zärtlich*.
merciful, *bármherzig*.
while, *wāhrend*, *aber*.
of, *von* (dat.).
base, *niedrig*.
low, *gemein*.
the mind, *die Gesinnung*, 7.
usually, *gewöhnlich*.
tyrannical, *hart*.
cruel, *grausam*.
insolent, *übermūthig*.
they, *sie*.
the power, *die Gewalt*, 7.
have, *haben*.
sacred, *heilig*.
the regard, *die Achtung*, *die Ehrerbietung*, 7.
divine, *göttlich*.
human, *menschlich*.
law, *das Gesetz*, 1.
pays, *zollt*, *beweiset*.
no, *kein*.
the reason, *die Ūrsache*, 7.
to fear, *sich vōr...* (dat.) *zu fürchten*. *Zu fürchten* must be placed after man.
wicked, *ruchlos*, *böse*.
religious, *religiös*, *fromm*.
the consideration, *die Betrachtung*, 7.
will, *werden*.
a mind rightly turned, *ein wohlgeordnetes Gemüth*, 2.
heavy, *schwēr*.
the misfortune, *das Leiden*, 4.
lighten, *erleichtern*.
few, *wenig*.
the thing, *das Ding*, 1.
necessary, *nōthwendig*.
the wise man, *der Weise*, 6.
to make, *zu machen*.

II.

It is a great sin to oppress the poor. The rich are not happy, if they do not love virtue. Many misfortunes of life proceed from the false notions, which men have concerning whatever happens. The good qualities of the excellent Henry the fourth could not protect him from the stabs of the knife

of the infamous Ravaillac. That impious wretch deprived the French of this good king, who was one of the best princes, who have reigned in France. Alexander the great, king of Macedonia, has acquired the admiration of the world; but the generous Henry found means to gain the affections of his faithful subjects. Modesty is one of the most becoming virtues, which adorn the human heart. There is something in it, which prepossesses us strongly in favour of him who wears it; and generous minds long to assist the worthy man, who seems diffident of his merit, and cannot prevail on himself to challenge the praise or tribute he deserves.

It is, *es ist.*
sin, *die Sünde*, 7.
to oppress, *wenn man drückt.*
if they do not love, *wenn sie nicht lieben.*
many, *viele.*
the misfortune, *die Widerwärtigkeit*, 7.
the life, *das Lében*, 4.
proceed, *rühren her.* *Her* must be placed after notions.
from, *von* (dat.).
false, *falsch.*
the notion, *die Vórstellung*, 7.
which men have, *welche die Menschen haben.* *Haben* must be put after happens.
concerning whatever happens, *von Allem, was sich ereignet, was geschieht.*
excellent, *vortrefflich.*
Henry the fourth, *Heinrich der Vierte.*
could, *konnten.*
him, *ihn.*
not, *nicht.*
from, *gegen* (acc.).
the stab of the knife, *der Mésserstich*, 1.
infamous, *schändlich.*
protect, *schützen.*
that, *(jener) dieser.*
impious, *góttlōs.*
the wretch, *der Bösewicht*, 1.
deprived, *beraubte.*
the French, *die Franzōsen,*
the king, *der Kōnig*, 1.
one, *einer.*
the best, *der (beste) beste.*
the prince, *der Fürst*, 6.
was, *war.*
who, *die.*
France, *Frankreich.*
have reigned, *regiert haben.*
of Macedonia, *von Macedonien.*
has, *hat sich.*
the admiration, *die Bewunderung*, 7.
the world, *die Welt*, 7.
acquired, *erworben.*
but, *aber.*
generous, *grofsherzig, edelmüthig.*
found means, *fand das Mittel.*
the affections, *die Liebe.*
faithful, *treu.*
the subject, *der Únterthān*, 6.
to gain, *zu gewinnen.*
modesty, *die Bescheidenheit*, 7.
one, *eine.*
becoming, *wōhlgefällig.*
which, *welche.*
the heart, *das Herz*, 3.
adorn, *zieren, schmücken.*
there is something in it, *es ist in derselben Etwas.*
which, *welches.*
us, *uns.*

in favour of him who wears it, *für dén, welcher sie besitzt.*
strongly, *stark.*
prepossesses, *einnimmt.*
generous, *edel.*
the mind, *die Seele*, 7.
long, *tragen ein Verlangen.*
worthy, *würdig.*
the man, *der Mann*, 2.
to assist, *zu helfen* (dat.).
who seems diffident of his merit, *der ein Misstrauen in seine Verdienste zu setzen scheint.*
and cannot prevail on himself, *und es nicht über sich vermág.*
the praise, *das Lōb*, 1.
the tribute, *der Tribūt*, 1.
to challenge, *zu fordern.*
he deserves, *welchen er verdient.*

III.

Amongst the arts, the invention of which belongs to the German nation, two of the most remarkable are the arts of printing and engraving. In a visit Queen Elizabeth made to the famous Lord Chancellor Bacon at a small country-seat, which he had built for himself before his preferment, she asked him, how it came that he made himself so small a house. *It is not I*, Madam, answered he, *who have made my house too small for myself, but your Majesty who have made me too big for my house.* A faithful friend does not forsake his friend in need. A generous heart writes on sand the benefits, which others have received from it; and it engraves on marble those which it has received from others. The wise man, enlightened by the heavenly instruction of the Christian religion, does not ascribe his success or misfortunes to wrong causes. When we do not know something, we must listen to the well-meaning advice of sensible people, and follow it. Benevolence and compassion bring down a great blessing on those who exercise such shining virtues. Their merit will not only meet its reward in the next life; but often receives due retribution also in this.

Amongst, *unter* (dat.).
the art, *die Kunst*, 8.
the invention of which, *déren Erfindung*, 7.
the nation, *die Natiōn*, 7.
belongs, *úngehört.*
are, *sind.*
two, *zwei.*
remarkable, *merkwürdig.*
the art of printing, *die Būchdruckerkunst*, 8.
the art of engraving, *die Kúpferstecherkunst*, 8.
in, *bei* (dat.).

the visit, *der Besūch*, 1. In the plural, *die Besuche*.
queen Elizabeth, *welchen die Königin Elisabeth*.
famous, *berühmt*.
at, *in* (dat.).
small, *klein*.
the country-seat, *der Ländsitz*, 1. *das Ländhaus*, 2.
made, *ábstattete*.
he, *er*.
before, *vor* (dat.).
his, *seiner*.
the preferment, *die Erhebung*, 7.
for himself, *für sich*.
had built. *gebaut hatte*.
she asked him, *frägte sie ihn*.
how it came, *wie es käme*.
that he, *dass ér*.
himself, *sich*.
so small a house, *ein solches Häuschen*, 4.
made, *baute*.
it is not I who have, *nicht ich habe*.
answered he, *ántwortete er*.
my, *mein*.
for myself, *für mich*.
too, *zu*.
made, *gebaut*.
but your Majesty, *sondern Eure Majestät*.
who, *welche*.
me, *mich*.
too big, *zu grofs*.
for, *für* (acc.).
have made, *gemacht haben*.
faithful, *treu*.
the friend, *der Freund*, 1.
does not forsake, *verlässt nicht*.
in need, *in der Noth*.
writes, *schreibt*.
the benefit, *die Wohlthat*, 7.
others, *Andere*.
from it, *von ihm*.
have received, *empfangen haben*.
on sand, *auf Sand*.
and it engraves, *und es grābt*.
on marble, *auf Marmor*.
enlightened, *erleuchtet*.
heavenly, *himmlisch*.
the instruction, *der Unterricht*, 1.
Christian, *christlich*.
does not ascribe, *schreibt nicht zu*. *Zu* is placed after causes.
his success, *sein Glück*.
or misfortunes, *oder Unglück*.
wrong, *unrecht*. *falsch*.
the cause, *die Ursache*, 7.
we, *wir*.
something, *Etwas*.
do not know, *nicht wissen*.
we must, *so müssen wir*.
to, *auf* (acc.).
well-meaning, *wōhlmeinend*.
the advice, *der Rāth*, 1.
sensible, *verständig*.
listen, *hören*.
and follow it, *und ihn befolgen*.
benevolence, *das Wōhlwollen*, 4.
compassion, *das Mitleiden*, 4.
bring, *bringen*.
on those, *auf diejenigen*.
the blessing, *der Segen*, 4.
down, *herdb*.
such, *solche*.
shining, *glänsend*.
exercise, *aūsüben*.
their merit, *ihre Verdienste*, plural of the singular das *Verdienst*, 1.
will not only, *werden nicht nur*.
its, *ihre*.
the reward, *die Belohnung*, 7.
next, *zukünftig*.
meet, *finden*.
but, *sondern*.
often receives, *sie empfangen oft*.
due, *gebührend*.
retribution, *die Vergeltung*, 7.
also, *auch*.

IV.

The parents of a good and obedient child are very happy. Charlotte gave a little piece of gold to a poor woman, who had a little sick child in her arms. Charles gave a useful book to a poor boy, who had offended him. I have received a very fine letter from a learned woman, who has given signal proofs of her learning. Lessing is one of the most eminent German writers, who deserves the highest praise; and therefore to such as wish to attain a pure and correct style, he is one of the most useful models. The ostrich is the largest bird. The nightingale has the most melodious voice. Europe is the least, but at the same time the most enlightened part of the earth. The warmest regions are in Africa. America is much richer than the other parts of the earth. Albertina is handsomer than her sister. Rosetta is at present the most amiable of all her sisters, who are however more amiable than many other girls. My sister is more cunning than they think. If you had more sense than you have, you would speak in a more rational manner. Of all the human characters a notorious liar is the most contemptible. His words are always treated with the utmost contempt; nor can the most solemn asseverations procure credit to what he delivers.

The parents, *die Ältern*, 6.
obedient, *gehōrsam*.
Charlotte, *Lottchen*.
gave, *gab*.
the piece of gold, *das Goldstück*, 1.
the woman, *die Frau*, 7.
sick, *krank*.
in her, *auf ihren*.
the arm, *der Arm*, 1.
had, *hatte*.
Charles, *Karl*.
useful, *nützlich*.
the boy, *der Knabe*, 6.
him, *ihn*.
had offended, *beleidigt hatte*.
learned, *gelehrt*.
signal, *ausgezeichnet*.
the proof, *der Beweis*, 1.
learning, *die Gelehrsamkeit*, 7.
has given, *gegeben hat*.
eminent, *hervōrragend, ausgezeichnet*. The participles are used as adjectives, and declined as such.
the writer, *der Schriftsteller*, 4.
the praise, *das Lob*, 1.
deserves, *verdient*.
therefore, *dahēr*.
he is, *ist er*.
to such as, *für diejenigen, welche*.
pure, *rein*.
correct, *richtig*.

style, *die Schreibart*, 7.
wish to attain, *zu erlangen wünschen*.
the model, *das Muster*, 4.
the ostrich, *der Strauſs*, 1.
large, *groſs*.
the bird, *der Vogel*, 4.
the nightingale, *die Nächtigall*, 7.
melodious, *wohlklingend, klangreich*.
the voice, *die Stimme*, 7.
Europe, *Europa*.
little, *klein*.
but at the same time, *aber zu gleicher Zeit*.
enlightened, *erleuchtet, aufgeklärt*.
the part of the earth, *der Erdtheil*, 1.
warm, *warm*.
the region, *die Gegend*, 7.
much, *viel, weit*.
rich, *reich*.
other, *andere*.
handsome, *hübsch*.
her sister, *ihre Schwester*.
Rosetta, *Röschen*.
at present, *jetzt*.
amiable, *liebenswürdig*.
however, *doch*.
the girl, *das Mädchen*, 4.
are, *sind*.
cunning, *listig, schlau*.
they think, *man denkt*.
if, *wenn*.
you, *Sie*.
more, *mehr*.
the sense, *der Verstand*, 1.
had, *hätten*.
have, *haben*.
you would, *so würden Sie*.
in, *auf* (acc.)
rational, *vernünftig*.
the manner, *die Art*, 7.
speak, *reden*.
of, *unter* (dat.)
all the, *alle*.
the character, *die Gemüthsart*, 7.
is, *ist*.
notorious, *offenbar*.
the liar, *der Lügner*, 4.
contemptible, *verächtlich*.
are, *werden*.
always, *immer*.
utmost, *äuſserste*.
contempt, *die Verachtung*, 7.
treated, *behandelt*.
nor can the ... procure credit to what he delivers, *auch können die ... dem, was er aussagt, keinen Glauben verschaffen*.
solemn, *feierlich*.
the asseveration, *die Betheurung*, 7.

V.

Gellert, an excellent German author, died in the year 1769. Rousseau and Voltaire died in the year 1778. The greatest of all the kings of the house of Bourbon was Henry IV., who reigned in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. Louis XIII., his son, inherited his crown, but not his great qualities. Louis XIV., the son of Louis XIII., reigned in the seventeenth century, and died in the beginning of the eighteenth, in the year 1715, after having reigned 72 years. Louis XV., his great grandchild, succeeded him in the fifth year of his age, and died

in the year 1774. Louis XVI., his unfortunate grandson, who had deserved a better fate, succeeded him, and died in the year 1793, on the 21st of January. Louis XVIII., his brother, became king of France in the year 1814, and died in the year 1824.

The author, *der Schriftsteller*, 4.
died, *starb, starben.*
in the year, *im Jahre*, instead of *in dem Jahre.*
the house of Bourbon, *das Haus Bourbon.*
the century, *das Jahrhundert*, 1. In German the singular must be put.
reigned, *regierte.*
inherited, *erbte.*
the crown, *die Krone*, 7.
but not, *aber nicht.*
in the, *im.*
the beginning, *der Anfang*, 1.
after having reigned, *nachdem er regiert hatte.*
the great grandchild, *der Urenkel*, 4.
succeeded him, *folgte ihm.*
the age, *das Alter*, 4.
unfortunate, *unglücklich.*
the grandson, *der Enkel*, 4.
better, *besser.*
fate, *das Schicksal*, 1.
had deserved, *verdient hatte.*
on the 21st of January, *am or den 21sten Januar.*
became, *wurde.*

VI.

You have no good beds. Did you hear no news in town? In other places it would not do. He has two children, a good and a bad one. He has a thousand good qualities. She has but one child. Twice one is two. Three times one is three. Twice two is four. Three times three is nine. Four times four is sixteen. Five times five is twenty five. Six times six is thirty six. Seven times seven is forty nine. Eight times eight is sixty four. Nine times nine is eighty one. Ten times ten is (a) hundred. Ten times a hundred is a thousand. One million is a thousand times a thousand, or ten hundred thousand. My brother and my sister are at home; but my cousin and my niece are gone into the garden together. Her father and the daughters of our neighbour are gone to the French church. I am very well satisfied with my sons. They have shown their new grammar to my sister. Caroline has given her books to her sister. My children and our cousins never find an opportunity for speaking German. The friends of my friends wrote four times to my

brother; but they received no answer. I am pleased with the friendly treatment of my son-in-law. His parents honour me with their friendship without knowing me. I see his grief written in his countenance. Our common friend will be a means of our union. His friendship will straiten our bands. Others are not of his opinion. My daughter-in-law deserves the affection of her parents. Her modesty ennobles all her virtues. Her learning does honour to her masters and to her application. All those who know her, speak every where with great regard of her accomplishments.

Did you hear, *hörten Sie?*
the news, *die Neuigkeit*, 7.
in town, *in der Stadt.*
in, *an*, with the dative.
the place, *der Ort*, 2.
it would not do, *würde das nicht angehen.*
bad, *böse.*
one is not expressed in German.
a thousand, *tausend.*
but, *nür.*
ten times a hundred, *zehnmal hundert.*
a thousand times, *tausendmal.*
at home, *zu Hause*
the cousin, *der Vetter*, 4. In the plural *die Vettern.*
the niece, *die Nichte*, 7.
are, *sind.*
together, *zusammen, miteinander.*
into the garden, *in den Garten.*
gone, *gegangen.*
the daughter, *die Tochter.*
the neighbour, *der Nachbar*, 4.
to, *in*, with the accusative.
the church, *die Kirche*, 7.
I am very well satisfied, *ich bin sehr wohl zufrieden.*
new, *neu.*
shown, *gezeigt.*
given, *gegében.*
never find, *finden nie.*
opportunity, *die Gelegenheit*, 7.
for speaking German, *Deutsch zu sprechen.*
the friend, *der Freund*, 1.
wrote, *schrieben.*
four times, *viermal.*
to, *an*, with the accusative.
but they received, *aber sie empfingen.*
no, *kein.*
the answer, *die Antwort*, 7.
friendly, *freundschaftlich.*
the treatment, *die Behandlung*, 7.
the son-in-law, *der Schwiegersohn*, 1. *der Eidam*, 1.
I am pleased with something, *es gefällt mir Etwas.*
honour me, *beehren mich.*
friendship, *die Freundschaft*, 7.
without knowing me, *ohne mich zu kennen.*
I see, *ich séhe.*
the grief, *der Kummer*, 4.
in, *auf*, with the dative.
the countenance, *das Gesicht*, 1.
written, *geschrieben.*
common, *gemeinschaftlich.*
will, *wird.*
a means, *ein Mittel*, 4.
the union, *die Vereinigung*, 7.
be, *seyn.*
will, *wird.*
the hands, *(die Bande) das Band.*

straiten, *enger knüpfen.*
the opinion, *die Meinung*, 7.
the daughter-in-law, *die Schwiegertochter.*
the affection, *die Liebe*, 7.
ennobles, *adelt.*
all, *alle.*
learning, *die Kenntnisse*, plural of the word *die Kenntniss*, 8.
does, *gereicht.*
the master, *der Lehrer*, 4.
application, *der Fleifs*, 1.
honour, *zur Ehre.*
know her, *sie kennen.*
speak every where, *sprechen überall.*
with, *mit.*
great, *grofs.*
regard, *die Achtung*, 7.
of, *von*, with the dative.
the accomplishment, *der Vorzug*, 1.

VII.

This horse is a great deal better than mine and yours. Your sister dances better than mine. The sister of your neighbour sings better than yours and mine. Her father and yours spoke with mine of their children. They said: to educate our children, and to render them happy, is the great object of our life. My books are much dearer than yours. But yours are a great deal better than mine. My gardens are all very large; but they are not as well cultivated as yours. My youngest son, who speaks very well German, perfectly resembles my mother, but not his. A cat, I think that it was ours, stole the cheese, which the maid had laid upon the table. My brother has given to yours the letters, which he has received from the brother of your wife. I read one of them yesterday, which began thus: My dear friend! Our country has made peace with yours! and yet I do not receive any letters from you. Do not say that they have been lost. For at present your letters and mine are no longer intercepted by the enemy. If my children were his, and not mine, I should not care for them. His are not much better than mine and yours. Every nation has a self-love of its own. The Russians have theirs, just as well as the English.

The horse, *das Pferd*, 1.
a great deal better, *weit besser.*
yours, *das Ihrige.* When the possessive adjectives *your* and *yours* are employed in addressing any person, they are translated in German by *Ihr*, *Ihre*, *Ihrer*, *Ihre*, *Ihres*, *der*, *die*, *das Ihrige*,

and then commence with a capital letter.
dances better, *tanzt besser.*
sings, *singt.*
spoke, *sprachen.*
said, *sagten.*
to educate, *zu erziehen.*
to render, *zu machen.*
the object, *der Gegenstand*, 1.
much, *viel*, *weit.*
dear, *theuer.*
large, *grofs.*
as well cultivated, *so gut angebauet.*
as, *als.*
young, *jung.*
who speaks very well German, *welcher sehr gut Deutsch spricht.*
resembles, *gleichet*, with the dative.
perfectly, *vollkommen.*
a cat, *eine Katze*, 7.
I think that it was, *ich glaube, es war.*
stole, *stahl.*
the cheese, *der Käse*, 1.
which, *welches.*
the maid, *die Magd*, 8.
upon, *auf*, with the accusative.
the table, *der Tisch*, 1.
had laid, *gelegt hatte.*
has, *hat.*
the letter, *der Brief*, 1.
given, *gegeben.*
wife, *die Frau*, 7.
I read, *ich las.*
yesterday, *gestern.*
thus, *so.*
began, *anfing.*
dear, *theurer*, instead of *theuerer.*
the country, *das Land*, 2.
the peace, *der Friede*, 5.
made, *gemacht.*
and yet, *und doch.*
I do receive, *bekomme ich.*
not any, *keine.*
do say, *sagen Sie.*
not, *nicht.*
that they have been lost, *dafs sie verloren gegangen sind.*
for at present, *denn jetzt.*
are, *werden.*
no longer, *nicht mehr.*
by, *von*, with the dative.
the enemy, *der Feind*, 1.
intercepted, *aufgefangen.*
if, *wenn.*
were, *wären.*
I should not care for them, *so würde ich mich nicht um sie bekümmern.*
are, *sind.*
every, *jedes.*
the nation, *das Volk*, 2.
has a self-love of its own, *hat seine besondere Eigenliebe.*
the Russian, *der Russe*, 6.
just as well as, *eben so wohl als.*
the English, *die Engländer.*

VIII.

This poor peasant is always content; but this rich miser is scarcely ever so. Which of the two is happier? This young lady is the daughter of this old miser, of whom I have already spoken to you at another time. She dresses ill. It is a pity. That fault is, I believe, the only one she has. Do you know those gentlemen? Of what gentlemen are you speaking? I am speaking of those who are dancing in this new house. Yes, I know some of them.

This gentleman has bought this fine garden, and this fine meadow. I do not know this lady, who is near this window. Do not stir from this place. You must go this way. This is much better than that. They were talking of this and that. Do you know these boys, these women, these children? He often is but a fool, who thinks himself the wittiest of men. They have nothing to expect from others, who only think of themselves.

Poor, *arm.*
the peasant, *der Bauer*, 4.
always, *immer.*
content, *zufrieden.*
rich, *reich.*
the miser, *der Geizhals*, 1.
is scarcely ever so, *ist es fast niemals.*
which of the two, *welcher von Beiden.*
happy, *glücklich.*
young, *jung.*
the lady, *das Fräulein*, 4.
old, *alt.*
I, ich.
to you, *mit Ihnen.*
at another time, *zu einer anderen Zeit.*
already, *schon.*
have spoken, *gesprochen habe.*
she dresses ill, *sie kleidet sich schlecht.*
it is a pity, *das ist Schade.*
the fault, *der Fehler*, 4.
I believe, *glaube ich.*
the only one, *der einzige.*
she has, *welchen sie hat.*
do you know, *kennen Sie.*
the gentleman, *der Herr*, 6.
are you speaking, *sprechen Sie.*
I am speaking, *ich spreche.*
new, *neu.*
the house, *das Haus*, 2.
are dancing, *tanzen.*
yes, I know some, *ja, ich kenne einige.*
has, *hat.*
the meadow, *die Wiese*, 7.
bought, *gekauft.*
I do not know, *ich kenne nicht.*
near, *bei*, with the dative.
do not stir, *rühren Sie sich nicht.*
from, *von*, with the dative.
the place, *der Platz*, 1.
you must, *Sie müssen.*
the way, *der Weg*, 1.
go, *gehen.*
they were talking, *sie sprächen.*
of, *von*, with the dative.
the boy, *der Knabe*, 6.
woman, *das Frauenzimmer*, 4.
often is, *ist oft.*
but, *nur.*
the fool, *der Narr*, 6.
himself, *sich.*
witty, *witzig, klug.* The wittiest, *für den —.*
thinks, *hält.*
have nothing to expect from others, *haben Nichts von Anderen zu erwarten.*
only think of themselves, *bloß an sich denken.*

IX.

The vast regions, which Alexander the great had conquered, fell into the hands of his successors, who

established several monarchies, which did not last a long time. The maidservant, to whom you gave such fine plums the day before yesterday, is much obliged to you for your kindness. Many children are not content with what their parents have left them. To whom does this book belong? To me. Who gave you it? I bought it a year ago. Of what bookseller? You do not know him. Of what does it treat? Of the German language. Which of those two women is your mother? Which is the best German grammar? In what shop have you been? What do you say to this letter? From what town do you get these books? In what town does he live? Which sword will you give me? What do you look at? What news is there?

vast, *weit, ungeheuer.*
the region, *die Gegend*, 7. *das Land*, 2.
had conquered, *erobert hatte.*
fell, *fielen.*
into, *in*, with the acousative.
the successor, *der Nāchfolger*, 4.
several, *verschiedene.*
the monarchy, *die Monarchie*, 7.
established, *gründeten.*
not a long time, *nicht lange.*
did last, *dauerten.*
the maidservant, *die Dienstmagd, die Mägd*, 8.
you, *Sie.*
such, *solche, so.*
fine, *schön.*
the plum, *die Pflaume*, 7.
the day before yesterday, *vōrgestern.*
gave, *gaben.*
is to you, *ist Ihnen.*
for, *für*, with the accusative.
kindness, *die Güte*, 7.
much obliged, *sehr verbunden.*
are, *sind.*
with what, *mit dem, was.*
have left them, *ihnen hinterlassen haben.*
not content, *nicht zufrieden.*
does belong, *gehört.*
you it, *es Ihnen.*
I bought, *ich kaufte.*
a year ago, *vōr einem Jahre.*
of, *von*, with the dative.
the bookseller, *der Buchhändler*, 4.
you do not know him, *Sie kennen ihn nicht.*
does it treat, *handelt es.*
of, *von*, with the dative.
woman, *die Frau*, 7.
the shop, *der Laden*, 4.
have you been, *sind Sie gewesen.*
do you say, *sagen Sie.*
to, *zu*, with the dative.
from, *aus*, with the dative.
the town, *die Stadt*, 8.
do you get, *bekommen Sie.*
does he live, *wohnt er.*
the sword, *der Degen*, 4.
will you give me, *wollen Sie mir gēben.*
at, *nāch*, with the dative.
do you look, *sēhen Sie.*
news, *die Neuigkeit*, 7.
is there, *giebt es.*

CHAPTER VI.

Of the German pronouns.

Containing:

I. The declension of the German pronouns.
II. The use of the German pronouns.
III. Exercises on the German pronouns.

Section I.

The declension of the German pronouns.

The words *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, and *it*, are substantives; but they are a peculiar kind of them, by which the relation of those who speak is denoted. They have three genders, two numbers, and four cases. Only the pronouns of the first and second person, as they are called, express no distinction of gender. The reason of it is plain. For as they always refer to persons, who are present to each other, when they speak, their sex appears at first sight, and therefore needs not be marked by a masculine or feminine form. But as the third person may be absent or unknown, the distinction of gender must be expressed; and accordingly it has all the three genders belonging to it. At the same time the third person has this quality, that it stands for the name of the person or object, of which we speak. It may and must therefore be called *pronoun*. But the first and second person are not used instead of a name or substantive. For it is not sufficient to put instead of *I* and *thou* my name and the name of that to whom I speak, as by these proper nouns this is not clearly expressed, that we are those who speak.

There are three kinds of pronouns, according to the different persons, who speak. These persons are: 1. That who speaks, or the first person. 2. That to whom we speak, or the second person. 3. The

subject, of which we are speaking or treating, or the third person. There is consequently a pronoun of the first, of the second, and of the third person. They are called the *personal pronouns (die persönlichen Fürwörter)*. *Ich*, *du*, *er*, *sie*, *es*, denote in German those three persons. They are declined in the following manner: —

Pronoun of the first person.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. *Ich*, I;	Nom. *Wir*, we;
Gen. *meiner*, of me;	Gen. *unser*, of us;
Dat. *mir*, to me;	Dat. *uns*, to us;
Acc. *mich*, me.	Acc. *uns*, us.

Pronoun of the second person.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. *Du*, thou;	Nom. *Ihr*, you;
Gen. *deiner*, of thee;	Gen. *euer*, of you;
Dat. *dir*, to thee;	Dat. *euch*, to you;
Acc. *dich*, thee.	Acc. *euch*, you.

Pronoun of the third person.

	Singular.	
Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom. *Er*, he;	*Sie*, she;	*Es*, it;
Gen. *seiner*, of him;	*ihrer*, of her;	*seiner*, of it;
Dat. *ihm*, to him;	*ihr*, to her;	*ihm*, to it;
sich, to himself;	*sich*, to herself;	*sich*, to itself;
Acc. *ihn*, him;	*sie*, her;	*es*, it;
sich, himself.	*sich*, herself.	*sich*, itself.

Plural for all three genders.

Nom. *Sie*, they;
Gen. *ihrer*, of them;
Dat. *ihnen*, to them;
sich, to themselves;
Acc. *sie*, them;
sich, themselves.

Observations.

1. Poets say also *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, instead of *meiner*, *deiner*, *seiner*. That genitive was formerly in use, as the grammar of the German language was yet in its infancy. *Hier ist ein neuer Hut.* Here

is a new hat. *Er ist sehr fein.* It is very fine. *Wo haben Sie ihn gekauft?* Where did you buy it? *Wie gefällt Ihnen diese Witterung?* How do you like this weather? *Sie ist sehr unangenéhm.* It is very unpleasant.

2. When *mir*, *dir*, *ihm*, are followed by an attributive adjective, it receives no *m* in the dative singular. Example: *Mir kranken Manne*, to me who am a sick man.

3. The *e* in *es*, when standing as accusative, is frequently suppressed, and the apostrophe put in its place. Example: *Sage mir's.* Tell it me. For: *Sage mir es.*

4. The genitive cases *unser* and *euer* must not be confounded with the possessive adjectives *unser* and *euer*. Examples: *Unser aller Vater ist Gott.* God is a father to us all. *Gott ist unser Vater.* God is our father. *Euer aller Lében ist böse.* The life of you all is bad. *Euer Leben ist böse.* Your life is bad. Also the genitive cases *unser* and *euer* must not be confounded with the genitives *unserer* and *euerer*, which are a contraction of *unserer* and *euerer*.

5. I myself, thou thyself, he himself, she herself, we ourselves, you yourselves, they themselves, the man himself, the woman herself, the child itself, the people themselves, are expressed in German by *ich selbst; du selbst; er selbst; sie selbst; wir selbst; ihr selbst; sie selbst; der Mann selbst; die Frau selbst; das Kind selbst; die Leute selbst.* When *selbst* goes before, it signifies *sogār*, even. Example: *Selbst ich hab' es gesehen.* Even I have seen it. *Er aſs selbst die Knochen.* He eat the very bones.

Section II.

The use of the German pronouns.

The pronouns *ich*, *du*, *wir*, *ihr*, must be repeated after the connective adjective *dér*. Examples: *Ich, der ich ihn kenne*, I who know him. *Du, der du mich liebst*, thou who lovest me. *Wir, die wir*

reich sind, we who are rich. *Ihr, die ihr arm seyd*, you who are poor. But when *es* stands before *der*, the pronouns *ich*, *du*, *wir*, *ihr*, are not repeated, and the verb is put in the third person. Examples: *Ich bin es, der es gethān hat.* It is I who have done it. *Sie sind es, der ihm solche Dinge gelehrt hat.* It is you who have taught him such things. After *er* and *sie* no repetition takes place. Examples: *er, der mich liebt; sie, die mich lehrt; sie, die mich erquicken.* But in addressing somebody *Sie* is repeated. *Sie, die Sie mich innig lieben*, you who love me intimately.

Ich is also used substantively. Example: *sein theures Ich*, his own dear self.

The dative of the pronouns is in familiar language sometimes inserted only as an expletive. Examples: *Du bist mir ein schöner Kerl.* Thou art a fine fellow. *Ich lobe mir den Rheinwein.* I give the preference to Rhenish wine *Das mag dir eine Freude gewésen seyn!* That must have been a great joy! *Das wār euch ein Vergnügen!* That was a pleasure!

The accusative of the pronouns commonly stands before the dative of them. Example: *Er bringt es mir.* He brings it me.

The English say: a friend of mine; an acquaintance of ours; a servant of yours; a book of his. The Germans use the personal pronouns. *Ein Freund von mir; ein Bekannter von uns; ein Bedienter von euch; ein Būch von ihm.* The English say: I wash my face. At the left hand of me. The Germans say: *Ich wasche mir das Gesicht. Mir zur Linken.*

Es is joined with all genders and numbers. Examples: *Es ist der Mann, die Frau, das Kind.* It is the man, the woman, the child. *Er war es selbst.* It was he himself. *Es ist ein Mann da.* There is a man here. *Ist es ein Mann?* Is it a man? *Es sind Männer.* They are men. *Es sind viele Leute da.* There are many people here. *Sind es Männer oder Weiber?* Are they men or women? *Ein Mann ist es.* It is a *man*. *Männer sind es.* They are *men*. When thus placed, *es* gives an emphasis to

the substantive preceding. *Es* is also put, where the English use the adverb *there*, as it is seen by the preceding and the following instances: *Es ist ein Streit im Hause.* There is a quarrel in the house. *Es folgten Viele.* There followed many. *Es starben nūr Wenige.* There died but few.

The following examples will show the use of the genitive and dative cases of the pronouns: *Er lachet meiner.* He laughs at me. *Erbarmen Sie sich meiner.* Have mercy upon me. *Ich schäme mich deiner.* I am ashamed of thee. *Er spottet ihrer.* He mocks her. *Unser zéhn sind arm.* Ten of us are poor. Instead of *zéhn von uns sind arm*, which is better. *Es sind ihrer zwanzig.* They are twenty of them. *Vater unser*, father of us, instead of *unser Vater*, our father. This genitive *unser* in the Lord's prayer is governed by *Vater*. It is a literal imitation of the Greek πάτερ ἡμῶν. *Er ist weiser als einer von uns.* He is wiser than either of us. *Keiner von uns hat es gesēhen.* Neither of us has seen it.

The gender of the pronoun does not agree in the following examples with the gender of the word, to which the pronoun refers: *Dieses Frauenzimmer ist am schönsten, wenn sie nicht spricht.* This lady is most handsome, when she does not speak. *Er liebt sein Weib nicht, sondern mishandelt sie.* He does not love his wife, but treats her ill. *Frauenzimmer* and *Weib* are of the neuter gender; and the pronoun *es* ought therefore to be used. But the feminine pronoun *sie* has been employed, because this is the gender, which those substantives ought naturally to have. The meaning of the words *Frauenzimmer* and *Weib* has consequently been more regarded than their grammatical nature.

In speaking to a single person the Germans employ the pronouns in the following manner:—

1. The second person singular *du* is used in addressing the Supreme Being, because upon him we poor mortals can bestow none of those vain and worthless titles, with which we decorate our fellow-

creatures. Further, *du* is employed between intimate friends, as it implies familiarity founded upon affection and fondness. It is therefore language of love and conjugal union. Parents use consequently *du* in speaking to their children; and brothers and sisters do the same. Even many children are now allowed to speak to their parents in the same manner, though this is not to be approved. For children ought to employ only the third person plural *Sie*, as more respectful, in addressing their parents. It is very natural that *du* is also employed in poetry and in the fervour of some passion. Lastly, *du* is used in speaking to little children and to people in very subordinate situations. There is a particular verb, which expresses the use of the singular of the second person. This verb answering to the French *tutoyer* is *duzen*, to call thou.

2. The third person singular *er* and *sie* is employed in speaking to people belonging to the lower stations of life.

3. The second person plural *ihr* is used in speaking to people belonging to the lowest stations of life.

4. The third person plural *sie* is used in speaking to people of education. This last mode of address is the most polite practice of speaking. Also it is now become the prevailing custom, being employed at present towards all persons without distinction. Example: *Wie befinden Sie sich?* How do you do? Literally: How do they do? It must also be observed that the pronouns and the possessive adjectives, when they are employed in addressing any person, commence with a capital letter. Only *du* is excepted, when it is used in addressing the Supreme Being.

Instead of *er*, *sie*, *es*, the determinative adjective *derselbe*, *dieselbe*, *dasselbe*, is frequently employed. Example: *Ich habe das Buch erhalten, und dasselbe gelesen.* I have received the book, and read the same, instead of and read it. It must be used, in order to obviate an ambiguity. Example: *Mein Vetter giebt mir in seinem letzten Briefe Kunde von*

sich und meinem Bruder, und schreibt mir, dass er ein grōfses Vermögen geerbt hat. My cousin gives me notice in his last letter of himself and my brother, and writes to me that he has inherited a large fortune. If *er* be referred to the brother, *derselbe* or *dieser* or *der letztere* (the latter) must be employed, in order to obviate an ambiguity by clearness of expression. Also the plural number of *derselbe* is sometimes to be used instead of *sie*, in order to avoid a disagreeable sound. Example: *Ich weiss, dass Sie sie lieben.* I know that you love them. Better: *dass Sie dieselben lieben.*

Section III.

Exercises on the German pronouns.

I.

I am there; she is there; and he is not here. He told me that he would come, and promised her to be here at two o'clock; but he does not come. If he had not promised to come to see us, we should not have thought about him. Have you seen him to-day? Yes, Sir, I have seen him; but he has not seen me. If I had spoken with him, I should have said to him: Tell me, why do you promise to come, and why do you not come?

Am, *bin.*
there, *da.*
here, *hier.*
told me, *sāgte zu mir.*
that, *dass.*
would come, *kommen würde.*
promised, *versprāch.*
at two o'clock, *um zwei Uhr.*
to be here, *hier zu seyn.*
but he does not come, *aber er kommt nicht.*
if, *wenn.*
had not promised, *nicht versprochen hätte.*
to come to see, *zu besūchen.*
The personal pronouns are placed in German before the infinitives and participles.

Examples: *Er wünscht, mich zu sehen.* He wishes to see me. *Ich habe ihn immer geliebt.* I have always loved him.
we should not, *so würden wir nicht.*
about, *an*, with the accusative.
have thought, *gedacht haben.*
to-day, *heute.*
seen, *gesēhen.*
Yes, Sir, *ja, mein Herr.*
with, *mit*, with the dative.
had spoken, *gesprochen hätte.*
I should, *so würde ich.*
to, *zu*, with the dative.
have said, *gesāgt haben.*
tell, *sagen Sie.*

me, dative.
why do you promise, *warum versprechen Sie.*
to come, *zu kommen.*
do you not come, *kommen Sie nicht.*

II.

Tell her that I love her, because she loves me; but do not tell her that I am sick. How do your brothers do? Very indifferently; they have still both of them a fever. Give them my compliments. I thank you. But do you know them? What a question! And do you know my sister likewise? Why should not I know her. She knows me, and I know her. If you had not known her, I should have made you acquainted with her.

Her, dative.
love, *liebe.*
because, *weil.*
loves, *liebt.*
do not tell, *sagen Sie nicht.*
how do your brothers do? *wie befinden sich Ihre Herren Brüder?*
very indifferently, *so, so.*
still, *noch.*
both of them, *Beide.*
a fever, *das Fieber,* 4.
give, *machen Sie.*
my compliments, *meine Empfehlung.*
I thank you, *Ich danke Ihnen.*
do you know, *kennen Sie.*
what a question! *was für eine Frage!*
likewise, *gleichfalls, auch.*
should I, *sollte ich.*
not know, *nicht kennen.*
knows, *kennt.*
know, *kenne.*
had not known, *nicht gekannt hätten.*
I should, *so würde ich.*
you, *Sie.*
with, *mit,* with the dative.
have made acquainted, *bekannt gemacht haben.*

CHAPTER VII.

Miscellaneous words.

There are some words, which may be considered as substantives. Several other words are a kind of numeral adjectives. The former words are: *Etwas; Nichts; man; Jedermann; Jemand; Niemand.* The latter words are: *All; einiger; etliche; ganz; gewiss; jeder, jedweder, jeglicher; mancher; mehrere, die mehrsten, die meisten; solcher; verschieden; viel; wenig.* It is necessary to speak of all these words, which very frequently are used.

1. *Etwas, Nichts,* and *man* are substantives indeclinable. Examples: *Ich habe Etwas zu thūn.* I have something to do. *Etwas* is also employed adjectively and adverbially. *Wissen Sie etwas Neues?* Do you know some news? *Ich habe etwas Geld.* I have some money. *Es ist etwas grūn.* It is somewhat green. When this word is used adjectively and adverbially, it commences with a small letter. As substantive, it begins with a capital letter. This is also to be applied to *Nichts.*

Ich hörte Nichts davón. I heard nothing of it. *Er bāt ihn, Nichts mehr davon zu sagen.* He begged him to say no more of it. *Der Schöpfer hat alle Dinge aus dem Nichts gebildet.* The Creator has formed all things out of nothing. *Ein bloſses Nichts,* a mere nothing. *Nichts* is also employed adjectively. *Was hörten Sie Neues in der Stadt?* What news did you hear in town? *Ich habe nichts Neues gehört.* I have heard no news.

Man, which is written with a small letter, and takes the verb in the singular number, is properly the substantive *Mann,* that originally signifies *Mensch,* man. It answers to the French *on,* and is expressed in English by *a man, a body, one, they, people.* Examples: *Was soll man thun?* What should a man do? *Man sāgt, on dit,* one says, they say, people say, it is said. *Sagt man? dit-on?* do they say? *Sagt man nicht?* do they not say? *Man sagt, daſs sie geht.* She is said to walk. *Man sagt mir,* they tell me, I am told. *Man sagte mir,* I was told. *Man hat mir gesagt,* I have been told. *Man hatte ihr gesagt,* she had been told. *Man spricht, on parle,* they talk, people talk. *Man muſs sich in Acht nehmen.* One must take care. *Man irrt sich, wenn man glaubt,* we mistake if we think. *Wie verkauft man es?* How is it sold? *Man wird es finden,* it will be found. *Man sieht selten, daſs Dichter reich sind.* It is seldom seen that poets are rich. *Nichts ist so gūt, daſs man nicht miſsbrauchen kann.* There is nothing so good, but it may be abused. As *man* is indeclinable, *Einer* is used for its oblique

cases. Examples: *Man ärgert sich stets, wenn Einem gewisse Erwartungen fehlschlagen.* One is always vexed, when he is disappointed in certain expectations. *Man täuscht sich, wenn man glaubt, dass die Menge Einen um wahrer Verdienste willen schätze.* One is mistaken, if he thinks that the multitude esteems him for true merit. In these examples *Einem* and *Einen*, dative and accusative cases of *Einer*, answer to *man*.

2. *Jedermann* stands for *jeder Mann*, every man, every body. It is declined in the following manner: Nom. *Jedermann;* Gen. *Jedermannes;* Dat. *Jedermann;* Acc. *Jedermann. Jedermann hat eine gewisse Eitelkeit.* Every body has a certain vanity.

3. *Jemand*, any body, somebody, formed from *je* ein Mand***, is thus declined: Nom. *Jemand;* Gen. *Jemandes;* Dat. *Jemandem;* Acc. *Jemanden. Wär Jemand hier, der nach mir frägte?* Was somebody here asking for me? Sometimes an attributive adjective is put after *Jemand*. That word then stands in the neuter gender, and is used as substantive. Example: *Es ist Jemand Fremdes da.* Some stranger is there. Instead of this ungrammatical mode of expression you say more correctly: *Es ist ein Fremder* or *eine fremde Person da.*

4. *Niemand*, nobody, formed from *nicht ein Mand*, not one man, is thus declined: Nom. *Niemand;* Gen. *Niemandes;* Dat. *Niemandem;* Acc. *Niemanden.* Also after *Niemand* an attributive adjective neuter is sometimes put. Example: *Es ist Niemand Fremdes da.* There is no stranger. But also here it must be said: *Es ist kein Fremder* or *keine fremde Person da.*

5. *All*, all, is declined in the following manner: Nom. sing. *Aller, alle, alles;* Gen. *alles, aller, alles;* Dat. *allem, aller, allem;* Acc. *allen, alle, alles;* Nom. plur. *Alle;* Gen. *aller;* Dat. *allen;* Acc. *alle.* Examples: *Alle Welt*, all the world. *Alles Geld*, all the money. *Aller sein Wein*, all his wine. *Alle*

* *Je* answers to *irgend* in *irgend ein*, any.

** *Mand*, which is also a Danish word, is said for *Mann*, man.

seine Kunst, all his art. *Alles sein Geld*, all his money. *Alles das Unsrige*, all we possess. *Dieses war Alles, was sie hatten retten können.* This was all they had been able to save. *Dieses Alles*, all this. *Alles ist vergänglich.* Every thing is perishable. *Alle Menschen*, all men. *Alle Tage*, every day. *Alle die Meinigen*, all my family. *Alle liefen hinaus.* All ran out. *Auch meine Vettern erinnerten sich alle ihrer Verwandtschaft.* My cousins too all remembered their affinity. *Die Thränen alle*, all the tears. *Wir alle*, all of us. *Sie alle*, all of them. They say: *Der Wein ist alle.* The wine is finished. For: *Der Wein ist aller getrunken. Die Erdbeeren sind alle.* The strawberries all are eaten. For: *Die Erdbeeren sind alle gegessen. Alle* is consequently to be taken elliptically in these examples. They say also: *das All. Das weite All*, the vast universe.

6. *Einiger*, which is derived from *ein*, is thus declined: Nom. sing. *Einiger, einige, einiges;* Gen. *einiges, einiger, einiges;* Dat. *einigem, einiger, einigem;* Acc. *einigen, einige, einiges.* Nom. plur. *Einige;* Gen. *einiger;* Dat. *einigen;* Acc. *einige. Einiger*, which properly is one and the same word with *einig*, signifies one; but its most usual signification is that of the English word *some.* Examples: *Wird er einige Zeit hier bleiben?* Will he stay here some time? *Einige derselben sind gut, und andere sind schlecht.* Some of them are good, and others are bad. *Ohne einigen Nachtheil*, without any detriment. *Einiges gefällt mir nicht.* Some things do not please me.

7. *Etliche*, some, is thus declined: Nom. *Etliche;* Gen. *etlicher;* Dat. *etlichen;* Acc. *Etliche.* Examples: *Etliche zwanzig Pfund*, some twenty pounds. *Etliche tausend Thaler*, some thousands of dollars. *Etliche Meilen*, a few miles. *Etliche Worte*, a few words.

8. *Ganz*, whole, is declined like all the other adjectives. The following examples will show the use of it: *Der ganze Tag*, the whole day. *Die*

ganze Stadt, the whole town. *Unser ganzes Leben ist Nichts als ein stêter Wechsel.* Our whole life is nothing but a perpetual change. *Von ganzem Herzen*, from all my heart. *Das Ganze*, the whole. *Im Ganzen*, upon the whole. *Ein Ganzes aus Theilen*, a compound of parts. Before the names of countries, which are used without article, and before names of towns *ganz* is not declined at all. *Ganz Deutschland*, all Germany. *Ganz Paris.* This is also the case with *halb.* *Halb Frankreich, halb London.* But it must be said: *Die halbe Welt*, half the world. *Eine halbe Stunde*, half an hour. *Ganz* is also employed adverbially. For instance: *Ich bin ganz der Ihrige.* I am wholly yours. *Ganz und gār nicht*, not at all.

9. *Gewiss*, certain, is declined like another adjective. It signifies *some*, and *sure, true.* When it has the former signification, the substantive, to which it is joined, is pronounced with a stronger accent. But when *gewiss* has the latter meaning, it is pronounced with a stronger accent than its substantive. Examples: *Ein gewisser Mann, eine gewisse Frau, ein gewisses Kind sāgte mir dieses.* A certain man, woman, child told me this. *Dieses ist eine gewisse Nāchricht.* This is a sure notice.

10. *Jeder*, every, has but the singular number, and is thus declined: Nom. *Jeder, jede, jedes;* Gen. *jedes, jeder, jedes;* Dat. *jedem, jeder, jedem;* Acc. *jeden, jede, jedes.* Examples: *an jedem Orte*, in every place. *Er ist fast jeden Tag hier.* He is here almost every day. *Man sah es auf jeder Seite.* It was seen on each side. Also *ein* is sometimes unnecessarily added to *jeder.* *Ein jeder, eine jede, ein jedes*, every one. *Jeder* and *ein jeder* are used substantively in the following example: *Jeder* or *ein Jeder beklāgt sich über sein Gedāchtniss; aber Niemand über seinen Verstand.* Every one complains of his memory, but nobody of his judgment. Instead of *alle und jede*, all and every one, must be said *alle.* The forms *jēdweder, jedwede, jedwedes, jēglicher, jegliche, jegliches*, are now not much used.

11. *Mancher*, many a, is thus declined. Nom. sing. *Mancher*, *manche*, *manches*; Gen. *manches*, *mancher*, *manches*; Dat. *manchem*, *mancher*, *manchem*; Acc. *manchen*, *manche*, *manches*. Nom. plur. *Manche*; Gen. *mancher*; Dat. *manchen*; Acc. *manche*. Example: *mancher Mensch* or *Mann*, many a man. *Wie mancher Tritt*, how many a step. *Manche Stunde*, many an hour. *Ich habe manche Reise gemacht*. I have made many journeys. *Manches Mal*, many times. *Ich weifs Manches nicht*. I do not know many things. *Mancher*, used as substantive, signifies many a one. *Manche Menschen*, some men, or many men.

12. *Mehrere*, more, or several, which is employed adjectively and substantively, is thus declined: Nom. *Mehrere*; Gen. *mehrerer*; Dat. *mehreren*; Acc. *mehrere*. Examples: *Mehrere Worte*, more words; several words. *Mehrere Male*, several times. *Mehrere läugnen geistige Wesen*. Several men deny spiritual substances. This word is also used in the singular number. For instance: *mit mehrerem Fleifse*, with more accuracy. Instead of *mehrere* many Germans now say more correctly *mehre*. The primitive word of *mehr* is *meh*, which is no more in use and signifies much. From *meh* is formed, according to the rule, the comparative degree *meher* and by contraction *mehr*, more. For this reason it is also said *mehrentheils*, for the most part, and not *mehrerentheils*. In the plural number *mehre* must consequently be said, and not *mehrere*, as the plural number of the comparative degree always receives a simple *e*, when it is joined to a substantive, or when it is employed substantively. *Mehre* is thus declined: Nom. *Mehre*; Gen. *mehrer*; Dat. *mehren*; Acc. *mehre*, more. The superlative degree of *meh* is *der mehste*, for which *der mehrste* or *der meiste* is said. It is thus declined: Nom. sing. *Der*, *die*, *das mehrste* or *meiste*; Gen. *des*, *der*, *des mehrsten* or *meisten*; Dat. *dem*, *der*, *dem mehrsten* or *meisten*; Acc. *den mehrsten* or *meisten*, *die mehrste* or *meiste*, *das mehrste* or *meiste*. Plur. *Die*, *der*, *den*, *die*

meistens or *meisten*, most, of most, to most, most. Examples: *Seine meiste Zeit*, most of his time. *Die meisten Menschen*, most men. *Die meisten Leute*, most people. *Die meisten Reichen sehen mit Verachtung auf die Armen herab.* The greatest part of the rich look down with disdain upon the poor.

13. *Solcher*, such, is thus declined: Nom. sing. *Solcher, solche, solches;* Gen. *solches, solcher, solches;* Dat. *solchem, solcher, solchem;* Acc. *solchen, solche, solches.* Nom. plur. *Solche;* Gen. *solcher;* Dat. *solchen;* Acc. *solche.* Examples: *ein solcher Mann*, such a man. *Eine solche Frau*, such a woman. *Ein solches Kind*, such a child. *Auf solche Weise*, in such a manner. *Er machte einen solchen Lärm, dass Niemand in dem Zimmer bleiben konnte.* He made such a noise that nobody could stay in the room. *Von solcher hohen Erziehung*, of such high breeding. *Ein Solcher sollte bestraft werden.* Such a one ought to be punished. *Solche Leute*, such people. *Wir sind nicht solche Menschen, dass wir dieses thun sollten.* We are not such men as to do that. *Solche* is also employed for *diejenigen*. Example: *Ich nahm solche, die mir gefielen.* I took such as I pleased. Instead of *diejenigen, die mir gefielen.*

14. *Verschieden*, different, is thus declined: Nom. sing. *Verschiedener, verschiedene, verschiedenes;* Gen. *verschiedenes, verschiedener, verschiedenes;* Dat. *verschiedenem, verschiedener, verschiedenem;* Acc. *verschiedenen, verschiedene, verschiedenes.* Nom. plur. *Verschiedene;* Gen. *verschiedener;* Dat. *verschiedenen;* Acc. *verschiedene.* Examples: *auf eine verschiedene Art*, in a different manner. *Dieses sind sehr verschiedene Dinge.* These are very different things. *Ich habe Ihnen Verschiedenes* or *verschiedene Dinge zu sagen.* I have to tell you several things.

15. *Viel*, much, is thus declined: Nom. sing. *Vieler, viele, vieles;* Gen. *vieles, vieler, vieles;* Dat. *vielem, vieler, vielem;* Acc. *vielen, viele, vieles.* Nom. plur. *Viele*, many; Gen. *vieler*, of many; Dat. *vielen*, to many; Acc. *viele*, many. Examples: *vieler*

rothe Wein, much red wine. *Viele Mühe*, a great deal of pains. *Vieles weiſse Brōt*, much white bread. *Er weiſs Vieles.* He knows much. *Er spricht Viel.* He talks much. Instead of *Vieles*. *Viele Schriftsteller*, many writers. *Sehr viele Leute*, a great many people. *Ich kenne Viele.* I know a great deal of men. Instead of *vieler*, *viele*, *vieles*, the adverb *viel* is commonly used. They say consequently: *viel rother Wein*; *viel Mühe*; *viel weisses Brot*. *Einem viel Gutes erweisen*, to bestow much goodness on somebody. But it is a fault to say *viel Gelehrte*, many learned men, instead of *viele Gelehrte*.

16. *Wenig*, little, is declined like *viel*. Examples: *weniger Wein*, little wine. *Wenige Milch*, little milk. *Weniges starke Bier*, a small quantity of strong beer. *Das Wenige, was ich habe*, the little I have. *Er spricht nūr Wenig.* He speaks but little. Instead of *nur Weniges*: *Wenige Menschen sind zufrieden.* Few men are content. *Ich hatte nūr wenige.* I had but a few. *Ich kenne Wenige.* I know few men. *In wenigen Wochen*, in a few weeks. Instead of *weniger*, *wenige*, *weniges*, the adverb *wenig* is frequently used. They say consequently: *wenig Wein*; *wenig Milch*; *wenig starkes Bier*. But *wenig* ought not to be said for the plural *wenige*. It is also said *ein wenig* instead of *ein Wenigen*. For instance: *ein wenig Wein*, a little wine.

CHAPTER VIII.

Of the German verb.

Containing:

I. The different kinds of the German verbs.
II. The conjugation of the auxiliary and regular verbs of the German language.
III. The irregular German verbs.
IV. The use of the German verbs.
V. Exercises on German verbs.

Section I.

The different kinds of the German verbs.

There are two kinds of German verbs with regard to their origin. Either they are not derived from another word; or they are formed from another part of speech. The former are called *primitive verbs (ursprüngliche Aussagewörter)*, and the latter *derivative verbs (abgeleitete Aussagewörter)*.

The number of the primitive verbs is but very small with respect to those verbs, which are formed from another part of speech. The following words belong to the class of the primitive verbs: *essen; hören; leben; sprechen; lachen; weinen; zaudern; ziehen;* &c.

The derivative verbs are derived: —

1. From a substantive. Examples: *färben**, to colour, to die; from *Farbe*, colour, die. *Krönen*, to crown; from *Krone*, crown. *Lüften*, to air; from *Luft*, air.

2. From an attributive adjective. Examples: *wärmen*, to warm; from *warm*, warm. *Röthen*, to redden; from *rōth*, red. *Ründen*, to round; from *rund*, round.

3. From a numeral adjective. Examples: *zehnten*, to tithe; from *zehn*, ten. *Halbiren*, to halve; from *halb*, half.

4. From a pronoun. Examples: *duzen*, to call one *du* (thou). *Ihrzen*, to call one *Ihr* (ye.)

5. From another verb. Examples: *schläfern, es schläfert mich*, I am sleepy; from *schlafen*, to sleep. *Streicheln*, to stroke; from *streichen*, to strike. *Lächeln*, to smile; from *lachen*, to laugh. *Spötteln*, to mock others a little; from *spotten*, to mock. *Sticheln*, properly, to sting a little, and figuratively, to offend by biting words; from *stechen*, to sting. The first of these words expresses a desire to sleep; the second, the frequent repetition of the action signified by the primitive verb; and the three last verbs ex-

* Most derivative verbs change the vowel of the primitive word.

press a diminution of their fundamental idea. There are yet some other German verbs of this kind. The Latin grammarians call them *verba desiderativa, frequentativa, diminutiva.*

With regard to their external form, the German verbs are either *simple*, or *compound.*

The *simple verbs (die einfachen Aussagewörter)* are those which consist of only one word. Examples: *leuchten*, to light. *Machen*, to make. *Trüben*, to trouble. *Weisen*, to show.

The *compound verbs (die zusammengesetzten Aussagewörter)* are those which consist of two words. They are composed: —

1. With a substantive. Examples: *Einem fuchsschwänzen*, to fawn (upon one). *Liebäugeln*, to ogle. *Wetterleuchten*, to lighten.

2. With one of the following prepositions: *an, auf, aus, bei, durch, für, hinter, in, mit, nach, ob, über, um, unter, vor, wider, zu.* These prepositions are prefixed to the simple verbs, whereby their signification is altered.

3. With one of the following syllables, which are prefixed to the simple verbs, and give them another meaning: *ab, after, ant, be, emp, ent, er, ge, los, miss, ver, zer.*

Ab signifies a privation, separation, diminution, finishing, or a removal from a place. Examples: *ábästen*, to cut off the branches. *Abbeifsen*, to bite off. *Ábtragen*, to wear off; to demolish. *Abmachen*, to loose, to unbind; to make up. *Absenden*, to send away.

After and *ant* occur only in two verbs. *Áfterreden*, to backbite. *Antworten*, to answer.

Be expresses the act of furnishing with something; or it enforces the meaning of the simple verb. Examples: *beflügeln*, for *mit Flügeln versehen*, to furnish with wings. *Bereichern*, for *mit Reichthum versehen, reich machen*, to furnish with riches, to make rich, to enrich. *Bespeien*, to bespit. *Betrüben*, to contristate. *Fördern*, to further, to forward, is applied only to things. *Befördern* is applied to

things and persons. *Einen befördern*, to promote a person to a higher rank. *Fürchten*, to fear, is applied to persons and things; but *befürchten* only to things. *Ich befürchte diesen Umstand.* I fear this circumstance.

Emp, standing before the letter *f*, is considered as a mere alteration of *ent*. *Empfangen*, to receive. *Empféhlen*, to recommend. *Empfinden*, to feel.

Ent expresses either a privative or negative signification of the verb, to which it is joined; or it denotes a removal from a place, or an origin and a beginning. Examples: *entehren*, to dishonour, to deprive of honour. *Enterben*, to disinherit. *Entwaffnen*, to disarm. *Entfliehen*, to fly away. *Entspringen*, to spring away, to run away; to spring, to arise (*aus* —, from —). *Entzünden*, to inflame. *Entsprechen*, to answer to, to correspond to. Sometimes *ent* does not alter the signification of the simple verb, which also is not always in use. Examples: *entblöſsen*, to denude. *Entfernen*, to remove.

Er denotes the obtaining of an object by means of the action expressed by the simple verb. Examples: *erfechten*, to obtain or gain by fighting. *Ertanzen*, to obtain by dancing. *Er* expresses also the act of opening; the act of inventing and producing to light; the placing or being placed into a certain state or condition; and lastly, a motion upwards. Examples: *eröffnen*, to open. *Erbrechen*, to break open. *Erdenken*, to find out by meditation, to excogitate, to contrive. *Erfinden*, to invent. *Ersinnen*, to invent by reflection. *Erwärmen*, to warm. *Erschrecken*, to terrify, and to be terrified. *Erheben*, to raise up. *Errichten*, to erect.

Ge does not alter the meaning of the simple verb. However, there are some verbs, in which *ge* is not without meaning. Example: *brauchen*, to want, to stand in need of, to have occasion for. *Gebrauchen*, to use, to employ.

Lös signifies the act of freeing from something. Examples: *lösbinden*, to unbind, to untie. *Löslassen*, to set at liberty.

Miss signifies *falsch*, wrong; *übel*, ill; *nicht*, not; and answers to the English *mis*. Examples: *missdeuten*, for *falsch deuten*, to misinterpret. *Misshandeln*, for *übel behandeln*, to treat ill. *Missbilligen*, for *nicht billigen*, to disapprove.

Ver signifies *weg*, away; *falsch*, wrong; *zu*, too much; up. Examples: *verjagen*, to chase away. *Vertreiben*, to drive away. *Verschenken*, to give away. *Versprechen*, (properly to speak away) to promise. *Vertändeln*, to trifle away. *Vertrinken*, to drink away. *Verpflanzen*, to displant. *Verblühen*, to fade away. *Sich verbluten*, to bleed to death. *Verspielen*, to lose at play. *Sich verrechnen*, to reckon wrong. *Sich verschreiben*, to write wrong. *Sich versprechen*, to speak wrong. *Verzuckern*, to sugar too much. *Verschliefsen*, to shut up. *Versiegeln*, to seal up. *Ver* expresses also the meaning contrary to that of the simple verb. *Verbieten*, to forbid. *Sich Etwas verbitten*, to beg not to do something. *Versagen*, to deny. *Ver* enforces the signification of several simple verbs. Examples: *verehren*, to revere. *Verflechten*, to intwine. *Verknüpfen*, to connect. *Verzagen*, to despond. Lastly, *ver* expresses the placing or being placed into a certain state or condition. Examples: *verschönen*, to beautify. *Verschönern*, to make more beautiful. *Verarmen*, to fall into poverty.

Zer denotes a separation of parts. Examples: *zertréten*, to tread in pieces, to crush. *Zerstreuen*, to disperse, to scatter.

4. With an adverb. Examples: *fórtgehen*, to go away. *Wégwerfen*, to cast away. *Frühstücken*, to breakfast.

With regard to their signification, the German verbs are either *active*, or *neuter*.

A verb active (ein thätiges Aussagewort), as its name teaches, expresses an action. When the action expressed by it passes over from the subject to another object, it is called a *verb active transitive (ein auf einen anderen Gegenstand übergehendes Aussagewort)*. It is then always accompanied with two

words. The first of them is the agent or the subject of the action; the second is the object of it, or the person, or thing, to which the action passes over, or upon which it has an effect. Examples: *Er tödtete seinen Feind.* He killed his enemy. *Das Mädchen zerbrāch das Glās.* The girl broke the glass. When the action expressed by the verb does not pass over from the subject to another object, but is confined within the agent, the verb is called a *verb active intransitive (ein nicht auf einen anderen Gegenstand übergehendes Aussagewort).* Such a verb wants only one word, in order to form with it a phrase. Examples: *Peter lebt.* Peter lives. *Lūdwig fällt.* Lewis falls. *Das Feuer brennt.* The fire burns. *Der Mōnd scheint.* The moon shines. *Mein Bruder schläft.* My brother sleeps.

Observations.

1. All the verbs, which imply an attribute and the copula*, are called *verbs attributive. Die Sonne scheint*, the sun shines, stands for *die Sonne ist scheinend*, the sun is shining.

2. Several verbs intransitive become by the change of their vowel transitive. Examples: *fallen*, to fall; *fällen*, to fell, to cut down. *Trinken*, to drink; *tränken*, to give to drink. Several verbs intransitive become transitive, when *aus*, *be*, &c. is prefixed to them. Examples: *arbeiten*, to work, to labour; *aūsarbeiten*, to elaborate. *Stehen*, to stand; *aūsstehen*, to endure. *Wohnen*, to dwell, to live; *bewohnen*, to inhabit.

3. Some verbs intransitive have an accusative after them; but this accusative only determines more exactly the action done by the subject of the phrase. Examples: *einen guten Kampf kämpfen*, to fight a good fight. *Einen schrecklichen Traum träumen*, to dream a frightful dream. *Ein tugendhaftes Leben leben*, to live a virtuous life. *Einen plötzlichen Tōd sterben*, to die a sudden death. *Eine Meile gehen*,

* *Copula* is the word, which unites the subject and predicate of a proposition. This word is the verb *to be.*

to walk a mile. *Die ganze Nacht schlafen,* to sleep all night. *Die ganze Nacht* stands for *die ganze Nacht hindurch,* during all night.

4. Only those verbs, which govern an accusative, are called by the grammarians verbs active transitive. Those, on the contrary, which govern the dative or genitive, are called by them verbs active intransitive. But this seems to be an error. For also then, when the verb governs the dative or genitive, the subject of the phrase does an action, which it exerts upon any exterior object.

5. When a verb transitive is used without a case, an ellipsis then always takes place. For instance: *Er liebt,* for *er liebt ein Frauenzimmer.* He loves a woman. *Ich bade,* I bathe, for *ich bade mich,* I bathe myself.

6. Some verbs are properly verbs active intransitive, that is, they do not act upon another object; but they may become verbs active transitive, when an object is added to them. For instance, when I say: *ich séhe,* I see, every one does unterstand me without thinking of another object. *Sehen* is therefore in itself a verb active intransitive. But I may change it into a verb active transitive, when I add an object and say: *Ich sehe den Baum,* I see the tree.

7. When the action expressed by the verb passes over to the subject itself, which does it, the verb is called *reflective (zurückwirkend).* For instance: *Ich schneide mich.* I cut myself. *Er verletzt sich.* He hurts himself. But that appellation cannot properly be applied to the German language, as it is only fit for those verbs, which have a peculiar form for the reflective signification. This is the case in the Greek language, where, for instance, λούω signifies I wash, and λούομαι, I wash myself. But the German language has no reflective verbs, as it has no peculiar form for the verb, in order to express the reflective signification. For when I say: *ich liebe mich,* I love myself, I use, as object of the action expressed by that verb, the pronoun of the first person, because I am myself that man, whom

I love. The verbs, which have for subject and object the pronoun of the first, or of the second, or of the third person, do consequently not form a particular class of verbs. There are several verbs, which are never used without those pronouns. Such verbs are the following: *sich Etwas anmaſsen*, to pretend to something. *Sich zu Etwas anschicken*, to prepare for something. *Sich bedanken* (better *danken*), to thank. *Sich eines Dinges befleiſsigen*, to apply one's self to something. *Sich an einen Ort bégeben*, to go to a place. *Sich zu Einem begeben*, to repair to one. *Sich mit Allem behelfen*, to make shift with any thing. *Sich begnügen*, to content one's self. *Sich bemühen, sich bestrében*, to endeavour. *Sich berühmen*, to boast. *Sich um ein Amt bewerben*, to sue for a place. *Sich einbilden*, to imagine. *Sich entschlieſsen*, to resolve. *Sich freuen*, to rejoice. They say however: *Dieses freuet meinen Vater*. This gives joy to my father. *Diese Bücher freuen ihn*. These books give him joy. *Sich grämen*, to grieve. *Sich getrauen*, to dare. *Sich schämen*, to be ashamed. *Sich unterstéhen*, to venture. *Sich Einem widersétzen*, to oppose one. *Sich wundern*, to wonder. These verbs may be called pronominal verbs.

8. Every verb active transitive may also be changed into a passive state. For as the verb active transitive expresses an action exerted upon some exterior object, not only somebody must exist doing an action, but also an object must be named, upon which the action is exercised, that therefore suffers something. Hence arises for the conjugation of such a verb the *passive voice (die leidende Form* or *das Passiv)*. For instance, when I say: *ich schlage den Nagel in die Wand*, I strike the nail into the wall, the nail is the exterior object, towards which my action is directed, that consequently suffers something, and I may then also say: *der Nagel wird von mir in die Wand geschlagen*, the nail is struck by me into the wall. It is seen from this example, that in the passive voice of the verb the object or the accusative of the phrase becomes the subject or the nominative of it. Also

some verbs active intransitive admit the passive voice. But it is very incomplete, as only the third person of it is used.

A *verb neuter (ein unthätiges Aussagewort)* attributes to the subject a certain state, a certain manner of being. Examples: *ausarten*, to degenerate. *Erblassen*, to grow pale. *Erkalten*, to grow cold. *Erröthen*, to grow red, to blush. *Erschrecken*, to get frightened. *Genésen*, to recover from illness. *Schwellen*, to swell. *Verarmen*, to grow poor. *Verhungern*, to perish with hunger. *Verschwinden*, to disappear. *Sterben*, to die. *Entschlafen*, to expire. The verbs neuter admit no passive voice. Their name comes from the Latin word *neuter, neutra, neutrum*, which signifies neither. They are thus called, because they express neither a transitive, nor an intransitive action.

The verbs are either *personal*, or *impersonal*.

A *personal verb (ein persönliches Aussagewort)* is that which indicates the subject in a definite manner, and consequently has all the regular modifications of the three persons.

An *impersonal verb (ein unpersönliches Aussagewort)* is that which has only one person. This person is the third person of the singular. It denotes an action, of which the efficient cause is expressed by the indefinite *es*, it.

The verbs, lastly, are either *regular*, or *irregular*. The greatest part of the German verbs are regular.

A *regular verb (ein regelmäfsiges Aussagewort)* is that which is inflected according to the rules established by the general practice. All the verbs, which terminate in *eln, ern, igen, iren*, and *zen*, as also almost all the verbs derived from substantives or adjectives, are regular. All the regular verbs, which are not at the same time verbs intransitive or neuter, have an active and a passive signification, according as the action, which they express, has been done or suffered by the subject.

A *verb irregular (ein unregelmäfsiges Aussagewort)* is that which is not inflected according to

rule. Their number amounts at present to upwards of two hundred. Formerly it was more considerable; but it has decreased with the progressive cultivation of the language.

Several verbs, therefore, which in former times had an anomalous form, do not at present deviate from rule. Some of them may be inflected either in a regular, or an irregular manner.

Section II.

The conjugation of the auxiliary and regular verbs of the German language.

Verbs are subject to fixed variations or terminations. When these terminations are given to a verb, it is *conjugated*. To *conjugate* a verb *(ein Aussagewort abwandeln)* signifies consequently: to recite it according to all its different variations or terminations; and the act of conjugating a verb is what is called its *conjugation (die Abwandelung des Aussageswortes)*.

The Germans have, as the English, but one regular conjugation, which is very simple and easy.

When the action or being of a verb is expressed only indeterminately, its *infinitive* is employed. The infinitive, having neither numbers, nor persons, only serves to denote the verb, of which we are going to speak, and may, therefore, be called the *name* of it. It also serves to form the tenses of the verb, when its final syllable *en* is omitted; and it may, therefore, be called the *root* of it. For this reason the conjugation of every verb must begin with the infinitive, which, consequently, in the verb before all is to be kept in view.

The infinitive of the German verbs always terminates in *en*, if we except those infinitives, whose final letter is preceded by an *l* or an *r*. In this case the infinitive ends in a simple *n*. Examples: *schmeicheln*, to flatter. *Fordern*, to demand. But also these verbs originally terminate in *en*, the vowel

e being by contraction ejected. *Schmeicheln* and *fordern*, consequently, are said for *schmeichelen* and *forderen*; and the root of these verbs is *schmeichel* and *forder*. Also in the verbs *rechnen* and *zeichnen* an *e* is omitted. Properly it ought to be said *rechenen* and *zeichenen*. It must (therefore) be said *Rechenkunst* and *Zeichenkunst*, the final syllable *en* in compound words being thrown away, as in *Schreibkunst*, *Tanzkunst*. *Ich rechne; ich rechnete; gerechnet. Ich zeichne; ich zeichnete; gezeichnet.* Instead of *ich rechene; ich rechenete; gerechenet. Ich zeichene; ich zeichenete; gezeichenet.*

In the conjugation of the verb are to be considered the *persons* and *numbers*, the *moods* and *tenses*.

Persons and numbers.

There are three persons and two numbers in each tense. The first person is that which speaks. The second is that to which is spoken. The third is that of which we speak. In German, as in English, the pronouns of the first, second and third person are always added to the verb. The numbers are the *singular* and *plural*.

Moods.

The verb affirms any thing of the subject. The manner, in which this is done, is called the *mood* of the verb *(die Art der Aussage)*.

There are three moods. These three moods are: the *indicative mood*; the *subjunctive* or *conjunctive mood*; the *imperative mood*.

The *indicative mood (der Indicativ* or *die gewisse* or *die unabhängige Art der Aussage)* expresses the action or passion of a verb with certainty and in an independent manner. For instance. *Ich schreibe einen Brief.* I write a letter. *Ein Brief wird von mir geschrieben.* A letter is written by me.

The *subjunctive* or *conjunctive mood (der Conjunctiv* or *die ungewisse* or *die abhängige Art der Aussage)* expresses the action or passion of a verb

in an uncertain or dubious manner, and depends upon the principal verb of the sentence. It would, therefore, not express a full sense of itself. Example: *Mein Freund behauptet, daes dieses ein fruchtbares Jahr seyn würde.* My friend maintains that this will be a fruitful year. Here a person maintains that such and such an event will take place. But in as far as I do not regard this thing as perfectly certain, and as there may be a doubt about it, it is proper that the notion should be expressed in the subjunctive mood. The verb *seyn werde* is in the subjunctive mood, because it depends upon the principal verb *behauptet*, and because the last part of the sentence *daes ein fruchtbares Jahr seyn werde* does not express a full sense of itself.

The *imperative mood (der Imperativ* or *die gebietende Art der Aussage)* expresses a command, an exhortation, a prayer. Example: *Gében Sie ihm sein Geld.* Give him his money.

Tenses.

By *tenses (die Zeiten* or *die Zeitformen)* are meant the different variations or endings of the verb to signify all the relations of time, which may take place.

There are in German eight tenses in the indicative and in the subjunctive mood. These eight tenses are:

1. The *present tense (die gegenwärtige Zeit* or *Zeitform).*

2. The *preterimperfect tense* or the tense not perfectly past *(die unvollendete Zeit* or *Zeitform).*

3. The *preterperfect tense (die vollendete Zeit* or *Zeitform).* This tense denotes time absolutely past.

4. The *preterpluperfect tense (die mehr als vollkommen vergangene Zeit* or *Zeitform).* This tense denotes time relatively past, or past before some other past time.

5. The *first future tense (die erste zukünftige Zeit* or *Zeitform).* It may be called also the *future not past (die unvollendete zukünftige Zeit).*

6. The *second future tense (die zweite zukünftige Zeit* or *Zeitform)*. It may be called also the *future past (die vollendete zukünftige Zeit)*.

7. The *conditional present (die gegenwärtige bedingte Zeit* or *Zeitform)*.

8. The *conditional past (die vollendete bedingte Zeit* or *Zeitform)*. These two tenses express an action, which depends upon a preceding condition.

Participles.

Besides the moods and tenses, there is yet another part of the verb, which is called the *participle*. It is often to be considered as a mere adjective derived from a verb; and in this form it may be joined to a substantive as its quality or accident. The participle is therefore considered as a word partaking at once of the nature of a verb and an adjective. For this reason it is called the participle *(das Particip* or *das Mittelwort)*. There are two participles: the *present* and the *past participle (das Particip* or *das Mittelwort der gegenwärtigen und der vollendeten Zeit)*.

Conjugation of the auxiliary verbs.

The German language, as the English and other languages, has *helping* or *auxiliary verbs (Hilfswörter)*. By helping verbs are understood those verbs, that are used in the conjugation of all the other verbs, which cannot be completely inflected without their assistance.

The Germans have three auxiliary verbs.

The first is *würden*, which, as verb auxiliary, must be rendered in English by *to be*. It serves for the formation of the future tenses in the active voice, and is employed to compose all the tenses of the passive voice.

The second is *seyn*, to be. It serves for the formation of three tenses of several intransitive and neuter verbs in the active voice, and likewise helps to compose these tenses in the passive voice. These

three tenses are: the preterperfect, the preterpluperfect, and the second future.

The third is *haben*, to have. It serves for the formation of three tenses in the active voice. These three tenses are: the preterperfect, the preterpluperfect, and the second future.

Observations.

1. When *werden* is joined with a noun, it answers to the English verbs to become, to grow, to prove, to turn. Examples: *Er ward ein guter Mensch.* He became a good man. *Wir werden Bettler.* We turn beggars. *Weiss werden*, to grow white. *Wahr werden*, to prove true. *Was ist aus ihm geworden?* What is become of him?

2. When *seyn* is not used as auxiliary verb, it has the following two significations: to have some certain state, condition, quality; to exist, to have existence. For instance: *Dieser Mann ist weise.* This man is wise. *Es ist ein Gott.* There is a God.

3. When *haben* is not employed as verb auxiliary, it is then to be considered as a verb transitive, of which the passive form, however, is not usual. As verb transitive, it signifies to possess. *Ich habe ihn gemält.* In this instance *ich habe* may signify I possess; or it may be the auxiliary verb. When it stands in the former sense, it is translated in English by I have him painted. When it is used in the latter sense, it is rendered in English by I have painted him.

First auxiliary verb.

Infinitive.

Present.	*Preterperfect.*
Werden, to be.	*Worden seyn*, to have been.

Indicative.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde, I am;	*Wir werden*, we are;
du wirst, thou art;	*ihr werdet*, you are;
er, sie, es wird, he, she, it is.	*sie werden*, they are.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich wurde or *ich ward*, I was;	*Wir wurden*, we were;
du wurdest or *du wardst*, thou wast;	*ihr wurdet*, you were;
er wurde or *er ward*, he was.	*sie wurden*, they were.

Preterperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich bin worden, I have been;	*Wir sind worden*, we have been;
du bist worden, thou hast been;	*ihr seyd worden*, you have been;
er ist worden, he has been.	*sie sind worden*, they have been.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich war worden, I had been;	*Wir waren worden*, we had been;
du warest worden, thou hadst been;	*ihr waret worden*, you had been;
er war worden, he had been.	*sie waren worden*, they had been.

First future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde werden, I shall be;	*Wir werden werden*, we shall be;
du wirst werden, thou wilt be;	*ihr werdet werden*, you will be;
er wird werden, he will be.	*sie werden werden*, they will be.

Second future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde worden seyn, I shall have been;	*Wir werden worden seyn*, we shall have been;
du wirst worden seyn, thou wilt have been;	*ihr werdet worden seyn*, you will have been;
er wird worden seyn, he will have been.	*sie werden worden seyn*, they will have been.

Subjunctive.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde, I be;	*Wir werden*, we be;
du werdest, thou be;	*ihr werdet*, you be;
er werde, he be.	*sie werden*, they be.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde, I were;	*Wir würden*, we were;
du würdest, thou wert;	*ihr würdet*, you were;
er würde, he were.	*sie würden*, they were.

Preterperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich sey worden, I have been;	*Wir seyen worden*, we have been;
du seyst worden, thou have been;	*ihr seyd worden*, you have been;
er sey worden, he have been.	*sie seyen worden*, they have been.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich wäre worden, I had been;	*Wir wären worden*, we had been;
du wärest worden, thou had been;	*ihr wäret worden*, you had been;
er wäre worden, he had been.	*sie wären worden*, they had been.

First future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde werden, I shall be;	*Wir werden werden*, we shall be;
du werdest werden, thou wilt be;	*ihr werdet werden*, you will be;
er werde werden, he will be.	*sie werden werden*, they will be.

Second future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde worden seyn, I shall have been;	*Wir werden worden seyn*, we shall have been;
du werdest worden seyn, thou wilt have been;	*ihr werdet worden seyn*, you will have been;
er werde worden seyn, he will have been.	*sie werden worden seyn*, they will have been.

Conditional present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde werden, I should be;	*Wir würden werden*, we should be;
du würdest werden, thou wouldst be;	*ihr würdet werden*, you would be;
er würde werden, he would be.	*sie würden werden*, they would be.

Conditional past.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde worden seyn, I should have been;	*Wir würden worden seyn*, we should have been;
du würdest worden seyn, thou wouldst have been;	*ihr würdet worden seyn*, you would have been;
er würde worden seyn, he would have been.	*sie würden worden seyn*, they would have been.

Imperative.

Singular.	Plural.
Werde (du), be (thou).	*Werden wir*, let us be;
werde er, be he.	*werdet (ihr)*, be (you);
	werden sie, be they.

Participles.

Present.	*Past.*
Werdend, being.	*Worden*, been.

Second auxiliary verb.

Infinitive.

Present.	*Preterperfect.*
Seyn, to be.	*Gewesen seyn*, to have been.

Indicative.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich bin, I am;	*Wir sind*, we are;
du bist, thou art;	*ihr seyd*, you are;
er ist, he is.	*sie sind*, they are.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich war, I was;	*Wir waren*, we were;
du warest, thou wast;	*ihr waret*, you were;
er war, he was.	*sie waren*, they were.

Preterperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich bin gewesen, I have been;	*Wir sind gewesen*, we have been;
du bist gewesen, thou hast been;	*ihr seyd gewesen*, you have been;
er ist gewesen, he has been.	*sie sind gewesen*, they have been.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich war gewesen, I had been;	*Wir wären gewesen*, we had been;
du warest gewesen, thou hadst been;	*ihr waret gewesen*, you had been;
er war gewesen, he had been.	*sie waren gewesen*, they had been.

First future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde seyn, I shall be;	*Wir werden seyn*, we shall be;
du wirst seyn, thou wilt be;	*ihr werdet seyn*, you will be;
er wird seyn, he will be.	*sie werden seyn*, they will be.

Second future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde gewesen seyn, I shall have been;	*Wir werden gewesen seyn*, we shall have been;
du wirst gewesen seyn, thou wilt have been;	*ihr werdet gewesen seyn*, you will have been;
er wird gewesen seyn, he will have been.	*sie werden gewesen seyn*, they will have been.

Subjunctive.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich sey, I be;	*Wir seyen*, we be;
du seyst, thou be;	*ihr seyd*, you be;
er sey, he be.	*sie seyen*, they be.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich wäre, I were;	*Wir wären*, we were;
du wärest, thou wert;	*ihr wäret*, you were;
er wäre, he were.	*sie wären*, they were.

Preterperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich sey gewesen, I have been;	*Wir seyen gewesen*, we have been;
du seyst gewesen, thou have been;	*ihr seyd gewesen*, you have been;
er sey gewesen, he have been.	*sie seyen gewesen*, they have been.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich wäre gewesen, I had been;	*Wir wären gewesen*, we had been;

du wärest gewesen, thou had been;
er wäre gewesen, he had been.
ihr wäret gewesen, you had been;
sie wären gewesen, they had been.

First future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde seyn, I shall be;	*Wir werden seyn*, we shall be;
du werdest seyn, thou wilt be;	*ihr werdet seyn*, you will be;
er werde seyn, he will be.	*sie werden seyn*, they will be.

Second future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde gewesen seyn, I shall have been;	*Wir werden gewesen seyn*, we shall have been;
du werdest gewesen seyn, thou wilt have been;	*ihr werdet gewesen seyn*, you will have been;
er werde gewesen seyn, he will have been.	*sie werden gewesen seyn*, they will have been.

Conditional present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde seyn, I should be;	*Wir würden seyn*, we should be;
du würdest seyn, thou wouldst be;	*ihr würdet seyn*, you would be;
er würde seyn, he would be.	*sie würden seyn*, they would be.

Conditional past.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde gewesen seyn, I should have been;	*Wir würden gewesen seyn*, we should have been;
du würdest gewesen seyn, thou wouldst have been;	*ihr würdet gewesen seyn*, you would have been;
er würde gewesen seyn, he would have been.	*sie würden gewesen seyn*, they would have been.

Imperative.

Singular.	Plural.
Sey (du), be (thou);	*Seyen wir*, let us be;
sey er, be he, let him be.	*seyd (ihr)*, be (you);
	seyen sie, be they, let them be.

Participles.

Present.	*Past.*
Seyend, being.	*Gewesen*, been.

Third auxiliary verb.

Infinitive.

Present.	*Preterperfect.*
Haben, to have.	*Gehābt haben*, to have had.

Indicative.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich habe, I have;	*Wir haben*, we have;
du hast, thou hast;	*ihr habet* or *ihr hābt*, you have;
er hat, he has.	*sie haben*, they have.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich hatte, I had;	*Wir hatten*, we had;
du hattest, thou hadst;	*ihr hattet*, you had;
er hatte, he had.	*sie hatten*, they had.

Preterperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich habe gehabt, I have had;	*Wir haben gehabt*, we have had;
du hast gehabt, thou hast had;	*ihr habet gehabt*, you have had;
er hat gehabt, he has had.	*sie haben gehabt*, they have had.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich hatte gehabt, I had had;	*Wir hatten gehabt*, we had had;
du hattest gehabt, thou hadst had;	*ihr hattet gehabt*, you had had;
er hatte gehabt, he had had.	*sie hatten gehabt*, they had had.

First future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde haben, I shall have;	*Wir werden haben*, we shall have;
du wirst haben, thou wilt have;	*ihr werdet haben*, you will have;
er wird haben, he will have.	*sie werden haben*, they will have.

Second future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde gehabt haben, I shall have had;	*Wir werden gehabt haben*, we shall have had;

du wirst gehabt haben, thou wilt have had;
er wird gehabt haben, he will have had.
ihr werdet gehabt haben, you will have had;
sie werden gehabt haben, they will have had.

Subjunctive.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich habe, I have;	*Wir haben*, we have;
du habest, thou have;	*ihr habet*, you have;
er habe, he have.	*sie haben*, they have.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich hätte, I had;	*Wir hätten*, we had;
du hättest, thou had;	*ihr hättet*, you had;
er hätte, he had.	*sie hätten*, they had.

Preterperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich habe gehabt, I have had;	*Wir haben gehabt*, we have had;
du habest gehabt, thou have had;	*ihr habet gehabt*, you have had;
er habe gehabt, he have had.	*sie haben gehabt*, they have had.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich hätte gehabt, I had had;	*Wir hätten gehabt*, we had had;
du hättest gehabt, thou had had;	*ihr hättet gehabt*, you had had;
er hätte gehabt, he had had.	*sie hätten gehabt*, they had had.

First future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde haben, I shall have;	*Wir werden haben*, we shall have;
du werdest haben, thou wilt have;	*ihr werdet haben*, you will have;
er werde haben, he will have.	*sie werden haben*, they will have.

Second future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde gehabt haben, I shall have had;	*Wir werden gehabt haben*, we shall have had;
du werdest gehabt haben, thou wilt have had;	*ihr werdet gehabt haben*, you will have had;
er werde gehabt haben, he will have had.	*sie werden gehabt haben*, they will have had.

Conditional present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde haben, I should have;	*Wir würden haben*, we should have;
du würdest haben, thou wouldst have;	*ihr würdet haben*, you would have;
er würde haben, he would have.	*sie würden haben*, they would have.

Conditional past.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde gehabt haben, I should have had;	*Wir würden gehabt haben*, we should have had;
du würdest gehabt haben, thou wouldst have had;	*ihr würdet gehabt haben*, you would have had;
er würde gehabt haben, he would have had.	*sie würden gehabt haben*, they would have had.

Imperative.

Singular.	Plural.
Habe (du), have (thou);	*Haben wir*, have we, let us have;
habe er, have he, let him have.	*habet (ihr)*, have (you);
	haben sie, have they, let them have.

Participles.

Present.	*Past.*
Habend, having.	*Gehabt*, had.

Observations.

1. When *werden* is not an auxiliary verb, its past participle receives the initial syllable *ge*. For instance: *Ich bin durch ihn glücklich geworden.* I am become happy by him.

2. *Du hast* and *er hat* are contracted from *du habest* and *er habet*. The preterimperfect of *haben* is likewise contracted from *ich habete; du habetest; er habete. Wir habeten; ihr habetet; sie habeten. Gehabt* is contracted from *gehabet*. This contraction does not take place in the compound verb *händ-haben*, to handle. *Ich handhabe; du handhabest; er handhabet. Ich handhābte; du handhabtest; er hand-habte.*

3. *Müssen, sollen* and *wollen* cannot be considered as auxiliary verbs. True auxiliary verbs are only

those, without which no complete conjugation can be formed.

Conjugation of the regular verb.

Those tenses, which do not employ auxiliary verbs for their formation, are called *simple tenses (einfache Zeiten)*. But those that are formed by the help of auxiliary verbs, are called *compound tenses (zusammengesetzte Zeiten)*. All the tenses of the active and passive voice, with the exception of the present and preterimperfect of the active, are compound.

In order to form the *present*, the two letters *en*, in which all the German verbs end, are taken away from the infinitive, and then the terminations *e*, *est*, *et*, *en*, *et*, *en*, are added to the root of the verb.

In order to form the *preterimperfect*, the two letters *en* are taken away from the infinitive, and then the terminations *ete*, *etest*, *ete*, *eten*, *etet*, *eten*, are added to the root of the verb.

In order to form the *present participle*, the two letters *en* are taken away from the infinitive, and then the syllable *end* is added to the root of the verb.

In order to form the *past participle*, the two letters *en* are taken away from the infinitive, and then the syllable *et* is added to the root of the verb. Besides this added syllable, the syllable *ge* is put before the root of the verb.

The *preterperfect* is formed by adding to the past participle the present of the auxiliary verb *haben*.

The *preterpluperfect* is formed by adding to the past participle the preterimperfect of the auxiliary verb *haben*.

The *first future* is formed by adding to the infinitive the present of the auxiliary verb *werden*.

The *second* or *relative future* is formed by adding to the past participle the future of the auxiliary verb *haben*.

The *conditional present* is formed by adding to the infinitive the preterimperfect of the subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *werden*.

The *conditional past* is formed by adding to the past participle the conditional present of the auxiliary verb *haben*.

In order to form the *imperative*, the letter *n* is taken away from the infinitive.

The *passive voice* is composed of the auxiliary verb *werden* and of the past participle.

The following conjugated regular verb *loben* will show the application of the rules given on the formation of the simple and compound tenses.

Infinitive.

Present.	*Preterperfect.*
Loben *, to praise.	*Gelōbt haben*, to have praised.

Indicative.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich lobe, I praise;	*Wir loben*, we praise;
du lobest or *du lōbst*, thou praisest;	*ihr lobet* or *ihr lobt*, you praise;
er, *sie*, *es lobet* or *lōbt*, he, she, it praises.	*sie loben*, they praise.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich lobete or *ich lōbte*, I praised;	*Wir lobeten* or *wir lōbten*, we praised;
du lobetest or *du lōbtest*, thou praisedst;	*ihr lobetet* or *ihr lōbtet*, you praised;
er lobete or *er lōbte*, he praised.	*sie lobeten* or *sie lōbten*, they praised.

Preterperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich habe gelobt, I have praised;	*Wir haben gelobt*, we have praised;
du hast gelobt, thou hast praised;	*ihr habet gelobt*, you have praised;
er hat gelobt, he has praised.	*sie haben gelobt*, they have praised.

* The root of *loben* is *lōb*, to which the indicated terminations are joined.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich hatte gelobt, I had praised;	*Wir hatten gelobt*, we had praised;
du hattest gelobt, thou hadst praised;	*ihr hattet gelobt*, you had praised;
er hatte gelobt, he had praised.	*sie hatten gelobt*, they hap praised.

First future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde loben, I shall praise;	*Wir werden loben*, we shall praise;
du wirst loben, thou wilt praise;	*ihr werdet loben*, you will praise;
er wird loben, he will praise.	*sie werden loben*, they will praise.

Second future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde gelobt haben, I shall have praised;	*Wir werden gelobt haben*, we shall have praised;
du wirst gelobt haben, thou wilt have praised;	*ihr werdet gelobt haben*, you will have praised;
er wird gelobt haben, he will have praised.	*sie werden gelobt haben*, they will have praised.

Subjunctive.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich lobe, I praise;	*Wir loben*, we praise;
du lobest, thou praise;	*ihr lobet*, you praise;
er lobe, he praise.	*sie loben*, they praise.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich lobete or *ich lobte*, I praised;	*Wir lobeten* or *wir lobten*, we praised;
du lobetest or *du lobtest*, thou praisedst;	*ihr lobetet* or *ihr lobtet*, you praised;
er lobete or *er lobte*, he praised.	*sie lobeten* or *sie lobten*, they praised.

Preterperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich habe gelobt, I have praised;	*Wir haben gelobt*, we have praised;
du habest gelobt, thou have praised;	*ihr habet gelobt*, you have praised;
er habe gelobt, he have praised.	*sie haben gelobt*, they have praised.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich hätte gelobt, I had praised;	*Wir hätten gelobt*, we had praised;
du hättest gelobt, thou had praised;	*ihr hättet gelobt*, you had praised;
er hätte gelobt, he had praised.	*sie hätten gelobt*, they had praised.

First future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde loben, I shall praise;	*Wir werden loben*, we shall praise;
du werdest loben, thou wilt praise;	*ihr werdet loben*, you will praise;
er werde loben, he will praise.	*sie werden loben*, they will praise.

Second future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde gelobt haben, I shall have praised;	*Wir werden gelobt haben*, we shall have praised;
du werdest gelobt haben, thou wilt have praised;	*ihr werdet gelobt haben*, you will have praised;
er werde gelobt haben, he will have praised.	*sie werden gelobt haben*, they will have praised.

Conditional present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde loben, I should praise;	*Wir würden loben*, we should praise;
du würdest loben, thou wouldst praise;	*ihr würdet loben*, you would praise;
er würde loben, he would praise.	*sie würden loben*, they would praise.

Conditional past.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde gelobt haben, I should have praised;	*Wir würden gelobt haben*, we should have praised;
du würdest gelobt haben, thou wouldst have praised;	*ihr würdet gelobt haben*, you would have praised;
er würde gelobt haben, he would have praised.	*sie würden gelobt haben*, they would have praised.

Imperative.

Singular.	Plural.
Lobe (du), praise (thou);	*Loben wir*, let us praise;
lobe er, praise he, let him praise.	*lobet (ihr)*, praise (you);
	loben sie, praise they, let them praise.

Participles.

Present.	*Past.*
Lobend, praising.	*Gelobet* or *gelöbt*, praised.

Passive voice.

Infinitive.

Present.	*Preterperfect.*
Gelobt werden, to be praised.	*Gelobt worden seyn*, to have been praised.

Indicative.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde gelobt, I am praised;	*Wir werden gelobt*, we are praised;
du wirst gelobt, thou art praised;	*ihr werdet gelobt*, you are praised;
er, sie, es wird gelobt, he, she, it is praised.	*sie werden gelobt*, they are praised.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich wurde or *ward gelobt*, I was praised;	*Wir wurden gelobt*, we were praised;
du wurdest or *wardst gelobt*, thou wast praised;	*ihr wurdet gelobt*, you were praised;
er wurde or *ward gelobt*, he was praised.	*sie wurden gelobt*, they were praised.

Preterperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich bin gelobt worden, I have been praised;	*Wir sind gelobt worden*, we have been praised;
du bist gelobt worden, thou hast been praised;	*ihr seyd gelobt worden*, you have been praised;
er ist gelobt worden, he has been praised.	*sie sind gelobt worden*, they have been praised.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich war gelobt worden, I had been praised;	*Wir waren gelobt worden*, we had been praised;
du warest gelobt worden, thou hadst been praised;	*ihr waret gelobt worden*, you had been praised;
er war gelobt worden, he had been praised.	*sie waren gelobt worden*, they had been praised.

First future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde gelobt werden, I shall be praised;	*Wir werden gelobt werden*, we shall be praised;
du wirst gelobt werden, thou wilt be praised;	*ihr werdet gelobt werden*, you will be praised;
er wird gelobt werden, he will be praised.	*sie werden gelobt werden*, they will be praised.

Second future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde gelobt worden seyn, I shall have been praised;	*Wir werden gelobt worden seyn*, we shall have been praised;
du wirst gelobt worden seyn, thou wilt have been praised;	*ihr werdet gelobt worden seyn*, you will have been praised;
er wird gelobt worden seyn, he will have been praised.	*sie werden gelobt worden seyn*, they will have been praised.

Subjunctive.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde gelobt, I be praised;	*Wir werden gelobt*, we be praised;
du werdest gelobt, thou be praised;	*ihr werdet gelobt*, you be praised;
er werde gelobt, he be praised.	*sie werden gelobt*, they be praised.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde gelobt, I were praised;	*Wir würden gelobt*, we were praised;
du würdest gelobt, thou wert praised;	*ihr würdet gelobt*, you were praised;
er würde gelobt, he were praised.	*sie würden gelobt*, they were praised.

Preterperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich sey gelobt worden, I have been praised;	*Wir seyen gelobt worden*, we have been praised;
du seyst gelobt worden, thou have been praised;	*ihr seyd gelobt worden*, you have been praised;
er sey gelobt worden, he have been praised.	*sie seyen gelobt worden*, they have been praised.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich wäre gelobt worden, I had been praised.	*Wir wären gelobt worden*, we had been praised;

du wärest gelobt worden, thou had been praised;
er wäre gelobt worden, he had been praised.
ihr wäret gelobt worden, you had been praised;
sie wären gelobt worden, they had been praised.

First future.

Singular.
Ich werde gelobt werden, I shall be praised;
du werdest gelobt werden, thou wilt be praised;
er werde gelobt werden, he will be praised.

Plural.
Wir werden gelobt werden, we shall be praised;
ihr werdet gelobt werden, you will be praised;
sie werden gelobt werden, they will be praised.

Second future.

Singular.
Ich werde gelobt worden seyn, I shall have been praised;
du werdest gelobt worden seyn, thou wilt have been praised;
er werde gelobt worden seyn, he will have been praised.

Plural.
Wir werden gelobt worden seyn, we shall have been praised;
ihr werdet gelobt worden seyn, you will have been praised;
sie werden gelobt worden seyn, they will have been praised.

Conditional present.

Singular.
Ich würde gelobt werden, I should be praised;
du würdest gelobt werden, thou wouldst be praised;
er würde gelobt werden, he would be praised.

Plural.
Wir würden gelobt werden, we should be praised;
ihr würdet gelobt werden, you would be praised;
sie würden gelobt werden, they would be praised.

Conditional past.

Singular.
Ich würde gelobt worden seyn, I should have been praised;
du würdest gelobt worden seyn, thou wouldst have been praised;
er würde gelobt worden seyn, he would have been praised.

Plural.
Wir würden gelobt worden seyn, we should have been praised;
ihr würdet gelobt worden seyn, you would have been praised;
sie würden gelobt worden seyn, they would have been praised.

Imperative.

Singular.
Werde (du) gelobt, be (thou) praised;
werde er gelobt, be he praised, let him be praised.

Plural.
Werden wir gelobt, let us be praised;
werdet (ihr) gelobt, be (you) praised;
werden sie gelobt, be they praised, let them be praised.

In the same manner the regular verbs are conjugated, when their subject is at the same time their object. If this be the case, they take the accusative or the dative of the pronouns *ich*, *du*, and *er* after them, accordingly as they govern the one or the other of these cases. They all associate in the third person of every number and gender the pronoun *sich*, whatever their regimen may be. For example: *Ich setze mīr vōr*, I propose to myself; *du setzest dir vor*, thou proposest to thyself; *er setzet sich vor*, he proposes to himself. *Wīr setzen uns vor*, we propose to ourselves; *ihr setzet euch vor*, you propose to yourselves; *sie setzen sich vor*, they propose to themselves. The following verb governs the accusative case.

Infinitive.

Present.	*Preterperfect.*
Sich ánkleiden, to dress one's self.	*Sich ángekleidet haben*, to have dressed one's self.

Indicative.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich kleide mich an, I dress myself;	*Wir kleiden uns an*, we dress ourselves;
du kleidest dich an, thou dressest thyself;	*ihr kleidet euch an*, you dress yourselves;
er, sie, kleidet sich an, he dresses himself, she dresses herself.	*sie kleiden sich an*, they dress themselves.

Preterimperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich kleidete mich an, I dressed myself.	*Wir kleideten uns an*, we dressed ourselves.

Preterperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich habe mich angekleidet, I have dressed myself.	*Wir haben uns angekleidet*, we have dressed ourselves.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich hatte mich angekleidet, I had dressed myself.	*Wir hatten uns angekleidet*, we had dressed ourselves.

First future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde mich ankleiden, I shall dress myself.	*Wir werden uns ankleiden*, we shall dress ourselves.

Second future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde mich angekleidet haben, I shall have dressed myself.	*Wir werden uns angekleidet haben*, we shall have dressed ourselves.

Conditional present.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde mich ankleiden, I should dress myself.	*Wir würden uns ankleiden*, we should dress ourselves.

Conditional past.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde mich angekleidet haben, I should have dressed myself.	*Wir würden uns angekleidet haben*, we should have dressed ourselves.

Imperative.

Singular.	Plural.
Kleide dich an, dress thyself.	*Kleidet euch an*, dress yourselves.

Observations.

1. The syllable *ge* is not added to the past participle of those verbs, which are derived from some foreign language. Examples: *commandīren*, to command; *commandirt*, commanded. *Regieren*, to reign; *regiert*, reigned. *Studiren*, to study; *studirt*, studied. But *ordnen*, to order, has in the participle past *geordnet*. Also *frōhlocken*, to exult, and *offenbāren*, to reveal, have in the past participle *frōhlockt*, and *offenbārt*. Also some German verbs ending in *iren* do not take the syllable *ge* in the past participle. Such verbs are *buchstabīren*, *halbīren*, *schattīren*. The syllable *ge* is also not added to those verbs, which end in *ieren*, or which commence with *be*, *beun*, *ent*, *er*, *ge*, *ver*, *verab*, *verun*, and *zer*. Examples: *bezaubern*, to charm; *bezaubert*, charmed. *Entfesseln*, to unfetter; *entfesselt*, unfettered. *Erzählen*, to tell, to relate; *erzählt*, related. *Gewahren*,

to perceive; *gewahrt*, perceived. *Verúnstalten*, to disfigure; *verunstaltet*, disfigured. *Übersetzen*, to translate; *übersétzt*, translated.

2. Poets are permitted to suppress the auxiliary verbs *seyn* and *haben* in the compound tenses. But this suppression is not to be approved in prose. However, the auxiliary verb is not to be repeated in the following instances: *Ich habe es gehört und gesehen.* I have heard and seen it. *Ich habe es angefangen, aber nicht geendigt.* I have begun it, but not finished. Instead of: *Ich habe es angefangen, aber ich habe es nicht geendigt.* I have begun it, but I have not finished it. *Ich werde es heute ánfangen, und morgen endigen.* I shall begin it to-day, and finish to-morrow. For: *Ich werde es heute anfangen, und werde es morgen endigen.* I shall begin it to-day, and shall finish it to-morrow. It is seen from these examples, that the same auxiliary verb is only once expressed, when it belongs to more than one verb.

3. *Loben wir*, and *loben wir?* must be pronounced in a different manner. It is also said instead of *loben wir*: *lasst uns loben*, let us praise. But this *lasst*, being itself the imperative of *lassen*, cannot be considered as the constituent part of the imperative of another verb.

4. The sentence: *gute Menschen lieben sich*, may signify: good men love themselves, or: good men love one another. It is, therefore, better to say in the latter sense: *Gute Menschen lieben sich einander*, or simply: *Gute Menschen lieben einander.*

5. They say: *Alles lernt sich mit der Zeit.* Every thing learns itself in time. Instead of: *Alles wird mit der Zeit gelernt.* Every thing is learnt in time.

6. There are some verbs transitive, which have a particular signification, when they are used with *sich*. Such verbs are the following: *berufen*, to call; *sich berufen auf* —, to appeal to —; to refer to —. *Enthalten*, to contain; *sich eines Dinges enthalten*, to abstain from something. *Einen fürchten*, to fear somebody; *sich vor einem Dinge fürchten*, to

be afraid of something. *Hüten*, to guard; to keep; *sich hüten*, to be cautious, to beware. Other verbs are in the same signification employed without and with *sich*. Examples: *irren*, *sich irren*, to mistake, to be mistaken. *Scheuen*, *sich scheuen*, to be shy of. — The former verb governs the accusative; and the latter is used with the preposition *vor* followed by the dative. *Zanken*, *sich zanken*, to quarrel.

7. Also the following verbs joined with *sich* are to be mentioned: *Sich arm bauen*, *sich arm essen*, *sich arm trinken*, to become poor by building, eating, drinking too much. *Sich krank essen*, *sich krank trinken*, *sich krank sitzen*, to become sick by eating, drinking, sitting too much. *Sich zu Tode laufen*, *sich zu Tode trinken*, to kill one's self by running, drinking too much. *Sich aus dem Athem laufen*, to run out of breath. *Sich heiser reden*, to become hoarse by speaking too much. *Sich aus einem Handel heraüslügen*, to save one's self by lying.

8. The reflective verbs, as they are called, are always joined with *haben*.

Conjugation of the verbs intransitive and neuter.

The verbs intransitive and neuter are conjugated either with the verb auxiliary *haben*, or with the verb auxiliary *seyn*. Those which are conjugated with *seyn*, are conjugated in the same manner as those which have *haben* before them, with the exception of the compound tenses, which are conjugated with *seyn*. Example: —

Infinitive.

Present.	*Preterperfect.*
Fallen, to fall.	*Gefallen seyn*, to have fallen.

Indicative.

Preterperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich bin gefallen, I have fallen;	*Wir sind gefallen*, we have fallen;

du bist gefallen, thou hast fallen;
er ist gefallen, he has fallen,
ihr seyd gefallen, you have fallen;
sie sind gefallen, they have fallen.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich war gefallen, I had fallen;	*Wir waren gefallen*, we had fallen;
du warest gefallen, thou hadst fallen;	*ihr waret gefallen*, you had fallen;
Er war gefallen, he had fallen.	*sie waren gefallen*, they had fallen.

Second future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde gefallen seyn, I shall have fallen.	*Wir werden gefallen seyn*, we shall have fallen.

Subjunctive.

Preterperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich sey gefallen, I have fallen;	*Wir seyen gefallen*, we have fallen.

Preterpluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich wäre gefallen, I had fallen.	*Wir wären gefallen*, we had fallen.

Second future.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich werde gefallen seyn, I shall have fallen.	*Wir werden gefallen seyn*, we shall have fallen.

Conditional past.

Singular.	Plural.
Ich würde gefallen seyn, I should have fallen.	*Wir würden gefallen seyn*, we should have fallen.

Observations.

1. The following verbs intransitive and neuter are conjugated with *haben: altern; aufhören; beben; beharren; bellen; blitzen; blühen; bluten; brausen; brüllen; dampfen; darben; dauern; donnern; duften; dürfen; fechten; fehlen; frühlocken; gällen; glänzen; glühen; grünen; grunzen; hinreichen; ir-*

ren; keifen; keimen; klingen; knallen; knien; kränkeln; lēben; leiden; liegen; lügen; müssen; pfeifen; ringen; rudern; ruhen; schallen; scheinen; schlafen; schlummern; schmachten; schnieben; schreien; streiten; schwēben; schweigen; sitzen; stehen; strauchеln; tanzen; taugen; tönen; träumen; wachen; weinen; zaudern.

2. The following verbs intransitive and neuter are conjugated with *seyn: abfallen; ábgehen; ábreisen; dnlangen; ánkommen; aūfkeimen; aūfkommen; aūfleben; aūfwachen; aūsārten; aūsgleiten; aūsspringen; aūssteigen; beītreten; bersten; bleiben; eīndringen; eīnkehren; eīnschlafen; eintreffen; entschlāfen; fliegen; gedeihen; gehen; genēsen; gerathen; gerinnen; geschēhen; herúmirren; kōmmen; kriechen; landen; laufen; reisen; rennen; schleīchen; schreiten; schwinden; sinken; steigen; sterben; stranden; stürzen; verschwinden; vōrdringen; wachsen.*

3. Almost all the verbs intransitive and neuter, to which the syllables *er* and *ver* are prefixed, are conjugated with *seyn.* The following verbs are excepted: *erhellen; ermangeln; verlauten; verweilen; verzweifeln.*

4. Some verbs have a transitive and intransitive signification. Such verbs are the following: *abbrennen; ábschlagen; erschrecken; fliehen; quellen; schmelzen; schwellen; trēten; verderben.* When these verbs are used in a transitive signification, they are conjugated with *haben;* but when they are employed in an intransitive signification, they are conjugated with *seyn.*

5. The following verbs intransitive are conjugated with *haben,* when they are used in a more active sense, or when they denote a mere action without the association of place or distance; and with *seyn,* when they are employed in a more passive sense, or when they denote motion with relation to place or distance: *aūsdampfen; aūsschlagen; dringen; eilen; eīnschlagen; fahren; frieren; klettern; marschiren; reiten; rinnen; schwimmen; segeln; úmwerfen.* Examples: *Diese Kohlen haben ausgedampft.* These

coals do not smoke any more. *Diese Feuchtigkeit ist ausgedampft.* This humidity is evaporated. *Dieses Pferd hat ausgeschlagen.* This horse has kicked. *Mein Bruder ist ausgeschlagen.* My brother has eruptions on the skin. *Er hat in ihn gedrungen, es zu thun.* He has pressed him to do it. *Der Feind ist in die Stadt gedrungen.* The enemy has entered the town by force. *Ich habe geeilt, ihm zu schreiben.* I have hastened to write to him. *Er hat mit seiner Arbeit geeilt.* He has accelerated his work. *Er ist nach Hāuse geeilt.* He has hurried home. *Der Blitz hat in einen Baum eingeschlagen.* The lightning has struck into a tree. *Ich bin diesen Weg eingeschlagen.* I have taken this way. *Er hat die ganze Nacht gefahren.* He has been driving all night. *Er ist nach Hause gefahren.* He has gone home in a carriage. *Ich habe den ganzen Tag gefroren.* I have been cold all the day. *Das Wasser ist gefroren.* The water is congealed. *Er hat zwei Stunden geklettert.* He has spent two hours with climbing. *Er ist auf einen Baum geklettart.* He has climbed up into a tree. *Der Feind hat drei Wochen marschirt.* The enemy has passed three weeks with marching. *Der Feind ist nach der Hauptstadt marschirt.* The enemy has marched to the capital. *Ich habe die ganze Nacht geritten.* I have been riding all night. *Ich bin nach London geritten.* I have ridden to London. *Er ist spazieren geritten.* He has taken an airing on horseback. *Er hat umgeworfen.* He has overturned the coach. *Die Kutsche ist umgeworfen.* The coach is overturned.

6. Some verbs intransitive have the same infinitive; but they have a different signification, which requires either *haben*, or *seyn*. Thus *weichen*, to soak, is conjugated with *haben;* and *weichen*, to yield, to give way, to retire, with *seyn*.

7. Also some verbs transitive are conjugated with *seyn* and *haben*. Such verbs are *begegnen* and *folgen*. When *begegnen* signifies to meet, or to happen, it is conjugated with *seyn*. *Ich bin ihm begegnet.* I have met him. *Es ist mir ein Zufall*

begegnet. I have met with an accident. When *begegnen* signifies to treat, it is conjugated with *haben*. *Er hat mir sehr gūt begegnet.* He has treated me very well. When *folgen* signifies to follow, to go after another, it is conjugated with *seyn*. *Er ist mir gefolgt.* He has followed me. When *folgen* signifies to obey, it is conjugated with *haben*. *Er hat mir gefolgt.* He has obeyed me.

Conjugation of the compound verbs.

A compound verb is either *inseparable*, or *separable*. *Compound verbs inseparable (untrénnbare zusammengesetzte Aussagewörter)* are those, in which the particle, that is prefixed to them, retains its place throughout all the tenses. *Compound verbs separable (trennbare zusammengesetzte Aussagewörter)* are those, in which the word, that is prefixed to them, does not retain its place throughout all the tenses. This word is either a preposition, or an adverb, or an attributive adjective.

The compound verbs inseparable are composed with *after*, *ant*, *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ge*, *miss*, *ur*, *ver*, *voll*, *wider*, *zu*. Examples: *áfterreden*, to speak ill. *Antworten*, to answer. *Beflecken*, to contaminate. *Beúnruhigen*, to disquiet. * *Empfangen*, to receive. *Entheiligen*, to profane. * *Ertragen*, to support. *Gebrauchen*, to use, to employ. * *Missverstehen*, to misunderstand. *Úrtheilen*, to judge. *Verábscheuen*, to detest. *Vernāchlässigen*, to neglect. *Verúnreinigen*, to pollute. *Verūrsachen*, to cause. *Verzehren*, to consume. * *Vollzīehen*, to execute. * *Widerspréchen*, to contradict. * *Zerreiſsen*, to tear. The verbs marked with an asterisk are irregular, and form their participle past in the following manner: *empfangen; ertragen; missverstanden; vollzōgen; widersprochen; zerrissen.*

These verbs, which do not admit a separation of the prefix, are conjugated, as if they were simple, with the exception of the participle past, which does not take the additional syllable *ge*. *Beflecken*, for instance, is, of course, thus conjugated: *Ich beflecke;*

ich befleckte; ich habe befleckt; &c. From this rule, with respect to the participle past, are excepted the following verbs composed with *miss*: *missachten; missarten; missbieten; missbilden; missbilligen; missbrauchen; missdeuten; missernten; missformen; missgönnen; missgreifen; misshallen; misshandeln* (to misdo); *missheirathen; misskennen; missklingen; misslauten; missleiten; misspaaren; missrathen* (to advise ill); *missrechnen; missschlagen; misstimmen; misstönen; misstreten; misswachsen.* All these verbs take the syllable *ge* in the past participle: *missgeachtet; missgeartet; missgeboten; missgebildet; gemissbilliget; gemissbraucht; gemissdeutet; missgeerntet; missgeformt; gemissgönnt; missgegriffen; missgehallt; missgehandelt* (done wrong); *missgeheirathet; gemisskannt; missgeklungen; missgelautet; gemissleitet; missgepaart; missgerathen; missgerechnet; missgeschlagen; missgestimmt; missgetönt; missgetreten; missgewachsen.* In some of these participles the syllable *ge* is inserted between the particle and the verb. When *misshandeln* signifies to treat ill, it has in the participle past *gemisshandelt.* Also some of these participles are formed in an irregular manner. The verbs *áfterreden* and *ántworten* take likewise the syllable *ge* in the participle past: *aftergeredet; geántwortet.* The following verbs composed with *miss* do not receive the syllable *ge* in the participle past: *missbehagen; missfallen; missgebüren; sich missgebérden; missgestalten; missglücken; misslingen* (to turn out ill); *missrathen* (not to prosper); *misstrauen; missverstehen.* These verbs have in the past participle *missbehagt; missfallen; missgeboren; missgebérdet; missgestaltet; missglückt; misslungen; missrathen; misstrauet; missverstanden.*

The compound verbs separable are composed with *ab*, *an*, *anheim*, *auf*, *aus*, *bei*, *dür*, *ein*, *fort*, *heim*, *hér*, *herab*, *heran*, *heraus*, *herbei*, *hereín* or *hineín*, *herúnter* or *hinúnter*, *hervór*, *hin*, *hináb*, *hinán*, *hintán*, *hinaús*, *hinüber*, *lós*, *mit*, *nách*, *nieder*, *ob*, *vór*, *voran*, *voraús*, *vorbei*, *vorüber*, *überein*, *wég*, *wieder*, *zu*, *zurück*, *zusámmen*, or with an attributive

adjective. Examples: *áblegen*, to lay down. *Ánkündigen*, to announce. *Aúfhören*, to cease. *Aúsdrükken*, to express. *Beípflichten*, to assent. *Dárstellen*, to exhibit, to represent. *Éinkerkern*, to imprison. *Fórtjagen*, to chase away. *Heímkehren*, to return home. *Hérschicken*, to send hither. *Heráb-hängen*, to hang down. *Heránrücken*, to approach. *Heraúsholen*, to fetch out. *Herbéilocken*, to allure. *Hereínstürzen* or *hineínstürzen*, to rush in. *Hervórsprossen*, to sprout forth. *Hínraſſen*, to sweep away. *Hináb-tröpfeln*, to trickle down. *Hínánschütten*, to put to, to pour to. *Hintánsetzen*, to neglect. *Hinaússtecken*, to put out. *Hínüberführen*, to convey over. *Lósschnüren*, to unlace. *Mittheilen*, to communicate. *Náchahmen*, to imitate. *Níedersetzen*, to put down. *Óbliegen* *, to be incumbent on. *Vórsetzen*, to set before. *Vorángehen* **, to go before. *Voraússetzen*, to suppose. *Vorbéigehen* or *vorübergehen*, to pass by. *Übereínstimmen*, to agree. *Wégräumen*, to remove. *Wiederhérstellen*, to restore. *Zúmachen*, to shut. *Zurúckkehren*, to return. *Zusámmensetzen*, to compose. *Freísprechen* ***, to absolve. *Gleíchkommen* †, to equal. *Tódtschlagen* ††, to kill.

All the compound verbs of this kind are parted from their disjunctive word in the present, in the imperfect, and in the imperative. Examples: *aúfstehen*, to rise. *Ich stehe alle Tage um fünf Uhr des Morgens auf.* I rise every day at five o'clock in the morning. *Wir standen um zwei Uhr vom Tische auf.* We rose from table at two o'clock. *Stehet auf, ihr trägen Burschen.* Rise up, ye lazy fellows.

* *Obliegen* is an irregular verb, and has in the participle past *óbgelegen*.

** *Vorangehen* is an irregular verb, and has in the participle past *vorangegangen*.

*** *Freisprechen* is an irregular verb, and has in the participle past *freigesprochen*.

† *Gleichkommen* is an irregular verb, and has in the participle past *gleichgekommen*.

†† *Todtschlagen* is an irregular verb, and has in the participle past *todtgeschlagen*.

Fortsetzen, to prosecute. *Ich setze fort*, I prosecute. *Ich setzte fort*, I prosecuted. *Setzen Sie Ihre Erzählung fort.* Prosecute your recital. *Sich vorbereiten*, to prepare. *Ich bereite mich vor*, I prepare. *Er bereitete sich auf eine lange Reise vor.* He prepared for a long journey. But in the future and the conditional present of these verbs the additional word retains its place. Example: *abschreiben*, to copy. *Ich werde abschreiben*, I shall copy. *Ich würde abschreiben*, I should copy. The past participle of these verbs, and the tenses, that are formed by its help, retain before them the additional word, after which the characteristical syllable of the participle past is inserted. Example: *beifügen*, to add. *Beigefügt*, added. *Ich habe beigefügt*, I have added. *Ich hatte beigefügt*, I had added. *Ich werde beigefügt haben*, I shall have added. *Ich würde beigefügt haben*, I should have added. *Ich werde beigefügt*, I am added. *Ich wurde beigefügt*, I was added. *Ich bin beigefügt worden*, I have been added. *Ich war beigefügt worden*, I had been added. *Ich werde beigefügt werden*, I shall be added. *Ich werde beigefügt worden seyn*, I shall have been added. *Beigefügt werden*, to be added. *Beigefügt worden seyn*, to have been added. *Werde beigefügt*, be added. When the particle *zu* is to be joined to the infinitive of these verbs, it must be inserted between the additional word and the verb. Example: *um beizufügen*, in order to add.

There are also compound verbs, which are inseparable and separable. These verbs are composed with the prepositions *durch*, *hinter*, *über*, *um*, *unter*. They are inseparable, when the verb has the principal accent. They are separable, when the principal accent is laid upon the preposition. Also they receive another signification, accordingly as they are accented. Examples: *durchbréchen*, to break through. *Ich durchbréche; ich durchbrāch; ich habe durchbróchen. Die Sonne durchbricht die Wolken.* The sun breaks through the clouds. *Dúrchbrechen*, to break through. *Ich breche durch; ich brāch durch;*

ich bin dúrchgebrochen. Er bricht durch, he breaks through. *Er ist dúrchgebrochen*, he has broken through. *Durchgēhen*, to go through. *Ich durchgēhe; ich durchging; ich habe durchgángen. Dúrchgehen*, to pass through; to run away. *Ich gehe durch; ich ging durch; ich bin dúrchgegangen. Ich habe dieses Buch dúrchgegangen.* I did run over this book. *Durchlaūfen*, to run through. *Ich durchlaūfe; ich durchlīef; ich habe durchlaūfen. Ich habe dieses Buch durchlaūfen.* I did run over this book. *Dúrchlaufen*, to run through. *Ich laufe durch; ich lief durch; ich bin dúrchgelaufen. Ich habe meine Schuhe dúrchgelaufen.* I have worn off my shoes. *Durchrēisen*, to travel through. *Ich durchrēise; ich durchrēisete; ich habe durchrēiset. Dúrchreisen*, to pass through. *Ich reise durch; ich reisete durch; ich bin dúrchgereiset. Hinterbringen*, to give notice. *Ich hinterbringe; ich hinterbrächte; ich habe hinterbrácht. Hinterbringen*, to get down, to swallow down. *Ich bringe hinter; ich brachte hinter; ich habe hintergebracht. Übergēhen*, to pass over. *Ich übergēhe; ich überging; ich habe übergángen. Ich habe mich übergángen.* I have fatigued myself too much by walking. *Übergehen*, to go over. *Ich gehe über; ich ging über; ich bin übergegangen. Uebersétzen*, to translate. *Ich übersétze; ich übersétzte; ich habe übersétzt. Übersetzen*, to leap over. *Ich setze über; ich setzte über; ich habe übergesetzt. Umlaūfen*, to run round. *Ich umlaūfe; ich umlīef; ich habe umlaūfen Der Hund umläūft das Feld.* The dog runs round the field. *Úmlaufen*, to run round. *Ich laufe um; ich lief um; ich bin úmgelaufen. Das Rād läuft um.* The wheel runs round. *Unterliegen*, to succumb. *Ich unterliege; ich unterlāg; ich habe unterlēgen. Únterliegen*, to lie under. *Ich liege unter; ich lāg unter; ich habe úntergelegen. Einen Brief unterschlāgen*, to intercept, to detain a letter. *Ich unterschlāge; ich unterschlūg; ich habe unterschlāgen. Einem ein Bein únterschlagen*, to supplant one. *Ich schlage unter; ich schlūg unter; ich habe úntergeschlagen. Wiederhōlen*, to repeat. *Ich wiederhōle; ich wiederhōlte;*

ich habe wiederhōlt. Wīederholen, to fetch back. *Ich hole wieder; ich holte wieder; ich habe wiedergeholt.* It is seen from these examples, that the participle past of these verbs does not receive the syllable *ge*, when the verb is accented; and that the syllable *ge* is added to the participle past, when the principal accent is laid upon the preposition.

Observations.

1. The compound verbs *frūhlocken*, *frühstücken*, *füchsschwänzen*, *händhaben*, *liebäugeln*, *liebkosen*, *mūthmaſsen*, *rāthschlagen*, *rechtfertigen*, *wällfahrten*, *weīssagen*, and *wétterleuchten* are inseparable, and have in the participle past *frohlockt; gefrühstückt; gefuchsschwänzt; gehandhabt; geliebäugelt; geliebkoset; gemuthmaſst; gerathschlagt; gerechtfertiget; gewallfahrtet; geweissagt; gewetterleuchtet.*

2. Some of the verbs composed with the particles *er* and *ver* may be joined yet with another particle. Then they are doubly compounded. Examples: *aūferziehen*, to bring up, to educate. *Anvertrauen*, to intrust. *Wīedererlangen*, to recover. These verbs, though separable after the first particle, do not take the syllable *ge* in the participle past. *Ich erziehe auf; ich vertraue an; ich erlange wieder. Aūferzogen; ánvertraut; wīedererlangt.*

3. The verbs composed with the prepositions *durch*, *hinter*, *über*, *um* and *unter*, are not all accented in a double manner. Such verbs are the following: *dúrchbringen*, to bring through; to waste away. *Durchdénken*, to run over in one's mind; to meditate. *Hínterschlingen*, to swallow down. *Überréden*, to persuade. *Úmbringen*, to kill. *Úmstimmen*, to give another tune. *Úntergehen*, to go down; to perish. *Die Sonne geht unter.* The sun sets. *Unternéhmen*, to undertake. *Ich unternéhme das Werk.* I undertake the work.

Conjugation of the impersonal verbs.

The impersonal verbs, which are used only in the third person of the singular number, and are so

called, because they do not determine the subject of the action, are conjugated like the other verbs. The following impersonal verb may serve as example.

Infinitive.

Present.	*Preterperfect.*
Rẽgnen, to rain.	*Geregnet haben*, to have rained.

Lasset es regnen, let it rain.

Indicative.

Present. *Es regnet*, it rains.
Preterimperfect. *Es regnete*, it rained.
Preterperfect. *Es hat geregnet*, it has rained.
Preterpluperfect. *Es hatte geregnet*, it had rained.
First future. *Es wird regnen*, it will rain.
Second future. *Es wird geregnet haben*, it will have rained.

Subjunctive.

Present. *Es regne*, it may rain.
Preterimperfect. *Es regnete*, it rained.
Preterperfect. *Es habe geregnet*, it have rained, it may have rained.
Preterpluperfect. *Es hätte geregnet*, it had rained.
First future. *Es werde regnen*, it will rain.
Second future. *Es werde geregnet haben*, it will have rained.
Conditional present. *Es würde regnen*, it would rain.
Conditional past. *Es würde geregnet haben*, it would have rained.

Observations.

1. The following words are impersonal verbs: *es blitzet*, *es wetterleuchtet*, it lightens. *Es donnert*, *es wittert*, it thunders. *Es hagelt*, *es schlōsset*, it hails. *Es stürmet*, it storms. *Es wehet*, it blows. *Es schneiet*, it snows. *Es reift*, there is a hoar frost. *Es friert*, it freezes. *Es thauet*, it thaws. *Es taget*, it dawns. Some of these words become personal verbs, when a determined subject is named. It is also said: *Es regnete Steine.* It rained stones.

2. The indefinite *es* may also be put before the third person of the singular and plural number of every personal verb. Examples: *es ist*, it is; there is. *Es sind*, there are. *Es war*, it was; there was. *Es waren*, there were. *Es wird seyn*, it will be; there will be. *Es liebet ihn Jedermann.* Every

body does love him. *Es lieben ihn alle gute Menschen.* All good men do love him. *Es will Niemand hören.* Nobody has a mind to hear. *Es sagte mir es Jemand.* Somebody told it me. *Es sprachen nur Wenige.* There spoke but few. For: *Jedermann liebt ihn. Alle gute Menschen lieben ihn. Niemand will hören. Nur Wenige sprachen.* This is also a better mode of speaking.

3. There are some impersonal pronominal verbs in German. Such verbs are the two following: *es geziemet sich, es schickt sich*, it becomes. *Es geziemet* or *schickt sich durchaus nicht für mich*, it does not at all become me.

4. Many impersonal German verbs take after them either the dative or the accusative of the person. The following, for instance, govern the dative: *es däucht* (for *es däuchtet*) *mir (mich)*, or *mir (mich) däucht*, it seems to me, methinks. *Es ekelt mir* or *mir ekelt davor.* I loathe it. *Es gelüstet mir (mich)*, I long. *Es thut mir leid*, I am sorry. The following impersonal verbs govern the accusative: *es dürstet mich* or *mich dürstet*, I am thirsty. *Es hungert mich* or *mich hungert*, I am hungry. *Es schläfert mich* or *mich schläfert*, I am sleepy. *Es friert mich* or *mich friert*, I am cold. *Es ärgert mich, es verdrießt mich*, it vexes me. *Es dauert mich*, I am sorry. *Es jammert mich*, it grieves me. *Es kränkt* or *betrübt* or *schmerzt mich*, it afflicts me. *Es gereuet* or *reuet mich*, I repent. *Es verlangt mich*, I long, I desire. *Es wundert mich*, I wonder. *Es freuet mich*, I am glad. *Es würde mich freuen*, I should be glad. *Es dünket mich (mir)*, it seems to me.

5. Also the indefinite *man* may be placed before the third person of the singular number of all the German verbs. Examples: *Man ist nicht immer verbunden, sich nach der Mode zu kleiden.* One is not always obliged to dress one's self after the fashion. *Man muss auch Verstand haben.* One must have judgment too. *Man wird sagen*, it will be said. *Man erlaubt mir*, I am permitted. *Hören Sie, wenn*

man mit Ihnen spricht. Hear when a body speaks to you. *Man redet Viel davon.* They make much talk of it.

Section III.

The irregular German verbs.

The number of the German irregular verbs are nearly equal with those of the English language; and it may in some measure be laid down as a rule, that those verbs, which are irregular in English, are likewise so in German.

The German irregular verbs, deviate for the most part in the second and third person singular of the present indicative, in the preterimperfect tense, and in the participle past from the conjugation of the regular verbs. When the second and third person singular of the present indicative are irregular, the second person singular of the imperative active is also for the most part formed in an irregular manner. The other tenses of the irregular verbs are conjugated like those of the regular verbs.

The past participle of the irregular verbs begins, like that of the regular verbs, with the syllable *ge;* but, as the infinitive, it always ends in *en*, with the exception of some verbs, which have, like the regular verbs, in the preterimperfect tense *te*, and in the participle past *t*.

The irregular verbs change in the participle past their radical vowel either into *a*, or in *e*, or in *i*, or in *ie*, or in *o*, or in *u;* or it remains unvaried. Hence arise seven classes of irregular verbs.

Many irregular verbs form their present tense in a regular manner. Those which are irregular in the second and third person singular of the present indicative, lose in these persons the *e*, which in regular verbs precedes the *st* of the second person, and the *t* of the third person. The first person singular and the whole plural number of the said tense are regularly conjugated.

The present tense of the subjunctive mood is

always formed in the irregular verbs in a regular manner. For instance: *Ich breche; du brechest; er breche. Ich gebe; du gebest; er gebe.* For this reason the present tense of the subjunctive mood has been omitted in the following alphabetical list of the irregular verbs of the German language.

The irregular verbs change in the preterimperfect tense of the indicative mood their radical vowel either into *a*, or into *i*, or into *ie*, or into *o*, or into *u*.

The *a*, *o* and *u* of the preterimperfect tense of the indicative mood are commuted in the same tense of the subjunctive mood into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*. Only some verbs are excepted from this rule. At the same time the preterimperfect tense of the subjunctive mood receives an *e*.

The second person singular of the imperative active is formed by changing the *e* of the radical syllable of the infinitive into *i* or *ie* in the verbs, which undergo the same change in the second and third person of the present singular of the indicative. For instance: *stech* (radical syllable of *stechen*); *stich*, prick. *Gĕb* (radical syllable of *gĕben*); *gieb*, give. The second person singular of the imperative active is formed in all the other irregular verbs in a regular manner.

In order to facilitate the use of the irregular verbs, they follow here in an alphabetical list, in which only the irregular tenses of them are found. Those verbs, which have lost their irregularity, are marked with a double star (**), and those which may at present be inflected in a regular or an irregular manner, with a single star (*).

An alphabetical list of the irregular verbs of the German language.

1.

Backen, to bake.

Ich backe, I bake; *du bäckst; er bäckt. Ich būk*, I baked; *du bukest* or *du būkst; er buk. Ich büke*, I baked; *du bükest; er büke. Gebacken*, baked.

Observation. Some German grammarians form the preterimperfect of this verb in a regular manner, when it is used in a transitive sense. They say consequently: *Der Bäcker backte. Das Brōt buk.*

2.

Befêhlen, to command.

Ich befehle, I command; *du befiehlst; er befiehlt. Ich befahl*, I commanded; *du befahlest* or *du befahlst; er befahl. Ich befähle (beföhle)*, I commanded; *du befählest; er befähle. Befiehl*, command. *Befohlen*, commanded.

3.

Sich befleifsen, to apply one's self; to endeavour.

Ich befliss mich, I applied myself; *du beflissest dich; er befliss sich. Ich beflisse mich*, I applied myself; *du beflissest dich; er beflisse sich. Beflissen*, applied.

Observation. Sich befleifsigen, which has the same signification, is a regular verb.

4.

Beginnen, to begin.

Ich begann, I begun; *du begannest* or *du begánnst; er begann. Ich begänne*, I begun; *du begännest; er begänne. Begonnen*, begun.

5.

Beifsen, to bite.

Ich biss, I bit; *du bissest; er biss. Ich bisse*, I bit; *du bissest; er bisse. Gebissen*, bitten.

6.

Bergen, to hide, to conceal; to save.

Ich berge, I hide; *du birgst; er birgt. Ich bárg*, I hid; *du bargest* or *du bargst; er barg. Ich bürge (bärge)*, I hid; *du bürgest; er bürge. Birg*, hide. *Gebórgen*, hidden.

Observation. In the first signification *verbergen* is more usual.

7.

Bersten, to burst.

Ich berste, I burst; *du berstest; er berstet. Ich bärst (börst)*, I burst; *du barstest (borstest); er barst (borst). Ich bärste (börste)*, I burst; *du bärstest (börstest); er bärste (börste). Berste* or *birst*, burst. *Geborsten*, burst.

8.

Betriegen (triegen), to cheat, to deceive.

Ich betrōg, I cheated; *du betrogest* or *du betrōgst; er betrog. Ich betröge*, I cheated; *du betrögest; er betröge. Betrogen*, cheated.

Observation. This verb is not to be written *betrügen.* It does not come from *Betrūg;* but *Betrug* is derived from *betriegen*, which is formed like *biegen, fliegen, wiegen, fließen, verdrießen.*

9.

Bewegen, to move, to induce, to engage.

Ich bewōg, I moved; *du bewogest* or *du bewōgst; er bewog. Ich bewöge*, I moved; *du bewögest; er bewöge. Bewogen*, moved.

Observation. The verb *bewegen* forms its preterimperfect tense and participle past in a regular manner, when it is employed in the proper sense, and signifies to put in motion; and when it signifies figuratively to touch, to strike mentally. Examples: *Ich konnte diesen Stein nicht bewegen; aber mein Bruder bewōgte ihn.* I was not able to move that stone; but my brother moved it. *Es war in diesem Trauerspiele ein Auftritt, der das Innerste meines Herzens bewōgte.* There was a scene in that tragedy, which touched me to the quick. *Sie war bis zu Thränen bewōgt.* She was moved to tears.

10.

Biegen, to bend.

Ich bōg, I bent; *du bogest* or *du bōgst; er bog. Ich böge*, I bent; *du bögest; er böge. Gebogen*, bent.

11.

Bieten, to bid; to offer.

Ich bōt, I bade; *du botest; er bot. Ich böte*, I bade; *du bötest; er böte. Geboten*, bidden.

Observation. Instead of *du bietest, er bietet*, it is also said *du beutst, er beut*. But these forms are now used only by poets and orators.

12.

Binden, to bind.

Ich band, I bound; *du bandest; er band. Ich bände*, I bound; *du bändest; er bände. Gebunden*, bound.

13.

Bitten, to beg, to pray; to invite.

Ich bāt, I begged; *du batest; er bat. Ich bäte*, I begged; *du bätest; er bäte. Gebēten*, begged.

14.

Blasen, to blow; to sound.

Ich blase, I blow; *du bläsest; er bläset* or *er blāst. Ich blies*, I blew; *du bliesest; er blies. Ich bliese*, I blew; *du bliesest; er bliese. Geblasen*, blown.

15.

Bleiben, to remain.

Ich blieb, I remained; *du bliebest; er blieb. Ich bliebe*, I remained; *du bliebest; er bliebe. Gebliēben*, remained.

16.

** *Bleichen*, to bleach; to whiten.

Observation. Some German grammarians form this verb in a regular manner, when it is used in a transitive sense; and in an irregular manner, when it is employed in an intransitive sense. They say consequently: *Ich bleichte die Leinwand. Die Leinwand blich an der Sonne.*

17.

* *Braten*, to roast.

Ich brate, I roast; *du bratest* or *du brätst; er bratet* or *er brät. Ich bratete* or *ich briet*, I roasted; *du bratetest* or *du brietst; er bratete* or *er briet. Ich bratete* or *ich briete*, I roasted; *du bratetest* or *du brietest; er bratete* or *er briete. Gebraten*, roasted.

Observation. Some German grammarians mark a transitive and intransitive signification of this verb by its regular and irregular form. They say consequently: *Der Koch brutete das Fleisch. Das Fleisch briet.*

18.

Brechen, to break.

Ich breche, I break; *du brichst; er bricht. Ich brāch*, I broke; *du brachest; er brach. Ich bräche*, I broke; *du brächest; er bräche. Gebrochen*, broken.

19.

* *Brennen*, to burn.

Ich brennte or *ich brannte*, I burnt. *Ich brennete*, I burnt. *Gebrennt* or *gebrannt*, burnt.

Observation. Brennen has a transitive and intransitive signification. When it has a transitive signification, it ought to be said *ich brennte* and *gebrennt.* For instance: *Die Sonne brennte mich.* The sun burnt me. *Ich habe immer Holz gebrennt.* I always have burnt wood. But when *brennen* has an intransitive signification, it ought to be said *ich brannte* and *gebrannt.* For example: *Die ganze Stadt brannte.* The whole town was on fire. *Die Sonne hat heute sehr heftig gebrannt.* The sun has been very burning to-day.

20.

Bringen, to bring.

Ich brächte, I brought; *du brachtest; er brachte. Ich brächte*, I brought; *du brächtest; er brächte. Gebracht*, brought.

21.

Denken, to think.

Ich dächte, I thought; *du dachtest; er dachte. Ich dächte*, I thought; *du dächtest; er dächte. Gedacht*, thought.

22.

* *Dingen*, to hire.

Ich dingte or *ich dung*, I hired; *du dingtest* or *du dungest* or *du dungst; er dingte* or *er dung. Ich dingte* or *ich dünge*, I hired; *Gedungen*, hired.

23.

Dreschen, to thrash.

Ich dresche, I thrash; *du drischest; er drischet* or *er drischt. Ich drösch*, I thrashed; *du droschest; er drosch. Ich drösche*, I thrashed; *du dröschest; er drösche. Gedroschen*, thrashed.

24.

Dringen, to press; to penetrate.

Ich drang, I pressed; *du drangest* or *du drangst; er drang. Ich dränge*, I pressed; *du drängest; er dränge. Gedrungen*, pressed.

25.

Dürfen, to be allowed, to be permitted; to dare.

Ich darf, I am permitted; *du darfst; er darf. Wir dürfen; ihr dürfet; sie dürfen. Ich durfte*, I was permitted; *du durftest; er durfte. Wir durften; ihr durftet; sie durften. Ich dürfte*, I were permitted; *du dürftest; er dürfte. Wir dürften; ihr dürftet; sie dürften. Ich habe gedurft*, I have been permitted.

26.

Empfangen, to receive.

Ich empfange, I receive; *du empfängst; er empfängt. Ich empfing*, I received; *du empfingest* or *du empfingst; er empfing. Ich empfinge*, I received; *du empfingest; er empfinge. Empfangen*, received.

27.

Empfehlen, to recommend.

Ich empfehle, I recommend; *du empfiehlst*; *er empfiehlt*. *Ich empfahl*, I recommended; *du empfahlest* or *du empfahlst*; *er empfahl*. *Ich empfähle* (*empföhle*), I recommended; *du empfählest*; *er empfähle*. *Empfiehl*, recommend. *Empfohlen*, recommended.

28.

Empfinden, to feel.

Ich empfand, I felt; *du empfandest*; *er empfand*. *Ich empfände*, I felt; *du empfändest*; *er empfände*. *Empfunden*, felt.

29.

Erbleichen, to grow pale.

Ich erblich, I grew pale; *du erblichest* or *du erblichst*; *er erblich*. *Ich erbliche*, I grew pale; *du erblichest*; *er erbliche*. *Erblichen*, grown pale.

30.

Erküren, to choose.

Ich erkör, I chose. *Ich erköre*, I chose. *Erkoren*, chosen.

Observation. This verb is used only in the preterimperfect tense and in the past participle.

31.

Erlöschen, to be extinguished.

Ich erlösche, I am extinguished; *du erlischest*; *er erlischt*. *Ich erlosch*, I was extinguished; *du erloschest*; *er erlosch*. *Ich erlösche*, I were extinguished; *du erlöschest*; *er erlösche*. *Erlisch*, be extinguished. *Erloschen*, extinguished.

Observation. *Löschen*, to quench, and *auslöschen*, to extinguish, are conjugated in a regular manner.

32.

* *Erschallen*, to resound.

Ich erschallte or *ich erscholl*, I resounded; *du erschalltest* or *du erschollest* or *du erscholltst*; *er er-*

schallte or *er erscholl. Ich erschölle*, I resounded; *du erschöllest; er erschölle. Erschollen*, resounded.

83.

Erschrecken, to be terrified.

Ich erschrecke, I am terrified; *du erschrickst; er erschrickt. Ich erschrāk*, I was terrified; *du erschrakest* or *du erschrākst; er erschrak. Ich erschräke*, I were terrified; *du erschräkest; er erschräke. Erschrick*, be terrified. *Erschrocken*, terrified.

Observation. This verb is conjugated in a regular manner, when it signifies to terrify, to put in fear, and consequently has a transitive signification.

84.

Erwägen, to weigh, to consider.

Ich erwōg, I weighed. *Ich erwöge*, I weighed. *Erwogen*, weighed.

85.

Essen, to eat.

Ich esse, I eat; *du issest; er isset* or *er isst. Ich āſs*, I eat; *du aſsest; er aſs. Ich äſse*, I eat; *du äſsest; er äſse. Iss*, eat. *Gegessen*, eaten.

86.

Fahren, to drive a carriage; to go in a carriage.

Ich fahre, I go in a carriage; *du fährst; er fährt. Ich fuhr*, I went in a carriage; *du fuhrest* or *du fuhrst; er fuhr. Ich führe*, I went in a carriage; *du führest; er führe. Gefahren*, gone in a carriage.

87.

Fallen, to fall.

Ich falle, I fall; *du fällst; er fällt. Ich fiel*, I fell; *du fielest* or *du fielst; er fiel. Ich fiele*, I fell; *du fielest; er fiele. Gefallen*, fallen.

88.

Fangen, to catch.

Ich fange, I catch; *du fängst; er fängt. Ich*

fing, I caught; *du fingest* or *du finget*; *er fing*. *Ich finge*, I caught; *du fingest*; *er finge*. *Gefangen*, caught.

39.

Fechten, to fence; to fight.

Ich fechte, I fence; *du fichtst*; *er ficht*. *Ich focht*, I fenced; *du fochtest*; *er focht*. *Ich föchte*, I fenced; *du föchtest*; *er föchte*. *Fechte* or *ficht*, fence. *Gefochten*, fenced.

40.

Finden, to find.

Ich fand, I found; *du fandest*; *er fand*. *Ich fände*, I found; *du fändest*; *er fände*. *Gefunden*, found.

41.

Flechten, to plait.

Ich flechte, I plait; *du flichtst*; *er flicht*. *Ich flöcht*, I plaited; *du flochtest*; *er flocht*. *Ich flöchte*, I plaited; *du flöchtest*; *er flöchte*. *Flechte* or *flicht*, plait. *Geflochten*, plaited.

42.

Fliegen, to fly.

Ich flūg, I flew; *du flogest* or *du flūgst*; *er flog*. *Ich flöge*, I flew; *du flögest*; *er flöge*. *Geflogen*, flown.

43.

Fliehen, to flee.

Ich floh, I fled; *du flohest* or *du flohst*; *er floh*. *Ich flöhe*, I fled; *du flöhest*; *er flöhe*. *Geflohen*, fled.

44.

Fliefsen, to flow.

Ich flūss, I flowed; *du flossest*; *er floss*. *Ich flösse*, I flowed; *du flössest*; *er flösse*. *Geflossen*, flowed.

45.

Fragen, to ask.

Ich frage, I ask; *du fragest* or *du frägst* (*du*

frägst); *er fraget* or *er frägt* (*er frägt*). *Ich frägte* (*ich frug*), I asked; *du fragtest* (*du frugest* or *du frügst*); *er fragte* (*er früg*). *Ich fragte* (*ich früge*), I asked; *du fragtest* (*du frügest*); *er fragte* (*er früge*).

46.

Fressen, to eat.

Ich fresse, I eat; *du frissest*; *er frisset* or *er frisst*. *Ich fräs*, I eat; *du fraſsest*; *er fraſs*. *Friss*, eat. *Gefressen*, eaten.

Observation. This verb is only used in speaking of brutes.

47.

Frieren, to freeze.

Ich frör, I froze; *du frorest* or *du frorst*; *er fror*. *Ich fröre*, I froze; *du frörest*; *er fröre*. *Gefroren*, frozen.

48.

Gähren, to ferment.

Ich gähre, I ferment; *du gährest* or *du gährst* or *du gierst*; *er gähret* or *er gährt* or *er giert*. *Ich gohr*, I fermented; *du gohrest* or *du gohrst*; *er gohr*. *Ich göhre*, I fermented; *du göhrest*; *er göhre*. *Gähre* or *gier*, ferment. *Gegohren*, fermented.

49.

Gebären, to bring forth.

Ich gebäre, I bring forth; *du gebärest* or *du gebärst* or *du gebierst*; *er gebäret* or *er gebärt* or *er gebiert*. *Ich gebär*, I brought forth; *du gebarest* or *du gebärst*; *er gebar*. *Ich gebäre* (*geböre*), I brought forth; *du gebärest*; *er gebäre*. *Gebäre* or *gebier*, bring forth. *Geboren*, brought forth, born.

50.

Gében, to give.

Ich gébe, I give; *du giebst* (*gibst*); *er giebt* (*gibt*). *Ich gäb*, I gave; *du gabest* or *du gäbst*; *er gab*. *Ich gäbe*, I gave; *du gäbest*; *er gäbe*. *Gieb* (*gib*), give. *Gegében*, given.

Observation. The Germans form also from *geben* an impersonal verb. *Es giebt*, there is, there are. *Es gab*, there was, there were. *Es wird geben*, there will be.

51.

Gebieten, to command.

Ich gebōt, I commanded. *Ich geböte*, I commanded. *Geboten*, commanded.

52.

Gedeihen, to prosper.

Ich gedieh, I prospered; *du gediehest* or *du gediehst*; *er gedieh*. *Ich gediehe*, I prospered; *du gediehest*; *er gediehe*. *Gediehen*, prospered.

53.

Gefallen, to please.

Ich gefalle, I please; *du gefällst*; *er gefällt*. *Ich gefiel*, I pleased. *Ich gefiele*, I pleased. *Gefallen*, pleased.

54.

Gehen, to go.

Ich ging, I went; *du gingest*; *er ging*. *Ich ginge*, I went; *du gingest*; *er ginge*. *Gegangen*, gone.

55.

Gelingen, to succeed.

Ich gelang, I succeeded; *du gelangest*; *er gelang*. *Ich gelänge*, I succeeded; *du gelängest*; *er gelänge*. *Gelungen*, succeeded.

Observation. This verb, which is conjugated with *seyn*, is used only in the third person singular and plural of all the tenses. *Es gelingt ihm Alles.* He succeeds in every thing.

56.

Gelten, to cost.

Ich gelte, I cost; *du giltst*; *er gilt*. *Ich galt*, I cost; *du galtest*; *er galt*. *Ich gälte (gölte)*, I cost; *du gältest*; *er gälte*. *Gilt*, cost. *Gegolten*, cost.

57.

Genésen, to recover from illness.

Ich genās, I recovered; *du genasest; er genas. Ich genöse*, I recovered; *du genäsest; er genäse. Genesen*, recovered.

58.

Genieſsen, to enjoy.

Ich genoss, I enjoyed; *du genossest; er genoss. Ich genösse*, I enjoyed; *du genössest; er genösse. Genossen*, enjoyed.

59.

Geschéhen, to be done; to happen, to come to pass, to arrive.

Ich geschehe; du geschiehest or *du geschiehst; er geschiehet* or *er geschieht. Ich geschah; du geschahest; er geschah. Ich geschähe; du geschähest; er geschähe. Geschéhen seyn*, to have been done; to have happened.

Observation. This verb is used only in the third person singular and plural of all the tenses.

60.

Gewinnen, to gain.

Ich gewann, I gained; *du gewannest* or *du gewannst; er gewann. Ich gewänne*, I gained; *du gewännest; er gewänne. Gewonnen*, gained.

61.

Gieſsen, to pour.

Ich góss, I poured; *du gossest; er goss. Ich gösse*, I poured; *du gössest; er gösse. Gegossen*, poured.

62.

Gleichen, to be like, to resemble.

Ich glich, I resembled; *du glichest* or *glichst; er glich. Ich gliche*, I resembled; *du glichest; er gliche. Geglichen*, resembled.

63.

* *Gleiten*, to glide.

Ich gleitete or *ich glitt*, I glided; *du gleitetest* or *du glittest*; *er gleitete* or *er glitt*. *Ich gleitete* or *ich glitte*, I glided; *du gleitetest* or *du glittest*; *er gleitete* or *er glitte*. *Gegleitet* or *geglitten*, glided.

64.

Glimmen, to burn faintly.

Ich glimmte or *ich glomm*; *du glimmtest* or *du glommest*; *er glimmte* or *er glomm*. *Ich glimmte* or *ich glömme*; *du glimmtest* or *du glömmest*; *er glimmte* or *er glömme*. *Geglimmt* or *geglommen*.

65.

Graben, to dig.

Ich grabe, I dig; *du gräbst*; *er gräbt*. *Ich grūb*, I digged; *du grubest* or *du grūbst*; *er grub*. *Ich grübe*, I digged; *du grübest*; *er grübe*. *Gegraben*, digged.

66.

Greifen, *ergreifen*, to seize, to lay hold of.

Ich griff, I seized; *du griffest* or *du griffst*; *er griff*. *Ich griffe*, I seized; *du griffest*; *er griffe*. *Gegriffen*, seized.

67.

Halten, to hold.

Ich halte, I hold; *du hältst*; *er hält*. *Ich hielt*, I held; *du hieltest*; *er hielt*. *Ich hielte*, I held; *du hieltest*; *er hielte*. *Gehalten*, held.

68.

Hangen, to hang, to be suspended.

Ich hange, I hang; *du hängst*; *er hängt*. *Ich hing*, I hung; *du hingest* or *du hingst*; *er hing*. *Ich hinge*, I hung; *du hingest*; *er hinge*. *Gehangen*, hung.

Observation. *Hängen*, to hang, to suspend, is conjugated in a regular manner.

69.

Hauen, to cut, to hew.

Ich hieb, I hewed; *du hiebest* or *du hiebst*; *er hieb. Ich hiebe*, I hewed; *du hiebest*; *er hiebe. Gehauen*, hewn.

70.

Heben, to heave, to lift.

Ich hōb, I lifted; *du hobest* or *du hōbst*; *er hob. Ich höbe*, I lifted; *du höbest*; *er höbe. Gehoben*, lifted.

71.

Heiſsen, to bid, to order; to name, to call; to be named, to be called.

Ich hieſs, I called; *du hieſsest*; *er hieſs. Ich hieſse*, I called; *du hieſsest*; *er hieſse. Geheiſsen*, called.

72.

Helfen, to help.

Ich helfe, I help; *du hilfst*; *er hilft. Ich half*, I helped; *du halfest* or *du halfst*; *er half. Ich hülfe (hälfe)*, I helped; *du hülfest*; *er hülfe. Hilf*, help. *Geholfen*, helped.

73.

* *Keifen*, to scold.

This verb was formerly conjugated like *greifen* but at present it is regularly conjugated.

74.

Kennen, to know.

Ich kannte, I knew; *du kanntest*; *er kannte. Ich kennete*, I knew; *du kennetest*; *er kennete. Gekannt*, known.

75.

* *Klimmen*, to climb.

This verb was formerly conjugated like *glimmen*; but at present it is regularly conjugated.

76.

Klingen, to sound.

Ich klang, I sounded; *du klangest* or *du klangst*; *er klang*, *Ich klänge*, I sounded; *du klängest*; *er klänge*. *Geklungen*, sounded.

77.

* *Kneifen* and * *kneipen*, to pinch.

These verbs are either conjugated like *greifen*, or in a regular manner. Some German grammarians, however, conjugate them regularly, when they are used in a transitive sense, and irregularly, when they have an intransitive signification. *Er kneifte mich. Die Zunge kniff.*

78.

Kommen, to come.

Ich komme, I come; *du kommst (du kömmst)*; *er kommt (er kömmt)*. *Ich kām*, I came; *du kamest* or *du kāmst*; *er kam*. *Ich käme*, I came; *du kämest*; *er käme*. *Gekommen*, come.

79.

Können, to be able.

Ich kann, I can; *du kannst*; *er kann*. *Wir können*; *ihr könnet*; *sie können*. *Ich könne*, I be able; *du könnest*; *er könne*. *Wir können*; *ihr könnet*; *sie können*. *Ich konnte*, I could; *du konntest*; *er konnte*. *Wir konnten*; *ihr konntet*; *sie konnten*. *Ich könnte*, I could; *du könntest*; *er könnte*. *Wir könnten*; *ihr könntet*; *sie könnten*. *Ich habe gekonnt*, I have been able.

80.

* *Kreischen*, to scream.

This verb is either conjugated like *greifen*, or better in a regular manner.

81.

* *Kreißen*, to be in labour.

This verb is either conjugated like *greifen*, or better in a regular manner.

82.

Kriechen, to creep.

Ich kröch, I crept; *du krochest* or *du krochst*; *er kroch*. *Ich kröche*, I crept; *du kröchest*; *er kröche*. *Gekrochen*, crept.

83.

* *Laden*, to lade, to load; *(einladen)* to invite.

Ich lade, I lade; *du ladest (du lädst)*; *er ladet (er lädt)*. *Ich ladete* or *ich lūd*, I laded; *du ladetest* or *du ludest*, *er ladete* or *er lud*. *Ich ladete* or *ich lüde*, I laded; *du ladetest* or *du lüdest*; *er ladete* or *er lüde*. *Geladen*, laden.

84.

Lassen, to let; to leave.

Ich lasse, I let; *du lässest* or *du lässt*; *er lässet* or *er lässt*. *Ich liefs*, I let; *du liefsest*; *er liefs*. *Ich liefse*, I let; *du liefsest*; *er liefse*. *Lass (lasse)*, let. *Gelassen*, let.

85.

Laufen, to run.

Ich laufe, I run; *du läufst*; *er läuft*. *Ich lief*, I ran; *du liefest* or *du liefst*; *er lief*. *Ich liefe*, I ran; *du liefest*; *er liefe*. *Gelaufen*, run.

86.

Leiden, to suffer.

Ich litt, I suffered; *du littest*; *er litt*. *Ich litte*, I suffered; *du littest*; *er litte*. *Gelitten*, suffered.

87.

Leihen, to lend.

Ich lieh, I lent; *du liehest* or *du lihst*; *er lieh*. *Ich liehe*, I lent; *du liehest*; *er liehe*. *Geliehen*, lent.

88.

Lésen, to read.

Ich lése, I read; *du liesest*; *er liest* or *er liest*. *Ich lās*, I read; *du lasest*; *er las*. *Ich läse*, I read; *du lásest*; *er läse*. *Lies*, read. *Gelesen* read.

89.

Liegen, to lie.

Ich lāg, I lay; *du lagest* or *du lāgst*; *er lag*. *Ich läge*, I lay; *du lägest*; *er läge*. *Gelegen*, lain.

90.

Lügen, to lie, to tell a lie.

Ich lōg, I told a lie; *du logest*; *er log*. *Ich löge*, I told a lie; *du lögest*; *er löge*. *Ich habe gelogen*, I have told a lie.

91.

* *Mahlen*, to grind.

Ich mahle, I grind; *du mahlest* or *du mahlst* or *du mählst*; *er mahlet* or *er mahlt* or *er mählt*. *Ich mahlte (ich mühl)*, I ground; *du mahltest (du muhlest)*; *er mahlte (er muhl)*. *Ich mahlte (ich mühle)*, I ground; *du mahltest (du mühlest)*; *er mahlte (er mühle)*. *Gemahlen*, ground.

Observation. *Malen*, to paint, is regularly conjugated.

92.

Meiden, to avoid.

Ich mied, I avoided; *du miedest* or *du miedst*; *er mied*. *Ich miede*, I avoided; *du miedest*; *er miede*. *Gemieden*, avoided.

93.

Melken, to milk.

Ich melke, I milk; *du melkest* or *du melkst* or *du milkst*; *er melket* or *er melkt* or *er milkt*. *Ich molk*, I milked; *du molkest* or *du molkst*; *er molk*. *Ich mölke*, I milked; *du mölkest*; *er mölke*. *Melke* or *milk*, milk. *Gemolken*, milked.

94.

Messen, to measure.

Ich messe, I measure; *du missest*; *er misset* or *er misst*. *Ich maſs*, I measured; *du maſsest*; *er maſs*. *Ich mäſse*, I measured; *du mäſsest*; *er mäſse*. *Miss*, measure. *Gemessen*, measured.

95.

Mögen, to be allowed, to be permitted.

Ich mág, I may; *du magst; er mag. Wir mögen; ihr möget; sie mögen. Ich möge*, I be permitted; *du mögest; er möge. Wir mögen; ihr möget; sie mögen. Ich mochte*, I might; *du mochtest; er mochte. Wir mochten; ihr mochtet; sie mochten. Ich möchte*, I might; *du möchtest; er möchte. Wir möchten; ihr möchtet; sie möchten. Ich habe gemocht*, I have been permitted.

96.

Müssen, to be forced, to be obliged.

Ich muss, I must; *du musst; er muss. Wir müssen; ihr müsset* or *ihr müsst; sie müssen. Ich müsse*, I be forced; *du müssest; er müsse. Wir müssen; ihr müsset; sie müssen. Ich musste*, I was forced; *du musstest; er musste. Wir mussten; ihr musstet; sie mussten. Ich müsste*, I were forced; *du müsstest; er müsste. Wir müssten; ihr müsstet; sie müssten. Ich habe gemusst*, I have been forced.

97.

Néhmen, to take.

Ich néhme, I take; *du nimmst; er nimmt. Ich nahm*, I took; *du nahmest; er nahm. Ich nähme*, I took; *du nähmest; er nähme. Nimm*, take. *Genommen*, taken.

98.

* *Nennen*, to name.

Ich nennte or *ich nannte*, I named. *Ich nennete*, I named. *Genennt* or *genannt*, named.

99.

Pfeifen, to whistle.

Ich pfiff, I whistled; *du pfiffest; er pfiff. Ich pfiffe*; I whistled; *du pfiffest; er pfiffe. Gepfiffen*, whistled.

100.

Pflegen, to administer.

Ich pflōg; du pflogest or *du pflōgst; er pflog*

Wir pflogen; ihr pfloget; sie pflogen. Ich pflöge; du pflögest; er pflöge. Wir pflögen; ihr pflöget; sie pflögen. Gepflogen.

Observation. This verb is regular and irregular. It is regular in the following phrases, in which it signifies to take care, to nurse: *Er pflēgte seiner Gesundheit.* He took care of his health. *Er hat seiner Gesundheit immer gepflēgt.* He has always taken care of his health. *Seiner Bequémlichkeit pflegen*, to take one's ease. *Der Liebe pflegen*, to indulge one's amorous desires. *Der Wóllust pflegen*, to be given to voluptuousness. *Einen Kranken pflegen*, to nurse a sick person. *Sich pflegen*, to cherish one's self. *Pflegen* is also regularly conjugated, when it signifies to use. For instance: *Er pflegte alle Tage um fünf Uhr aūfzustehen.* He used to rise every day at five o'clock. In the following phrases *pflegen* is irregularly conjugated: *Gerechtigkeit pflegen*, to administer justice. *Eines Amtes pflegen*, to perform an office. *Rathes pflegen*, to deliberate, to consult. *Freundschaft mit Einem pflegen*, to cultivate one's friendship. *Umgang mit Einem pflegen*, to converse with one. *Unterhandlung pflegen*, to treat, to negotiate.

101.

Preisen, to praise.

Ich pries, I praised; *du priesest, er pries. Ich priese*, I praised; *du priesest; er priese. Gepriesen*, praised.

102.

Quellen, to spring forth.

Ich quelle, I spring forth; *du quillst; er quillt. Ich quoll*, I sprung forth; *du quollest; er quoll. Ich quölle*, I sprung forth; *du quöllest; er quölle. Quill*, spring forth. *Gequollen*, sprung forth.

Observation. Quellen is regular, when it is employed as verb active transitive, and signifies to swell. It is irregular in this sense, when it is employed as verb active intransitive. *Ich quellte die Bohnen. Sie quollen.*

103.

** *Rächen*, to avenge.

This verb must be conjugated in a regular manner. The forms *ich róch*, I avenged, and *gerochen*, avenged, are no more in use. They are to be avoided, because the verb *riechen* has the same forms, and of course an ambiguity might take place.

104.

Rathen, to advise, to counsel.

Ich rathe, I advise; *du räthst; er räth. Ich rieth*, I advised; *du riethest*; *er rieth. Ich riethe*, I advised; *du riethest; er riethe. Gerathen*, advised.

105.

Reiben, to rub.

Ich rieb, I rubbed; *du riebest* or *du riebst; er rieb. Ich riebe*, I rubbed; *du riebest; er riebe. Gerieben*, rubbed.

106.

Reißen (zerreißen), to tear; to burst; to split.

Ich riss, I tore; *du rissest; er riss. Ich risse*, I tore; *du rissest; er risse. Gerissen*, torn.

107.

Reiten, to ride, to go on horseback.

Ich ritt, I rode; *du rittest; er ritt. Ich ritte*, I rode; *du rittest; er ritte. Geritten*, ridden.

108.

* *Rennen*, to run.

Ich rennte or *ich rannte*, I ran; *du renntest* or *du ranntest; er rennte* or *er rannte. Ich rennete*, I ran; *du rennetest; er rennete. Gerennt* or *gerannt*, run.

109.

Riechen, to smell.

Ich röch, I smelt; *du rochest* or *du rochst; er roch. Ich röche*, I smelt; *du röchest; er röche. Gerochen*, smelt.

110.

Ringen, to wrestle.

Ich rang, I wrestled; *du rangest* or *du rangst*; *er rang*. *Ich ränge*, I wrestled; *du rängest*; *er ränge*. *Gerungen*, wrestled.

111.

Rinnen, to flow.

Ich rann, I flowed; *du rannest*; *er rann*. *Ich ränne*, I flowed; *du rännest*; *er ränne*. *Geronnen*, flowed.

112.

**Rufen*, to call.

Ich rief or *ich rūfte*, I called; *du riefest* or *du riefst* or *du ruftest*; *er rief* or *er rufte*. *Ich riefe* or *ich rufte*, I called; *du riefest* or *du ruftest*; *er riefe* or *er rufte*. *Gerufen*, called.

113.

Saufen, to drink (in speaking of brutes).

Ich saufe, I drink; *du säufst*; *er säuft*. *Ich soff*, I drank; *du soffest* or *du soffst*; *er soff*. *Ich söffe*, I drank; *du söffest*; *er söffe*. *Gesoffen*, drunk.

Observation. This verb is also applied to men, and then it signifies to drink to excess, to be a drunkard.

114.

Saugen, to suck.

Ich sōg, I sucked; *du sogest* or *du sōgst*; *er sog*. *Ich söge*, I sucked; *du sögest*; *er söge*. *Gesogen*, sucked.

115.

Schaffen, to create.

Ich schūf, I created; *du schufest* or *du schūfst*; *er schuf*. *Ich schüfe*, I created; *du schüfest*; *er schüfe*. *Geschaffen*, created.

Observation. *Schaffen* (instead of *verschaffen*), to procure, is regularly conjugated.

116.

* *Schallen*, to sound.

Ich scholl or better *ich schallte*, I sounded; *du schollest* or better *du schalltest; er scholl* or better *er schallte. Ich schölle* or better *ich schallte; du schöllest* or better *du schalltest; er schölle* or better *er schallte. Geschollen* or better *geschallt;* sounded.

117.

Scheiden, to separate, to part.

Ich schied, I separated; *du schiedest; er schied. Ich schiede*, I separated; *du schiedest; er schiede. Geschieden*, separated.

Observation. Some German grammarians conjugate this verb in a regular manner, when it has a transitive signification, and in an irregular manner, when it is employed in an intransitive sense. They say of course: *Er scheidete das Silber vom Kupfer.* He separated the silver from the copper. *Er schied von seinem Freunde.* He parted with his friend.

118.

Scheinen, to shine; to seem, to appear.

Ich schien, I shone; *du schienest* or *du schienst; er schien. Ich schiene*, I shone; *du schienest; er schiene. Geschienen*, shone.

119.

Scheifsen, to shit.

is conjugated like *schmeifsen.*

120.

Schelten, to chide.

Ich schelte, I chide; *du schiltst; er schilt. Ich schält*, I chid; *du schaltest* or *du shaltst; er schalt. Ich schälte (schölte)*, I chid; *du schältest; er schälte. Schilt*, chide. *Gescholten*, chidden.

121.

Schéren, to shear; to shave.

Ich schére, I shear; *du schierst; er schiert. Ich*

schōr, I shore; *du schorest* or *du schōrst; er schor. Ich schöre*, I shore; *du schörest; er schöre. Schier*, shear. *Geschoren*, shorn.

122.

Schieben, to shove.

Ich schōb, I shoved; *du schobest* or *du schōbst; er schob. Ich schöbe*, I shoved; *du schöbest; er schöbe. Geschoben*, shoved.

123.

Schiefsen, to shoot.

Ich schoss, I shot; *du schossest; er schoss. Ich schösse*, I shot; *du schössest; er schösse. Geschossen*, shot.

124.

Schinden, to skin.

Ich schund, I skinned; *du schundest; er schund. Ich schünde*, I skinned; *du schündest; er schünde. Geschunden*, skinned.

125.

Schlafen, to sleep.

Ich schlafe, I sleep; *du schläfst; er schläft. Ich schlief*, I slept; *du schliefest* or *du schliefst; er schlief. Ich schliefe*, I slept; *du schliefest; er schliefe. Geschlafen*, slept.

126.

Schlagen, to beat, to strike.

Ich schlage, I beat, I strike; *du schlägst; er schlägt. Ich schlūg*, I beat, I struck; *du schlugest* or *du schlügst; er schlug. Ich schlüge*, I beat, I struck; *du schlügest; er schlüge. Geschlagen*, beaten, struck.

127.

Schleichen, to sneak.

Ich schlich, I sneaked; *du schlichest* or *du schlichst; er schlich. Ich schliche*, I sneaked; *du schlichest; er schliche. Geschlichen*, sneaked.

128.

Schleifen, to sharpen.

Ich schliff, I sharpened; *du schliffest* or *du schliffst*; *er schliff*. *Ich schliffe*, I sharpened; *du schliffest*; *er schliffe*. *Geschliffen*, sharpened.

Observation. Some German grammarians conjugate this verb in a regular manner, when it has a transitive signification, and in an irregular manner, when it is employed in an intransitive sense. They say consequently: *Ich schleifte das Messer.* I sharpened the knife. *Der Stein schliff gut.* The stone made very sharp. When *schleifen* signifies to drag, or to demolish, it is regularly conjugated.

129.

Schleifen, to slit.

Ich schliss, I slit; *du schlissest*; *er schliss*. *Ich schlisse*, I slit; *du schlissest*; *er schlisse*. *Geschlissen*, slit.

130.

Schliefsen, to shut.

Ich schloss, I shut; *du schlossest*; *er schloss*. *Ich schlösse*, I shut; *du schlössest*; *er schlösse*. *Geschlossen*, shut.

131.

Schlingen, to swallow.

Ich schlang, I swallowed; *du schlangest*; *er schlang*. *Ich schlänge*, I swallowed; *du schlängest*; *er schlänge*. *Geschlungen*, swallowed.

132.

Schmeifsen, to throw.

Ich schmiss, I threw; *du schmissest*; *er schmiss*. *Ich schmisse*, I threw; *du schmissest*; *er schmisse*. *Geschmissen*, thrown.

133.

Schmelzen, to melt, to become liquid.

Ich schmelze, I melt; *du schmilzest*; *er schmilzt*.

Ich schmolz, I melted; *du schmolzest; er schmolz. Ich schmölze*, I melted; *du schmölzest; er schmölze. Schmilz*, melt. *Geschmolzen*, melted.

Observation. When *schmelzen* has a transitive signification, and consequently signifies to make liquid, it is regularly conjugated. For instance: *Er schmelzt Metalle.* He melts metals. *Die Sonne schmelzte das Eis.* The sun melted the ice. *Das Eis schmolz.* The ice melted.

134.

Schnauben, to snort.

Ich schnōb, I snorted; *du schnobest* or *du schnōbst; er schnob. Ich schnöbe*, I snorted; *du schnöbest; er schnöbe. Geschnoben*, snorted.

Observation. When *schnauben* is employed in a transitive sense, its conjugation is regular. For example: *Er schnaubte sich die Nase.* He snuffed his nose. *Er schnaubte Rache.* He breathed vengeance. But it must be said: *Er schnōb vōr Wūth.* He snuffed, he was inflamed with rage.

135.

Schneiden, to cut.

Ich schnitt, I cut; *du schnittest; er schnitt. Ich schnitte*, I cut; *du schnittest; er schnitte. Geschnitten*, cut.

136.

Schnieben, to snort.

Ich schnōb, I snorted; *du schnobest* or *du schnōbst; er schnob. Ich schnöbe*, I snortet; *du schnöbest; er schnöbe. Geschnoben*, snorted.

137.

Schreiben, to write.

Ich schrieb, I wrote; *du schriebest* or *du schriebst; er schrieb. Ich schriebe*, I wrote; *du schriebest; er schriebe. Geschrieben*, written.

138.

Schreien, to cry.

Ich schrie (one syllable) I cried; *du schrieest* or *du schriest* (two syllables); *er schrie. Ich schrieé* or *schrié* (two syllables); *du schrieest* or *schriest* (two syllables); *er schriee* or *schrie. Geschrieen* or *geschrien* (three syllables), cried.

139.

Schreiten, to stride.

Ich schritt, I strode; *du schrittest; er schritt. Ich schritte*, I strode; *du schrittest; er schritte. Geschritten*, stridden.

140.

Schwären, to suppurate, to fester.

Ich schwōr, I suppurated; *du schworest* or *du schwōrst; er schwor. Ich schwöre*, I suppurated; *du schwörest; er schwöre. Geschworen*, suppurated.

141.

Schweigen, to be silent.

Ich schwieg, I was silent; *du schwiegest* or *du schwiegst; er schwieg. Ich schwiege*, I were silent; *du schwiegest; er schwiege. Ich habe geschwiegen*, I have been silent.

Observation. When *schweigen* has a transitive signification, and consequently signifies to silence, to put to silence, to make silent, its conjugation is regular.

142.

Schwellen, to swell, to grow tumid.

Ich schwelle, I swell; *du schwillst; er schwillt. Ich schwoll*, I swelled; *du schwollest* or *du schwollst; er schwoll. Ich schwölle*, I swelled; *du schwöllest; er schwölle. Schwill*, swell. *Geschwollen*, swollen.

Observation. When *schwellen* is employed as a transitive verb, and consequently signifies to make tumid, it is conjugated in a regular manner.

143.

Schwimmen, to swim.

Ich schwamm, I swam; *du schwammest* or *du schwammst*; *er schwamm*. *Ich schwämme*, I swam; *du schwämmest*; *er schwämme*. *Geschwommen*, swum.

144.

Schwinden (verschwinden), to disappear, to vanish.

Ich schwand, I disappeared; *du schwandest* or *du schwandst*; *er schwand*. *Ich schwände*, I disappeared; *du schwändest*; *er schwände*. *Geschwunden*, disappeared.

145.

Schwingen, to swing.

Ich schwang, I swung; *du schwangest* or *du schwangst*; *er schwang*. *Ich schwänge*, I swung; *du schwängest*; *er schwänge*. *Geschwungen*, swung.

146.

Schwören, to swear.

Ich schwūr, I swore; *du schwurest* or *du schwūrst*; *er schwur*. *Ich schwüre*, I swore; *du schwürest*; *er schwüre*. *Geschworen*, sworn.

Observation. Many Germans say: *ich schwōr*, *ich schwöre*. But in this manner the preterimperfect tense of the verb *schwären* is conjugated. However it is said: *ich schwor ab*, *ich schwöre ab*; *ich beschwor*, *ich beschwöre*; *ich schwor mich los*, *ich schwöre mich los*; *ich verschwor*, *ich verschwöre*; preterimperfect tenses of the verbs *abschwören*, *beschwören*, *sich lōsschwören*, *verschwören*. But also these verbs ought to form their preterimperfect tense in the same manner, in which that of the verb *schwören* is formed.

147.

Sêhen, to see.

Ich sehe, I see; *du siehest* or *du siehst*; *er siehet* or *er sieht*. *Ich sah*, I saw; *du sahest* or *du sahst*; *er sah*. *Ich sähe*, I saw; *du sähest*; *er sähe*. *Sieh (siehe)*, see. *Gesêhen*, seen.

148.

* *Senden*, to send.

Ich sendete or *ich sandte*, I sent; *du sendetest* or *du sandtest; er sendete* or *er sandte*. *Ich sendete*, I sent; *du sendetest; er sendete*. *Gesandet* or *gesandt*, sent.

149.

Sieden, to seeth, to boil.

Ich sott, I boiled; *du sottest; er sott*. *Ich sötte*, I boiled; *du söttest; er sötte*. *Gesotten*, boiled.

Observation. Some German grammarians conjugate this verb in a regular manner, when it has a transitive signification, and in an irregular manner, when it is employed in an intransitive sense. For instance: *Der Koch siedete das Wasser.* The cook boiled the water. *Das Wasser sott.* The water boiled. *Sie siedeten Seife.* They made soap.

150.

Singen, to sing.

Ich sang, I sung; *du sangest* or *du sangst; er sang*. *Ich sänge*, I sung; *du sängest; er sänge*. *Gesungen*, sung.

151.

Sinken, to sink.

Ich sank, I sunk; *du sankest* or *du sankst; er sank*. *Ich sänke*, I sunk; *du sänkest; er sänke*. *Gesunken*, sunk.

152.

Sinnen, to muse, to meditate, to think.

Ich sann, I mused; *du sannest* or *du sannst; er sann*. *Ich sänne*, I mused; *du sännest; er sänne*. *Gesonnen*, mused.

153.

Sitzen, to sit, to be seated.

Ich säße, I sat; *du säßest; er saß*. *Ich säße*, I sat; *du säßest; er säße*. *Gesessen*, sat.

154.

Sollen, to be compelled.

Ich soll, du sollst; er soll.

Observation. This verb has only two irregular persons. These two persons are the first and third person singular of the present tense. Instead of *du sollest, ich sollete, gesollet*, only the contracted forms *du sollst, ich sollte, gesollt*, are used.

155.

Speien, to spit.

Ich spie (one syllable), I spat; *du spieest* or *du spiest* (two syllables); *er spiee. Ich spiee* or *spie* (two syllables), I spat; *du spieest* or *spiest* (two syllables); *er spiee* or *spie. Gespieen* or *gespien* (three syllables) *spitted.*

156.

Spinnen, to spin.

Ich spann, I spun; *du spannest* or *du spannst; er spann. Ich spänne*, I spun; *du spännest; er spänne. Gesponnen*, spun.

157.

Sprechen, to speak.

Ich spreche, I speak; *du sprichst; er spricht. Ich sprāch*, I spoke; *du sprachest* or *du sprāchst; er sprach. Ich spräche*, I spoke; *du sprächest; er spräche. Sprich*, speak. *Gesprŏchen*, spoken.

158.

Spriessen, to sprout.

Ich spross, I sprouted; *du sprossest; er spross. Ich sprösse*, I sprouted; *du sprössest; er sprösse. Gesprossen*, sprouted.

159.

Springen, to spring, to leap.

Ich sprang, I sprung; *du sprangest* or *du sprangst; er sprang. Ich spränge*, I sprung; *du sprängest; er spränge. Gesprungen*, sprung.

160.

Stechen, to sting.

Ich steche, I sting; *du stichst*; *er sticht*. *Ich stäch*, I stung; *du stachest* or *du stächst*; *er stach*. *Ich stäche*, I stung; *du stächest*; *er stäche*. *Stich*, sting. *Gestochen*, stung.

161.

Stecken, to stick.

Ich stäk, I stuck; *du stakest* or *du stäkst*; *er stak*. *Ich stäke*, I stuck; *du stäkest*; *er stäke*.

Observation. When *stecken* signifies to put, it is conjugated in a regular manner. Then it has a transitive signification.

162.

Stehen, to stand.

Ich stand, I stood; *du standest* or *du standst*; *er stand*. *Ich stände*, I stood; *du ständest*; *er stände*. *Gestanden*, stood.

163.

Stéhlen, to steal.

Ich stéhle, I steal; *du stiehlst*; *er stiehlt*. *Ich stahl*, I stole; *du stahlest* or *du stahlst*; *er stahl*. *Ich stähle*, I stole; *du stählest*; *er stähle*. *Stiehl*, steal. *Gestohlen*, stolen.

164.

Steigen, to mount.

Ich stieg, I mounted; *du stiegest* or *du stiegst*; *er stieg*. *Ich stiege*, I mounted; *du stiegest*; *er stiege*. *Gestiegen*, mounted.

165.

Sterben, to die.

Ich sterbe, I die; *du stirbst*; *er stirbt*. *Ich stárb*, I died; *du starbest* or *du starbst*; *er starb*. *Ich stürbe*, I died; *du stürbest*; *er stürbe*. *Stirb*, die. *Gestórben*, died, dead.

blichst; er verblich. Ich verbliche, I grew pale; *du verblichest; er verbliche. Verblichen*, grown pale.

179.

Verderben, to spoil, to grow useless; to corrupt.

Ich verderbe, I spoil; *du verdirbst; er verdirbt. Ich verdárb*, I spoiled; *du verdarbest* or *du verdarbst; er verdarb. Ich verdürbe*, I spoiled; *du verdürbest; er verdürbe. Verdirb*, spoil. *Verdorben*, spoiled; corrupted.

Observation. When *verderben* has an active signification, its conjugation is regular. For example: *Meine Nächsicht verderbt ihn.* My indulgence spoils him. *Er verderbte Alles, was er im Zimmer āntrāf.* He spoiled all he met with in the room. *Seine Reisen haben ihn gänzlich verderbt.* His travels have spoiled him entirely. *Ein verderbter Geschmack*, a corrupted taste.

180.

Verdrießen, to offend.

Es verdross, it offended. *Es verdrösse*, it might offend. *Verdrossen*, offended.

Observation. This verb is used only in the third person singular and plural.

181.

Vergessen, to forget.

Ich vergesse, I forget; *du vergissest; er vergisset* or *er vergisst. Ich vergaſs*, I forgot; *du vergaſsest; er vergaſs. Ich vergäſse*, I forgot; *du vergäſsest; er vergäſse. Vergiss*, forgot. *Vergessen*, forgotten.

182.

Verlieren, to lose.

Ich verlōr, I lost; *du verlorest* or *du verlōrst; er verlor. Ich verlöre*, I lost; *du verlörest; er verlöre. Verloren*, lost.

183.

Verlöschen, to go out.

Ich verlösche, I go out; *du verlischest; er verli-*

schet or *er verlischt. Ich verlösch*, I went out; *du verloschest; er verlosch. Ich verlösche*, I went out; *du verlöschest; er verlösche. Verlisch*, go out. *Ich bin verloschen*, I am extinguished.

184.

* *Verwirren*, to entangle; to confuse; to confound.

Ich verwirrte or *ich verworr*, I entangled. *Ich verwirrte* or *ich verwörre*, I might entangle. *Verwirrt* or *verworren*, entangled; confused.

Observation. In einander wirren, to entangle, *aus einander wirren*, to disentangle, and *entwirren*, to disentangle, are conjugated in a regular manner.

185.

Verzeihen, to forgive.

Ich verzieh, I forgave; *du verziehest* or *du verziehst; er verzieh. Ich verziehe;* I forgave; *du verziehest; er verziehe. Verziehen*, forgiven.

186.

Wachsen, to grow.

Ich wachse, I grow; *du wächsest; er wächst. Ich wūchs*, I grew; *du wuchsest; er wuchs. Ich wüchse*, I grew; *du wüchsest; er wüchse. Gewachsen*, grown.

187.

Wägen, to weigh, to examine by the balance.

Ich wōg, I weighed; *du wogest* or *du wōgst; er wog. Ich wöge*, I weighed; *du wögest; er wöge. Gewogen*, weighed.

Observation. Wägen, which has an active signification, ought to be conjugated in a regular manner. It ought consequently to be said: *Ich wägte, gewägt.* The irregular forms *ich wog, ich wöge, gewogen*, ought to be given only to the verb *wiegen*, which has a neuter signification.

188.

Waschen, to wash.

Ich wasche, I wash; *du wäschest; er wäscht*

Ich wūsch, I washed; *du wuschest; er wusch. Ich wüsche*, I washed; *du wüschest; er wüsche. Gewaschen*, washed.

189.

** *Wében*, to weave.

Ich wébte (ich wöb), I wove. *Ich webte (ich wöbe)*, I might weave. *Gewébt (gewoben)*, woven.

190.

Weichen, to make way; to yield.

Ich wich, I gave way; *du wichest* or *du wichst; er wich. Ich wiche*, I gave way; *du wichest; er wiche. Ich bin gewichen*, I have given way.

Observation. Weichen (from *weich*, soft), to soften, is regularly conjugated.

191.

Weisen, to show.

Ich wies, I showed; *du wiesest; er wies. Ich wiese*, I showed; *du wiesest; er wiese. Gewiesen*, shown.

Observation. This verb is not to be confounded with the regular verb *weiſsen*, to whiten.

192.

* *Wenden*, to turn.

Ich wendete or *ich wandte*, I turned. *Ich wendete*, I might turn. *Gewendet* or *gewandt*, turned.

193.

Werben, to raise; to levy; to endeavour; to obtain.

Ich werbe, I raise; *du wirbst; er wirbt. Ich wárb*, I raised; *du warbest* or *du wárbst; er warb. Ich würbe*, I raised; *du würbest; er würbe. Wirb*, raise. *Gewórben*, raised.

194.

Werfen, to throw.

Ich werfe, I throw; *du wirfſt; er wirft. Ich wárf*, I threw; *du warfest* or *du wárfst; er warf.*

Ich würfe, I threw; *du würfest*; *er würfe*. *Wurf*, throw. *Geworfen*, thrown.

195.

Wiegen, to weigh, to have weight.

Ich wog, I weighed; *du wogest* or *du wogst*; *er wog*. *Ich wöge*, I weighed; *du wögest*; *er wöge*. *Gewogen*, weighed.

Observation. *Wiegen*, to rock, is conjugated in a regular manner.

196.

Winden, to wind.

Ich wand, I wound; *du wandest*; *er wand*. *Ich wände*, I wound; *du wändest*; *er wände*. *Gewunden*, wound.

197.

Wissen, to know.

Ich weiss, I know; *du weisst* (contracted from *weissest*); *er weiss*. *Wir wissen*; *ihr wisset* or *ihr wisst*; *sie wissen*. *Ich wisse*, I may know; *du wissest*; *er wisse*. *Wir wissen*; *ihr wisset*; *sie wissen*. *Ich wusste*, I knew; *du wusstest*; *er wusste*. *Wir wussten*; *ihr wusstet*; *sie wussten*. *Ich wüsste*, I knew; *du wüsstest*; *er wüsste*. *Wir wüssten*; *ihr wüsstet*; *sie wüssten*. *Wisse*, know. *Gewusst*, known.

198.

Wollen, to be willing.

Ich will, I will; *du willst*; *er will*. *Wir wollen*; *ihr wollet*; *sie wollen*. *Ich wolle* (subjunctive mood); *du wollest*; *er wolle*. *Wir wollen*; *ihr wollet*; *sie wollen*. *Ich wollte* (indicative and subjunctive mood), I would; *du wolltest*; *er wollte*. *Wir wollten*; *ihr wolltet*; *sie wollten*. *Ich habe gewollt*, I have been willing.

Observation. The irregularity of this verb consists only in the singular number of the present tense.

199.

Zeihen, to accuse of.

Ich zieh, I accused of; *du ziehest*; *er zieh*. *Ich*

ziehe, I accused of; *du ziehest*; *er ziehe*. *Geziehen*, accused of.

200.

Ziehen, to draw, to pull.

Ich zōg, I drew; *du zogest* or *du zōgst*; *er zog*. *Ich zöge*, I drew; *du zögest*; *er zöge*. *Gezogen*, drawn.

201.

Zwingen, to force.

Ich zwang, I forced; *du zwangest* or *du zwangst*; *er zwang*. *Ich zwänge*, I forced; *du zwängest*; *er zwänge*. *Gezwungen*, forced.

Observations.

1. All these verbs are likewise conjugated in an irregular manner, when a preposition or another participle is prefixed to them. Examples: *ábbeifsen*, to bite off. *Dārbieten*, to offer. *Fórtfahren*, to continue. *Vergleichen*, to compare. *Verschlingen*, to devour. *Zerstieben*, to fly away in dust. A few are excepted. The following compound verbs are regularly conjugated, though the simple verbs are irregular: *bewíllkommen*, to welcome; from *kommen*. *Rādbrechen*, to break on the wheel; *eine Sprache radbrechen*, to break a tongue. *Einem willfahren*, to comply with one's desire; from *fahren*. *Verleiden*, to imbitter; from *leiden*. *Veránlassen*, to occasion; from *lassen*. *Berennen*, to blockade; from *rennen*. *Rāthschlagen*, *berāthschlagen*, to deliberate; from *schlagen*. The following verbs have no other affinity with the verbs *reiten*, *schéren*, *rathen* and *ringen* than that of their termination, and are therefore regularly inflected: *bereiten*, to prepare. *Beschéren*, to give. *Heīrathen*, to marry. *Umríngen*, to surround.

2. Some irregular verbs assume in the subjunctive of the preterimperfect a vowel which does not correspond with the vowel of the indicative, in order to distinguish the subjunctive of the preterimperfect from the present. For instance: *Ich starb*, *ich stürbe*.

If it were said *ich stärbe*, the subjunctive of the preterimperfect and the present would have the same sound. Then these two tenses might easily be confounded, if they were only heard.

3. The regular verb *spalten*, to cleave, forms its past participle in an irregular manner. Instead of *gespaltet*, cloven, it is said *gespalten*. But the past participle of *falten*, to fold, must be regularly formed. It must consequently be said *gefaltet*, and not *gefalten*.

4. Several irregular intransitive or neuter verbs become transitive verbs, when their radical vowel in the infinitive is changed; in which case they lose their irregular form. Examples: *dringen*, *drängen*. *Ersaufen*, *ersäufen*. *Fallen*, *fällen*. *Hangen*, *hängen*. *Liegen*, *legen*. *Saugen*, *säugen*. *Springen*, *sprengen*. *Schwimmen*, *schwemmen*. *Sinken*, *senken*. *Sitzen*, *setzen*. *Trinken*, *tränken*.

5. The verbs *haben*, *seyn* and *werden* have been omitted in the list of the irregular verbs, because they are auxiliary verbs too, and therefore have been conjugated.

Section IV.

The use of the German verbs.

The use of the persons and numbers.

In German, as in English, the pronouns *ich*, *du*, *er*, *es*, *sie*, *wir*, *ihr*, *sie*, must always be added to the verb. But when two or more verbs of the same person meet together, the pronoun is employed only before the first verb Examples: *Ich liebe und bewundere ihn.* I love and admire him. *Er kām zu mīr; ging aber bald wieder weg.* He came to me; but soon went away again. *Wīr haben Ihre Einladung erhalten; danken Ihnen für Ihre Gütē, und werden uns das Vergnügen machen, Sie zu besūchen.* We have received your invitation; thank you for your kindness, and will do ourselves the pleasure of calling upon you. It is the same, when a substantive or proper name is joined to the verb. Ex-

ample: *Der Feind kam und verheerte das Land.* The enemy came and desolated the country.

The verb must be placed in the person and number, in which the subject stands. Examples: *Die Tugend veraltet nie.* Virtue never grows old. *Vier Dinge sind zum Lebensglücke nöthwendig: Gesundheit, Gemüthsruhe, äufsere Güter, aufrichtige Freunde.* Four things are necessary to the happiness of life: health, tranquillity of mind, goods of fortune, sincere friends.

The only exception to this rule is, when the Germans use the pronoun *Sie* in addressing one another in conversation or in writing. In this case the verb is placed in the plural number, though it refers to a single person. Example: *Um wie viel Uhr pflegen Sie zu Mittage zu essen?* At what o'clock do you use to dine? The verb is also put in the plural with a subject of the singular in titles of address. Examples: *Eure Majestät geruhen*, your Majesty is graciously pleased. *Eure Excellenz haben befohlen*, your Excellency has ordered. *Ihre Gnaden bemerken*, your Grace observes. Even when persons of title or rank are absent, this mode of speaking is sometimes employed. Examples: *Der Herr Grāf haben dieses gesāgt.* My Lord Count has told this. *Der Herr Barōn sind hier gewesen.* My Lord Baron has been here.

When the verb relates to two or more subjects of the singular, it must stand in the plural, because these substantives form together a plurality. Examples: *Güte und Gröfse sind sinnverwandte Ausdrücke.* Goodness and greatness are synonymous terms. *Hass, Mord und Verwüstung herrschen im Lande.* Hatred, murder and destruction reign in the land. But when more substantives, which relate to the verb, are not united together by the conjunction *und*, the verb may, notwithstanding this plurality, be put in the singular number, because in this case it does not refer to all substantives in community, but to every single subject. Examples: *Ein Barbār, ein Tyrann, sogār ein Nero könnte mich nicht grau-*

samer behandeln. A barbarian, a tyrant, even a Nero might not treat me more cruelly.

When two or more subjects of the singular are united by the conjunction *oder*, or by the conjunctions *weder — noch*, the verb is placed in the singular, because it relates only to one of them, and is left out after the other. Examples: *Ich weiß nicht, ob der Vater oder der Sohn todt ist.* I do not know, whether the father or the son is dead. *Weder mein Bruder, noch meine Schwester wird es thun.* Neither my brother, nor my sister will do it. *Weder Alter, noch Krankheit, noch Todesfurcht hat ihn gebessert.* Neither old age, nor sickness, nor fear of death have mended him.

When two subjects stand in the singular, in the same person, and are united by *mit, nicht nur — sondern auch, sowohl als, so wie*, the verb is put in the singular. Examples: *Das Schiff, mit allem seinem Geräthe, wurde zerstört.* The ship, with all her furniture, was destroyed. *Nicht nur der König, sondern auch das Volk wünschte den Frieden.* Not only the king desired the peace, but the nation too. *Der König sowohl als die Königin spricht Deutsch.* The king, as well as the queen, speaks German. *Seine Bescheidenheit, so wie seine Gelehrsamkeit, verdient Bewunderung.* His modesty, as his learning, deserves admiration.

Also in the following sentence the verb stands in the singular number: *Nicht nur alle seine Reichthümer, sondern auch sein ganzer Ruhm verschwand.* Not only all his riches, his glory too vanished. Here the singular *verschwand* must be put, because after the words *alle seine Reichthümer* the plural *verschwanden* is left out. If instead of *nicht nur — sondern auch* the conjunction *und* be used, it is then said: *Alle seine Reichthümer und sein ganzer Ruhm verschwanden.*

The verb may also be put in the singular, when it stands before two or more subjects of the singular. Example: *Und nun bleibt Glaube, Hoffnung, Liebe, diese drei; aber die größeste von diesen ist die*

Liebe. And now abideth faith, hope, charity, these three; but the greatest of these is charity.

The verb is put in the singular notwithstanding the preceding plurals, when these plurals are followed by a word, which stands in the singular and comprehends them all. Example: *Ein schöner und gesunder Körper, ein mit hohen Kräften begabter Geist, grosse Reichthümer, hohe Würden, alle Freuden und Genüsse des Lebens, Nichts kann uns glücklich machen, wenn wir ein böses Gewissen haben.* A beautiful and healthy body, a mind endowed with high powers, great riches, high dignities, all pleasures and enjoyments of life, nothing can make us happy, if we have a bad conscience.

When two subjects are two different persons, the first person is preferred to the second, and the second to the third. When consequently the verb relates to two subjects, which stand in the first and second, or in the first and third person, it is placed in the first person plural. Examples: *Meine Kinder, ihr und ich waren zu Hause.* My children, you and I were at home. *Ihr Bruder und ich wollen spazieren gehen.* Your brother and I will take a walk. When on the contrary one subject stands in the second person, and the other in the third, the verb is put in the second person plural. Examples: *Du und er thatet es.* Thou and he did it. *Du, Dein Bruder und Deine Schwester seyd heute eingeladen worden.* You, your brother and your sister have been invited to-day. But when the verb does not attribute the same predicate to more subjects in the same manner, but yet is put only once, and, of course, must doubly be understood, the verb is placed in the person, that is properly required. Examples: *Nicht ich, mein Sohn hat es gethan.* Not I, my son has done it. *Nicht er, sondern du hast es gesagt.* Not he, but thou hast told it.

When *der* is employed, in order to speak with more energy, the verb always stands in the third person. For instance: *Ich bin es, der mit Ihnen spricht.* It is I that speaks to you.

It is yet to be observed, that the subject of a sentence must always stand in the same person. Consequently the following sentence is vicious: *Wir tadeln oft an Anderen die Fehler, mit welchen man selbst behaftet ist*, instead of *mit welchen wir selbst behaftet sind.* We often censure in others the faults, to which we are subject ourselves.

The use of the German tenses.

The present tense is often employed in telling past things instead of the preterimperfect, in order to enliven the representation. Example: *Ich trete in die Hütte einer armen Frau. Bei meinem Eintritte scheint ein Strahl von Freude ihre Augen zu erhellen.* I enter the cottage of a poor woman. On my entrance a ray of joy seems to illumine her eyes. This tense is also frequently used instead of the future. Examples: *Morgen gehe ich nach Berlin.* To morrow I go to Berlin. *Ich reise morgen ab.* I set off to morrow. *Ich komme gleich wieder.* I come back immediately.

The preterimperfect tense, which properly expresses an action not quite passed, is employed by the Germans, when they speak of an event, at which they were present themselves. Therefore the historical style makes use of it, because the historian tells past things thus, as if he had been present at them. This tense is also used, when the action is connected with another, that happened at the same time, or in consequence of the former. Example: *Da wir hier ankamen: so schickten wir unseren Bedienten zurück.* When we arrived here, we sent back our servant. In the following sentence the preterimperfect tense is employed instead of the preterpluperfect tense: *Als ich diese Worte aussprach: glühete meines Vaters Unwille in seinem Gesichte.* When I pronounced these words, my father's indignation glowed in his visage. Instead of *als ich diese Worte ausgesprochen hatte.* The preterimperfect tense of the subjunctive mood is often used in German instead of the conditional present. Example: *Wenn ich reich*

wäre: so hätte ich Freunde. If I were rich, I should have friends. Instead of *so würde ich Freunde haben.*

The preterperfect tense expresses an action quite passed and unconnected with any other. It is therefore also employed, when the question is of a past thing, which happened but some time or some hours ago. Examples: *Er ist vōr einem Jahre gestorben.* He died a twelvemonth ago. *Sie hat das Land vor einem Vierteljahre verlassen.* She left the country three months since. *Ich habe ihn vor vierzehn Tagen gesehen.* I saw him a fortnight ago. *Ich bin in der Kirche gewesen.* I have been at church. *Ich habe es nie gesehen.* I never saw it. *Sind Sie nie in Berlin gewesen?* Were you never at Berlin? *Ich bin nie da gewesen.* I never was there. *Haben Sie schōn zu Mittage gegessen?* Have you dined already? It is yet to be observed, that the German preterperfect expresses also an action, at which we were not present. The preterperfect is also often used instead of the second future. Example: *Wenn ich das Bāch gelēsen habe: so leihe ich es Ihnen.* When I have read the book, I lend it you. This stands for: *Wenn ich das Buch gelesen haben werde: so werde ich es Ihnen lēihen.* When I shall have read the book, I shall lend it you.

The preterpluperfect tense is used in German, as in English. Its subjunctive mood is often employed instead of the conditional past. Examples: *Ich hätte ihn bezāhlt, wenn er da gewesen wäre.* I had paid him, if he had been there. Instead of *ich würde ihn bezahlt haben*, I would have paid him. *Wenn ich das gewusst hätte: so wäre ich nicht gekommen.* If I had known that, I should not have come. Instead of *so würde ich nicht gekommen seyn.*

The future tense is not used after the words *wenn*, when, *bevōr*, before, *bis*, till, *sobald als*, as soon as, *während*, while, when there is yet a future in the second part of the sentence. Examples: *Wenn ich Ihnen sage, dass ich diese Stadt ungern verlasse: so werden Sie mich vielleicht der Heuchelei beschuldigen.* When I tell you, that I leave this town with

regret, perhaps you will accuse me of hypocrisy. Instead of *wenn ich Ihnen sagen werde. Sobald als er ánkommt: wird er die Neuigkeit hören.* As soon as he arrives, he will hear the news. Instead of *sobald als er ankommen wird.* In this case the present tense is employed.

Lastly, it is yet to be observed, that the tenses, which bear a reference to one another, must always agree. Examples: *Er behauptet, ich sey da gewesen.* He maintains that I have been there. *Er sägt, er habe die Gelegenheit verloren; es sey aber nachhér einem Anderen gelungen.* He says that he has lost the opportunity; but that another has afterwards succeeded. If in these instances the preterimperfect tense were employed, this should be a fault. But in the following example the preterimperfect and preterpluperfect tenses must be used: *Er glaubte, dass es wahr wäre.* He thought it was true. *Wir tadelten ihn, dass er mehrere frémdärtige Untersüchungen eingeschoben hatte.* We blamed him, that he had inserted several heterogeneous inquiries.

The use of the German moods.

The indicative mood is employed, when something is affirmed or denied of the subject with certainty and without any doubt. Examples: *Er isst Gemüse lieber als Fleisch.* He likes vegetables better than meat. *Er hat das Geld nicht erhalten.* He has not received the money. The indicative mood is, of course, employed after *dass*, when the notion is strongly affirmative. Examples: *Es thät ihm leid, dass er Ihre Schwester nicht gesehen hat.* He is sorry for not having seen your sister. *Dieses beweiset nicht, dass er Sie weniger liebt.* This does not prove, that he loves you less. *Es féhlt wenig, dass ich krank bin.* I am not far from being sick. *Ich behaupte, dass es wahr ist.* I maintain that it is true. *Ich weiss, dass er den Brief bekommen hat.* I know (that) he has received the letter. *Ich glaube, dass er ein rechtschaffener Mann ist.* I believe (that) he is an honest man. *Glauben Sie, dass er so reich*

ist, als man sagt? Do you believe (that) he is as rich as they say? *Es ist weise von ihm, dass er so handelt.* It is wise in him to do so. *Es ist nöthwendig für ihn, dass er mit seinen Richtern spricht.* It is necessary for him to speak to his judges. *Ich wusste, dass er der Mann war.* I knew him to be the man. *Ich zweifle nicht, dass er kommen wird.* I do not doubt but he will come. The indicative mood is also used after *wenn* and *wofern*, when they stand not in the preterimperfect or preterpluperfect tense of the subjunctive mood. Examples: *wenn* or *wofern es Ihnen gefällig ist*, if you please. *Wenn* or *wofern das Būch in meiner Bibliothek ist: so sollen Sie es haben.* If the book be in my library, you shall have it. *Er sprāch nicht, wenn er ernsthaft war.* He did not speak, when he was serious. *Wenn mein Bedienter mir Kunde gegēben hätte: so war es meine Gewōhnheit, sogleich an die Thüre zu gehen.* When my servant had given me notice, my custom was to go immediately to the door. The indicative mood is also employed after *dafern*, provided; *im Fall*, in case; *ob*, whether, if; *da, weil*, as, since, because; *indēm*, whilst; *während, so lange*, while; *so — auch*, as — as; *sobāld als, sobald*, as soon as; *obgleich, obschōn, obwōhl, wiewōhl, ungeāchtet, wenn auch*, though; *als, da*, when; *nachdēm*, after; *je nachdem*, according as; *ehe*, ere; *bevōr*, before. Examples: *Dafern es wahr ist, was Sie sagen*, provided it be true, what you say. *Ich weifs nicht, ob dieses armen Mannes Lage so schlimm ist, als man sagt.* I do not know, if this poor man's situation be as bad as they say. *Obgleich er krank ist*, though he be sick. *Obschon Sie älter sind als er: so zweifle ich doch, ob Sie so gelehrt sind.* Though you be older than he, yet I doubt, whether you are so learned. *Als* or *da er ihn sah: lief er fort.* When he saw him, he ran away. *Da sie keine Kleider ānhatten*, as they had no clothes on. *Da ich Ihnen nichts Neues erzählen kann*, since I can tell you nothing new. *So grofs er auch seyn mag*, as great as he may be. *Ehe er stirbt*, ere he die.

Bevor die Glocke ausgeschlagen hat, before the clock has done striking.

The subjunctive mood, or, as the Germans call it, the conjunctive mood is employed, when the predicate is attributed to the subject with uncertainty or in a dubious manner. It is, therefore, used after the conjunctions *dass* and *ob*, when any idea is expressed in an uncertain or a doubtful manner. Also after the conjunction *damit* the subjunctive mood is always employed. Examples: *Sie dachten, dass ich mich irrte.* They thought me to be mistaken. *Man sāgt, dass ein Sēētreffen gewēsen sey.* They say (that) there has been a seafight. *Man hat mir gesāgt, dass er Nichts als Lustspiele schreibe.* I am told (that) he writes nothing but comedies. *Man hat ihr gesagt, dass ich es wisse.* She is told that I know it. *Er behauptet, dass es wahr sey.* He maintains that it is true. *Ich hoffe, dass er sein Versprechen halten werde.* I hope (that) he will keep his promise. *Er glaubte, dass es wahr wäre.* He believed it to be true. *Ich bin kein solcher Thōr, dass ich es glaubte* or *glauben sollte.* I am not such a fool as to believe it. *Es ist Nichts so lächerlich, welches nicht schōn von irgend einem Philosōphen gesagt worden wäre.* There is nothing so ridiculous, that has not been already said by some philosopher. *Ich fragte ihn, ob er es wüsste.* I asked him, if he did know it. *Wenn er etwa die Schlacht verlieren sollte*, if peradventure he should lose the battle. *Er thut seine Schuldigkeit blofs, damit er desswegen gelobt werden könne.* He does his duty only, that he may be praised for it.

The conjunctive mood is also employed to express a wish, or a permission and concession. Examples: *Der Himmel gēbe es.* May heaven grant it. *Gott gebe, dass es wahr sey.* God grant (that) it may be true. *Gott behüte.* God forbid. *Gott erhalte uns alle.* God save us all. *Lange regiere unser König.* Long may our king reign. *Er vertheidige unsere Gesetze.* May he defend our laws. *Ein solcher Gedanke komme nie in Ihre Seele.* May such

a thought never enter your mind. *Wenn ich nur nicht dort seyn müsste!* If I were only not obliged to be there! *Er werde bestraft.* Let him be punished. *Er gehe, wohin er wolle.* Let him go where he pleases. *Er schreibe, oder er schreibe nicht, es ist das Nämliche.* Whether he writes, or not, it is the same thing. *Man gebe ihm einen Zoll, und er wird sich eine Elle nehmen.* Give him an inch, and he will take an ell. *Welches auch immer Ihre Geschäfte seyen* or *seyn mögen,* whatever may be your business. *Wie reich man auch immer sey* or *seyn mag,* however rich one may be.

The conjunctive mood is used in an indirect question. Examples: *Er frägte mich, warum sie nicht gekommen wäre.* He asked me, why she was not come. *Ich fragte ihn, ob er meine Geschichte wüsste.* I asked him, if he did know my story. *Fragen Sie ihn nicht, ob er kommen werde.* Do not ask him, if he will come.

When that which is said or maintained, remains in our idea liable to doubt, the conjunctive mood is employed. It must consequently follow after *bitten,* to beg; *ermahnen,* to exhort; *rathen,* to advise; *begehren, verlangen, wollen,* to desire; *wünschen,* to wish; *erlauben,* to permit; *zweifeln,* to doubt; *besorgen,* to apprehend; *fürchten, befürchten,* to fear. For when we beg, exhort, advise, desire, wish, doubt, permit, apprehend, fear, that a thing be done, a degree of uncertainty exists as to the event. This is also the case, when the sentence expresses any purpose. Examples: *Er bät ihn, dass er ihm ein Buch gäbe* or *gében möchte.* He besought him, that he would give him a book. *Er verlangt von seiner Frau, dass sie Alles liebe, was er liebt.* He will have his wife like what he does. *Ich wünsche, dass sie Alle glücklich seyen* or *seyn mögen.* I wish them all happy. *Ich wünsche, dass er sich in Acht nehme.* I wish he would take care. *Ich wünsche, dass ich Sie auf dem Balle tanzen sehen könnte.* I wish I could see you dance at the ball. *Es wäre zu wünschen, dass wir viele Werke dieser Art hätten.*

It were to be wished we had many performances of this kind. *Ich wünsche, dass ich Deutsch gelernt hätte.* I wish to have learned German. *Es ist ihm erlaubt, dass er es thue.* He is permitted to do it. *Ich fürchte, dass er gekommen sey.* I fear he is come. *Ich befürchte, dass er nicht kommen werde.* I fear he will not come. *Ich zeige ihm dieses, damit er mir glaube.* I show him this, that he may believe me.

The conjunctive mood is employed after *wenn*, when the second part of the sentence expresses an action depending upon a preceding condition. In this case the verb is put in the preterimperfect or preterpluperfect of the conjunctive mood. Examples: *Wenn ich das Buch hätte: so würde es Ihnen zu Diensten stehen.* If I had the book, it should be at your service. *Wenn der Fluss schiffbar wäre: so würde der Handel blühen.* If the river were navigable, trade would flourish. *Wenn mein Vater hier gewesen wäre: so würde das Unglück nicht geschehen seyn.* If my father had been here, the misfortune would not have happened. As for the last example, it may also be said: *Wenn mein Vater hier war: so geschah das Unglück nicht.*

The conjunctive mood is also used after *als wenn, als ob*, as if; *wenn auch*, though. Examples: *Er liebt mich, als ob er mein Vater wäre.* He loves me, as if he were my father. *Wenn er auch in dasselbe einwilligte: so würde dieses doch nicht geschehen können.* Though he should consent to it, that could not be done.

It is yet to be observed, that the conjunctions *dass* and *wenn* are often left out in German, as in English. Examples: *Ich behaupte, es wird regnen.* I maintain it will rain. Instead of *dass es regnen wird. Er glaubt, es sey nicht möglich.* He thinks it is not possible. Instead of *dass es nicht möglich sey. Man sagt, der Kaiser habe Frieden gemacht.* They say the emperor has made peace. Instead of *dass der Kaiser Frieden gemacht habe. Wäre ich an Ihrer Stelle: so würde ich es thun.* Were I in your place, I would do it. Instead of *wenn ich an*

Ihrer Stelle wäre. Sollte sich das ereignen, should that happen. Instead of *wenn sich das ereignen sollte. Sollte er nicht kommen*, should he not come. Instead of *wenn er nicht kommen sollte. Kommst du heute nicht: so kommst du morgen.* If thou dost not come to-day, thou wilt come to-morrow. Instead of *wenn du heute nicht kommst.*

The imperative mood is used in German, as in English. Examples: *Sprechen wir ein wenig Deutsch* (for *wir wollen ein wenig Deutsch sprechen*). Let us speak a little German. *Stoßen Sie ihn hinaus.* Push him out. *Kommen Sie nur.* Do but come. *Läugnen Sie es nicht.* Do not deny it. *Reden Sie nicht so.* Do not talk so. *Betriegen Sie sich nicht.* Do not deceive yourself. *Bekümmern Sie sich um Ihre Angelegenheiten.* Mind your own business. *Seyn Sie nicht böse.* Don't be angry. *Tritt auf einen Wurm, und er wird sich krümmen.* Tread on a worm, and it will bend. The word *let*, which is placed in English in the imperative mood before *me, us, him* and *them*, must often be expressed in German by *mögen, müssen, wollen*, and sometimes by *wenn.* Examples: let me say what I will, *ich mag sagen was ich will.* Let me die if I know it. *Ich will sterben, wenn ich es weiß.* Let us go home. *Wir wollen nach Hause gehen.* Let him, let them be ever so rich, *mag er, mögen sie noch so reich seyn.* Let the wicked fall into their own nets. *Die Gottlosen müssen in ihre eigenen Netze fallen.* Let him but have his liberty, and he will etc., *er habe nur erst seine Freiheit:* or *wenn er nur erst seine Freiheit hat: so wird er* &c.

The use of the German infinitive.

The infinitive is used either with *zu*, or without it. It is used with *zu:*

1. After substantives and attributive adjectives. Examples: *Ich habe Lust zu essen.* I have a mind to eat. *Ich hatte das Vergnügen, ihn zu sehen.* I had the pleasure of seeing him. *Der Wunsch, gelobt zu werden, ist süß.* The wish of being praised

is sweet. *Ich bin sehr erfreut, Sie wieder zu sehen.* I am very glad to see you again. *Müde zu stehen,* tired of standing.

2. After verbs, when an intention is denoted. In this case *um* is frequently joined with *zu*, in order to express the design still more distinctly. Examples: *Er that Alles, was er konnte, mich zu Grunde zu richten.* He did all he could to ruin me. *Ich ging zu dem Manne, ihm die Sache vorzustellen, und mit ihm darüber zu sprechen.* I went to the man, to represent the thing to him, and to converse with him about it. *Er ging zu ihm, um sein Geld zu bekommen.* He went to him, in order to get his money. *Liebet die Tugend, um glücklich zu seyn.* Love virtue, in order to be happy. In the following example the word *ohne* is prefixed to *zu: Er verliess die Stadt, ohne von seinen Freunden Abschied zu nehmen.* He left the town without taking leave of his friends.

3. After the following, and verbs of a similar signification: *Anfangen*, to begin. *Aufhören*, to cease. *Befehlen*, to command. *Behaupten*, to maintain. *Bekennen*, to confess. *Bitten*, to beg. *Drohen*, to threaten. *Erlauben*, to permit, to allow. *Ermangeln*, to fail. *Fürchten*, to fear. *Haben*, to have. *Hoffen*, to hope. *Pflegen*, to use, to be wont. *Scheinen*, to appear, to seem. *Verdienen*, to deserve. *Verlangen*, to desire. *Wagen*, to venture. *Wissen*, to know. *Wünschen*, to wish. Examples: *Es fängt an zu regnen.* It begins to rain. *Es ist zu fürchten*, it is to be feared. *Ich habe Ihnen Etwas zu sagen.* I have something to tell you. *Ich wage es nicht, mit ihm zu sprechen.* I do not venture to speak to him. *Ich wurde abgehalten, zu schreiben.* I was prevented from writing. In English the infinitive with to is put after some verbs, where the Germans employ the conjunction *dass*. Examples: I knew him to be the man. *Ich wusste, dass er der Mann war.* He believed it to be true. *Er glaubte, dass es wahr wäre.*

The infinitive is employed without *zu:*

1. When it represents the subject or object of a

sentence. Examples: *Versprechen und Erfüllen sind zwei verschiedene Dinge.* To promise and to fulfil are two different things. *Das nenne ich grausam handeln.* That I call to act cruelly.

2. After the verbs *dürfen; fühlen; heißen; helfen; hören; können; lassen; lehren; lernen; mögen; müssen; sehen; sollen; wollen.* Examples: *Sie dürfen sich nicht fürchten.* You need not fear. *Ich fühle mein Blut kochen.* I feel my blood boil. *Ich hieß ihn herein kommen.* I bade him come in. *Er hilft mir arbeiten.* He assists me in working. *Ich höre ihn singen.* I hear him sing. *Ich kann ihn nicht lieben.* I cannot love him. *Lassen Sie ihn gehen.* Let him go. *Ich lehre meine Kinder lesen.* I teach my children to read. *Er lernt schreiben.* He learns to write. *Er mag sagen, was er will.* Let him say what he will. *Sie mögen noch so weise seyn.* Let them be ever so wise. *Sie müssen es wissen.* You cannot but know it. *Sie wissen, wie Sie es schreiben müssen.* You know how to write it. *Ich will Ihnen sagen, was Sie thun müssen.* I will tell you what to do. *Ich sehe ihn kommen.* I see him come. *Was soll ich thun?* What am I to do? *Lehren Sie mich, was ich sagen soll.* Teach me what to say. *Wollen Sie Deutsch schreiben und sprechen lernen?* Will you learn to write and to speak German? In the following and similar instances *lehren* requires *zu* before the infinitive: *Ich will ihn lehren gehorsam zu seyn.* I will teach him to be obedient.

3. After the following verbs in particular phrases: *bleiben; fahren; finden; gehen; haben; legen; machen; reiten; thun.* *Er bleibt liegen, sitzen, stehen.* He continues lying, sitting, standing. *Stecken bleiben,* to stick fast. *Ich fahre spazieren.* I drive out for exercise, for an airing. *Ich fand ihn schlafen* (or better *schlafend*). I found him sleeping. *Ich fand das Buch auf dem Tische liegen* (or better *liegend*). I found the book lying upon the table. *Ich gehe schlafen.* I go to bed. *Er geht betteln.* He goes a begging. *Ich gehe spazieren.* I take a walk. *Ich*

habe Geld auf Zinsen stehen. I have money standing out on interest. *Sie haben gut sprechen.* You have fine talking. *Ich lege mich schlafen.* I lay myself down to sleep, I go to bed. *Er macht mich lachen.* He makes me laugh. *Ich reite spazieren.* I take a ride. *Sie thut Nichts als schelten, als zanken.* She does nothing but scold, but quarrel.

The infinitive of the verbs *dürfen*, *helfen*, *hören*, *können*, *lassen*, *lehren*, *lernen*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *sehen*, *sollen*, *wollen*, is employed instead of the past participle, when the infinitive of another verb precedes. Examples: *Ich habe es nicht thun dürfen* (for *gedurft*). I was not allowed to do it. *Er hat mir arbeiten helfen* (for *geholfen*). He assisted me in working. *Ich habe sie singen hören* (for *gehört*). I heard her sing. *Ich hätte eher kommen können* (for *gekonnt*). I might have been able to come sooner. *Wir hätten es sehen können* (for *gekonnt*). We might have seen it. *Er hat ein Haus bauen lassen* (for *gelassen*). He has caused a house to be built. *Er hat mich schreiben lehren* (for *gelehrt*). He has taught me to write. *Ich habe von ihm zeichnen lernen* (for *gelernt*). I have learnt of him to draw. *Er hätte es thun mögen* (for *gemocht*). He might have done it. *Ich habe einen Brief schreiben müssen* (for *gemusst*). I have been obliged to write a letter. *Wir haben Ihre Tochter tanzen sehen* (for *gesehen*). We saw your daughter dance. *Ich hätte es thun sollen* (for *gesollt*). I ought to have done it. *Ich habe nicht ausgehen wollen* (for *gewollt*). I have not been willing to go out.

The infinitive of the active is frequently used in German in a passive signification, where that of the passive is employed in English. Examples: *Die Gesundheit ist nicht mit Golde zu bezahlen.* Health is not to be paid with gold. *Was über diesen Gegenstand zu sagen ist*, what is to be said on this subject. *Nun war Nichts zu thun.* Now there was nothing to be done. *Es ist Nichts zu hoffen.* There is nothing to be hoped. *Diese Dinge sind nicht zu loben.* These things are not to be praised. *Der*

Richter hiess ihn binden. The judge ordered him to be bound. *Lassen Sie ihn rufen.* Let him be called. *Wir sahen ihn schlagen.* We saw him being beaten. The three last examples admit also the following active meaning: The judge ordered him to bind. Let him call. We saw him beating.

All the infinitives of the German language may be employed like substantives. Examples: *Ich bin des Redens müde.* I am weary of talking. *Ich bin müde vom Gehen.* I am weary with walking. *Ich wurde vom Schreiben abgehalten.* I was prevented from writing. *Er findet Vergnügen am Jagen.* He takes delight in hunting. *Er nährt sich mit Betteln.* He gets his living by begging.

The use of the German participles.

The present participle is used instead of the present or preterimperfect tense of the verb, from which it is derived. In this case it supplies at the same time the place of *indém.* Examples: *Er lernt, seinem Vater gehorchend, die englische Sprache.* He learns, obeying his father, the English language. Instead of *indem er seinem Vater gehorcht. Als seine Neugierde befriedigt war: ging er, seinem Freunde eine gute Nacht wünschend, nach Hause.* His curiosity being satisfied, he went home, wishing to his friend a good night. Instead of *indem er seinem Freunde eine gute Nacht wünschte. Mich auf sein Wort verlassend, wurde ich betrogen.* Relying upon his word, I was deceived. *Sie verliefs das Zimmer singend.* She left the room singing. *Weinend sagte er zu mir,* weeping he said to me. *Er setzte sich schweigend nieder.* He sat down preserving silence. *Sie standen trauernd bei dem Grabe.* They stood mourning near the tomb. *Ich fand ihn schlafend.* I found him sleeping. The present participle is always preceded by the case governed by it. Examples: *die Alles belebende Sonne,* the sun animating every thing. *Das uns verfolgende Geschick,* the fate persecuting us. *Die mir bevorstehende Gefahr,* the danger hanging over me.

The Germans make at present a more frequent use of the present participle than formerly; but they do not employ it as frequently as the English, who use it in many instances, in which the Germans express it by a circumlocution. Examples: *Er lächelte, und schien meinen Entschlüss zu billigen.* He smiled, seeming to applaud my resolution. *Als ihn sein Vater sah: erstaunte er.* His father, seeing him, was surprised. *Da seine Mutter dieses hörte: wurde sie ungehalten.* His mother, hearing this, grew angry. *Nachdém wir zu Abende gegessen hatten: gingen wir spazieren.* Having supped, we went a walking. *Weil er ihnen nicht anstand: so wurde er verworfen.* Being disliked by them, he was rejected.

Instead of the infinitive the present participle is often used in English; but in German the infinitive is only employed in this case. Examples: *Ich sah sie tanzen.* I saw them dancing. *Fahren Sie fort zu reden.* Go on speaking. *Hören Sie auf zu zanken.* Leave off quarrelling.

The present participle of English verbs is converted into a substantive by putting the article before it. For example: the reading; the writing. This cannot be done in German, where the infinitive only serves for that purpose. *Das Lésen; das Schreiben.*

The English use the present participle, in order to form the periphrastical conjugation of verbs. Examples: I am coming. He is writing. She was playing, when I came in. Whither are you going? We have been speaking of it a great while. I shall be travelling at that time. The Germans employ no periphrastical conjugation, and say consequently: *Ich komme. Er schreibt. Sie spielte, als ich hereintrat. Wohin gehen Sie? Wir haben eine lange Zeit davon geredet. Ich werde zu dieser Zeit reisen.*

The present participle is very often used as an attributive adjective. Also in this case it stands for a tense of the verb. When it is joined to a substantive by means of the verbs *seyn* and *werden*, it is not declined. But when it is joined to a sub-

stantive without one of these verbs, and consequently in an immediate manner, it is declined, and then employed either with the article, or without it. Examples: *Diese Beleidigung ist kränkend.* This insult is mortifying. Instead of *diese Beleidigung kränkt.* *Die Last ist drückend.* The burden is oppressive. Instead of *die Last drückt.* *Die Nöth ist dringend.* The necessity is pressing. Instead of *die Noth dringt.* *Ihre Sitten waren sehr einnehmend.* Her manners were very captivating. Instead of *ihre Sitten nahmen sehr ein.* *Der lachende Frühling*, the smiling spring. Instead of *der Frühling, welcher lacht.* *Die reizende Schönheit*, the charming beauty. Instead of *die Schönheit, welche reizt.* *Das sterbende Kind*, the dying child. Instead of *das Kind, welches stirbt.* *Eine bezaubernde Braut*, an enchanting bride. Instead of *eine Braut, welche bezaubert.* *Ein weinendes Mädchen*, a weeping girl. Instead of *ein Mädchen, welches weint.* *Der sich freuende Vater*, the father who rejoices. Instead of *der Vater, welcher sich freut.* *Erquickender Wein*, refreshing wine. Instead of *Wein, welcher erquickt.* *Stärkende Nahrung*, strengthening food. Instead of *Nahrung, welche stärkt.* *Nährendes Brōt*, nourishing bread. Instead of *Brot, welches nährt.*

As an attributive adjective, the present participle admits the degrees of comparison, though these degrees are not equally in use with all present participles. Examples: *Kränkender*, more mortifying; *der, die, das kränkendste*, the most mortifying. *Drückender*, more oppressive; *der, die, das drückendste*, the most oppressive. *Dringender*, more pressing; *der, die, das dringendste*, the most pressing. *Einnehmender*, more captivating; *der, die, das einnehmendste*, the most captivating. *Lachender*, more smiling; *der, die, das lachendste*, the most smiling. *Reizender*, more charming; *der, die, das reizendste*, the most charming. *Bezaubernder*, more enchanting; *der, die, das bezauberndste*, the most enchanting. *Erquickender*, more refreshing; *der, die, das erquickendste*, the most refreshing. *Stärkender*, more

strengthening; *der, die, das stärkendste*, the most strengthening. *Nährender*, more nourishing; *der, die, das nährendste*, the most nourishing.

The present participle preceded by *zu* is also used, in order to express the English past participle preceded by to be. Examples: *die zu tadelnde Strenge*, severity which is to be blamed. *Eine schwēr zu behauptende Besitzung*, a possession to be maintained with difficulty. *Eine zu spielende neue Rolle*, a new part to be acted. *Hōchzuehrender Herr*, (Sir who is greatly to be honoured) honourable Sir.

The present participle is also used as a substantive. For instance: *Der Befĕhlende*, he that commands. *Die Gehorchenden*, they who obey.

The past participle is an abridged way of speaking, when it is to be resolved into a tense of the verb, which is preceded either by *welcher*, or by the conjunctions *da, weil, obschōn, wenn*. Examples: *Cicero, bewundert von allen dĕnen, welche seine Reden gelĕsen und studīrt haben, ist ein hohes Muster wahrer Beredtsamkeit.* Cicero, admired by all those who have read and studied his orations, is a high pattern of true eloquence. Instead of *welcher von allen denen bewundert wird*, who is admired by all those. *Eingeladen von Ihnen zum Mittagsmahle, nĕhme ich mit Vergnügen Ihre gütige Einladung an.* Invited by you to dinner, I accept with pleasure your kind invitation. Instead of *da ich von Ihnen zum Mittagsmahle eingeladen worden bin*, as I have been invited by you to dinner. *Ich schicke Ihnen meinen Brief ungeĕndigt.* I send you my letter unfinished. Instead of *obschōn er ungeendigt ist*, though it is unfinished. *Ich bin, von Ihnen nicht geliebt und geachtet, unglücklich.* I am, not loved and respected by you, unhappy. Instead of *weil ich von Ihnen nicht geliebt und geachtet werde*, because I am not loved and respected by you. *Shakspeare's Schaūspiele, als dramatische Gedichte betrachtet, sind im hōchsten Grade unregelmäſsig; aber ihre Schönheiten sind so groſs, dass sie jeden Tadel überwiegen.* The plays of Shakspeare, considered as dra-

matic poems, are irregular in the highest degree; but their beauties are so great as to overpower all censure. Instead of *wenn sie als dramatische Gedichte betrachtet werden*, when they are considered as dramatic poems.

The past participle is used instead of the present participle in the following phrases: *Er kommt gelaufen, geritten, gefahren, geflogen, gelacht.* He comes running, riding, driving, flying, laughing. Instead of *er kommt laufend, reitend, fahrend, fliegend, lachend.*

The past participle is employed elliptically in the following instances: *Das heisst gelogen.* That is called a lie. Instead of *das heisst gelogen haben*, and this is said for *das heisst lügen. Geschwiegen!* Be silent! Instead of *es werde geschwiegen. Das Maul gehalten!* Hold your tongue! Instead of *es werde das Maul gehalten. Gewonnen!* Won! Instead of *ich habe gewonnen. Verloren!* Lost! Instead of *ich habe verloren. Keinen ausgenommen.* No one excepted.

The past participle is combined in a particular way with the verbs *wollen, haben* and *wissen.* Examples: *Ich wollte Sie gebéten haben.* (I would have you requested) I would request you. *Er will Nichts von der Sache gesagt wissen.* He does not wish to have any thing said about the matter.

The past participle is very frequently used like an attributive adjective. Examples: *aūsgezeichnet*, distinguished, eminent. *Erfreut*, glad. *Vergnūgt*, gay. *Entzückt*, ravished. *Gelehrt*, learned. When it is joined to a substantive by means of a verb, it is not declined. For instance: *Sie sind sehr gelehrt.* They are very learned. *Ich hatte das Vergnügen, das Laster bestrāft und die Tugend belohnt zu sēhen; aber es war blofs in einem Lústspiele.* I had the pleasure of seeing vice punished and virtue rewarded; but it was only in a comedy. When the past participle is joined immediately with a substantive, it is declined either with the article, or without it. It also admits, declined or indeclined, the degrees of

comparison, if its signification allow it. Examples: *der gepriesene Schriftsteller*, the praised writer; *die gepriesene Tugend*, the praised virtue; *das gepriesene Trauerspiel*, the praised tragedy. *Ein gepriesener Schriftsteller; eine gepriesene Tugend; ein gepriesenes Trauerspiel. Gepriesene Schriftsteller, Tugenden, Trauerspiele. Verachtet*, despised; *verachteter*, more despised; *der, die, das verachtetste*, the most despised. Sometimes the comparative degree of the past participle is formed by *mehr*, more, in order to make easier the pronunciation of it. Example: *Es giebt keinen verachteteren Menschen.* There is no man more despised. Better: *Es giebt keinen mehr verachteten Menschen.*

The past participle, when used adjectively, has a passive power, when it belongs to an active transitive verb; and an active signification, when it belongs to an active intransitive verb, which is not joined with *haben*. Examples: *ein bewunderter Mann*, an admired man, that is, *der bewundert worden ist*, who has been admired. *Ein gereiseter Mann*, that is, *der gereiset ist*, a man, who has been travelling, who has made many journeys.

The past participle is employed also adverbially. For example: *Er trät erzürnt in mein Zimmer.* He entered angrily my room.

The past participle, when joined with the masculine and feminine article, is employed substantively. For instance: *ein Verwundeter*, a wounded man; *eine Verwundete*, a wounded woman.

The syllable *un*, being put before any past participle, makes the signification of it negative. Examples: *ungeliebt*, unloved; *ungerächt*, unavenged; *unbestraft*, unpunished.

Position of the verb.

The verb stands after the subject and before the object, when the natural order of words is not inverted. Examples: *Der Sohn ist länger als der Vater.* The son is taller than the father. *Ich kenne*

ihn und sie. I know him and her. There are several exceptions to this rule. These exceptions are:

1. The verb is placed before the subject in all the phrases, which admit of an inversion, that is, where the natural order is departed from. Examples: *Morgen wird er kommen.* He will come to-morrow. Instead of *er wird morgen kommen. Es ist ein Eilbote angekommen.* There is a messenger arrived. Instead of *ein Eilbote ist angekommen. Hätte ich es doch nicht geglaubt!* I would not have believed it! Instead of *ich hätte es doch nicht geglaubt! Gébe es der Himmel!* May heaven grant it! Instead of *der Himmel gebe es!*

2. The verb stands before the subject after the following words: *dahér; dann; doch; endlich; zulétzt; im Gégentheile; hingegen; daraūs; hieraūs; hierin; indéssen; jedóch; nichts desto weniger; überdiess; übrigens; zuérst; zweitens;* &c. Examples: *daher können Sie mir glauben,* wherefore you may believe me. *Zuletzt muss ich noch bemerken,* lastly I must yet observe. *Ferner muss ich Ihnen sagen,* moreover I must tell you. *Hingegen hatte er,* on the contrary he had. *Übrigens versichere ich Ihnen,* for the rest, I assure you. *Zuerst müssen Sie wissen,* first you must know. However it is to be observed, that the mentioned words may be placed also after the verb, and that in this case the verb is put after the subject. *Sie können mir daher glauben; ich muss zuletzt noch bemerken; ich muss ferner Ihnen sagen; er hatte hingegen; ich versichere Ihnen übrigens; Sie müssen zuerst wissen.*

Observation. After the adverbs *wohér, wohin, woraūs, worin,* the verb is put after the subject. Example: *das Haus, worin ich wohne,* the house, in which I live.

3. The verb is put before the subject at the beginning of the second part of a period. Examples: *Wenn ich reich wäre: so würde ich glücklicher seyn.* If I were rich, I should be happier. *Wenn Sie zu rechter Zeit kommen: so wollen wir zusámmen gehen.* If you come in good time, we will go

together. These phrases may be expressed also thus: *Ich würde glücklicher seyn, wenn ich reich wäre. Wir wollen zusammen gehen, wenn Sie zu rechter Zeit kommen.* In this case the verb stands after the subject.

4. The verb is placed before the subject, when the conjunction *wenn* is omitted. Example: *Wären alle Kinder ihren Ältern gehorsam: so würde das eheliche Leben oft süßer und glücklicher seyn.* If all children were obedient to their parents, conjugal life often should be sweeter and happier. Instead of *wenn alle Kinder ihren Ältern gehorsam wären.*

5. The verb is placed before the subject, when the phrase is interrogative. Examples: *Wann reisen Sie nach England ab?* When do you set out for England? *Glauben Sie mir nicht?* Do you not believe me? *Halten Sie nicht meine Schwester für ein schönes Mädchen?* Do not you think my sister a fine girl?

Observation. To do in English is used in questions and negations, and when it is spoken with energy. But in German the verb *thun* in this manner never is used. Examples: *Kennen Sie ihn?* Do you know him? *Er spricht nicht mit mir.* He does not speak to me. *Schlagen Sie ihn nicht.* Do not strike him. *Ich gehe täglich spazieren.* I do walk every day. *To do* in English is also employed to save the repetition of one or more verbs in the same sentence. But also this in German is not done. Examples: *Sagte ich Ihnen nicht meine Meinung darüber?* Did I not tell you my opinion upon it? *Ja, Sie sagten mir sie.* Yes, you did. *Er lieset und schreibt besser als Sie.* He reads and writes better than you do.

6. The verb is also placed before the subject, when the phrase is exclamatory. Examples: *Wie froh bin ich!* How glad I am! *Wie sehr liebe ich sie!* How much I love her! *Wie sehr schätzt sie Sie!* How much she esteems you! *Wie hübsch sind Sie!* How pretty you are! *Wie betrübt bin ich, dass*

ich Ihnen missfallen habe! How vexed I am for having displeased you!

The verb stands at the end, that is to say, not only after the subject, but also after the object:

1. When the member of the sentence, to which the verb belongs, commences with *welcher; dêr; wêr; was; wésshalb; wesswégen; wo; wohêr; wohin; womit; woraūs; worúm; wovón;* &c. Examples: *mein Freund, welcher* or *der mir diesen Brief schrieb*, my friend, who wrote me this letter. *Ich kenne nūr einen einzigen Menschen, der sich mit Recht meinen Freund nennt.* I know but an only man, who justly calls himself my friend. *Der Ort, wo mein Freund starb, ist mir unvergésslich.* I shall never forget the place, where my friend died.

2. After the following and some other conjunctions: *als; bevōr; bis; da; dafèrn; damit; dass; auf dass; ehe; falls; indém; je; nachdém; ob; obgleīch; obschōn; obwōhl; sobald als; weil; wenn; wiewōhl; wofèrn; wo nicht.* Examples: *als ich in mein Zimmer trāt*, when I entered my room. *Er wird mir schreiben, bevor er mit seinen Kindern aūsgeht.* He will write to me, before he goes out with his children. *Ich wérde ihn nicht besūchen, bis er mich eīngeladen hat.* I will not go and see him, till he has invited me. *Da dieser Mann so edel denkt: so ehre und liebe ich ihn.* Since this man thinks so nobly, I honour and love him. *Ich hoffe, dass Sie mit Ihrer Leīnwand zufrīeden seyn werden.* I hope that you will be content with your linen. *Je länger ich diesen Gégenstand betrachte: desto mehr bewundere ich ihn.* The more I contemplate this object, the more I admire it. *Ich möchte gern wissen, ob viele Leute in der Kirche gewesen sind.* I should like to know, whether many people have been at church. *Weil es einmal geschéhen ist*, since it has been done. *Weil ich mich nicht gern zanke*, because I do not like to quarrel. *Wenn Sie nicht zu ihm gehen*, if you do not go to him. As for the conjunction *dass*, it must be observed, that only a part of the compound tenses of

the verb is placed at the end, when *dass* is omitted. It is, of course, said: *Ich hoffe, Sie werden mit Ihrer Leinwand zufrieden seyn.*

3. When the sentence contains an indirect question. Example: *Er frägte mich, wer diesen Morgen bei mir war.* He asked me, who was with me this morning.

When the past participle stands in compound tenses, it is placed at the end of the phrase in common constructions. Examples: *Haben Sie das Buch gelesen, welches ich Ihnen schickte?* Have you read the book I sent you? But this rule does not take place, when *welcher* or *der*, or a conjunction occurs in the phrase. Examples: *Die Frau, welche Sie gesehen haben, ist sehr gelehrt.* The woman, whom you have seen, is very learned. *Nachdém ich seine Zurückkunft erfahren hatte: ging ich zu ihm.* Having heard of his return, I went to him. The past participle is also not placed at the end of the phrase in the relative future and in the conditional past. Examples: *Wenn ich werde geschrieben haben* (or *wenn ich geschrieben haben werde*): *will ich zu ihm gehen.* When I shall have written, I will go to him. *Ich würde mit ihm gesprochen haben, wenn er hierhér gekommen wäre.* I should have spoken to him, if he had come hither.

The infinitive stands at the end of the phrase. Examples: *Sie dürfen sich gār nicht über seinen Reichthum wundern.* You need not wonder at all at his riches. *Möchte die Sonne Ihres edlen Lebens sehr viele Jahre scheinen!* O that the sun of your noble life would shine very many years! *Ich erkühne mich, Ihnen meine Aūfwartung zu machen.* I make bold to wait upon you. *Er ist im Begriffe, es zu holen.* He is going to fetch it. *Mit Ihnen zu sprechen, kām ich hierhér.* To speak to you, I came hither. This is also the case with the infinitive, when compound tenses are formed by its help. Examples: *Ich werde ihn morgen früh séhen.* I shall see him to-morrow morning. *Er wird ihr sein ganzes Vermögen vermachen.* He will bequeath her all

his fortune. *Wenn ich spazīeren ginge: so würde ich nicht krank seyn.* If I would walk, I should not be sick. When the natural order is departed from, the infinitive stands at the beginning of a sentence. Example: *Kommen will ich zwār; aber schreiben werde ich nicht.* Come, indeed, I will; but write I shall not. After a conjunction the infinitive stands before the auxiliary verb. Example: *Man hat mir gesagt, dass er kommen werde.* I have been told, that he will come. After a conjunction in the future tense of the passive voice one part of the auxiliary verb is put before the past participle, and the other after it, in order to prevent by means of the intervening participle the close reiteration of *werden.* Example: *Ich habe von meinem Sohne gehört, dass Ihre Bücher werden verkauft werden.* I have heard from my son, that your books will be sold. The particle of negation *nicht* is placed after the verb, and in compound tenses before the past participle and the infinitive. Examples: *Ich bin nicht reich.* I am not rich. *Ich habe nicht geschrieben.* I have not written. *Ich werde nicht davón schreiben.* I shall not write of it. *Gehe ich nicht?* Walk I not? *Werde ich nicht glücklich seyn?* Shall I not be happy? *Ich bin noch nicht bereit.* I am not yet ready. The words governed by the verb are placed in common constructions after it and before the particle *nicht.* Example: *Sie sandte mir Ihr Schreiben nicht.* She sent me not your letter. The same is to be observed of *nie* or *niemals.* Example: *Ich habe Ihre Schwester nie gesehen*, or *ich habe nie Ihre Schwester gesehen.* I never have seen your sister.

When two infinitives stand together, of which the one governs the other, the governing one stands after that which is governed. Examples: *Er wollte sie nicht herein kommen lassen.* He would not let them come in. *Ich möchte gern spazieren gehen.* I should like to take a walk. In the following example this rule is not observed, because *müssen* stands in it instead of the past participle *gemusst.*

Ich habe es schōn mehr als zehnmāl hören müssen. I have been obliged to hear it more than ten times.

On the cases governed by verbs.

I.

Nominative case.

When the verb is connected with a substantive, the verb is either governed by the substantive, or the substantive by the verb. When the verb is governed by the substantive, it commonly stands in the infinitive with the particle *zu*. For instance: *Ich billige seine Art zu denken nicht.* I do not approve of his way of thinking. When the substantive is governed by the verb, it stands either in the nominative, or in the genitive, or in the dative, or in the accusative, according as the verb requires one of these cases. If the verb governs the accusative, it governs in its passive voice the nominative. Thus they say: *das Kind wird geliebt*, the child is loved, because it is said in the active voice: *ich liebe das Kind*, I love the child.

The nominative case, as the object, is governed:

1. By the verbs *seyn*, *werden*, *bleiben*, *heiſsen*. Examples: *Er scheint ein gelehrter Mann zu seyn.* He seems to be a learned man. *Kant wār ein groſser Philosōph.* Kant was a great philosopher. *Mein Bruder ist ein Soldāt geworden.* My brother is become a soldier. *Er bleibt ein unwissender Mensch.* He remains an ignorant man. *Ein guter König heiſst mit Recht der Vater seines Landes.* A good king is justly called the father of his country.

2. By the passive of such verbs as in the active govern a double accusative. Such verbs are the following: *nennen; rufen; schelten; schimpfen; taufen.* Examples: *Er wird ein ehrlicher Mann genannt.* He is called an honest man. *Er wird ein Lāgner gescholten.* He is called a liar. *Er wurde ein Narr geschimpft.* He was called a fool. *Das Kind ist Heinrich getauft worden.* The child has been christened Henry.

Observation. Some English verbs have in the passive two nominatives, of which the one is the subject, and the other the object of the phrase. But in German the second case is construed with a preposition. Examples: *Er ist zum Richter ernannt worden.* He has been appointed judge. *Er ist zum Doctor gemacht worden.* He has been made a doctor. *Er wurde für einen Dieb erklärt.* He was declared a thief.

3. By the words *als* and *wie* after the verbs *sich auszeichnen; sich benehmen; sich betragen.* Examples: *Er zeichnet sich als ein guter Kanzelredner aus.* He distinguishes himself as a good pulpit-orator. *Er beträgt sich als ein gehorsamer Sohn.* He conducts himself as an obedient son. It must be observed, that these phrases are elliptical and stand for *er zeichnet sich aus, als ein guter Kanzelredner sich auszeichnet; er beträgt sich, als ein gehorsamer Sohn sich beträgt.* In the following instance the accusative case is required: *Er zeigt sich als einen tüchtigen Feldherrn.* He shows himself an able general.

II.

Genitive case.

The genitive case of the thing is governed:

1. By the following verbs:

Eines Dinges nicht achten, or *auf ein Ding nicht achten*, to care not for a thing. *Einen achten*, to esteem one. *Sich nach Etwas achten*, to conform to something.

Einen eines Dinges anklagen, to accuse somebody of something.

Eines Dinges bedürfen, to need a thing, to stand in need of a thing. *Bedürfen* governs also the accusative case.

Einen eines Besseren belehren, to inform somebody of what is better. Besides this phrase the verb *belehren* is always construed with the preposition *von*. Example: *Er hat mich von der Sache belehrt.* He has informed me of the matter. It is also said:

Er läßt sich nicht belehren. He does not hear reason.

Einen eines Dinges berauben, to bereave, to deprive, to rob one of a thing.

Einen eines Dinges beschuldigen, to charge somebody with something.

Eines Dinges entbéhren, to be deprived of a thing; to spare a thing, to do without it. *Entbéhren* governs also the accusative case. Example: *Wir hätten seiner Gesellschaft* or *seine Gesellschaft entbéhren können.* We could have been dispensed with his company.

Einen eines Dinges entblöſsen or *Einen von einem Dinge entblöſsen*, to strip one of something.

Einen eines Dinges entlassen, to dismiss, to discharge one from a thing.

Einen eines Dinges entledigen or *entladen*, to discharge one from any thing.

Einen seines Amtes entsetzen, to displace one.

Einen eines Dinges entübrigen, to dispense one with a thing.

Eines Dinges erwähnen, to mention a thing. *Erwähnen* governs also the accusative case. Example: *Er erwähnte Ihres Namens* or *Ihren Namen.* He mentioned your name.

Eines Dinges gedenken, to think of a thing, to remember a thing.

Eines Dinges genieſsen, to enjoy a thing. *Genieſsen* governs also the accusative case. Example: *Er genieſset seines Lébens* or *sein Leben.* He enjoys his life.

Eines Dinges geschweigen, to pass over a thing with silence.

Einen eines Wunsches gewähren, to grant to one his wish, that which he wishes. But *gewähren* is commonly joined with the dative of the person, and the accusative of the thing. Example: *Ich gewähre Ihnen Ihre Bitte.* I grant to you your request.

Gottes harren or *auf Gott harren*, to trust in God.

Eines Dinges pflegen, to take care of a thing.

Eines Dinges or *Jemandes schonen*, to spare a

thing or somebody. *Schonen* governs also the accusative case. Example: *Der Tōd schonet Niemandes* or *Niemanden.* Death spares nobody.

Eines Dinges or *Jemandes spotten*, to mock, to deride a thing or somebody. It is also said: *über eine Sache* or *über Einen spotten.*

Einen eines Dinges überführen or *überweīsen*, to convict one of a thing.

Einen eines Dinges überhēben, to dispense one with a thing.

Eines Dinges or *Jemandes vergessen*, to forget a thing or somebody. The verb *vergessen* always governs the accusative case, when it is properly taken. But when it is used in a figurative sense, it governs the accusative and genitive. Examples: *Ich habe mein Schnupftuch vergessen.* I have left my handkerchief behind. *Ich werde nie Ihre* or *Ihrer Wohlthaten vergessen.* I shall never forget your benefits.

Einen eines Dinges or *von einem Dinge versichern*, to assure one of a thing. *Ich bin seiner Liebe* or *von seiner Liebe versichert.* I am assured of his love. *Sich eines Dinges* or *Jemandes versichern*, to secure something or somebody. *Versichern* governs also the accusative of the thing. Then it governs the dative of the person. Example: *Ich versichere Ihnen, dass ich arm bin.* I assure you that I am poor. *Ich versichere es Ihnen.* I assure it to you. *Ein Schiff versichern*, to assure a ship.

Einen des Landes (instead of *aus dem Lande*) *verweisen*, to banish one from the country, to exile one.

Eines Dinges wāhrnēhmen, to give attention to a thing. When *wahrnehmen* is properly taken, and consequently signifies to perceive, it governs the accusative case. Example: *Ich nahm ihn nicht wahr.* I did not perceive him. This verb however governs also in some figurative phrases the accusative case. Such a phrase is the following: *eine Gelegenheit wahrnehmen*, to take hold of an opportunity.

Seines Amtes warten to attend to one's office.

Einen eines Dinges würdigen, to think one worthy of something.

The genitive case of the thing or the person is governed:

2. By the following verbs, which have the pronoun *sich* before them:

Sich einer Sache or *eine Sache ánmaſsen*, to pretend to a thing, *Ich maſse mir dieses an.* This I pretend to.

Sich Jemandes or *einer Sache ánnehmen*, to interest one's self for somebody or in a thing.

Sich einer Sache bedienen, to make use of a thing.

Sich einer Sache befleiſsigen, to apply one's self to a thing.

Sich eines Dinges begében, to resign something.

Sich einer Sache bemächtigen or *bemeistern*, to make one's self master of a thing.

Sich eines Dinges enthalten, to abstain from something.

Sich eines Dinges entschlagen, to deliver one's self from a thing.

Sich eines Dinges entsinnen, to recollect a thing.

Sich Jemandes or *über Jemanden erbarmen*, to have mercy on somebody. Example: *Er erbarmt sich der Armen* or *über die Armen.* He has mercy on the poor.

Sich eines Dinges or *an ein Ding erinnern*, to remember, to recollect a thing. Example: *Ich kann mich nicht des Ortes* or *an den Ort erinnern, wo ich jenes Dénkmal ángetroffen habe.* I cannot recollect the place, where I have met with that monument.

Sich eines Dinges erwehren, to resist something.

Sich eines Dinges or *über ein Ding freuen*, to rejoice at a thing. Example: *Er freuet sich seiner Kinder* or *über seine Kinder.* He rejoices at his children. *Sich eines Dinges erfreuen*, to enjoy a thing.

Sich eines Dinges getrösten, to hope for something with confidence.

Es jammert mich dieses Kindes (instead of *dieses Kind jammert mich*). I pity this child.

Sich einer Sache rühmen, to boast of something.

Sich eines Dinges schämen, to be ashamed of a thing.

Es verlohnet sich der Mühe nicht. It is not worth while. It is more correctly said: *Es lohnet die Mühe nicht.*

Sich eines Dinges von Einem versehen, to expect something from one. *Ehe ich mich dessen versah*, before I grew aware of it.

Sich eines Dinges weigern, to refuse something.

The genitive case is employed:

3. After the verb *seyn* in the following phrases: *Ich kann nicht Ihrer Meinung seyn.* I cannot be of your opinion. *Er ist immer gutes Muthes.* He always is good-humoured. *Ich bin Willens*, I intend. *Ich will des Todes seyn, wenn ich es weiſs.* Let me die if I know it. Also after *sterben* the genitive case is used in the two following phrases: *Er starb Hungers.* He died with hunger. *Er starb eines natürlichen Todes.* He died of a natural death.

III.

Dative case.

The dative case is governed:

1. By the following verbs, which at the same time govern the accusative case. The accusative is then called the case of the thing, and the dative the case of the person.

Einem Etwas ábbitten, to beg a person's pardon for a thing.

Einem Etwas ábfordern, to ask a thing from one. *Man fordert mir Etwas ab.* I am asked for a thing.

Einem Etwas ábkaufen, to buy something of one.

Einem Etwas ábschlagen or *verweigern*, to refuse one something.

Einem Etwas beĭlegen, zūschreiben, to attribute, to ascribe something to one.

Einem Etwas berichten, to report something to one.

Ich bilde mir diesen Úmstand ein, or *ich stelle mir diesen Umstand vōr.* I imagine this circumstance.

Einem Etwas dārbieten, to offer one something.

Ich getraue mir es nicht. I dare not do it.

Einem Etwas heifsen, to desire one to do something.

Einem Etwas lehren, to teach one something. Many Germans use the verb *lehren* with two accusatives, and say of course for instance: *Einen Musik lehren*, to teach one music. But this double accusative cannot take place, because it is not said in the passive voice: *er ist Musik gelehrt worden*, he has been taught music, but: *ihm ist Musik gelehrt worden*, music has been taught to him. But when *lehren* is employed only with the case of the person, this person must be placed in the accusative. Example: *Er lehret mich.* He teaches me.

Einem ein Geschenk mit Etwas machen, to make one a present of something.

Einem Etwas rathen, to advise one something. *Man hat mir gerathen*, I have been advised. *Einem Etwas ábrathen* or *widerrāthen*, to dissuade one from something.

Einem Etwas rauben, to rob one of something. *Er wollte mir dieses Vergnügen rauben.* He intended to rob me of this pleasure.

Einem Etwas sagen, to tell one something.

Einem einen Brief schreiben, to write one a letter. It is also said: *an Jemanden einen Brief schreiben*, or simply *an Einen schreiben.*

Einem Etwas versprechen or *zūsagen*, to promise one something.

Einem Etwas zeigen, to show one something. *Man zeigte mir ihr Bildniss.* I was shown her picture.

Einem Etwas zurückgeben, to return one something.

The dative case is governed:

2. By the following verbs, which are used with only one case, and admit only the third person singular and plural of the passive voice, in which they govern likewise the dative case.

Einem ángehören, to belong to one.

Einem ánhangen, to adhere to one.

Einem ánliegen, to press one.

Einem aūfwarten, to wait on one.

Einem aūsweichen, to make way to one; to shun one.

Einém begēgnen, to meet with one.

Einem beīfallen, *beīpflichten*, *beīstimmen*, to be of the same opinion with one.

Einem beīkommen, to get at one; to come up with one.

Einem beīstehen, to assist one.

Einem für Etwas danken, to thank one for something.

Einem dienen, to serve one. Example: *Er dient einem guten Herrn.* He serves a good master. *Bedienen* governs the accusative case. Example: *Er bediente mich.* He waited on me.

Einem mit Etwas drohen, to threaten one with something. *Bedrohen* governs the accusative case. Example: *Er drohete ihm* or *er bedrohete ihn mit dem Tode.* He threatened him with death.

Einem einblasen, *einhelfen*, to prompt one. These verbs admit also an accusative of the thing.

Einem entfliehen, *entgehen*, *entschlüpfen*, to escape from one.

Einem Dinge entsprechen, to answer to a thing, to correspond to a thing.

Einem flūchen, to curse one.

Einem folgen, *nāchfolgen*, to follow one. *Ich folge Ihnen.* I follow you. *Seine Bedienten folgten ihm nach.* He was followed by his servants. *Befolgen* governs the accusative case. Example: *Ich befolge Ihren Rath.* I follow your advice.

Einem fröhnen, to serve one without pay.

Einem an die Hand gehen, to assist one.

Einem gehorchen, to obey one.

Einem gefallen, to please one.

Einem glauben, to believe one. *Wenn man ihm glauben kann*, if he may be believed. *Ich glaube Ihnen; aber mir wird nicht geglaubt.* I believe you; but I am not believed. *Glauben* is also used with the preposition *an*, and an accusative of the thing.

Examples: *Ich glaube an Gott.* I believe in God. *Eine Sache glauben*, to believe a thing, to think it true.

Einem gleichen, gleich kommen, to be like one, to come up with one.

Einem helfen, to help, to aid one.

Einem klingeln, to ring a little bell, in order to call for one.

Einem kosten, to cost one. This verb is not to be confounded with *kosten*, to taste. *Dieses Buch kostet mir drei Thaler*, this book costs me three dollars, is more correct than *dieses Buch kostet mich drei Thaler.*

Einem leuchten, to light one.

Einem lohnen, to reward one. *Sie lohnen mir für meine guten Dienste schlecht.* You reward me ill for my good services. *Lohnen* is also used with two cases, of which the one is the dative of the person, and the other the accusative of the object. Example: *Der Himmel lohne es Ihnen.* Heaven reward you for it. *Belohnen* governs the accusative case. Example: *Gott belohnt die guten Menschen.* God rewards the good men.

Einem nāchahmen, to imitate one. *Nachahmen* governs also the accusative case, by which the imitation of any external propriety is expressed. *Er ahmt ihm nach.* He proposes him to himself for a pattern. *Er ahmt ihn nach.* He imitates him, that is to say, his manners, his voice, &c.

Einem nāchlaufen, to run after one.

Einem nahen or *sich Einem nähern*, to approach one.

Einem nutzen, to be useful to one. *Nutzen* is not to be confounded with *nützen*, which governs the accusative case, and signifies to derive advantage from a thing.

Einer Sache obliegen, to apply one's self to a thing.

Einem predigen, vorpredigen, to read one a lecture.

Einem schaden, to hurt one.

Einem schmeicheln, to flatter one.

Einem Dinge steuern, to obviate a thing.

Einem trauen, vertrauen, to trust one.
Einem trotzen, to defy one.
Einem unterliegen, to be overcome by one.
Einem voran gehen, to precede one.
Einem vorleuchten, to be a pattern to one.
Einem vorschweben, to wave before one's eyes.
Einem wehren, to check one.
Sich Einem widersetzen, to oppose one.
Einem widersprechen, to contradict one.
Einem widerstehen, to resist one.
Einem wohlwollen, to wish one well.
Einem zufallen, to fall to one.
Einem zuhören, to listen to one.
Einem zureden, to exhort one.
Einem zürnen (or *auf Einen zürnen*), to be angry with one.
Einem Spiele zusehen, zuschauen, to be a spectator of a game.
Einem zusetzen, to press one.
Einem zuvorkommen, to prevent one.

The dative case is governed:

3. By the following verbs, of which many are used only in the third person singular and plural of the active voice: *es ahnet mir*, my heart forebodes, I foresee. *Ahnen* is not to be confounded with *ahnden*, to punish, which is properly one word with *ahnen*. *Es behagt mir*, I like it. *Es bekommt mir*, it does me much good. *Es beliebt mir*, it pleases me. *Es ekelt mir* (instead of *ich ekele mich*) *vor diesem Fleische.* This meat creates me disgust. *Es fällt* or *kommt mir ein*, it falls or comes into my mind. *Es gebricht mir an ...*, I want. *Es gebührt mir*, it belongs to me. *Es gedeiht mir*, it does me much good. *Es gefällt mir*, it pleases me. *Es missfällt mir*, it displeases me. *Es gelingt* or *geräth mir*, I succeed in it. *Es genügt mir an ...*, I content myself with .... *Es geziemt* or *ziemt mir*, it becomes me. *Es gilt mir*, it is aimed at me. The dative case of the person of the verb *gelten* is commonly omitted and put only the accusative case of the object. Example: *Es gilt sein Leben.* His life is con-

cerned. Instead of *es gilt ihm das Leben. Es grauet mir davōr*, it disgusts me. *Es kommt mir eine Furcht, eine Lust an*, a fear comes upon me, I have a mind. *Es kommt mir zu*, it belongs to me. *Es liegt mir ob*, it is incumbent on me. *Es mangelt mir an . . .*, I want. *Diese Speise sāgt mir nicht zu.* This meat does not agree with me. *Es schaudert mir* (instead of *ich schaudere)*, I shudder. *Es scheint mir*, it seems to me. *Es schwindelt mir*, my head swims. *Es steht mir zu*, I have a right. *Es träumt mir* or *mir träumt* (instead of *ich träume)*, I dream. *Es verschlägt mir Nichts*, it makes no difference to me. *Es wässert mir der Mund*, my mouth waters. The dative case expresses also advantage or disadvantage. Examples: *Dir lächen die Felder.* To thee the fields smile. *Dir scheinet die Sonne.* For thee the sun shines. *Dir heulen die Winde.* To thee (against thee) the winds howl.

IV.

Accusative case.

The accusative case is governed:

1. By verbs active transitive. Examples: *Einen ergetzen (ergötzen)*, to delight one; *Einen* (or *mit Einem) sprechen*, to speak to one. *Einen überlēben*, to outlive one. *Einen stechen*, to sting one. *Das Clavīer, die Orgel spielen*, to play on the harpsichord, on the organ. *Billard spielen*, to play billiards. *Karten* (or *in der Karte) spielen*, to play at cards.

Observations.

1. *Auf einem Instrumente spielen* is employed, when a person plays on an instrument just now where I am speaking.

2. There are some verbs, that govern a double accusative. Examples: *Ich heiſse* or *nenne ihn einen Helden.* I call him a hero. *Er schilt* or *schimpft mich einen Lügner.* He calls me a liar. *Ich frügte ihn verschiedene Dinge.* I asked him several things. As for the verb *fragen*, it is also used with the prepositions *um* and *nāch. Einen um Etwas fragen*, to

ask one about something. *Einen nach Etwas fragen*, to ask one for something.

3. When a verb has not only its object after it, but when the peculiar part of the object, towards which the action is directed, is also added with a preposition, that object must be placed either in the dative, or in the accusative. The object must be put in the dative in the following instances: *Er blies mir in das Gesicht. Er gaffte mir in das Gesicht. Er sah mir in die Augen. Er hauchte mir vor die Stirn. Er raunte mir in das Ohr. Es brauset mir im Kopfe. Es sticht mir in die Augen. Er klopfte mir auf die Finger. Er schlūg mir auf den Kopf. Er stiefs mir an das Bein. Er trāt mir auf den Fufs. Er warf mir an das Gesicht.* If the accusative were put in the five last phrases, they would have another meaning. The object must be placed in the accusative in the following examples: *Es brennt mich im Leibe. Es juckt mich am Arme. Es sticht mich in der Seite. Das sticht mich ins Herz.*

The accusative case is employed:

2. When the action expressed by the transitive verb is directed towards the subject itself. Examples: *Ich beklage mich über ihn.* I complain of him. *Ich betrübe mich über ihn.* I am afflicted at him. *Ich wundere mich über ihn.* I wonder at him. Some verbs however are excepted.

The accusative case is governed:

3. By several verbs, which are used either only in the third person singular and plural, or have also a complete conjugation. Examples: *Es befällt mich eine Unpässlichkeit.* I am seized with a disorder. *Es befremdet mich*, I strange at it. *Es bekümmert mich*, it gives me sorrow. *Es betrifft mich* or *es gehet mich an*, it respects me. *Es wundert mich*, I wonder.

On the use of verbs with a preposition.

The prepositions, with which verbs are used, are the following: *an; auf; für; in; mit; nāch; über; um.* Examples:

Sich an Einem rächen, to revenge one's self of one, to take revenge on one.

An Einen denken (or *Eines denken*), to think of one.

Auf Einen warten, to wait for one.

Einen für Etwas bestrafen, to punish one for something.

In Einen dringen, to press one.

Sich in eine Sache mengen or *mischen*, to meddle with a thing.

Einen mit einem Anderen vergleichen, to compare one with another.

Nach Einem schicken, to send for one.

Sich über eine Sache kränken, to be vexed at something.

Um Etwas spielen, to play for something.

Einen um Etwas betriegen, to cheat one out of something.

Observations.

1. The English prepositions *by*, *with*, *of*, when used after the passive voice of verbs, are expressed in German by *von*. Examples: *Er wurde von seinem Feinde erschlagen.* He was slain by his enemy. *Er wurde von der Schönheit dieses jungen Frauenzimmers gefesselt.* He was taken with the beauty of that young woman. *Dieses wär sehr wohl von ihm gethän.* This was very well done of him.

2. On the question *whither?* after verbs implying a motion from one place towards another, the preposition *to*, which accompanies them in English, is rendered in German by the preposition *nach* before the names of towns and countries, if it be not the name of a country, that is of the feminine gender in German; in which case the preposition *to* is expressed in German by *in* with the accusative. Examples: *Als ich nach Berlin kam: schrieb ich ihm einen Brief.* When I came to Berlin, I wrote him a letter. *Ist der Wēg nach Leipzig gut?* Is the road good to Leipzig? *Ich werde künftiges Jahr nach Frankreich reisen.* I shall travel to France next

year. *Ich habe die Reise dieses gelehrten Mannes in die Schweiz mit vielem Vergnügen gelêsen.* I have read with much pleasure the travel of this learned man in Switzerland.

3. On the question *where?* after verbs not implying a motion from one place towards another, the prepositions *at* and *in*, which accompany them in English, are rendered in German by the preposition *in* before the names of towns and countries. Examples: *Mein Bruder ist in* or *zu Berlin.* My brother is at Berlin. *Werden Sie sich einige Jahre in Deutschland aūfhalten?* Will you stay some years in Germany?

On the use of the verbs dürfen, können, lassen, mögen, müssen, sollen and wollen.

I.

D ü r f e n.

Dürfen signifies to dare; to be permitted; to need. The following examples will illustrate the use of this verb: *Noch kein Fuſs hat in dieses grausenvolle Dunkel eīndringen dürfen.* Yet no foot has dared to pierce these gloomy horrors. *Wenn ich so sagen darf,* if I may dare to say so. *Er darf Alles thun, was er kann.* He may do all he is able. *Er darf nicht in das Haus kommen.* He is not allowed to come into the house. *Darf ich fragen?* May I ask? *Darf sie kommen?* Is she permitted to come? *Sie dürfen es wissen.* You may know it. *Wenn ich mit ihm sprechen dürfte,* if I were permitted to speak to him. *Es dürfte vielleicht wahr seyn.* It might perhaps be true. *Sie dürfen sich nicht fürchten.* You need not fear. *Er darf blōſs reden.* He needs only to speak. *Es dürfte alsdann nicht nōthwendiger Weise der Fall seyn.* It need not then necessarily be the case.

II.

K ö n n e n.

Können has the following significations: to be

able; to know; to be permitted. Examples: *Gott kann Alles thun, was er will.* God can do all he willeth. *Vielleicht kann dieser Mann uns nützlich seyn.* Perhaps this man may be useful to us. *Ich kann nicht umhin zu bemerken*, I cannot forbear observing. *Es kann seyn.* It may be. *Wenn ich könnte: so würde ich gehen.* If I could, I should walk. *Er kann seine Aufgabe (hersagen).* He can say his lesson, he knows his lesson by heart. *Er kann schöne Lieder (singen).* He can sing pretty songs, he knows pretty songs. *Können Sie Deutsch?* Do you know German? *Er kann Englisch.* He knows English. *Sie können ihm versichern, dass ich es weifs.* You may assure him that I know it. *Dass wir betrogen werden, kann Anderen eine Warnung seyn.* Our being deceived may be a warning to others.

III.

Lassen.

Lassen signifies to let, and must variously be expressed in English. Examples: *Lassen Sie ihn hier.* Let him stay here. *Lassen Sie uns gehen.* Let us go. *Herr! lasse mich nichts Böses thun.* Lord! suffer me not to do ill. *Das lässt sich nicht thun.* That is not to be done. *Das lässt sich nicht begreifen.* That is not to be comprehended. *Es lässt sich Niemand weder sehen, noch hören.* There is nobody to be seen nor heard. *Er lässt sich Nichts sagen.* He shuts his ear to every exhortation. *Er lässt mit sich sprechen.* He is easy to be spoken to. *Ich habe mir sagen lassen*, I have been told. *Lassen Sie sich etwas Neues erzählen.* I come to tell you some news. *Er wird sich es nicht abschlagen lassen.* He will not be denied. *Er liefs sich träumen*, he imagined. *Man liefs ihn rufen.* He was called for. *Lassen Sie es machen, sobald als Sie können.* Get it done as soon as you can. *Er lässt sich einen Rock machen.* He gets a coat made him. *Er liefs ihn umbringen.* He caused him to be killed. *Er lässt mich ihm vorlesen.* He causes me to read

to him. *Liegen lassen*, to leave. *Seyn lassen, zufrieden lassen, in Ruhe lassen*, to let alone.

Observation. When the verb *lassen* has an infinitive after it, the dative or the accusative is put, according as the sense requires one of these cases. Examples: *Er liefs mir sagen, dass er mich zu sprechen wünschte.* He sent me word that he wished to speak to me. *Er liefs mich nicht meine Meinung sagen.* He suffered me not to tell my opinion. *Er liefs mich seine Freude merken.* I perceived his joy.

IV.

M ö g e n.

Mögen has the following significations: to be permitted; to like. Examples: *Er mag lachen, er mag weinen, ich verbiete es ihm nicht.* He may laugh, he may cry, I do not forbid it him. *Es mag seyn.* It may be. *Er mag so reich seyn als er will, er muss sterben.* Let him be ever so rich, he must die. *Sie mögen es thun.* You may do it. *Ich mag nicht mehr essen.* I do not like to eat more. *Ich mag es nicht thun.* I do not like to do it. *Er mag es nicht hören.* He dislikes to hear it. *Ich mag es nicht (haben).* I do not like it. *Ich mag Nichts mehr (haben).* I do not like any more. *Ich mag dieses Brōt nicht (essen).* I do not like this bread. *Ich mag diesen Wein nicht (trinken).* I do not like this wine. *Mögen* expresses also a possibility, a wish, a desire, and the power of doing any thing. Examples: *Es möchte (es könnte) rēgnen.* It might rain. *Es möchte sich ereignen,* it might happen. *Möge er kommen.* May he come. *Ich möchte wohl Etwas davón haben.* I should like to have some part of it. *Ich möchte wohl lésen.* I should like to read (if I could). *Ich möchte lieber gelehrt seyn.* I had rather be learned. *Wér mag deine Wunder erzählen?* Who can recount thy wonders? Better: *Wer vermag deine Wunder zu erzählen?*

V.

M ü s s e n.

Müssen is employed in the following manner:

Ich brauche Geld, ich muss durchaus welches haben. I want money, I must absolutely have some. *Ich muss einen Brief schreiben.* I am to write a letter. *Müssen Sie gehen? Ja, ich muss.* Are you to go? Yes; I am. *Es muss seyn.* It must be. *Sie müssen einen neuen Rock haben.* You must have a new coat. *Ich musste es thun.* I was obliged to do it.

VI.

Sollen.

Sollen is used in the following manner: *Ich soll dahin gehen.* I am to go thither. *Ich soll das thun.* I am to do that. *Soll ich es thun, oder nicht?* Am I to do it, or not? *Was soll ich damit machen?* What am I to do with it? *Ich soll Ihnen Gesellschaft leisten.* I am to bear you company. *Was soll das heissen?* What is the meaning of that? *Was wollen Sie, dass ich thun soll?* What would you have me do? *Sie sollen schreiben.* You are to write. *Ich will, dass Sie schreiben sollen.* I would have you write. *Es soll und muss so seyn.* It must needs be so. *Aber wie soll man ihm helfen?* But how to aid him? *Solche Leute sollte man bestrafen.* Such people should be punished. *Sie sollten es thun?* You ought to do it. *Dieses sollte geschehen.* This ought to be done. *Ich hätte ihm schreiben sollen.* I ought to have written to him. *Sie hätten ihn bezahlen sollen.* You ought to have paid him.

Sollen is often used with an ellipsis, when the infinitive of some other verb is to be supplied. Examples: *Was soll ich?* Supply *thun?* What shall I do? What am I to do? *Was sollen diese Kränze?* Supply *bedeuten.* What mean these wreaths? *Wozu soll mir das Geld?* Supply *dienen* or *nutzen.* Of what use is the money to me? *Wem soll dieser Strauss?* Supply *seyn.* For whom is this nosegay intended? *Güter, welche weiter sollen.* Supply *gehen* or *geschickt werden* before *sollen.* Goods to be sent further.

Sollen signifies also to be admitted, to be supposed; to be said. Examples: *Er soll seinen Satz be-*

wiesen haben. He is admitted to have proved his position. *Er soll mich nicht beleidigt haben.* He is supposed not to have offended me *Es soll wahr seyn.* It is said to be true. *Er soll gestorben seyn.* He is said to have died. *Sie soll tōdt seyn.* She is said to be dead. *Der König soll ángekommen seyn.* The king is said to be arrived. *Die Türken sollen geschlagen worden seyn.* The Turks are said to have been beaten. *Diese Dinge sollen sich zūgetragen haben.* These things are said to have happened.

The conjunctive mood of the preterimperfect tense of the verb *sollen* is very frequently employed with the infinitive of another verb in such phrases as begin with the conjunction *wenn. Wenn Sie ihm etwa begegnen sollten,* if you should happen to meet with him. *Sollte er etwa kommen,* should he happen to come. *Wenn sie kommen sollte,* if she should come. *Wenn das so seyn sollte,* if that should be so. *Wenn sich das Wetter ändern sollte: so wollen wir aūsgehen.* If the weather should change, we will go out. *Einem Lūgner ist nicht zu glauben, wenn er auch die Wahrheit reden sollte.* A liar is not to be believed, though he speak the truth. Also in the following and similar phrases the conjunctive mood of the preterimperfect tense of *sollen* is used: *Man sollte es für únmōglich halten.* One should think it impossible. *Man sollte meinen,* one would think.

VII.

Wollen.

Wollen signifies to be willing; to be ready; to pretend; to intend; to want. Examples: *Ich will gehen,* I will go. *Was will ich machen?* What can I do? *Wollen Sie spazieren gehen?* Have you a mind to take a walk? *Er will fliegen, und hat keine Flügel.* He wishes to fly, and has no wings. *Wenn Gott will,* if God pleases. *Ich wollte gern,* I would fain. *Ich wollte lieber schlafen.* I had rather sleep. *Sie will ōhnmächtig werden.* She is ready to faint away. *Ich will ihn um Schutz bitten.* I am going to ask protection of him. *Er will gehōrt haben.* he

pretends to have heard. *Wohin wollen Sie gehen?* Where do you intend to go to? *Zu wem wollen Sie?* To whom do you want to speak? *Was wollen Sie?* What do you want? *Ich will einige Bücher kaufen.* I want to buy some books. *Diese Sache will sorgfältig in Acht genommen seyn.* This matter requires to be taken much care of. *Willst du, dass dich eine Schlange zweimal steche?* Wouldst thou have a serpent sting thee twice? *Ich will nicht, dass mein Leser sich einbilde*, I would not have my reader imagine.

Section V.

Exercises on German verbs.

Exercises on the auxiliary verbs.

I.

He was not at home. Be so kind. Have the goodness. It has not been possible for me. Are you tired? I had much trouble in the beginning. *Here I am. Here it is. He had a mind to learn German. You are very diligent to-day. Am I not always so? I shall always be ready to lend you good books. Your sisters are more diligent than you. You have very fine china. They had a large garden. We had a little library. Have you your pencil? Is your garden far from town? We should be glad of your company. This flower has a charming smell. She will be glad to see you. It has been very hot for some days. Let us have a little patience. It grows late. It is long since we have had the pleasure of your company. I hope that to-morrow we shall be longer together. We sometimes have summer in autumn, and winter in spring. Have you ever been there? Several persons have been there. I have never had a true friend. My sisters have never been happy. Few men have had **so powerful a recommendation. Has nobody been here ***to ask for me? Are the horses tired? How long was he here?

At home, *zu Hause.*
so kind, *so gütig.*
the goodness, *die Güte*, 7.
for me, *mir.*
possible, *möglich.*
tired, *müde.*
much, *viel.*
the trouble, *die Mühe*, 7.
in the, *(in dem) im.*
the beginning, *der Anfang*, 1.
* *Hier bin ich.*
a mind, *Lust.*
to learn German, *Deutsch zu lernen.*
to-day, *heute.*
very diligent, *sehr fleißig.*
so, *es.*
not always, *nicht immer.*
ready, *bereit.*
to lend, * *leihen.* The verbs marked with an asterisk are irregular.
fine, *schön.*
china, *das Porzellān*, 1.
by, *von*, with the dative.
large, *groß.*
little, *klein.*
the library, *die Büchersammlung*, 7.
far, *weit.*
from town, *von der Stadt.*
of, *über*, with the accusative.
the company, *die Gesellschaft*, 7.
glad, *erfreut.*
charming, *bezaubernd.*
smell, *der Geruch*, 1.
to see, * *sehen.*
some days, *einige Tage.*
very hot, *sehr heiß.*
a little patience, *ein wenig Geduld.*
late, *spät.*
long, *lange.*
since, *seit, seitdém.*
the pleasure, *das Vergnügen*, 4.
to hope, *hoffen.*
that, *dass.*
to-morrow, *morgen.*
together, *beisámmen.*
sometimes, *bisweilen.*
summer, *Sommer.*
in, *(in dem) im.*
autumn, *der Herbst*, 1.
in, *(in dém) im.*
spring, *der Frühling*, 1.
ever, *immer.*
there, *da, dort.*
several, *mehrere, verschiedene.*
the person, *die Persōn*, 7.
never, *nie, niemals.*
true, *wahr.*
the friend, *der Freund*, 1.
happy, *glücklich.*
few men, *wenige Menschen.*
** *eine (so mächtige) so Viel vermögende Empféhlung.*
nobody, *Niemand.*
*** *um nach mir zu fragen.*
the horse, *das Pférd*, 1.

II.

Since thou art not sure of an hour, *throw not away a minute. If thou hast ** wit and learning, get *** wisdom and modesty also. The finest talents would be useless, if they were not employed for the use of others. If we had no faults ourselves, we should not take so much pleasure in remarking them in others. Your piano forte must be tuned. Where was it bought? Cicero has always been admired and imitated. The dog has been killed by my brother. Most men are guided by custom, interest and passion, and not by reason. Merit is

not always rewarded. We all were once young. Are you still the same you were before? He has been fully convinced of the truth. The memory of this deed will be long conserved. Our master is paid every month. Grammar ought to be studied by all scholars. The spirit was seen even in the daytime. In the year 1611 some spots were first discovered in the sun. It would be very impolite in me. Men were in the times past not so ignorant as we imagine. If you had been more prudent, you would have been happier. Now he grows better and better. They have grown poorer by little and little. Thou wast so kind as to lend me a book. He had often been in my company, and always with pleasure. It is very well, when children are obedient to their parents. Sometimes we are not inclined to follow the advice of sensible people. By prudence thou wilt be preserved from dangers. Young animals, which have one common mother, sport together. He was no more punished. You have never been a good man. We had been sick. I had been offended by him. They will repent of it and become my friends. I have been ill last night.

Since, *weil.*
sure, *gewiss*, with the genitive.
the hour, *die Stunde*, 7.
* *so wird nicht wég. Weg* is put after *Minute.*
a minute, *eine Minute*, 7.
** *Verstand und Gelehrsamkeit.*
I get, *ich * erwerbe mir. So* must be added.
*** *auch Weisheit und Bescheidenheit.*
the talent, *die Natürgabe*, 7.
useless, *únnütz.*
for the use, *zum Nutzen.*
others, *Ándere.*
to employ, *gebrauchen, anwenden.*
we ourselves, *wir selbst.*
the fault, *der Féhler*, 4.
in remarking them, *über die Wahrnehmung desselben.*
in, *an*, with the dative.
to take pleasure, *Vergnügen * empfinden.*
the piano forte, *das Pianoforte.*
to tune, *stimmen.*
where, *wo.*
to buy, *kaufen.*
always, *immer, stets.*
to admire, *bewundern.*
to imitate, *nāchahmen.*
the dog, *der Hund*, 1.
by, *von*, with the dative.
to kill, *tödten.*
most men, *die meisten Menschen.*
to guide, *leiten.*
by, *durch*, with the accusative.
custom, *die Gewohnheit*, 7.
interest, *der Eigennutz*, 1.
passion, *die Leidenschaft*, 7.
reason, *die Vernunft*, 8.

merit, *das Verdienst*, 1.
to reward, *belohnen.*
once, *einmāl, einst.*
young, *jung.*
still, *noch.*
the same, *der nämliche. Dér* must be added in German.
before, *zuvōr.*
fully, *völlig, vollkommen.*
of, *von.*
the truth, *die Wahrheit*, 7.
to convince, *überzeügen.*
the memory, *das Ándenken*, 4.
of, *an*, with the accusative.
the deed, *die Thāt*, 7.
to conserve, * *erhalten.*
every month, *jeden Mōnat, mōnatlich.*
to pay, *bezahlen.*
ought, *muss.*
by, *von.*
the scholar, *der Schüler*, 4.
to study, *studiren.*
the spirit, *der Geist*, 2.
even, *sogār.*
in the daytime, *am Tage.*
first, *zuērst.*
the spot, *der Flecken*, 4.
in, *an*, with the dative.
the sun, *die Sonne*, 7.
to discover, *entdecken.*
impolite, *únhöflich.*
in, *von.*
past, *vorig.*
the time, *die Zeit*, 7.
ignorant, *únwissend.*
as, *als.*
to imagine, *sich einbilden.*
prudent, *klūg, verständig.*
now, *jetzt.*
better and better, *immer besser.*
have, *sind.*
by little and little, *nāch und nach.*
poor, *arm.*
as is here not rendered in German.
often, *oft.*
with, *mit*, with the dative.
very well, *sehr gūt.*
when, *wenn.*
the parents, *die Ältern.*
obedient, *gehōrsam.*
inclined, *geneigt.*
the advice, *der Rāth*, 1.
sensible people, *verständige Leute.*
to follow, *folgen*, with the dative.
by prudence, *durch Klūgheit.*
from, *vor*, with the dative.
the danger, *die Gefahr*, 7.
to preserve, *bewahren.*
the animal, *das Thier*, 1.
common, *gemeinschaftlich.*
to sport, *spielen.*
together, *zusámmen mit einander.*
no more, *nicht mehr.*
to punish, *strafen.*
sick, *krank.*
by, *von.*
to offend, *beleidigen,*
I repent of it, *ich bereue es.*
ill, *únwohl.*
last night, *gestern Abends.*

Exercises on regular and irregular verbs.

I.

We shall have a storm this evening. Patience makes all things easy. Art polishes and improves nature. I wish you joy *with all my heart. He professes the noblest sentiments. When he had said this, he fell asleep. Taste is improved by science

and philosophy. The attainment of a correct and elegant style is an object, which demands **application and labour. Virtue is praised by many, and she would be desired also, if her worth were really known. He made the child cry. He could not answer to what he was asked. I have showed to her a very fine picture. He was chosen for life. He learned to write and draw. Make no friendship with an ill-natured man. Refined taste forms a good critic; but genius is necessary to form the poet or the orator. He is so prudent that every body consults him. How sweetly would life glide away, if men knew *** how to enjoy it! This loss is to be suffered. I wish to God you had done it. He inclined to avarice. Wherever one turns one's eye, one perceives **** nothing but misery. He who follows vice and its charms, prepares to himself a painful repentance. Do some of the stars move round the sun as well as our earth? Yes; those that are called planets.

The storm, *das Gewitter*, 4.
the evening, *der Abend*, 1.
to have, * *bekommen.*
patience, *die Geduld*, 7.
to make, *machen.*
the thing, *das Ding*, 1.
easy, *leicht.*
art, *die Kunst*, 8.
to polish, *verfeinern.*
to improve, *veredeln.*
nature, *die Natūr*, 7.
to wish one joy, *Einem Glück wünschen.*
* *von ganzem Herzen.*
to profess, *äufsern.*
noble, *edel.*
the sentiment, *die Gesinnung*, 7.
when, *als.*
to say, *sagen.*
to fall asleep, * *entschlafen.*
taste, *der Geschmack*, 1.
by, *durch.*
science, *die Wissenschaft*, 7.
philosophy, *die Philosophie*, 7.
the attainment, *die Erreichung*, 7.
correct, *fehlerfrei.*
elegant, *schön.*
style, *die Schreibart*, 7.
the object, *der Gegenstand*, 1.
* *Fleifs und Mühe.*
to demand, *verlangen, erfordern.*
virtue, *die Tugend*, 7.
by, *von.*
many, *Viele.*
to desire, *begehren.*
if, *wenn.*
the worth, *der Wérth*, 1.
really, *wirklich.*
to know, * *kennen.*
to make, *machen.*
to cry, *weinen.*
I can, *ich kann.*
to answer, *ántworten.*
to what, *auf das, was.*
to ask, *fragen.*
to show, *zeigen.*
the picture, *das Gemälde*, 1.
for life, *auf Lébenszeit.*
to choose, *wählen.*
to learn to write and draw,

schreiben und zeichnen lernen.
friendship, *die Freundschaft*, 7.
ill-natured, *bösartig.*
to form, *bilden.*
a critic, *ein Künstrichter*, 4.
but, *aber.*
genius, *ausgezeichnete Naturgaben.*
necessary, *nöthwendig.*
the poet, *der Dichter*, 4.
the orator, *der Redner*, 4.
that, *dass.*
every body, *Jedermann.*
to consult, *um Rath fragen, zu Rathe ziehen.*
sweetly, (*süss*) *sanft.*
life, *das Leben*, 4.
to glide away, (*fortgleiten, hingleiten*) **hinfliessen.*
men, *die Menschen.*
to know, **wissen.*
*** *wie sie es geniessen müssen.*
the loss, *der Verlust*, 1.
to suffer, **ertragen.*
I wish to God, *wollte Gott.*
to do, **thun.*
to incline, *sich hinneigen.*
to, (*zu dem*) *zum.*
avarice, *der Geiz*, 1.
wherever one, (*wohin immer Einer*) *wohin man immer.*
one's eye, *sein Auge.*
to turn, *wenden, richten.*
one, *man.*
to perceive, *gewahr werden, gewahren, *sehen.*
**** *Nichts als Elend.*
he who, *wer.*
vice, *das Laster*, 4.
charm, *der Reiz*, 1.
to follow, *folgen*, with the dative.
to prepare, *bereiten.*
to himself, *sich.*
painful, *schmerzlich, quälvoll.*
repentance, *die Reue*, 7.
to do move, *sich bewegen.*
some, *einige.*
of, *von.*
star, *der Stern*, 1.
round the sun, (*rings*) *um die Sonne.*
as well as, *eben sowohl als.*
the earth, *die Erde.*
the planet, *der Planet*, 6.
to be called, *genannt werden, heissen.*

II.

I shall come; *but if I do not, go away. When the soul of man has been separated from the body, man is dead. The body is committed to the earth. The soul remains. Many men do not make use of their reason. That man is highly favoured, whom no sickness oppresses. Liberty is the nurse of true eloquence. It animates the spirit and invigorates the hopes of men; excites honourable emulation and a desire of excelling in every art and science. That writer is to be esteemed, who has the promotion of virtue for his object. This ambiguity would have been avoided by another position of the adverb. An honest pride becomes man. To-night will be acted the Misanthrope of Molière. You speak to people, who do not understand you. I have built a large and convenient house. Women generally bear pain

and illness better than men. All who have meditated on **the art of governing, have been convinced that the fate of empires depends on the education of youth. Astronomy teaches us that the earth, along with ten other planets, moves round the sun, from which it receives *** light and warmth. The moon is called **** a secondary planet, and accompanies our earth on its journey round the sun. It is an unspeakable blessing to be born in those parts of the world, where ***** wisdom and knowledge flourish.

* *Wenn ich aber nicht komme.*
to go away, **fórtgehen.*
when, *wenn.*
the soul, *die Seele*, 7.
from, *von.*
the body, *der Körper*, 4.
to separate, *trennen.*
dead, *tödt.*
to commit, **übergében.*
to remain, **bleiben.*
many, *viele.*
to do not make use, *keinen Gebrauch machen.*
of, *von.*
that man, *dér Mensch.*
highly favoured, *(hóch begünstiget) hochbeglückt.*
sickness, *die Krankheit*, 7.
to oppress, *(niederdrücken) *niederwerfen.*
liberty, *die Freiheit*, 7.
the nurse, *die Pflegerin*, 7.
true eloquence, *die wahre Beredtsamkeit*, 7.
to animate, *ánfeuern.*
the spirit, *der Geist*, 2.
to invigorate, *stärken.*
the hope, *die Hoffnung*, 7.
to excite, *erwecken.*
honourable emulation, *eine rühmliche Nácheiferung*, 7.
a desire, *ein Verlangen*, 4.
every, *jeder, jede, jedes.*
science, *die Wissenschaft*, 7.
of excelling, *empórzuragen.*
that writer, *dér Schriftsteller.*
to esteem, *achten.*
the promotion of virtue, *die Beförderung der Tugend.*
for, *zu.*
the object, *der Gegenstand*, 1.
the ambiguity, *die Zweideutigkeit*, 7.
by, *durch.*
the position, *die Stellung*, 7.
to avoid, **vermeiden.*
honest, *edel.*
pride, *der Stolz*, 1.
to become, *geziemen*, with the dative.
man, *der Mensch*, 6.
to-night, *heute Abend.*
to act, *spielen.*
the misanthrope, *der Menschenfeind*, 1.
to speak, **sprechen.*
to, *mit*, with the dative.
people, *Leute.*
to do not understand, *nicht verstehen.*
large, *grofs.*
convenient, *bequém.*
to build, *bauen.*
woman, *die Frau*, 7.
to bear, *ertragen.*
generally, *im Allgemeinen.*
pain and illness, *Schmerz und Krankheit.*
man, *der Mann*, 2.
on, *über*, with the accusative.
***die Regierungskunst.*
to meditate, **nachdenken.*

to convince, *überzeügen.*
the fate, *das Schicksal*, 1.
empire, *das Reich*, 1.
on, *auf*, with the dative.
the education, *die Erziehung*, 7.
youth, *die Jugend*, 7.
to depend, *beruhen.*
astronomy, *die Astronomie*, *die Stérnkunde*, 7.
to teach, *lehren.*
along with, *zugleich mit.*
to move, *sich bewegen.*
from, *von*, with the dative.
*** *Licht und Wärme.*
to receive, * *empfangen.*
the moon, *der Mönd*, 1.
**** *ein Nébenplanet.*
to accompany, *begleiten.*
on, *auf*, with the dative.
the journey, *(die Reise) der Wēg*, 1.
unspeakable, *unaussprēchlich.*
a blessing, *ein Glück*, 1.
the parts, *die Gegenden.*
to be born, *geboren zu seyn.*
where, *wo.*
***** *Weisheit und Wissenschaft.*
to flourish, *blühen.*

III.

The spirit of true religion breathes *mildness and affability. There is certainly no greater felicity than **to be able to look back on a life usefully and virtuously employed. Charles the fifth, *** emperor of Germany, in the plenitude of his power, and in possession of all the honours, which can flatter the heart of man, resigned his kingdoms, and retired from the world. Away with those austere philosophers, who represent virtue as hardening the soul against all the softer impressions of humanity! A truly good man is, upon many occasions, extremely susceptible of tender sentiments; and his heart expands with joy, or shrinks with sorrow, as good or ill fortune accompanies his friend. Alas! nothing in this world is of duration. The odoriferous flower perishes. Day and night disappear in a rapid succession. How speedily do the fair hours of our youth pass away! Happy we are, if we have spent them well. He was so moved as to weep. He is the wisest man, who neither wishes for the approach of death, nor is afraid of it. It were to be wished that all men aspired for that happiness, which arises from a wise and virtuous heart. In the morning think what you have to do; and at night ask yourself what you have done. Be content **** in that station, which Providence has allotted you. We easily forget our faults, when they are known to

none but ourselves. Blessed is he who expects nothing; for he shall never be disappointed. If a favour is not continued, it is forgot. Many people are so ungrateful as to take no notice of the ninety nine good turns, which they have received, if the hundredth is denied them.

The spirit of true religion, ***der Geist der wahren Religiōn.*
to breathe, *āthmen.*
* *Milde und Freundlichkeit.*
there is, *es giebt.*
certainly, *sicherlich.*
felicity, *die Glückseligkeit*, 1.
than, *als.*
on, *auf*, with the accusative.
usefully, *nützlich.*
virtuously, *tugendhaft.*
to employ, *ánwenden.*
** *zurückblicken zu können.*
Charles, *Karl.*
*** *Kaiser von Deutschland.*
the plenitude, *die Fülle*, 7.
the power, *die Macht*, 8.
in possession, *im Besitze.*
all the honours, *alle Ehren.*
the heart of man, *das Herz des Menschen*, 5.
to flatter, *schmeicheln*, with the dative.
to resign a thing, *auf ein Ding verzichten.* The German translation of *resigned* is put before the words *in the pleni*
[redacted]*om*, *das K[redacted]igreich*, 1.
[redacted]*re*, *sich *zurück ziehen.* *zurück* is placed at the end of the phrase.
from, *von.*
away, [redacted].
with, [redacted].
austere, *rauh, streng, únfreundlich.*
to represent, *dārstellen.*
virtue, *die Tugend*, 7.
as, *als ob sie.*
to harden, *verhärten.* In German the conjunctive mood of the preterimperfect tense must be put.
the soul, *die Seele*, 7.
against all the, *gegen alle.*
soft, *sanft.*
the impression, *der Eindruck*, 1.
humanity, *die Menschlichkeit*, 7.
truly, *wāhrhaft.*
upon, *bei.*
extremely, *im höchsten Grade.*
susceptible, *empfänglich.*
of, *für.*
tender, *zārt, zārtlich.*
the sentiment, *das Gefühl*, 1.
to expand, *sich erweitern.*
with joy, *vōr Freude.*
to shrink, *sich zusámmenziehen*, *Zusammen* is put after the words *vor Traurigkeit.*
with sorrow, *vor Traurigkeit.*
as, *so wie.*
good or ill fortune, *Glück oder Unglück.*
to accompany, *(begleiten) begēgnen*, with the dative.
alas! *ach!*
nothing, *Nichts.*
to be of duration, *(von Dauer seyn)* * *bestehen.*
odoriferous, *wōhlriechend.*
the flower, *die Blume*, 7.
to perish, *verwelken.*
to disappear, * *verschwinden.*
a rapid succession, *ein schneller Wechsel*, 4.
how speedily, *wie schnell.*
to do pass away, *vergehen.*
fair, *schōn.*
happy, *glücklich.*
if, *wenn.*
to spend well, *wohl ánwenden.*
to move, *bewegen.*

as to weep, *dass er weinte.*
he, *dérjenige.*
neither, *weder.*
the approach, *die Ánndherung*, 7.
death, *der Tōd*, 1.
to wish for a thing, *ein Ding wünschen.*
nor, *noch.*
to be afraid of a thing, *sich vor einem Dinge fürchten.*
for, *nach*, with the dative.
happiness, *die Glückseligkeit*, 7.
to aspire, *strében.*
from, *aus*, with the dative.
to arise, *entspringen.*
in the morning, *am Morgen.*
to think, *denken, überlégen.*
you, *du.*
to have to do, *zu *thun haben, thun müssen.*
at night, *des Abends.*
to ask, *fragen.*
yourself, *dich.*
you, *du.*
content, *zufrieden.*
**** *in dér Lage.*
Providence, *die Vōrsehung.*
you, *dir.*
to allot, *ertheilen, *ánweisen.*
to forget, *vergessen.*
easily, *leicht.*
when, *wenn.*
but ourselves, *als uns selbst.*
known, *bekannt.*
to bless, *beglücken.*
to expect, *hoffen.*
never, *nie, niemals.*
to disappoint, *in seiner Hoffnung täuschen.*
if, *wenn.*
a favour, *eine Gunst*, 7.
to continue, *fortsetzen.*
so ungrateful, *so úndankbar.*
as to take no notice of —, *dass sie von — keine Kenntniss nehmen, dass sie nicht an — denken.*
a good turn, *eine Gefälligkeit*, 7.
to deny, *verweigern.*

IV.

The first requisite for introducing order into the management of time, is to be impressed with a just sense of its value. Let us consider well how much depends upon it, and how fast it flies away. The bulk of men are in nothing more capricious and inconsistent *than in their appreciation of time. When they think of it, as the measure of their continuance on earth, they highly prize it, and with the [illegible] anxiety seek to lengthen it out. But when [illegible] view it in separate parcels, they appear to hold it in contempt, as they squander it with inconsiderate profusion. While they complain that life is short, they are often wishing its different periods at an end. Covetous of every other possession, *of time only they are prodigal. They allow every idle man to be master of that property, and make every frivolous occupation welcome, that can help them to consume it. From those **who are so careless of time, it is not to be expected that order should be

observed in its distribution. But, by this fatal neglect, *** how many materials of severe and lasting regret are they laying up in store for themselves! The time, which they suffer to pass away † in the midst of the sensual pleasures of life, bitter repentance seeks afterwards in vain to recall. What was omitted to be done *at its proper moment, arises to be the torment of some future season. Manhood is disgraced by the consequences ** of neglected youth. Old age, oppressed by cares, that belonged to a former period, labours under a burden not its own. *** At the close of life, the dying man beholds with anguish that his days are finishing, when his preparation for eternity is hardly commenced. Such are the effects of a disorderly waste of time *through not attending to its value. Every thing in the life of such persons is misplaced. Nothing is performed aright **from not being performed in due season.

The requisite, *das Erforderniss*, 1.
for introducing order, *(um Ordnung einzuführen) um Ordnung zu bringen. Zu bringen* is put after *der Zeit.*
into, *in*, with the accusative.
the management, *die Anwendung*, 7.
to be impressed with, *dass unserer Seele eingeprägt werde.* The two last words are placed at the end of the sentence.
just, *richtig.*
the sense, *das Gefühl*, 1.
the value, *der Wérth*, 1.
to let, **lassen.*
to consider well, *wohl *erwägen.*
how much, *wie Viel.*
upon it, *von ihr.*
to depend, **ábhangen.*
how fast, *wie schnell.*
to fly away, *davón fliegen.*
the bulk of men, *die Mehrheit der Menschen, die meisten Menschen.*
capricious, *launenhaft.*
and more inconsistent, *und mit sich selbst mehr im Widerspruche.*
**(als in ihrer Schätzung der Zeit) als in der Art, wie sie den Werth der Zeit bestimmen.*
of it, *an dieselbe.*
as the measure, *als an das Mäfs.*
the continuance, *die Fórtdauer*, 7.
on earth, *auf Erden.*
to think, **denken.*
I highly prize a thing, *ich lege einen hohen Werth auf eine Sache.*
it, *auf sie.*
anxiety, *die Ängstlichkeit*, 7.
seek, *(süchen sie) bestrében sie sich.*
it, *sie.*
to lengthen out, *verlängern.*
but when they it, *aber wenn sie dieselbe.*
separate parcels, *einzelne Theile, einzelne Abschnitte.*
to view, *betrachten.*

to appear, **scheinen.*
to hold a thing in contempt, *einem Dinge gär keinen Wérth beïlegen.*
as they it, *da sie sie.*
with, *mit.*
inconsiderate, *únbedachtsam.*
the profusion, *die Verschwéndung*, 7.
to squander, *vergeuden.*
while, *während.*
to complain, *sich beklagen.*
life, *das Lében*, 4.
is short, *kurz ist.*
to be wishing, *wünschen.*
often, *oft.*
ts, *dass ihre.*
different, *verschieden.*
the period, *der Abschnitt*, 1.
at an end, *zu Ende wären.*
covetous, *geizend.*
of, *mit.*
the possession, *der Besitz*, 1.
* *sind sie blóſs Verschwender ihrer Zeit.*
to allow, *es erlauben.*
every idle man, *dass jeder Müſsiggänger.*
to be master of a thing, *sich eines Dinges bemächtigen.* The conjunctive mood of the present tense must be put.
the property, *das Eigenthum*, 2.
and make welcome, *und willkómmen ist ihnen.*
frivolous, *nichtig, unnütz.*
occupation, *die Beschäftigung*, 7.
them, *ihnen.*
to help, *behülflich seyn.*
to consume it, *sie zu verbrauchen, zu verthun.*
from, *von.*
** *welche in Hinsicht der Zeit so sórglos sind.*
it is, *ist es.*
to expect, *erwarten.*
should be observed is expressed in German by the subjunctive mood of the present tense of the passive voice.
the distribution, *die Eintheilung*, 7.
to observe, *beóbachten.*
*** *wie vielen Stoff zu einer strengen und fórtwährenden Reue.*
to be laying up in store, *aüfbewahren. Auf* is put at the end of the sentence.
by, *durch.*
fatal, *verderblich.*
neglect, *die Sorglosigkeit*, 7.
for themselves, *für sich.*
† *mitten unter den sinnlichen Freuden des Lebens.*
to suffer to pass away, *hinschwinden * lassen.*
to seek, *süchen.*
afterwards, *nachhér.*
bitter repentance, *die bittere Reue.*
in vain, *vergéblich.*
to recall, *zurückrufen.*
what, *was.*
* *in seinem ángemessenen Aügenblicke.*
to be done, *zu thun.*
to omit, * *unterlassen.*
to arise, *wieder zum Vórscheine * kommen.*
to be, *um zu seyn. Zu seyn* is put at the end of the sentence.
the torment, *die Quäl*, 7.
some future season, *irgend ein zukünftiger Zeitpunct*, 1.
manhood, *das männliche Alter*, 4.
the consequence, *die Folge*, 7.
** *einer versäumten Jugend.*
to disgrace, *schänden.*
old age, *das hohe Alter.*
to oppress, *niederdrücken.*
by, *durch.*
care, *die Sorge*, 7.
former, *früher.*
the period, *der Zeïtraum*, 1.
to belong, *ángehören.*
to labour, *leiden.*
under, *unter*, with the dative.

not its own, *ihm nicht angehörenden.*
the burden, *die Last*, 7.
*** *am Schlusse des Lebens.*
to behold, * *sehen.*
the dying man, *der Sterbende.*
with anguish, *mit Angst.*
to be finishing, *sich endigen.*
when, *da.*
preparation, *die Vorbereitung*, 7.
for, *auf*, with the accusative.
eternity, *die Ewigkeit*, 7.
hardly, *kaum.*
to commence, *anfangen.*
is, *hat.*
such are, *dieses sind.*
the effect, *die Wirkung*, 7.
a disorderly waste of time, *eine unregelmäßige Vergeudung der Zeit.*
* *weil man auf ihren Werth nicht achtet*
every thing, *Alles.*
such persons, *solche Menschen.*
to misplace, *unrecht stellen.*
aright, *recht.*
to perform, *verrichten.*
** *weil es nicht zur gehörigen Zeit gethan wird.*

V.

But he who is orderly in the distribution of his time, takes the proper method of escaping those manifold evils. *He is justly said to redeem the time. **By proper management he prolongs it. He lives much in little space; more in a few years than others do in many. He can live to God and his own soul, and ***at the same time attend to all the lawful interests of the present world. He looks back on the past, and provides for the future. He catches and arrests the hours as they fly. They are marked down for useful purposes, and their memory remains; whereas those hours fleet by the man of confusion like a shadow. His days and years are either blanks, of which he has no remembrance; or they are filled up with such a confused and irregular succession of unfinished transactions, that, though he remembers he has been busy, yet he can give no account of the business, which has employed him.

To be orderly in the distribution of his time, *seine Zeit regelmäßig eintheilen.*
to take the proper method, *das rechte Mittel * ergreifen.*
manifold, *mannigfaltig.*
the evil, *das Übel*, 4.
of escaping, *auszuweichen.*
* *Ausweichen* governs the dative case.
* *mit Recht sagt man von ihm, dass er die Zeit aüskaufe.*
** *durch einen gehörigen Gebrauch.*
to prolong, *verlängern.*
to live, *leben.*

much, *Viel.*
little space, *ein kleiner Zeitraum*, 1.
more, *mehr.*
a few years, *wenige Jahre.*
others, *Andere.*
do is not expressed in German.
many, *viele.*
to God, (instead of *Gotte*) *Gott.*
and his own soul, *und seiner Seele.*
*** *zu gleicher Zeit.*
to all the, *auf alle.*
lawful, *pflichtmäfsig.*
the interest, *die Angelegenheit*, 7.
present, *gégenwärtig.*
to attend, *seine Aüfmerksamkeit richten.*
to look back, *zurücksehen.*
on, *auf*, with the accusative.
the past, *das Vergangene, die Vergangenheit.*
to provide, *sorgen.*
for, *für.*
the future, *das Zükünftige, die Zükunft.*
to catch, * *fangen*, * *ergreifen.*
to arrest, *fest* * *halten.*
as they fly, *(so wie sie fliegen) in ihrem Fluge.*
for, *zu.*
useful, *nützlich.*
the purpose, *dér Endsweck*, 1.
to mark down, *(niederzeichnen) bezeichnen, bestimmen.*
memory, *das Ándenken*, 4.
to remain, * *bleiben.*
whereas, *da hingegen.*
by, *bei*, with the dative.
the man of confusion, *der verworrene Mensch*, 6.
like a shadow, *wie ein Schatten.*
to fleet, * *vorüberfliehen.*
either, *entweder.*
blanks, *leere Räume.*
of, *von.*
no remembrance, *keine Erinnerung.*
or, *oder.*
such a, *ein solcher, eine solche, ein solches.*
confused, *verworren.*
irregular, *únregelmäfsig.*
the succession, *die Reihe*, 7.
unfinished, *unvollendet.*
the transaction, *die Verrichtung*, 7.
to fill up, *aüsfüllen.*
though he, *ob er gleich.*
to remember, *sich erinnern.*
he, *dass er.*
busy, *geschäftig.*
yet he, *er dénnoch.*
of, *von.*
the business, *die Thätigkeit.*
to employ, *beschäftigen.*
to give account, *Rechenschaft geben.*

VI.

A man never becomes learned without studying constantly and methodically. Did you read the newspapers? I did. I did not. The passion for praise often produces excellent effects. The great and invincible Alexander wept for the fate of Darius. *My son-in-law asked me, if I had written to my brother. I have not heard any news either of him or of his brother. Birds sing and chirp. The parrot talks. The magpie chatters. The blackbird whistles. The dove coos. The cock crows. The raven and

the frog croak. The dog barks and howls. The cat mews and purrs. The wolves howl. The fox yelps. The hare squeaks and cries. The snake hisses. The hog grunts. The horse neighs. The asses bray. The ox and cow low. The bull bellows. The lions roar. He aimed at my friendship **a long while ago. If you knew her, you would not commend her. How did you spend the evening? What did you do after supper? If we did not flatter ourselves, the flattery of others could not hurt us. We should desire but few things ardently, if we perfectly knew what we desire. A liar hurts himself the most. Interest speaks all languages, and acts all parts, even that of the disinterested. When a man finds not his repose in himself, it is in vain to seek it elsewhere. We ought not to judge of the merit of a man by his great qualities, but by the use he makes of them. Do not put off till to-morrow, what you ought to do to-day. We ought to prefer enemies, that are too bitter, to friends, that are too sweet, because the first often speak truth, and the others never do. It is not the person, that is ordinarily loved; it is his fortune, his riches, his employment. This is plainly seen in misfortunes. I did love her most affectionately.

A man, *man.*
to become, *werden.*
never, *nie.*
learned, gelehrt.
without, *ohne dass man.*
constantly, *ununterbrochen.*
methodically, *methodisch.*
to study, *studiren.*
to do read, * *lesen.* In German the perfect tense must be put.
the newspaper, *die Zeitung*, 7.
I did, *ja.* I did not, *nein.*
the passion, *die Begierde*, 7.
for praise, *nach Lob.*
to produce, *hervorbringen.* *Hervor* must be put at the end of the sentence.
often, *oft.*
excellent, *herrlich.*
the effect, *die Wirkung*, 7.
invincible, *unüberwindlich.*
to weep, *weinen.*
for, *über*, with the accusative.
the fate, *das Schicksal*, 1.
of Darius, *des Darius.*
* *mein Schwiegersohn.*
if, *ob*, with the conjunctive mood.
to, *an*, with the accusative.
to write, * *schreiben.*
not any news, *keine Nachricht.*
either, *weder.*
of, *von.*
or, *noch.*
to hear, *hören.*
bird, *der Vogel*, 4.
to sing, * *singen.*

to chirp, *zwitschern.*
the parrot, *der Papageī*, 3.
to talk, * *sprechen.*
the magpie, *die Älster*, 7.
to chatter, *plaudern.*
the blackbird, *die Amsel*, 7.
to whistle, * *pfeifen.*
the dove, *die Taube*, 7.
to coo, *girren.*
the cock, *der Hāhn*, 1.
to crow, *krähen.*
the raven, *der Rabe*, 6.
the frog, *der Frosch*, 1.
to croak, *quaken.*
the dog, *der Hund*, 1.
to bark, *bellen.*
to howl, *heulen.*
the cat, *die Katze*, 7.
to mew, *miauen.*
to purr, *schnurren.*
the wolf, *der Wolf*, 1.
the fox, *der Fuchs*, 1.
to yelp, *kläffen.*
the hare, *der Hase*, 6.
to squeak, *quieken.*
to cry, * *schreien.*
the snake, *die Schlange*, 7.
to hiss, *zischen.*
the hog, *das Schwein*, 1.
to grunt, *grunzen.*
the horse, *das Pférd*, 1.
to neigh, *wiehern.*
the ass, *der Esel*, 4.
to bray, * *schreien.*
the ox and cow, *der Ochs* (6.) *und die Kuh* (8.).
to low, ~~*blöken.*~~
the bull, *der Stier*, 1.
to bellow, *brüllen.*
the lion, *der Löwe*, 6.
to roar, *brüllen.*
to aim, *strében.*
at, *nāch.*
" *seit langer Zeit.*
if, *wenn.*
you, *Sie.*
to know, * *kennen.* The conjunctive mood must be put.
to commend, *loben.*
how, *wie.*
to do spend, * *zūbringen.*
the evening, *der Abend*, 1.
I did do, *ich machte.*
after supper, *nach dem Abendessen.*
I do not flatter myself, *ich schmeichle mir nicht selbst.*
the flattery, *die Schmeicheleī*, 7.
to hurt, *schaden*, with the dative.
but few things, *nūr wenige Dinge.*
ardently, *feurig.*
to desire, *verlangen, wünschen.*
perfectly, *vóllkommen.*
to know, * *wissen.* The conjunctive mood must be put.
a liar, *ein Lūgner*, 4.
the most, *am meisten.*
interest, *der Eigennutz*, 1.
to speak, * *sprechen.*
to act a part, *eine Rolle spielen.*
even that, *sogār diejenige.*
the disinterested, *die Úneigennützigen.*
a man, *man.*
repose, *die Ruhe*, 7.
in himself, *in sich selbst.*
to find, * *finden.*
it is, *so ist es.*
in vain, *vergéblich.*
elsewhere, *ánderswo.*
to seek, *sūchen.*
of, *von, über. Über* is put with the accusative.
the merit, *die Verdienste.*
a man, *ein Mann*, 2.
by, *nach.*
the quality, *die Eigenschâft*, 7.
but, *sondern.*
the use, *der Gebrauch*, 1.
he, *welchen er.*
of, *von.*
to make, *machen.*
to judge, *úrtheilen.*
to do not put off, *nicht * verschieben.*
till, *bis.*

you, *du.*
to do, * *thūn.*
to prefer, * *vōrziehen.* This verb is put after *Freunden.*
too, *zu.*
sweet, *süfs.*
because, *weil.*
to speak truth, *die Wahrheit sprechen.*
never do, *nie.*
the person, *die Persōn*, 7.
ordinarily, *gewōhnlich.*
to love, *lieben.*
fortune, *das Glück*, 1.
riches, *der Reichthum*, 2.
the employment, *das Amt*, 2.
plainly, *deutlich.*
in misfortunes, *im Unglück.*
most affectionately, *höchst innig*, *auf das innigste.*

VII.

When Hercules was in that part of his youth, in which it was natural for him to consider, what course of life he ought to pursue, he one day retired into a desert, where the silence and solitude of the place very much favoured his meditations. As he was musing on his present condition, and very much perplexed in himself *on the state of life he should choose, he saw two women of a larger stature than ordinary **approaching towards him. One of them had a very noble air, ***and a graceful deportment. Her beauty was natural and easy, and her person clean an unspotted. She cast down her eyes towards the ground with an agreeable reserve. Her motion was † full of modesty, and her raiment *as white as snow. The other had **a great deal of health and floridness in her countenance, which she had helped with an artificial white and red. She endeavoured, by ***a mixture of affectation in all her gestures, to appear more graceful than ordinary in her mien. She had a wonderful confidence in her looks, and † all the variety of colours in her dress, *that she thought were the most proper to show her complexion to advantage. She cast her eyes upon herself; then turned them on those who were present, to see how they liked her; and often looked on the figure she made in her own shadow. **Upon her nearer approach to Hercules, she stepped before the other lady, who came forward with a regular, composed carriage, and, running up to him, accosted him ***in the following manner: "My dear Hercules," said she, "I

"find you are very much divided in your own "thoughts upon the way of life, that you ought to "choose. Be my friend, and follow me. I will "lead you into the possession of pleasure, and out "of the reach of pain, and remove you from *all "the noise and disquietude of business. **The af- "fairs of either war or peace shall have no power "to disturb you. Your whole employment shall be "to make your life easy, and to entertain every "sense with its proper gratifications. Sumptuous "tables, beds of roses, clouds of perfumes, concerts "of music, crowds of beauties, are all in readiness "to receive you. Come along with me into this "region of delights, and bid farewell for ever to "care, to pain, to business." Hercules hearing the lady talk in this manner desired to know her name; to which she answered: "My friends, and those "who are well acquainted with me, call me Hap- "piness; but my enemies, and those who would "injure my reputation, have given me *the name "of Pleasure."

When, *als*.
in that, *(in jenem) in dêm*.
the part, *der Theil*, 1.
to be, *sich * befinden*.
for, *bei*, with the dative.
natural, *natürlich*.
to consider, *überlēgen*. In German the preterimperfect tense with *dass* must be put.
to pursue a course of life, *einen Lébensweg * einschlagen*.
I ought, *ich muss*. The conjunctive mood must be put.
to retire, *sich * begében*.
one day, *eines Tages*.
a desert, *eine Wüste*, 7.
where, *wo*.
the silence, *die Stille*, 7.
the solitude, *die Einsamkeit*, 7.
the place, *der Ort*, 2.
meditation, *die Betrachtung*, 7.
very much, *ungemein*.
to favour, *begünstigen*.
as, *als*, *da*.
on, *über*, with the accusative.
present, *gegenwärtig*.
the condition, *die Lage*, 7.
to be musing, ** nächdenken*, ** nāchsinnen*.
in himself, *bei sich selbst*.
** über die Lebensart*.
he, *welche er*.
to choose, *wählen*.
should, *müsse*.
very much, *überaūs*.
perplexed, *verlegen war*.
a woman, *ein Frauenzimmer*, 4.
of, *von*, with the dative.
large, *grofs*.
the stature, *die Gestalt*, 7.
than ordinary, *als gewöhnlich*.
** *auf sich zükommen*.
very, *sehr*.
noble, *edel*.
air, *die Miene*, 7.
*** *und ein höldseliges Betragen*.

beauty, *die Schönheit*, 7.
easy, *ungezwungen.*
clean, *reinlich.*
unspotted, *fléckenlos.*
to cast down the eyes, *die Augen *niederschlagen. Nieder* is put after *zur Erde.*
with, *mit.*
agreeable, *angenéhm.*
reserve, *die Schüchternheit*, 7.
towards the ground, *zur Érde.*
motion, *die Bewegung*, 7.
† *voll Sittsamkeit.*
the raiment, *die Kleidung*, 7.
* *so weifs als der Schnee.*
** *ein sehr gesundes und blühendes Aüssehen.*
with, *(mit) durch.*
an artificial white and red, *eine künstliche weifse und rothe Farbe*, 7.
to help, *erhöhen.*
to endeavour, *sich bestrében.*
by, *durch.*
*** *eine Beimischung von Zierereī.*
the gesture, *die Gebérde*, 7.
graceful, *reizend, ánmuthig.*
mien, *die Miene*, 7.
to appear, * *erscheinen.*
to have, *setzen.*
wónderful, *wundervoll.*
confidence, *das Vertrauen*, 4.
in, *auf*, with the accusative.
look, *der Blick*, 1.
† *und alle die mannigfaltigen Farben.*
in, *an*, with the dative.
the dress, *der Ánzug*, 1.
* *welche sie für die angemessensten hielt.*
the complexion, *die äussere Gestalt.*
to advantage, *zu ihrem Vórtheile.*
to show, *zu zeigen.*
to cast, * *werfen.*
upon herself, *auf sich sélbst.*
then, *dann.*
to turn, *richten. Sie* must be added.
on, *auf*, with the accusative.
present, *gegenwärtig.*
to see, *um zu séhen.*
how, *wie.*
he likes me, *ich gefalle ihm.* The conjunctive mood must be put.
to look, *blicken. Sie* must be added.
on, *auf*, with the accusative.
the figure, *die Gestalt*, 7.
she, *welche sie.*
her own shadow, *ihr Schatten*, 4.
to make, *machen.*
** *als sie dem Hercules näher kām.*
to step before one, *Einem *vorángehen.*
the lady, *das Frauenzimmer*, 4.
regular, *regelmäfsig.*
composed, *gesetzt, ernsthaft.*
the carriage, *das Betragen*, 4.
to come forward, *vörwärts *schreiten.*
to run up to one, *auf Einen *zūlaufen.*
to accost one, *Einen ánreden. An* is put at the end of the sentence. Also *sie* must be added.
*** *auf folgende Art.*
dear, *theuer.*
to say, *sagen.*
to find, *(finden) sehen.*
you, *dass du.*
the thought, *der Gedanke*, 5. *Own* is not rendered in German.
upon, *über*, with the accusative.
the way of life, *der Lébensweg*, 1.
that you, *welchen du.*
I ought, *ich * muss.*
very much divided, *(gār sehr getheilt) gar sehr únschlüssig.*
to follow, *folgen*, with the dative.

you, *dich*.
the possession of pleasure, *der Besitz des Vergnügens*.
out of, *ausser*.
the reach of pain, *der Bereich des Schmerzes*.
to lead, *führen*.
from, *von*.
* *alles Geräusch und alle Unruhe der Geschäfte*.
to remove, *entfernen*.
** *weder die Angelegenheiten des Krieges noch des Friedens*.
I have no power to disturb, *ich kann nicht beunruhigen*. The future tense must be put. But *no* is not here expressed on account of *weder — noch*.
your, *deine*.
whole, *ganz*.
employment, *die Arbeit*, 7.
I make my life easy, *ich mache mir das Leben bequém*.
every sense, *jeder Sinn*, 1.
proper, *eigenthümlich*.
the gratification, *die Freude*, 7.
to entertain, (*unterhälten*) *ergetzen*.
sumptuous tables, *mit kostbaren Speisen besetzte Tafeln*.
the bed, *das Bett*, 5.
of, *von*.
the rose, *die Rose*, 7.
the cloud, *die Wolke*, 7.
the perfume, *der Wöhlgeruch*, 1.
a concert of music, *ein Concért*, 1.
crowds of beauties, (*Haufen von Schönheiten*), *schöne Frauenzimmer in grosser Menge*.
to be in readiness, *bereit seyn*.
to receive, * *empfangen*.
along with, *mit*.
the region of delights, *das Land der Wonne*, 2.
to bid farewell, *Lebewöhl sagen*. *Lebewohl* must be put at the end of the sentence.
for ever, *für immer*.
care, *die Sorge*, 7.
pain, *der Schmerz*, 3.
business, *die Arbeit*, 7.
in this manner, *auf diese Art*.
to talk, * *sprechen*.
to hear, *hören*. *Hercules hearing* for *as Hercules heard*. In this manner *Hercules hearing* must be rendered in German.
to desire, *verlangen*. *Er* must be added.
the name, *der Name*, 5.
to know, * *wissen*.
to which, *worauf*.
to answer, *antworten*.
well acquainted, *wohl bekannt*.
to call, *nennen*.
Happiness, *Glück*.
but, *aber*.
reputation, *der Rüf*, 1.
to injure, *verletzen*.
would, *möchten*.
* *den Namen Vergnügen*.

VIII.

By this time the other lady was come up, who addressed herself to the young hero in a very different manner. "Hercules," said she, "I offer myself "to you, because I know you are descended from "the Gods, and *give proofs of that descent by "your love to virtue, and your application to the "studies ** proper for your age. This makes me "hope you will gain both for yourself and me an

"immortal reputation. But, before I invite you into "my society and friendship, I will be open and sin- "cere with you. I must lay down this *** as an "established truth, that there is nothing truly va- "luable, which can be purchased † without pains "and labour. The Gods have set a price upon "every real and noble pleasure. If you would gain "their favour, you must be at the pains of worship- "ping them. If you would gain the friendship of "good men, you must study to oblige them. If you "would be honoured by your country, you must "take care to serve it. In short, if you would be "eminent in war or peace, you must acquire all the "qualifications, that make you great and illustrious. "These are the only conditions, upon which I can "make you happy." The Goddess of Pleasure here broke in upon her discourse. "You see," said she, "Hercules, by her own confession, the way to her "pleasures ** is long and difficult, whereas that which "I propose, is short and easy." "Alas!" said the other lady, whose visage glowed with noble in- dignation, "what are the pleasures you promise? "To eat, before you are hungry; to drink, before "you are athirst; to sleep, before you are tired; to "gratify appetites, before they are raised; and to "raise such appetites as nature never planted. You "never heard the most delicious music, which arises "from the praise of good men; nor saw the most "beautiful object, which is the work of one's own "hands. Your votaries pass away their youth in a "dream of mistaken pleasures, while they are hoard- "ing up *** anguish, torment, and remorse for old "age. As for me, I am the friend of Gods and of "good men; an agreeable companion to the artisan; "a household guardian to the fathers of families; "a patron and protector of servants; an associate in "all true and generous friendships. The banquets "of my votaries never are costly, but always deli- "cious; for none eats or drinks at them, who is "not invited by hunger and thirst. Their slumbers "are sound, and their wakings cheerful. My young

"men have the pleasure *of hearing themselves prai-
"sed by those who are in years; and those who are
"in years, of being honoured by those who are young.
"In a word, my followers are favoured by the Gods,
"beloved by their acquaintance, esteemed by their
"country, and after the close of their labours, ho-
"noured by posterity." We know by the life of this memorable hero, to which of these two ladies he gave up his heart; and every one, who reads this, will do him the justice to approve his choice.

By this time, *während dieser Zeit, unterdessen.*
to come up, **heránkommen, sich nähern.*
to address one's self, *sich wenden.*
different, *verschieden.*
to, *an*, with the accusative.
young, *jung.*
the hero, *der Held*, 6.
to offer one's self, *sich *ánbieten.*
to you, *dīr.*
you, *dass du.*
from, *von*, with the dative.
the Gods, *die Götter.*
to be descended, *ábstammen.*
*The translation of this word must stand at the end of the sentence.
by, *durch.*
love to virtue, *die Liebe zur Tugend*, 7.
application, *der Fleiſs*, 1.
to, *in*, with the dative.
the studies, *die Studien.*
** *die sich für dein Alter eignen.*
the proof, *der Beweis*, 1.
of, *von.*
that descent, *diese Ábstammung*, 7.
to make, *lassen.*
to hope, *hoffen.*
you, *dass du.*
both for yourself and me, *sōwōhl für dich selbst als für mich.*
immortal, *unstérblich.*
reputation, *der Ruhm*, 1.
to gain, *erlangen.*
but, *aber.*
before, *bevōr.*
into, *in*, with the accusative.
society, *die Gesellschaft*, 7.
friendship, *die Freundschaft*, 7.
to invite, *cīnladen.*
open, *offen.*
sincere, *aūfrichtig.*
with, *gegen*, with the accusative.
*** *als eine unerschütterliche Wahrheit.*
to lay down, *fēstsetzen.*
that, *dass.*
there, *es.*
truly, *wāhrhaft.*
valuable, *preīswūrdig.*
is, *giebt.*
† *ohne Mühe und Arbeit.*
to purchase, *erwérben.*
upon, *auf*, with the accusative.
real, *echt, wahr.*
the price, *der Preis*, 1.
to set, *setzen.*
if, *wenn.*
favour, *die Gunst*, 7.
would, *(wolltest) willst.*
you must, *so musst du.*
to be at the pains, *bemüht seyn.*
of worshipping, *zu verehren.*
good men, *gute Menschen.*
to study, *sich bestrében.*
to oblige one, *Einen sich verbindlich machen, Einem Gefälligkeiten *erweisen.*

by, *von.*
your country, *dein Vaterland.*
to honour, *ehren.*
to take care, *sich bemühen.*
to serve one, *Einem dienen.*
in short, *kurz.*
in war or peace, *im Kriege oder im Frieden.*
eminent, *aüsgezeichnet.*
all the, *alle die.*
the qualification, *die Eigenschaft*, 7.
to acquire, *sich * erwerben.* I acquire, *ich erwerbe mir.*
illustrious, *berühmt.*
these are, *dieses sind.*
only, *einzig.*
the condition, *die Bedingung*, 7.
upon, *unter*, with the dative.
happy, *glücklich.*
* *die Göttin des Vergnügens.*
to break in upon her discourse, *ihre Rede * unterbréchen.*
here, *hier.* This word must be put after the translation of *broke in upon.*
you, *du.*
by, *aus.*
own, *eigen.*
the confession, *das Geständniss*, 1.
the way, *dass der Wēg.*
to, *zu.*
pleasure, *die Freude*, 7.
** *lang und beschwērlich ist.*
whereas, *da hingēgen.*
to propose, * *vōrschlagen.*
is short and easy, *kurz und leicht ist.*
alas! *ach!*
the visage, *das Ántlitz*, 1.
with, *vōr*, with the dative.
indignation, *der Únwille*, 5.
to glow, *glühen.*
you, *welche.*
to promise, * *versprechen.*
to eat, * *essen.*
hungry, *hungrig.*
to drink, * *trinken.*
athirst, *durstig.*
to sleep, * *schlafen.*
tired, *müde.*
to gratify, *befriedigen.*
appetites, *Begierden.*
to raise, *erregen.*
such, *(solche) diejenigen.*
as, *welche.*
nature, *die Natūr*, 7.
never, *nie.*
to plant, *einpflanzen.*
you, *du.*
to hear, *hören. Never* is translated after *heard.*
delicious, *köstlich.*
music, *die Musīk*, 7.
from, *aus.*
the praise, *das Lōb*, 1.
to arise, * *entspringen.*
nor saw, *noch sahest du.*
beautiful, *schön.*
the object, *der Gegenstand*, 1.
the work, *die Arbeit*, 7.
one's own hands, *seine eigenen Hände.*
your votaries, *deine Verehrer.*
to pass away, * *sūbringen. Zu* must stand before *während.*
a dream, *ein Traum*, 1.
mistaken *(missverstanden, irrig) falsch.*
while, *während.*
*** *Angst, Qual und Gewissensbisse.*
for old age, *für ihr Alter.*
to be hoarding up, *aüfhäufen.*
as for me, *was mich betrifft.*
the friend, *die Freundin*, 7.
of Gods, *der Götter.*
and of good men, *und der guten Menschen.*
agreeable, *angenēhm.*
a companion, *ein Gehülfe*, 6.
the artisan, *der Händwerksmann*, 2. In German the genitive case is put.
* *ein Beschirmer des Hauses.*
to, *für.*
the father of family, *der Familienvater*, 4.

* *ein Gönner und Beschützer der Dienenden.*
an associate, *ein Theilnehmer*, 4.
in, *an*, with the dative.
true, *wahr.*
generous, *edel.*
the banquet, *das Gastmahl*, 2.
costly, *köstspielig.*
but, *sondern.*
always, *immer.*
for, *denn.*
none, *keiner.*
at them, *bei denselben.*
by the, *vom.*
thirst, *der Durst*, 1.
to invite, * *einladen.*
their slumbers, *ihr Schlummer.*
sound, *gesund, stärkend.*
their wakings, *ihr Erwachen.*
cheerful, *heiter.*
my young men, *meine jungen Männer.*
* *sich von denen gelobt zu hören.*
to be in years, *(bei Jahren seyn) im höheren Lebensalter* * *stehen.*
in a word, *mit einem Worte.*
the follower, *der Anhänger*, 4.
to be favoured, *begünstigt werden.*
by, *von.*
their acquaintance, *ihre Bekannten.*
beloved, *geliebt.*
their country, *ihr Vaterland*, 2.
to esteem, *achten.*
after, *nach.*
the close, *das Ende*, 3.
their labours, *ihre Arbeiten.*
posterity, *die Nachwelt*, 7.
by, *aus*, with the dative.
memorable, *merkwürdig.*
the heart, *das Herz*, 3.
to give up, (* *übergeben*), * *hingeben, weihen.*
every one, *Jeder.*
to read, * *lesen.*
to do the justice, *die Gerechtigkeit* * *beweisen.*
the choice, *die Wahl*, 1.
to approve, *billigen.*

CHAPTER IX.

Of the German prepositions.

Containing:

I. The five classes of the German prepositions.
II. Exercises on the greatest part of the German prepositions.

The * *prepositions* are so called, because they are put *before* the words, to which they are applied. But not all are placed *before* their substantive. Some of them are put *after* the word, to which they belong, and these consequently cannot be

* This word comes from the Latin verb *praeponere*, to put before. The German term *Vorwort* is not to be confounded with *Fürwort*, pronoun.

called in the proper sense *prepositions*. Others may be placed *before* or *after* their substantive.

The prepositions are put not only before substantives, but also before pronouns and some adverbs of time. They are either *simple (einfach)*, or *compound (zusammengesetzt)*.

The *simple prepositions (die einfachen Verhältnisswörter)* are either primitive, or borrowed from other parts of speech. The primitive prepositions *(die ursprünglichen Verhältnisswörter)* are *an; aus; bei; durch; in; mit; nach;* &c. The prepositions borrowed from other parts of speech *(die aus anderen Wörterclassen entlehnten Verhältnisswörter)* are *kraft; trotz; nächst; ungeachtet;* &c.

The *compound prepositions (die zusammengesetzten Verhältnisswörter)* are formed either from a simple preposition and a substantive; or from two simple prepositions; or from a simple preposition and an adverb. Prepositions of the first kind are *anstatt, zufolge;* of the second kind, *gegenüber, von — an, zuwider;* and of the third kind *zunächst.*

When the preposition is not joined with a substantive, or pronoun, or adverb, it forms no sense, and differs, of course, essentially from the adverb, which forms by itself a full sense, when it is united with a verb. All the particles, that govern a case, are consequently prepositions, and not adverbs. Some prepositions are also sometimes employed in a certain signification without a case. Then they are to be considered as adverbs.

The substantive or pronoun, to which the prepositions are applied, must be put into a certain case, that is determined by rule and practice.

Some German prepositions govern the *genitive;* others, the *dative;* others, the *accusative;* and others, the *genitive* and *dative.* There are also some prepositions, which require either the *dative*, or the *accusative.* There are consequently in the German language five classes of prepositions.

Section I.

The five classes of the German prepositions.

First class of German prepositions.

Prepositions, which govern the genitive.

1. *Anstátt, statt*, instead of.
2. *Besage*, according to.
3. *Halben, halber*, on account of, for the sake of.
4. *Áüsserhalb*, on the outside of, without.
5. *Innerhalb*, in the inner part of, within.
6. *Oberhalb*, on the upper side of, above.
7. *Unterhalb*, on the lower side of, below.
8. *Diesseit*, on this side.
9. *Jénseit*, on yon side, on the other side.
10. *Kraft*, by virtue of.
11. *Laut*, according to.
12. *Mittelst, vermittelst*, by means of.
13. *Rücksichtlich, hinsichtlich*, with regard to.
14. *Um — willen*, for the sake of, by reason of.
15. *Ungeáchtet*, notwithstanding,
16. *Unfern, únweit*, not far from.
17. *Vermöge*, by virtue of.
18. *Während*, during.
19. *Wegen*, because of, on account of.

1. *Anstatt* is composed of two words, and ought, of course, properly to be written in two words, consequently thus: *an Statt*, in the stead of. This is also done in the following and similar phrases: *an des Fürsten Statt*, instead of the prince. *An Kindes Statt ánnehmen*, to adopt. *An meiner Statt*, in my stead. From these examples it is seen, that, when *anstatt* is separated, the substantive governed by it is placed between the two words, of which it is composed. Then *anstatt* also loses the shape of a preposition, and *Statt* resumes the nature of a substantive.

When *anstatt* is employed as a preposition, it is placed before its substantive like other prepositions. For instance: *anstatt des Bruders*, instead of the brother. *Anstatt seiner*, instead of him, in his stead. For *anstatt* is frequently said *statt*. *Anstatt* however, as the more correct form, is to be preferred.

Anstatt has also *zu* and *dass* after it. Examples: *Anstatt zu studiren* or *anstatt dass er studiren sollte, spielt er*. Instead of studying, he plays.

2. *Besage* seems to be the imperative mood of the verb *besagen*, to say. *Besage seiner Rechnung ist er Ihnen nur Einen Thaler schuldig.* According to his account, he owes to you only one dollar.

3. *Halben* and *halber*, which are derived from the old word *die Halbe (Halba)*, the side, express a motive, and are always put after their substantive. *Halben* is used, when the article or an adjective is joined to the substantive governed by it. Examples: *Ich thue es des Geldes halben.* I do it on account of the money. *Ich thue es blofs der Gesellschaft halben*, I do it only for the sake of the company. *Er thūt es der Freundschaft halben.* He does it out of friendship. *Einiger Ursachen halben*, for some reasons. *Dieser Ursache halben*, from this reason. *Halber* is employed, when the article is omitted. Examples: *Alters halber*, on account of age. *Vergnügens halber*, for the sake of pleasure.

When *halben* is used with the genitive of the pronouns *ich*, *du*, *er*, *sie*, the *r* of this genitive is suppressed, a *t* being substituted in its place, and the two words being contracted into one word. It is consequently said: *meīnethalben*, for my sake. *Deīnethalben*, for thy sake. *Seīnethalben*, for his sake. *Ihrethalben*, for her sake. Instead of *meinerhalben*; *deinerhalben*; *seinerhalben*; *ihrerhalben*. In *ünserthalben*, for our sake, and *eūerthalben*, for your sake, the letter *r*, to which a *t* is added, is not suppressed.

By means of *halben* the following adverbs are formed: *dérenthalben*, *dérohalben*, *déssenthalben*, *déshalben*, *déshalb*, on that account; *wéssenthalben*, *wésshalb*, on which account. In the first, third, and sixth adverb a *t* is inserted, and the three adverbs *desshalben*, *desshalb*, *wesshalb*, are contracted from *dessenthalben* and *wessenthalben*. It must therefore be written *desshalben*, *desshalb*, *wesshalb*, and not *deshalben*, *deshalb*, *weshalb*.

The adverb *allenthálben*, every where, which must be pronounced *allent-halben*, and not *allen-thalben*, is not formed from the preposition *halben*,

but from the old substantive *die Halbe*, and stands consequently instead of *an allen Seiten*, *an allen Orten*, at all sides, at all places. This is also the case with the four following compound prepositions.

4. *Aufserhalb* stands instead of *aufser der Seite*. *Aufserhalb der Stadt*, *des Hauses*, without the town, without doors.

5. *Innerhalb* stands instead of *in der inneren Seite*, and is used both of place and time. Examples: *Er ist nicht innerhalb des Hauses; denn er steht vor der Thüre.* He is not within the house; for he is without doors. *Wir waren innerhalb der Schanzen verborgen.* We were hidden within the trenches. *Ich werde innerhalb weniger Tage zurückkommen.* I shall come back within a few days. The dative is put, when a cardinal number stands before the substantive governed by *innerhalb*. Examples: *innerhalb zehn Meilen*, within ten miles. *Er wird innerhalb drei Tagen ankommen.* He will arrive within three days. *Es wird innerhalb zwei Stunden geendigt seyn.* It will be finished within two hours. It is also said: *Innerhalb welchem.*

6. *Oberhalb* stands instead of *auf der oberen Seite*. *Sein Kopf war oberhalb des Wassers.* His head was above the water. *Oberhalb der Stadt*, at the higher part of the town.

7. *Unterhalb* stands instead of *auf der unteren Seite*. *Unterhalb der Stadt*, in the lower part of the town. *Unterhalb des Rheines*, on the lower side of the Rhine.

8. *Diesseit*, in order to make easier the pronunciation, is said for *diesseits*, which has no case after it, and is an abridgment of *diesersseits*. Examples: *diesseit des Flusses*, on this side of the river. *Diesseit des Grabes*, in the present life.

9. *Jenseit* is said for *jenerseits*, instead of which the contracted form *jenseits* is used. *Jenseits* is employed adverbially, and *jenseit* as preposition. Examples: *Jenseit des Flusses*, on the other side of the river. *Jenseit des Grabes*, in the other world. It is also said: *Das Jenseits*, the other world.

10. *Kraft* is properly a substantive, and stands for *in Kraft*, by the power of. Example: *kraft meines Versprechens*, for *in Kraft meines Versprechens*, by virtue of my promise.

11. *Laut*, being properly a substantive, and signifying sound, is employed instead of *nach dem Laute*, according to the sound, that is, according to the tenor, according to. Example: *laut des Befehles*, according to the order.

12. *Mittelst*, being said for *Mittels*, is properly the genitive singular of the substantive *Mittel*, means. Several Germans write and pronounce therefore *mittels* instead of *mittelst*. For *mittelst* is very frequently said *vermittelst*. *Mittelst, mittels, vermittelst meines Geldes*, by means of my money.

13. *Rücksichtlich* and *hinsichtlich* are employed instead of *in Rücksicht auf*, *in Hinsicht auf*. For instance: *rücksichtlich meines Vaters*, with regard to my father. Instead of *in Rücksicht auf meinen Vater*. *Hinsichtlich meiner Söhne*, with respect to my sons. Instead of *in Hinsicht auf meine Söhne*.

14. *Um — willen* is composed of two words. The word *um* is put before the substantive, and the word *willen* follows after it. Examples: *Um Gottes willen, helfen Sie mir, wenn Sie können.* For God's sake relieve me, if you can. *Um des Himmels willen, hören Sie mich an.* For heaven's sake hear me. *Um meiner Kinder willen*, for my children's sake. *Ich liebe sie um ihrer selbst willen.* I love her for her own sake. *Ich komme um Ihres Bruders willen zu Ihnen.* I come to you about your brother. *Um eines leeren Titels willen opferte er das Glück seines Kindes auf.* For the sake of an empty title he sacrificed the happiness of his own child. *Um der Menschen willen*, for the sake of the men. *Um Ihrer Ehre willen*, for the sake of your honour. *Um zweier Ursachen willen*, for two reasons.

It is said *um meinetwillen*, for my sake; *um deinetwillen*, for thy sake; *um seinetwillen*, for his sake; *um ihretwillen*, for her sake; instead of *um meiner-*

willen; um deinerwillen; um seinerwillen; um ihrerwillen. But it is said: *um seiner selbst willen*, for one's own sake. *Um unsertwillen*, for our sake. *Um euertwillen*, for your sake.

By means of *um — willen* the following adverbial phrases are formed: *um dérentwillen* (instead of *um derenwillen*), *um déssentwillen* (instead of *um dessenwillen*), *um déswillen*, on that account, for that reason; *um wéssentwillen* (instead of *um wessenwillen*), for what reason.

15. *Ungeachtet* signifies *nicht geachtet*. This preposition is, of course, properly the past participle of the verb *achten*, to have regard to. It must consequently be said *ungeachtet*, and not *unerachtet* or *ohnerachtet*.

Ungeachtet is placed either before the substantive, or after it. Examples: *ungeachtet seines Verlustes*, notwithstanding his loss. *Ich liebe ihn ungeachtet seiner Hässlichkeit* or *seiner Hässlichkeit ungeachtet*. I love him notwithstanding his ugliness. But it is better to put *ungeachtet* before its substantive.

It is a fault to say *dem ungeachtet*. It must be said *dessen ungeachtet*, notwithstanding that. These two words may also be written in one word.

Ungeachtet is also a conjunction, and signifies though.

16. *Unfern* and *unweit* are employed instead of *nicht fern von, nicht weit von*. Example: *unfern* or *unweit des Dorfes*, not far from the village. They are also used as adverbs. *Unfern* or *unweit von hier*, not far from here.

17. *Vermöge* is more usual than *kraft* and *laut*. *Vermöge des Fleifses*, by means of diligence. *Vermöge der Übung*, by dint of practice.

18. *Während* is properly the present participle of the verb *währen*, to last. *Während des Krieges*, during the war. *Während der Zeit*, during the time.

Während is also used as a conjunction of time. *Während dieses geschah*, while that happened.

19. *Wegen* is put either before the substantive,

or after it. Examples: *Ich thāt es wegen meines Vaters.* I did it because of my father. *Er konnte mir wegen seines Alters nūr von fern nāchfolgen.* He could by reason of his age follow me only at a distance. *Sie verlōr ihr Vermögen ihrer Gūtherzigkeit wegen.* She lost her fortune by reason of her good nature. *Ich thue es der Armen wegen.* I do it on account of the poor. *Er lōbte ihn wegen seiner guten Aūfführung.* He commended him for his good behaviour. *Dieser Ursache wegen*, for that reason. *Des Preises wegen einig werden*, to agree about the price. *Er sprāch mit mir wegen des Hauses* or *des Hauses wegen.* He spoke to me concerning the house.

Wegen is employed in the same manner as *halben*, when it is joined with the pronouns *ich*, *du*, *er*, *sie*. *Meīnetwegen*, on my account. *Deīnetwegen*, on thy account. *Seīnetwegen*, on his account. *Ihretwegen*, on her account. *Unsertwegen*, on our account. *Euertwegen*, on your account. Instead of *meinerwegen; deinerwegen; seinerwegen; ihrerwegen; unserwegen; euerwegen.*

Wegen must always be used with the genitive. There is however one exception to this rule. It is not said *wegen meiner; wegen deiner; wegen seiner; wegen ihrer; wegen unser; wegen euer.* Here the dative is employed: *wegen mir; wegen dir; wegen ihm; wegen ihr; wegen uns; wegen euch.* But as this use of the dative is a fault, it is better to say *meinetwegen; deinetwegen; seinetwegen; ihretwegen; unsertwegen; euertwegen.*

In some phrases *von* is added to the preposition *wegen.* Example: *von Rechts wegen*, according to law.

By means of *wegen* the following adverbs are formed: *dêrentwegen* (instead of *derenwegen*), *dêrowegen*, *dêssentwegen* (instead of *dessenwegen*), *dêsswegen* (contracted from *dessenwegen*), on that account, for that reason; *wesswegen* (contracted from *wessenwegen*), for what reason. *Sie war in keiner geringen Furcht desswegen.* She was in no small fear about it.

Second class of German prepositions.

Prepositions, which govern the genitive and dative.

Trotz, in spite of. **Zufólge**, in consequence of.

1. *Trotz* is properly a substantive, and stands for *zum Trotze*, in defiance of. *Ich werde ihr trotz seiner Vorstellungen einen Besuch abstatten.* I shall pay her a visit in spite of his remonstrances. *Es ist wahr trotz aller Einwendungen.* It is true in spite of all objections. *Trotz seiner Vorstellungen* and *trotz aller Einwendungen* stands for *seinen Vorstellungen, allen Einwendungen zum Trotze. Trotz* always governs the genitive, when, as in the two preceding examples, it signifies in spite of, notwithstanding. But when it signifies as well as, it has the dative after it. For instance: *Er spricht trotz einem Gelehrten.* He speaks as well as a learned man.

2. *Zufolge* consists of the two words *zu* and *Folge*, and is, of course, properly no preposition, but a substantive joined with a preposition. *Folge* is the dative governed by *zu. Zufolge* is therefore also frequently written *zu Folge*, and consequently in two words. But when *zu Folge* is written in one word, it assumes the shape of a preposition. When *zufolge* stands before the substantive, it governs the genitive, which depends on the dative *Folge.* But when it stands after the substantive, it governs the dative. For instance: *zufolge Ihres Befehles* or *Ihrem Befehle zufolge*, in consequence of your order.

Third class of German prepositions.

Prepositions, which govern the dative.

1. *Aus*, out of, from.
2. *Außer*, out of; besides.
3. *Bei*, by; with; on.
4. *Binnen*, within.
5. *Entgégen*, towards; against.
6. *Gegenüber*, over against.
7. *Gemäfs*, according to.
8. *Längs*, along.
9. *Mit*, with.
10. *Nāch*, after.
11. *Nächst*, *zunächst*, next.
12. *Nébst*, with; besides.
13. *Ob*, over; on account of.
14. *Sammt*, together, with.
15. *Seit*, since.
16. *Von*, from; of; by.
17. *Zu*, to; at.
18. *Zuwíder*, against.

Aus denotes:

1. Motion from the bounds of a place, both in the proper and figurative sense. Examples: *Er nahm es aus dem Feuer.* He took it out of the fire. *Er kommt aus der Fremde.* He comes from abroad. *Er kommt aus dem Bette.* He comes out of bed. *Sie kamen aus der Kirche.* They came out of the church. *Wir reiseten gestern ab aus London.* We set out yesterday from London. *Sie wollten mich nicht aus dem Gefängnisse lassen.* They would not let me out of prison. *Aus dem Wege*, out of the way. *Aus dem Schusse*, out of gunshot. *Gehen Sie mir aus den Augen.* Go out of my sight. *Sie war mir bald aus dem Gesichte.* She was soon out of my sight. *Aus der Scheide ziehen*, to draw from the scabbard. *Trinken Sie nicht aus diesem Glase.* Do not drink out of this glass. *Er rettete sie aus der Tōdesgefahr.* He rescued her from the danger of death. *Aus der Acht lassen*, to neglect. *Aus der Mode*, out of fashion.

Aus denotes:

2. The origin of a thing, or the matter, of which something is made. Examples: *Er ist aus einer alten Familie.* He is of an ancient family. *Ich bin aus Berlin gebürtig.* I am born at Berlin. *Ich bin aus Sachsen gebürtig.* I am a native of Saxony. *Dieses ist aus Silber gebildet.* This is formed out of silver. *Dieses ist aus Stein gemacht.* This is made of stone. *Aus einem Dinge bestehen*, to consist, to be composed of something.

Aus denotes:

3. The motive of an action. Examples: *Er thät es aus Gefälligkeit gegen Sie.* He did it out of kindness to you. *Er that es aus freiem Willen.* He did it of his own accord. *Er that Alles aus bloſser Groſsmuth.* He did every thing out of pure generosity. *Sie that es aus Trotze.* She did it out of spite. *Aus Stolz*, out of pride. *Aus Vōrsatz*, out of design. *Aus Unwissenheit*, out of ignorance. *Aus Mangel an Gelde*, for want of money. *Aus einem bloſsen Verdachte*, upon a mere suspicion. *Aus Liebe hei-*

rathen, to marry for love. *Aus Erfahrung*, by experience. *Ich sêhe aus seiner Eile*, I see by his speed. *Aus diesem ist es klār*. From this it is evident. *Aus einer edleren Ursache*, from a nobler cause. *Aus diesem Grunde*, for this reason. *Aus welchen Gründen?* upon what grounds?

Aus denotes:

4. The manner, in which any thing is done. Examples: *Eine Sprāche aus dem Grunde studīren*, to study a language to the bottom. *Aus voller Kéhle lachen*, to laugh full throat. *Aus aller Kraft*, by main strength.

Aus is also used as an adverb. Then it signifies the absence of a person, or the end of a thing. Examples: *Er war lange aus*. He was long absent. *Das Feuer ist aus*. The fire is out. *Das Schaūspiel ist aus*. The play is done. *Nūn ist es mit ihm aus*. Now he has finished his life; now he is undone.

By means of *aus* the following adverbs are formed: *daraūs*, thereout; hence. *Heraūs*, *hinaūs*, out. *Hieraūs*, hereout; hence. *Woraūs*, whereout; out of which; from what.

Aufser is used:

1. Of things, which are not found in the inner part of a place. Examples: *Er wohnt aufser der Stadt*. He lives out of the town. *Er speisete aufser dem Hause*. He dined out of the house. *Aufser* is also employed in a figurative sense. Examples: *Ich war vor Freude aufser mir*. I was beside myself with joy. *Sie ist noch nicht aufser Gefahr*. She is not yet out of danger. *Aufser Stande*, out of condition.

Aufser is used:

2. In the signification of *aūsgenommen*, except, besides. Examples: *Niemand denkt so aufser mir*. Nobody thinks so beside myself. *Ich habe aufser ihm Keinen gesehen*. I have seen none besides him. *Aufser meinen Kindern kamen auch meine Schwestern*. Besides my children, my sisters also came. When *aufser* signifies except, besides, it is also employed adverbially; and then it depends on the verb of the

sentence, in which case it is put either with the nominative, or with the genitive, or with the accusative. Examples: *Es war Niemand dort, aufser Ihr Bruder. Ich erinnere mich, aufser Ihres Bruders, nur weniger Menschen in jener Zeit. Ich fand Niemanden dort, aufser Ihren Bruder.* It is also said *aufser dass, aufser wenn.*

Aufser governs the genitive in the following phrase: *aufser Landes*, out of the country, abroad.

By means of *aufser* the following adverb is formed: *aufserdém* (instead of *aufser dem*), besides this, besides.

Bei is used:

1. In a local signification, in which it notes proximity. Examples: *Bei dem Tische*, by the table. *Er sāfs bei ihm.* He sat by him. *Sie stand bei mir.* She stood near me. *Er schoss bei dem Ziele vorbei.* He shot beside the mark. *Giebt es schöne Spazīergänge bei dem Hause?* Are there fine walks near the house? *Liegt das Haus bei einer katholischen Kirche?* Does the house lie near a catholic church? *Ich glaubte, Ihr Freund wäre bei Ihnen.* I thought your friend was with you. *Ich musste eine Stunde bei ihr bleiben.* She made me stay an hour with her. *Sie hatte Gesellschaft bei sich, welcher sie mich vōrstellte.* She had company with her, to whom she introduced me. *Bei Einem liegen, schlafen*, to lie, to sleep with one. *Bei Hofe*, at court. A similar meaning have the following phrases, some of which are taken figuratively: *Etwas bei der Hand haben*, to have something at hand. *Das ist bei ihm einerlei.* That is all one with him. *Es ist bei uns nicht so.* It is not so with us. *Es ist ein Grundsatz bei mir.* It is a maxim with me. *Bei wém muss ich mich melden?* Whom must I apply to? *Er sāgte, dass ér sich bei dem Könige beschweren würde.* He said he would complain to the king. *Solche Beweīsgründe hatten eine unüberwindliche Stärke bei den heidnischen Philosophen.* Such arguments had an invincible force with the pagan philosophers. *Bei dem Plato*, in Plato. *Er steht bei seinem Fürsten in Gunst.* He is

in favour with his prince. *Dieses steht bei Ihnen.* This depends upon you. *Bei offenen Thüren*, with open doors. *Ich habe kein Geld bei mir.* I have no money about me. *Ich trage Alles bei mir.* I carry every thing about me. *Behalten Sie es bei sich.* Keep it with you.

Bei is used:

2. In order to note the state, in which any thing is, or the time, in which any thing is done. Examples: *Er ist bei guter Gesundheit.* He is in good health. *Ich bin noch bei Kräften.* I am yet vigorous. *Er ist nicht bei sich.* He is without knowledge. *Er ist bei Vermögen.* He is a man of fortune. *Er ist bei Jahren.* He is in years, he is aged. *Sie kamen bei Haufen.* They came in crowds. *Bei dem Allen blieb er unentschlossen.* With all that he remained irresolute. *Es entstand ein Zank bei dem Spiele.* A quarrel arose at game. *Er ist bei dem Mittagsmahle.* He is at dinner. *Bei meinem Leben geschieht dieses nicht.* During my life this is not done. *Bei dem Schlusse des Tages*, at the close of the day. *Es ereignete sich bei dem Anbruche des Tages.* It happened at break of day. *Bei dem Aufgange und Untergange der Sonne*, at the rising and setting of the sun. *Er weinte bei der Trennung von seinen Kindern.* He wept at parting with his children. *Bei der Schöpfung der Welt*, at the creation of the world. *Bei Tage und bei Nacht*, by day and by night. *Bei Lichte arbeiten*, to work by candlelight. *Bei dem Kriege gewinnen*, to profit by the war. *Bei dieser Gelegenheit*, on this occasion. *Bei diesen Worten*, upon these words. *Bei dem Gedanken*, at the thought. It is also said: *bei Todesstrafe*, upon pain of death.

Bei is used:

3. With the verbs *ergreifen, fassen, nehmen, nennen.* Examples: *Er nahm ihn bei der Hand, bei den Haaren.* He took him by the hand, by the hair. *Wer ruft* or *nennt mich bei meinem* [illegible] calls me by my name?

Bei is used:

4. In swearing and obtesting. Examples: *Bei Gott*, by God. *Bei meiner Ehre*, upon my honour. *Bei meiner Seligkeit*, as I hope to be saved. *Bei meiner Seele, ich hasse sie nicht.* Upon my soul, I do not hate her.

Bei, in the signification of about, is sometimes employed with a cardinal number adverbially. Then it governs no case. Example: *Er ist bei sechzig Jahre alt.* He is about sixty years old. It is also said: *bei weitem*, by much, by far.

By means of *bei* the four following adverbs are formed: *dabei; hierbei; vorbei; wobei.*

Binnen is used only of time. Example: *Es wird binnen zwei Tagen geendigt seyn.* It will be finished within two days.

Entgegen is always placed after its case. It signifies:

1. Towards. Examples: *Er ging seinem Freunde entgegen.* He went to meet his friend. Literally: He went towards his friend. *Der Knabe läuft seinem Vater entgegen.* The boy runs to meet his father. *Er sprang seinen Ältern freudig entgegen.* He sprang joyfully to meet his parents.

Entgegen signifies:

2. Against, contrary. Examples: *Er ist mir entgegen.* He is against me. *Dieses ist der Natur der Dinge entgegen.* This is contrary to the nature of things. *Mein Vater war seinem Vorhaben entgegen.* My father was against his design.

Gegenüber (or *gegen über*) must always be placed after its case. Examples: *Er wohnt meinem Hause* or *mir gegenüber.* He lives over against my house, over against me. *Jenes Haus war gerade dem anderen gegenüber.* That house was straight over against the other. *Ich wurde ihm gegenüber gestellt.* I was placed over against him.

Gemäß, which is originally an adjective, is always placed after the substantive governed by it. Example: *Er lebt der Vernunft gemäß.* He lives [illegible] to reason.

[illegible] is not to be confounded with the adverb

of time *längst*, long ago. *Längs dem Flusse*, along the river. *Längs dem Ufer*, along the shore. Some German writers employ *längs* also with the genitive.

Mit signifies:

1. In company of, both properly and figuratively. Examples: *mit Einem gehen*, to go along with one. *Wollen Sie mit mir kommen?* Will you come along with me? *Er isst mit seinen Freunden.* He eats with his friends. *Néhmen Sie dieses mit sich.* Take this along with you. *Sie fochten mit den Franzosen.* They fought with the French. Instead of *gegen die Franzosen*, against the French. *Sie versicherte mir mit Thränen in den Augen*, she assured me with tears in her eyes. *Er empfing mich mit vieler Güte.* He received me with much kindness. *Eine Schüssel mit Speise*, a dish of meat.

Mit notes:

2. Connexion, or mutual dealing. Examples: *Er ist Freund mit der ganzen Welt.* He is friend with all the world. *Er war mit ihr verheīrathet.* He was married to her. *Ich bin mit ihm verwandt.* I am related to him. It is also said: *Ich bin ihm verwandt. Ich werde mit ihm sprechen.* I shall speak to him.

Mit notes:

3. The means, or the instrument. Examples: *Er ernährt sich mit Betteln.* He gets his living by begging. *Er thūt es mit Hilfe seiner Freunde.* He does it with the help of his friends. *Ich kann es mit Ihrer Hand beweisen.* I can prove it under your hand. *Was wollen Sie mit diesen Wörten sagen?* What do you mean by these words? *Er überrédet mit seinen Gründen.* He persuades by his reasons. *Er bekām die Briefe mit der Post.* He received the letters by the post. *Mit Ihrer Erlaubniss*, by your leave. *Mit der Bedingung*, under condition. *Mit der Zeit*, in time. *Mit Vōrsatz*, on purpose. *Wenn wir ihn mit seinem Bruder vergleichen*, if we compare him with his brother. *Er schnitt es mit einem Messer entzwei.* He cut it in two with a knife. *Er*

tödtete ihn mit seinem Schwérte. He killed him with his sword.

Mit notes:

4. The manner, in which something is done or stands. Examples: *Er vergilt Böses mit Bösem.* He renders evil for evil. *Er sprāch mit lauter Stimme.* He spoke with a loud voice. *Ich habe Mitleiden mit ihm.* I take compassion on him. *Ich bin mit ihm zufrīeden.* I am pleased with him. *Wie steht es mit ihm?* How is it with him?

By means of *mit* the following adverbs are formed: *mit darúnter*, among them. *Damit*, therewith, with it. *Hiermit*, herewith. *Womit*, wherewith. *Damit* is also a conjunction, signifying *that.*

Nach signifies:

1. Following in place, in rank, in time. Examples: *Der Lieutenant kommt nach dem Hauptmanne.* The lieutenant comes after the captain. *Sie kamen alle nach einander.* They came all of them one after another. *Der nāchste nach dem Könige*, the next to the king. *Nach dieser Zeit*, after that time. *Nach dem Essen*, after dinner, after supper. *Nach dem Góttesdienste*, when service is done. *Ein Viertel nach sieben*, a quarter after seven. *Nach Allem*, after all.

Nach notes:

2. Motion to a place. Examples: *Er ritt nach der Stadt.* He rode towards the town. *Sie marschīrten nach dem Rheine.* They marched towards the Rhine. *Nach Westen*, towards west. *Dieser Mann reiset nach Deutschland.* This man travels to Germany. *Als ich nach Berlin reisete, nach Berlin kām*, when I went, when I came to Berlin. *Wann gehen Sie nach der Stadt?* When do you go to town? *Lassen Sie uns nach Hause gehen.* Let us go home. *Gehen Sie und sêhen Sie nach der Sonne.* Go see by the sun. *Das Schiff ist nach London bestimmt.* This ship is bound for London.

Nach is used:

3. With the following and similar verbs: *Nach Einem schicken*, to send for one. *Sich nach einem*

Dinge or nach Einem erkundigen, to inquire after something or for one. *Nach Jemandes Namen fragen*, to ask for one's name. *Nach einem Dinge fühlen*, to feel for a thing. *Nach einem Dinge riechen, stinken, schmecken*, to smell, to stink, to taste of something. *Nach Lichte rufen*, to call for a light. *Nach Einem schlagen*, to strike at one. *Nach einem Dinge zielen*, to aim at a thing. *Nach einem Dinge smachten, verlangen, sich nach einem Dinge sehnen, nach einer Sache streben*, to languish, to long, to aspire for a thing. *Nach Athem schnappen*, to gasp for breath.

Nach signifies:

4. According to; in imitation of. Examples: *Er schreibt nach seiner Vorschrift.* He writes after his copy. *Es ist nach der neuesten Mode gemacht.* It is made after the newest fashion. *Nach der Schrift*, according to the scripture. *Nach der Meinung einiger Gelehrten*, according to the opinion of some learned men. *Wir verfahren nach dem Gesetze.* We proceed according to law. *Alles gelang nach unsern Wünschen.* Every thing succeeded according to our wishes. *Nach dem Scheine urtheilen*, to judge from appearance. *Nach meinem Sinne*, to my liking. *Nach seinem Gefallen*, at his pleasure. *Nach Ihrem Verdienste*, according as you deserve. *Nach dem Geschmacke meines Freundes*, to the taste of my friend. *Es ist sieben nach meiner Uhr.* It is seven by my watch. *Sich nach Einem richten*, to conform to one. *Nach dem Raphael malen*, to paint after Raphael.

Observation. When *nach* signifies according to, it may be put after its case. Examples: *Allem Anscheine nach*, to all appearance. *Meiner Meinung nach*, in my opinion. But when the dative governed by *nach* has a genitive after it, *nach* must stand before its case. For instance: *nach der Beschreibung des Livius*, according to the account of Livy. *Seiner Geburt nach*, according to his birth. *Nach* is also placed in some other instances after its case. For example: *Der Nase nach*, following your nose.

Dem Strome nach, following the stream. *Der Zeit nach*, as for the time.

Nach is joined in the following phrases with *zu*: *nach der linken Hand zu*, towards the left hand. *Nach unten zu*, near the bottom.

In the following phrases *nach* is employed adverbially: *Er bleibt nach wie vor*. He always is the same. *Nach und nach*, *nach gerade*, by little and little, by degrees.

By means of *nach* the following adverbs are formed: *darnāch*, thereafter. *Hernāch*, hereafter. *Nachhér*, after, afterwards. *Wornāch*, after which. To these words the conjunction *nachdém*, after, must be added.

Nächst and *zunächst* answer to the English next. Examples: *Er saß nächst* or *zunächst meinem Vater*. He sat next my father. *Zunächst* stands in the following phrase after its case: *Er saß mir zunächst*. He sat next to me.

Nächst and *zunächst* are also employed adverbially, and then they are sometimes accompanied with the prepositions *an* or *bei*. Examples: *die nächst vergangene Woche*, last week. *Er wohnt nächst an der Kirche*, *nächst bei der Kirche*. He lives next the church.

Nebst signifies either with, or besides. Examples: *Er nebst seiner Schwester kam zu mir*. He with his sister came to me. *Nebst einem schönen Körper besitzt sie auch ein edles Herz*. Besides a fine body, she also possesses a noble heart.

Ob (an abridgment of *oben*) corresponds to the preposition *über*, and signifies:

1. Over. Examples: *Es hängt eine schwarze Wolke ob seinem Haupte*. A black cloud hangs over his head. Instead of *über seinem Haupte*. *Es schwebt ob meinen Augen*. It waves before my eyes. Instead of *vor meinen Augen*. *Er besteht ob seinem Kopfe*. He persists in his opinion. Instead of *auf seinem Kopfe*.

Ob signifies:

2. On account of. Example: *Er tröstete sie ob*

dem Verluste ihres Gatten. He comforted her over the loss of her husband. Instead of *wegen des Verlustes ihres Gatten*, on account of the loss of her husband.

Observation. Some German writers join the preposition *ob*, which is not much in use, also with the genitive case.

In *sammt und sonders*, all and every one of them, *sammt* is used adverbially.

Seit notes a succession of time, and determines the beginning of it. Examples: *Seit dem Tode seines Vaters*, since the death of his father. *Seit einigen Tagen*, since a few days. *Er ist seit kurzem gestorben.* He has died not long ago. *Seitdém* (instead of *seit dem*), since that time; since. *Seit* is also placed before adverbs of time. For instance: *seit wann?* since when?

Seit is also used as a conjunction of time. Example: *Seit ich hier bin*, from the time since which I am here.

It must be said *seithér*, hitherto, and not *seither*.

Von is used:

1. When it is said that a person or thing removes from a place; that a thing is taken away or delivered from another thing; that a thing has been made of any matter, or that it proceeds from another thing; and lastly, that a thing depends on another thing, or has been produced by any efficient cause. Examples: *von einem Orte zum anderen*, from one place to another. *Er ist ében von meinem Bruder gekommen.* He is just come from my brother. *Er reiset von Amsterdam nach London.* He goes from Amsterdam to London. *Er ist nicht weit von dieser Stadt.* He is not far from this town. *Die Gesellschaft stand vom* (instead of *von dem*) *Tische auf.* The company rose from table. *Er nahm es von der Wand.* He took it from the wall *Sie stand weit vom Feuer ab.* She stood far (off) from the fire. *Sie allein rettete mich vom Untergange.* She alone saved me from ruin. *Von der Arbeit ruhen*, to rest from labour. *Der Rock wär von feinem Tuche.* The

coat was of fine cloth. *Der Wagen war ganz von Cēdernholze.* The chariot was all of cedar. *Sie sind vom nämlichen Gepräge.* They are of the same coin. *Ein Gemälde von Titian,* a painting of Titian's. *Der König von Spanien stammt vom Hause Bourbon ab.* The king of Spain is descended from the house of Bourbon. *Ein Kaufmann von Leipzig,* a merchant from Leipzig. *Von London gebürtig,* of London. *Ein Sachse von Gebürt,* a Saxon by birth. *Von Einem hören,* to hear of one; to hear from one. *Er empfängt von mir ein schönes Messer.* He receives from me a fine knife. *Ich liebe ihn vom Grunde meines Herzens.* I love him from all my heart. *Das war ein Fehler von mir.* That was a fault of mine. *Mein Aufenthalt in dieser Stadt hängt von Ihnen ab.* My stay in this town depends on you. *Ich lebte sechs Tage von Nichts als Brote.* I lived for six days upon nothing but bread. *Dieses war sehr wohl von ihm gethān.* This was very well done of him. *Er wurde von seinem Feinde erschlagen.* He was slain by his enemy. *Dieses Haus wurde von dem Könige gebaut.* That house was built by the king. *Dieses Buch ist von ihm geschrieben worden.* That book has been written by him. *Ich lasse mich von ihr malen.* I get me painted by her. *Er wurde von der Schönheit dieses jungen Frauenzimmers hingerissen.* He was taken with the beauty of that young woman.

Von, joined with the verb *seyn*, notes:

2. The possession of a thing. Examples: *Sie war eine Jungfrau von sehr groſser Schönheit.* She was a maid of very great beauty. *Von schöner Gestalt,* of a beautiful form. *Klein von Persōn,* small of size. *Von keiner Dauer,* of no duration. *Es ist eine Sache von groſser Wichtigkeit.* It is an affair of great consequence. It is also said: *von Gesicht;* by sight. *Von der Seite,* aside. *Von neuem,* anew.

Von notes:

3. That of which we speak. Examples: *Dieses Buch handelt von der Unsterblichkeit unserer Seele.* That book treats of the immortality of our soul.

Er spricht schlecht von mir. He speaks ill of me. *Er redet vom Wetter.* He speaks about the weather.

Von notes:

4. The beginning of a thing, or of a time. Examples: *Vom Kopfe bis zum Fuße*, from head to foot. *Vom ersten bis zum letzten*, from first to last. *Von Zeit zu Zeit*, from time to time. *Von Morgen bis in die Nacht*, from morning to night. *Von Tage zu Tage*, from day to day. *Von Alters hér*, from old times. In the last of these examples *von* governs the genitive case. It is better said: *Von alten Zeiten her.*

Von is also used instead of the genitive case in some instances. For example: *Die meisten von uns waren der nämlichen Meinung.* Most of us were of the same opinion. *Die Einwohner von Berlin*, the inhabitants of Berlin. *Ein Beweis von einer Sache*, a proof of something. *Einer von den besten Menschen*, one of the best men.

Von is also joined with the prepositions *an*, *auf*, *aus*, which are placed after the substantive governed by it. Examples: *von seiner frühen Jugend an*, from his early youth. *Von diesem Tage an*, from this day forward. *Von diesem Augenblicke an*, from this moment. *Von dem Anfange der Welt an*, from the beginning of the world. *Von Jugend auf liebe ich ihn.* From my youth I love him.

Von is also put before several adverbs. For instance: *von ungefähr*, by chance. *Von heute an*, from this day forward. *Von oben*, from above. *Er fiel von oben herab.* He fell from on high. *Von unten*, from below. *Von dahér*, thence. *Von hierher*, hence. *Von jetzt an, von nun an*, henceforth.

It is yet to be observed, that by means of *von* the adverbs *davón*, *hiervón*, *wovón* are formed.

Zu notes:

1. Motion towards a person or thing. Examples: *Jesus zeigt uns den Wēg zum* (instead of *zu dem*) *Himmel.* Jesus shows us the way to heaven. *Zum Richter gehen*, to go before the judge. *Zur* (instead of *zu der*) *Hóchzeit gehen*, to go to the wedding.

Zu Tische gehen, to go to dinner, to supper. *Zu Bette gehen*, to go to bed. *Von Thüre zu Thüre gehen*, to go from door to door. *Er wird auf den Abend zu Ihnen kommen.* He will come to you to night. *Setzen Sie sich zu mir.* Sit by me. *Er setzte sich zu Tische.* He sat down at table. *Er fiel ihm zu Fuſse.* He threw himself at his feet. *Er kām zum neuen Thore herein, und fuhr zu demselben wieder hinaus.* He came in through the new gate, and passed through the same gate.

Zu notes:

2. The place, where any person or thing is. Examples: *Er ist zu Berlin.* He is at Berlin. *Er bleibt zu Hause.* He remains at home. *Er ist zur See.* He is at sea. *Zu Wasser*, by water. *Zu Lande*, on land. *Zur Rechten*, at the right side. *Zur Hand*, at hand.

Zu notes:

3. A time. Examples: *Zu jener Zeit*, at that time. *Zu meiner Zeit*, in my time. *Zur rechten Zeit*, in right time. *Zur Unzeit*, out of time. *Zu einer anderen Zeit*, at another time. *Zu gleicher Zeit*, at the same time. *Zu Anfange*, at the beginning. *Er war unglücklich bis zum letzten Augenblicke seines Lebens.* He was unhappy till the last moment of his life. *Zu Mittage*, at noon. *Sie speiseten zu Mittage.* They were at dinner. *Zu Ende seyn*, to be at an end. *Zu Ende bringen*, to finish.

Zu notes:

4. The manner, in which something is performed. Examples: *Er ging zu Fuſse.* He went on foot. *Er kām zu Pferde.* He came on horseback. *Er führte Krieg zu Wasser und zu Lande.* He made war by sea and by land.

Zu notes:

5. The purpose, for which any thing is appointed. Examples: *Ein Gefäſs zu Milch*, a vessel for milk. *Sie bekām tausend Pfund zu ihrer Aussteuer.* She received a thousand pounds to her portion. *Er miethete ihn zum Kutscher.* He hired him for a coachman. *Er hatte ihn zum Hofmeister.* He had him

for a tutor. *Seine Waaren wurden zum Verkaufe ausgestellt.* His commodities were exposed to sale. *Stehen Sie früh zu Ihrer Arbeit auf.* Rise early to your work. *Er ermahnte sie zum Frieden.* He exhorted them to peace. *Zu seinem Lobe*, in his praise. *Er sagte zu mir*, he said to me. *Bedenken Sie meine Liebe zu Ihnen.* Consider my love to you. *Zu meinem Glücke starb er nicht.* Luckily for me he did not die.

Zu notes:

6. A relation of number. Examples: *Zu Paaren*, by couples. *Zur Hälfte*, by half. *Zum ersten*, in the first place. *Zum zweiten*, in the second place. *Ich sage es Ihnen nun zum zweiten Male.* I tell it now to you for a second time. *Zum letzten Male*, for the last time. *Das Pfund zu sechzehn Unzen gerechnet*, the pound reckoned at sixteen ounces.

Zu notes:

7. A change into another state. Examples: *Zu Staube werden*, to turn dust. *Zu Pulver stoßen*, to beat into powder. *Die Feinde haben ihn zum Gefangenen gemacht.* The enemies have made him prisoner. *Sich zu Tode grämen*, to die of a broken heart.

Zu, joined with the words *hinaus* and *hinein*, stands:

8. Instead of *durch*, through. Examples: *Er sah zum Fenster hinaus.* He looked out of the window. *Er warf den Brief zum Fenster hinaus.* He cast the letter out of the window. Instead of *durch das Fenster.*

Zu is employed:

9. In order to form superlatives. Examples: *Zum schönsten*, in the finest manner.

Zu is also used as an adverb. Examples: *Ab und zu*, to and fro. *Die Thüre ist zu*, The door is shut. *Ist das Fenster zu?* Is the window shut? *Gerade zu*, straight along. *Glück zu Ihnen!* Good luck to you! *Gehe zu!* Go on! *Fahre zu!* Drive on! *Es ist zu heiß.* It is too hot. *Er ist zu sehr gereizt.* He is too irritated. It is also said: *Sich*

Etwas zu eigen machen, to appropriate to one's self something. Better: *Sich Etwas eigen machen* or *sich Etwas aneignen.*

Zu, like the English *to*, is also used before the infinitive mood. *Er pflegte zu sagen*, he used to say.

By means of *zu* the adverbs *dazú*, *herzú*, *hinzú* and *wozú* are formed.

Zuwider is always placed after its case. Examples: *Es ist der Vernunft zuwider.* It is contrary to reason, it shocks reason. *Diese Speise ist mir zuwider.* This meat goes against my stomach.

Fourth class of German prepositions.

Prepositions, which govern the accusative.

1. *Durch*, through; by.
2. *Entlang*, along.
3. *Für*, for.
4. *Gegen*, towards, to; against.
5. *Ohne*, without.
6. *Sonder*, without.
7. *Um*, about; for; of.
8. *Wider*, against.

Durch signifies:

1. Through. Examples: *Ich lief durch das Haus.* I ran through the house. *Ich reisete durch gefährliche Wälder.* I travelled through dangerous forests. *Die Sonnenstrahlen gehen vom Himmel durch die Luft zur Erde.* The beams of the sun pass from heaven through the air to the earth. *Er schoss ihn durch die Lunge.* He shot him through the lungs. *Durch* is not only used of place, but also of time. Then it is put after its case. For instance: *Ich lāg die ganze Nacht durch im Schlāfrocke in meinem Bette.* I lay in my bed the whole night through in my nightgown. *Das ganze Jahr durch*, all the year through. In this sense the adverb *hindúrch* is also frequently employed. *Die ganze Nacht hindurch. Das ganze Jahr hindurch.*

Durch signifies:

2. By, by means of, in which sense also the English preposition through is used. Examples: *Die Welt wurde durch Gottes Macht erschaffen.* The world was created through the power of God. *Nichts geschiehet anders als durch Gottes Zūlassung.* Nothing is done but through the permission of God. *Er*

wurde durch einen Pistōlenschuss getödtet. He was killed by a pistol-shot. *Er erlangte seinen Rūf durch sein gutes Betragen.* He gained his reputation by his good conduct. *Sie müssen ihn durch dringende Bitten ermüden.* You must tire him with solicitations.

Durch is used as an adverb in the following phrases: *Meine Strümpfe sind durch.* My stockings are full of holes. *Durch und durch*, quite through. *Ich bin durch und durch nass.* I am wet to the skin.

By means of *durch* the adverbs *dadúrch*, thereby, *hierdúrch*, hereby, *wodúrch*, whereby, are formed.

Entlang is placed after its substantive, and, besides the accusative, it governs also the genitive. It is, of course, said: *den Fluss entlang*, *des Flusses entlang*, along the river. *Entlang* however may also be put before its case. Then it always governs the genitive.

Für, which is not to be confounded with *vōr*, signifies:

1. In the place of, instead of. Examples: *Ich will für Sie wachen.* I will wake for you. *Ein Māl für alle Male**, once for all. *Er schreibt einen Brief für mich.* He writes a letter in my stead. *Ich habe für ihn bezahlt.* I have paid for him. *Ich hielt ihn für Sie.* I took him for you.

Für signifies:

2. In exchange for. Examples: *Er gab einen Diamánten für den Krystáll.* He gave a diamond for the crystal. *Er vertauschte Seide für Spitzen.* He exchanged silk for lace. *Ich habe für dieses Būch einen Thaler gegében.* I have given a dollar for this book. *Meine Kinder kaufen für ihr Geld lieber nützliche Sachen.* My children like better to purchase useful things with their money. *Er schreibt für Geld.* He writes for money. *Er belohnte ihn für seine guten Dienste.* He rewarded him for his good services.

Für signifies:

3. The use or purpose, for which any thing is appointed. Examples: *Ich kaufe diesen Hūt für Sie.*

* It is commonly said: *ein für dllemāl.*

I buy this hat for you. *Mein Haus ist für meine Freunde immer offen.* My house always is open to my friends. *Es ist hier kein Platz für Ihre Schwester.* There is no place for your sister here. *Dieses behalte ich für mich.* That I keep with me. *Dieses ist für ihn verloren.* That is lost to him.

Für signifies:

4. In utility of, in favour of. Examples: *Er stritt für das allgemeine Besste.* He fought for the public good. *Er starb für sein Vaterland.* He died for his country. *Jesus litt für unsere Sünden.* Jesus suffered for our sins. *Dieser Wein ist sehr gut für den Magen.* That wine is very good for the stomach. *Ich spreche für ihn* *. I speak for him. *Für wen sind Sie?* Whom are you for? *Ich bürge für ihn.* I answer for him. *Ich sorge für ihn.* I take care of him. *Er wird für unsere Sicherheit sorgen.* He will provide for our safety.

Für signifies:

5. Because of. Example: *Die ganze Stadt zittert für ihn.* All the town trembles for him. *Einem für Etwas danken, verbunden seyn,* to thank one for something, to be obliged to one for something. *Einen für Etwas bestrafen,* to punish somebody for something.

Für signifies:

6. With respect to. Examples: *Ich für meinen Theil,* I for my part. *Wir für unsern Theil,* we for our parts. *Ich für meine Person thue es nicht.* As for me, I do not it. *Es ist ein gutes Mittel für das Fieber.* It is a good remedy for the fever. Better: *gegen das Fieber,* against the fever. *Er war für jene Zeiten ein gelehrter Mann.* He was a learned man for those times. *Diese Stelle ist für mich zu dunkel.* This passage is too obscure to me.

Für signifies:

7. Towards, to. Example: *Ihre Güte für mich ist groſs.* Your kindness to me is great. Better: *gegen mich. Er hatte eine besondere Achtung für*

* This phrase may also signify: I speak in his place. *Ich spreche vor ihm* has quite another meaning.

heilige Sachen. He had a particular respect for holy things.

Für signifies:

8. During. Example: *Er wurde für sein ganzes Leben gewählt.* He was chosen for life.

Für stands:

9. With the verbs *ansehen, halten, nehmen, finden.* Examples: *Für wen sehen Sie mich an?* Whom do you take me for? *Ich halte ihn für einen gelehrten Mann.* I think him a learned man. *Sie hält sich für ein schönes Frauenzimmer.* She thinks herself a handsome woman. *Ich nehme es für einen Scherz.* I take it for a jest. *Ich nehme es für eine ausgemachte Sache an.* I take it for granted. *Ich finde es für gut.* I think it good.

Für is also used in the following phrases: *für sich bleiben,* to continue single. *Er that es für sich.* He did it of his own accord. *Für die Zukunft,* for the future. *Für dieses Mal,* for this time. *Für das erste,* for the first. *Wir gingen Schritt für Schritt.* We went step by step. *Tag für Tag,* day by day. *Wort für Wort,* word for word. *Mann für Mann,* man by man.

Für is also employed before some adverbs of time. For example: *Für jetzt,* for the present. *Für morgen,* for to-morrow. It is also said: *Was für ein Mann ist er?* What man is he? *Für und für* signifies for ever and ever.

By means of *für* the adverbs *dafür,* for it, *wofür,* for which, for what, are formed. *Ich kann Nichts dafür.* That is not my fault.

Gegen notes:

1. A direction to a place. Examples: *Die Truppen marschiren gegen den Rhein.* The troops march towards the Rhine. *Gegen Süden,* towards the south.

Gegen notes:

2. Figuratively every direction of a thing to another, and, of course, also the tendency of the soul to an object. Examples: *Gottes unendliche Barmherzigkeit gegen uns hat keine Gränzen.* God's infinite mercy towards us has no limits. *Sie sind sehr gü-*

tig gegen mich. You are very kind to me. *Er war gerecht gegen ihn.* He was just to him. *Sie ist mildthätig gegen die Armen.* She is charitable towards the poor. *Sie ist gegen Alle, die mit ihr zu thun haben, unerträglich stolz.* She is insupportably proud towards all who have to do with her. *Er ist gegen alle Gefühle der Menschlichkeit unempfindlich.* He is insensible to all the feelings of humanity. *Er entschuldigte sich gegen sie.* He made an excuse to her. *Sie verschwuren sich gegen den König.* They conspired against the king. *Er vertheidigt mich gegen ihn.* He defends me against him. *Es ist gegen meine Pflicht.* It is against my duty. *Er spricht gegen die Religion.* He speaks against religion. *Ich habe keinen Einwand gegen ihn.* I have no objection to him. In the last five phrases *gegen* stands instead of *wider.*

Gegen is used:

3. When the time or a measure is not exactly determined. Examples: *Gegen den Frühling*, towards the spring. *Gegen Nachmittag*, towards noon. *Gegen das Ende dieser Woche*, towards the end of this week. *Gegen zwei Uhr*, about two o'clock. *Gegen vier Finger lang*, about four fingers long.

Gegen notes:

4. An exchange, or a proportion. Examples: *Ich habe diese Bücher gegen andere Bücher bekommen.* I have received these books for other books. *Gegen Quittung*, upon acquittance. *Sie kämpften fünf gegen fünf.* They fought five to five. *Ich will zwanzig gegen eins setzen, dass er nicht dort war.* I will hold twenty to one that he was not there.

Gegen signifies:

5. In comparison of. Examples: *Er ist Nichts gegen ihn.* He is nothing to him. *Er hält alle Menschen für Thoren gegen sich.* He thinks all men fools to him. *Gegen uns sind Sie glücklich.* Compared with us, you are happy. *Eine Sache gegen die andere halten*, to compare one thing with another.

By means of *gegen* the adverbs *dagégen*, against

it, in return, *hingégen*, on the contrary, *wogégen* against which, against what, are formed.

It is said *gen Himmel*, towards heaven, instead of *gegen den Himmel*. Besides this phrase, that ancient abbreviation of *gegen* is at present no more in use.

Ohne signifies:

1. Without. Examples: *Ich kann es nicht ohne die Einwilligung meines Vaters thun.* I cannot do it without the consent of my father. *Ich kann nicht ohne einen Freund leben.* I cannot live without a friend. *Er bringt die Nacht ohne Schlaf zu.* He passes the night without sleep.

Ohne is also joined with *zu* and *dass*. Then it stands before a verb. Examples: *ohne zu erröthen*, without blushing. *Ohné zu wissen, wér ér war*, without knowing, who he was. *Er wird nicht kommen, ohne dass man nach ihm schickt.* He will not come without being sent for. *Ohne dass ich es wusste*, without my knowing it.

Ohne signifies:

2. Besides. Example: *Es waren zweihundert Personen ohne die Knaben.* There were two hundred persons without the boys. Instead of *aufser den Knaben*, besides the boys.

Observation. *Ohne* always governs the accusative. It must consequently be said *ohne diess*, without this, without that, and not *ohne dem*. Only in the phrase *Zweifels ohne*, without doubt, *ohne* governs the genitive. *Ohne Zweifel* is at present only in use.

Sonder can only be put, when the substantive has no article. Examples: *sonder Geist*, without spirit; *sonder Zweifel*, without doubt.

Um, used of place, signifies:

1. About. Examples: *Er fiel ihr um den Hals.* He fell about her neck. *Das Schnupftuch war ihr um den Kopf gebunden.* The handkerchief was tied round her head. *Er reiste um die Welt.* He went round the world. *Um ihn*, about him, with him. *Um sich sehen*, to look round. *Um diese Gegend*,

here about. In this sense *herum* is also added to *um*. Examples: *Viele Bäume standen um das Haus herum.* Many trees stood round about the house. *Ich ging um die Stadt herum spazieren.* I walked round about the town. *Die Kinder saſsen um den Tisch herum.* The children sat about the table. *Ich hatte Bücher von allen Gattungen um mich herum.* I had books of every kind round me. *Die Erde bewegt sich um die Sonne herum.* The earth moves round the sun.

Um signifies:

2. A regular succession. Examples: *Ich gehe einen Tag um den anderen zu ihm.* I go to him every other day. *Einer um den Anderen,* one after the other. *Sie sah Einen um den Anderen an.* She looked on us by turns.

Um signifies:

3. An exchange. Examples: *Sie verkaufte ihr Haus um einen sehr hohen Preis.* She sold her house at a very high price. *Dieses Gemälde wurde um fünf Guineen verkauft.* This picture was sold for five guineas.

Um signifies:

4. With respect to. Examples: *sich um Einen verdient machen,* to deserve well of one. *Wie steht es um Ihre Gesundheit?* How is your health? *Es ist eine ungewisse Sache um den Krieg.* As for the war, it is an uncertain thing.

Um signifies:

5. For the sake of. Examples: *um Geld spielen,* to play for money. *Um den Sieg streiten,* to fight for the victory. *Um Hilfe schreien,* to cry for help. *Sich um Einen bekümmern,* to care for one. *Er war um die Fortpflanzung seines Familiennamens sehr besorgt.* He was very solicitous for the propagation of his family-name. *Es ist mir sehr leid um Sie.* I am very sorry for you. *Ich bitte um die Erlaubniss, an ihn zu schreiben.* I beg for leave to write to him. *Ich bitte Sie um Verzeihung.* I beg your pardon.

Um notes:

6. A loss. Examples: *um eine Sache kommen,* to

lose a thing. *Er hat mich um mein Geld betrogen.* He has cheated me out of my money. *Es ist um ihn geschehen.* It is over with him, he is lost. *Er hat sich um seinen Verstand getrunken.* He has lost his wits by too much drinking.

Um, used of time, signifies:

7. About, at. Examples: *um den Mittag*, about noon. *Um Sonnenuntergang*, at sunset. *Um die Nacht*, about night. *Um die nämliche Zeit*, about the same time. *Ich ging um eins des Morgens zu Bette.* I did go to bed at one in the morning. *Um halb neun*, at half an hour after eight. *Um wie viel Uhr?* At what o'clock? *Um zwei Uhr.* At two o'clock. *Um welche Stunde wird zu Mittage gegessen?* At what hour do they dine? *Bis um wie viel Uhr waren Sie dort?* How long were you there? *Bis um zwölf Uhr des Nachts.* Till twelve o'clock at night. *Wecken Sie mich gefälliget morgen um sieben Uhr.* Wake me at seven o'clock to-morrow, if you please.

Um notes:

8. A comparison. Examples: *um zwei Drittel reicher*, more rich by two thirds. *Um drei Zoll länger*, about three inches longer. *Um zwei Schuh höher*, about two feet higher. *Einen um einen Kopf kürzer machen*, to make one shorter by the head. *Um zehn Jahre jünger*, younger by ten years. It is also said: *Um so viel besser*, &c., so much the better. *Auge um Auge*, eye for eye.

Um zu, before the infinitive, signifies to, in order to.

Um is also used as an adverb, and then it signifies expired. *Die Zeit ist um.* The time is expired. *Um und um*, on all sides.

By means of *um* the adverbs *darum*, thereabout, *warum*, why, are formed.

Wider denotes a resistance, and signifies against. It is not to be confounded with *wieder*, again. Examples: *Verschwur er sich wider ihn?* Did he conspire against him? *Schrieb er wieder an Sie?* Did he write to you again?

By means of *wider* the adverb *dawider*, against it, is formed.

Fifth class of German prepositions.

Prepositions, which govern the dative and accusative.

1. *An*, at; on; it.
2. *Auf*, upon.
3. *Hinter*, behind.
4. *In*, in, into.
5. *Neben*, at the side of; near.
6. *Über*, over; at; on; upon.
7. *Unter*, under; below; among.
8. *Vor*, before; at; with; of; against.
9. *Zwischen*, between.

These prepositions govern the dative, when they intimate a state of rest, or a permanent action, that is, such a one, which is not directed from one place towards another. In the contrary case, they govern the accusative.

This distinction is rendered more intelligible by applying the questions: *where? in what place? (ubi? quo loco?)* and *whereto? to what place? (quem in locum?)* For instance: *Er reibt sich an einem Steine.* He rubs himself against a stone. *Der Tisch steht an der Wand.* The table stands against the wall. Here the preposition *an* governs the dative in consequence of the question: *Where, in what place* does the table stand? *Setzen Sie den Tisch an die Wand.* Put the table against the wall. Here the preposition *an* requires the accusative, because a motion to the wall is intimated, and consequently the question: *whereto? to what place?* is applied.

It must yet be observed, that in all those instances, in which neither the question: *where?* nor the question: *whereto?* can be applied, the accusative case is put. Examples: *Halten Sie sich an mein Versprechen.* Depend upon my promise. *Über die Tugend und das Laster sprechen*, to speak upon virtue and vice. *Ich saſs da, und wartete zwei Stunden auf ihn.* I sat waiting for him for two hours.

Now the use of every preposition governing the dative and accusative cases will be illustrated by examples.

An, with the dative, notes:

1. A state of rest, or a permanent locality. Ex-

amples: *an einem Orte wohnen*, to live at a place. *An dem Ufer eines Flusses*, on the bank of a river. *Er wacht an der Thüre.* He watches at the door. *Er stand am* (instead of *an dem*) *neuen Thore Schildwache.* He stood sentry at the new gate. *Er saſs am Fenster.* He sat at the window. *Wir saſsen am Tische, an einem Tische.* We sat at table, at a table. *Auf einem falschen Wege*, on a wrong way. *Er schreibt an seinem Pulte.* He is writing at his desk. *Eine Sache an der Mauer befestigen*, to fasten a thing against the wall. *Die Nägel an ihren Fingern waren ganz blau.* The nails of her fingers were quite blue. *Frankfurt an der Oder*, Francfort upon the Oder. *Dieses liegt mir am Herzen.* That sticks to my heart. *An unserer Stelle*, in our place. *Er geht an meiner Hand.* He goes hand in hand with me. *Die Reihe ist an mir.* It is my turn.

An, with the dative, notes:

2. The object or the cause of an action. Examples: *Ich finde kein Vergnügen an meinem Landhause; aber ich finde Vergnügen am Jagen.* I take no pleasure in my countryhouse; but I take delight in hunting. *Man verzweifelt an seiner Genesung.* They despair of his recovery. *Ich zweifle an seinem Aufkommen.* I doubt of his recovery. *Er belohnt die Verdienste des Vaters an den Kindern.* He rewards the merits of the father in the children. *Ich arbeite an einem Buche.* I work at a book. *Ich habe einen bösen Finger, der mich am Arbeiten hindert.* I have a sore finger, that hinders me from working. *Es wird mir an der Stimme fehlen, bevor es mir an Worten fehlen wird.* I shall want voice, before I shall want words. *Dieses wird mich an ihm rächen.* This will revenge me of him. *Sie hat einen Grobian an ihrem Manne.* She has a clown to her husband. *Sie wurde an einem Fieber krank.* She fell sick of a fever. *Dieser junge Mensch starb an einem auszehrenden Fieber.* That young man died of a hectic fever. *Sie starb an einem bösen Halse.* She died of a sore throat.

An, with the dative, notes:

3. A time. Examples: *am dritten Tage*, on the third day. *Ich schrieb am vergangenen Freitage an ihn.* I wrote to him on friday last. *Es geschah am bestimmten Tage.* It happened at the day appointed. *Er starb am vierten Augúst.* He died on the fourth day of August. It is also said: *Am Ende*, at the end.

An, with the dative, notes:

4. A state, condition, manner. Examples: *reich an Freunden*, rich in friends. *Schwach an Verstande*, weak in understanding. *Er ist noch am Lében.* He is still alive. *Man kennt den Vogel an seinen Fédern, und das Silber an seinem Klange.* The bird is known by its plumage, and the silver by its sound. *Ich an meinem Theile*, I for my part.

An, with the accusative, expresses:

1. Motion to a place. Examples: *Ich setzte mich an den Tisch.* I sat down at the table. *Ich gehe an einen anderen Ort.* I go to another place. *Setzen Sie Alles an seinen rechten Platz.* Set every thing in its right place. *Er légte die Hand an das Werk.* He put the hand to work. *Sie stiefsen ihn an die Mauer.* They thrusted him against the wall. *Er band sein Pférd an einen Baum.* He tied his horse to a tree. *Wir kamen glücklich an das Ufer.* We got happily on shore. *An wén muss ich mich wenden?* Whom must I apply to? *Er hielt eine Rede an das Volk.* He made a speech to the people. *Die Reihe kommt an mich.* It comes to my turn. It is also said: *an den Tag (zu Tage) legen*, to declare, to manifest. *An das Licht bringen*, to bring to light. *An eine Sache denken*, to think of a thing. *Sich an einen Ort erinnern*, to recollect a place.

An, with the accusative, expresses:

2. The object of an action. Example: *An eine Sache glauben*, to believe in a thing.

An, with the accusative, expresses:

3. Extent of space and time. Examples: *Wir gingen im Wasser bis an die Kniee.* We walked up to the knees in water. *Bis an die See*, as far as the sea. *Er begleitete mich bis an die Thüre.* He

waited on me to the door. *Bis an den Abend*, until the evening. *An* signifies also *nearly*. *An die zwanzig*, nearly twenty.

In *Himmel an*, upwards to heaven, the preposition *an* stands after its substantive.

By means of *an* the adverbs *daran*, *hieran*, and *woran* are formed.

Auf, with the dative, notes:

1. A state of rest, and signifies not only the locality of a higher place, but also locality in general, attended with the question: *where? (wo? ubi?)* Examples: *Dort sitzt der Vogel auf einem Baume.* There sits the bird on a tree. *Auf dem Thurme*, upon the tower. *Auf dem Dache*, upon the roof. *Auf dem Berge*, upon the mountain. *Das Buch liegt auf dem Tische.* The book lies upon the table. *Er liegt auf dem Ohre.* He lies on his ear. *Es liegt auf dem Boden.* It lies at the bottom. *Auf einem Stuhle sitzen*, to sit on a chair. *Auf dem Rathhause seyn*, to be at the townhouse. *Sie stand auf der anderen Seite des Flusses.* She stood on the other side of the river. *Er kniet auf der Erde.* He kneels upon the ground. *Es giebt kein lebendiges Geschöpf auf der Erde, welches nicht Etwas denkt.* There is no living creature upon earth, which does not think something. *Auf dem Felde*, in the fields. *Das Vieh weidete auf der Wiese.* The cattle grazed upon the meadow. *Auf der Gasse*, in the street. *Er beleidigte mich auf freier Strasse.* He insulted me in the open street. *Auf dem Balle*, at the ball. *Auf der Post*, at the postoffice. *Auf der Jagd seyn*, to be at the chase. *Auf dem Lande leben*, to live in the country. *Ich war auf einer Reise von London nach Cambridge.* I was upon a journey from London to Cambridge. *Er ist auf Reisen.* He is on travels. *Er ist auf der Schule.* He is at school. *Er ist auf der Hochschule.* He is at the university. It is also said: *Sie spielte auf dem Clavier.* She played on the harpsichord. *Er ist geschickt auf der Trompete.* He is skilful at the trumpet. *Der Sieg war auf unserer Seite.* The victory was on our side. *Es ist*

drei Viertel auf eins. It is three quarters past twelve. *Es beruht auf mir.* It depends on me. *Meine Hoffnung steht auf ihm.* My hopes rest upon him. *Er war auf dem Puncte, sich nach Griechenland einzuschiffen, als er plötzlich starb.* He was on the point of embarking for Greece, when he suddenly died.

Auf, with the accusative, has the two foregoing significations, attended with the question: *whereto? (wohin? quem in locum?)* It therefore denotes:

1. Direction to a higher place. Example: *auf den Thurm steigen*, to mount upon the tower. *Er stieg in grosser Eile auf den Hügel.* He mounted the hill in great haste.

2. Local direction in general. Examples: *Er ging auf das Eis.* He went upon the ice. *Auf die Post, auf das Rathhaus gehen*, to go to the postoffice, to the townhouse. *Auf die Jagd gehen*, to go a hunting. *Auf den Ball gehen*, to go to the ball. *Auf Reisen gehen*, to go on travelling. *Er ging auf ihn zu.* He went up to him. *Auf die Gasse laufen*, to run into the street. *Auf das Land reisen*, to go into the country. *Legen Sie es auf den Tisch.* Lay it upon the table. *Er legt sich auf das Ohr.* He lays himself upon his ear. *Werfen Sie es auf die Gasse.* Throw it into the street. *Sie setzten sich auf ein Sofa von Rasen an der Thüre.* They sat down upon a sofa of turf by the door. *Er stützte sich auf den Ellbogen.* He leaned on his elbow. *Er schreibt auf feines Papier.* He writes on fine paper. It is also said: *Meine Fenster gehen auf die Strasse.* My windows look into the street. *Es geht in die vierte Woche, dass ich Ihnen geschrieben habe.* It is more than three weeks, since I wrote to you. *Es geht auf zehn (Uhr).* It turns on ten (o'clock). *Seine Güte erstreckt sich bis auf mich.* His kindness extends to me.

Auf, with the accusative, denotes:

3. The direction of the mind to something. Examples: *auf ein Ding denken, aufmerksam seyn, Acht geben*, to think at a thing, to attend to a thing. *Sie müssen alle Ihre Gedanken auf Ihr Geschäft richten.*

You must turn all your thoughts on your business. *Er lenkte das Gespräch auf meine Schwester.* He turned the conversation upon my sister. *Alle unsere Hoffnungen sind auf die Güte Gottes gegründet.* All our hopes are founded on God's bounty. *Ich verlasse mich auf Ihr Versprechen.* I rely on your promise. *Ich rechne gänzlich auf Ihre Freundschaft.* I reckon entirely upon your friendship. *Sie können mir auf mein Wort, auf mein Gewissen glauben.* You may believe me upon my word, on my conscience. *Auf das Evangelium schwören,* to swear upon the gospel. *Ich saſs und wartete zwei Stunden auf ihn.* I sat waiting for him for two hours. *Sie kam seiner Schelmerei frühzeitig auf die Spur.* She discovered betimes the traces of his villany. *Er versteht sich auf seinen Handel sehr gut.* He understands his trade very well. *Ich bin böse auf ihn, zürne auf ihn,* I am angry at him, with him. *Es kommt auf Sie an.* It depends upon you. *Ich thue nun auf alle Freuden dieser Welt Verzicht.* I now renounce all pleasures of this world. *Antworten Sie auf diese Frage, auf diesen Brief.* Answer to this question, to this letter.

Auf, with the accusative, signifies:

4. According to. Examples: *auf meinen Rath,* by my advice. *Ich thue es auf seinen Befehl.* I do it in consequence of his order. *Er kam auf mein dringendes Bitten.* He came at my instance.

Auf, with the accusative, signifies:

5. In immediate consequence of. Example: *auf die Nachricht von seiner Ankunft in der Stadt,* upon the news of his arrival in town. It is also said: *auf einen Blick,* at a glance.

Auf, with the accusative, notes:

6. Addition or accumulation. Example: *Er schreibt Briefe auf Briefe.* He writes letters upon letters.

Auf, with the accusative, notes:

7. Proportion. Examples: *so Viel auf den Mann,* so much upon the man. *Ein Mittagsmahl auf vier Personen,* a dinner for four persons.

Auf, with the acccusative, notes:

8. The valuation of any thing. Examples: *Ich schätze diesen Garten auf dreihundert Guinēen.* I value this garden at three hundred guineas. It is also said: *auf seine eigenen Kosten*, at his own expense. *Auf seine Rechnung*, for his account.

Auf, with the accusative, notes:

9. Future time, or duration of time. Examples: *auf den Mōntag*, on Monday. *Auf zwei Mōnate*, for two months. *Auf viele Jahre*, for many years. *Auf kurze Zeit*, for a short time. *Können Sie dieses Buch auf zwei Tage entbĕhren?* Can you spare this book for two days? *Auf das neue*, anew. *Auf das ehe-ste*, as soon as possible. *Dieser Gebrauch hat sich bis auf diesen Tag erhalten.* This custom has conserved itself till this day. *Bis auf Ōstern*, till easter. In the two last examples, *auf*, preceded by *bis*, notes at the same time extent. This is also the case in the following phrases: *Einen bis auf die Haut aūsziehen*, to strip one to the very skin. *Bis auf den letzten Blūtstropfen*, to the last drop of blood. *Bis auf vier Thaler*, up to four dollars. *Bis auf den letzten Pfennig*, up to the last farthing.

Auf, with the accusative, notes:

10. A manner. Examples: *auf deutsche Ārt*, in the German way. *Auf diese Art*, in this manner. *Auf englischen Fuſs*, in the English manner. *Auf Deutsch*, in German. *Auf Englisch*, in English. *Auf Französisch*, in French. It is also said: *auf das beste*, in the best manner. *Auf das vortrefflichste*, in the most excellent manner.

Auf is also put before adverbs. For instance: *auf immer*, for ever. *Auf einmāl*, at once.

Auf is also employed as an adverb, and then it answers to the English *up*. Examples: *Berg auf*, up hill. *Stehen Sie auf*, get up. *Sie war nicht auf.* She was not up. *Die Sonne ist auf.* The sun is up. *Mein Vōrrath ist auf.* My provision is up. *Auf! auf!* Up! up! *Auf denn!* Up then! *Auf! folget mir.* Come, follow me. *Wohl auf seyn*, to be well. *Auf* is also put before the conjunction *daſs*, that, to signify purpose or design. *Auf daſs*

signifies consequently in order that, for the purpose that.

By means of *auf* the adverbs *daraūf*, thereupon, upon it, *heraūf*, *hinaūf*, upwards, *hieraūf*, hereupon, *woraūf*, whereupon, whereto, are formed.

Hinter, with the dative, denotes a state of rest. Examples: *Es liegt hinter der Thüre.* It lies behind the door. *Er stand hinter dem Vōrhange.* He stood behind the curtain. *Sie versteckten sich hinter dem Hause.* They hid themselves behind the house. *Wir gingen hinter den Jägern hēr.* We went behind the huntsmen. *Ich ging hinter dem Manne her.* I walked after the man, I followed him. *Er kommt hinter mir her.* He comes after me. *Er ist hinter mir her.* He is upon my heels. *Er lōbte ihn hinter seinem Rücken.* He praised him behind his back. *In diesem Theile der Gelehrsamkeit lässt er alle Andere weit hinter sich.* In that part of learning he leaves all others far behind him.

Hinter, with the accusative, marks motion to a place. Example: *Er ging hinter die Thüre.* He went behind the door.

By means of *hinter* the adverbs *hinterhēr*, afterwards, and *hinterdreīn*, afterwards, are formed.

In, with the dative, denotes a state of rest, and is used of place or time. Examples: *Er ist in der Schule, in der Kirche, in der Stadt.* He is at school, at church, in town. *Ich werde in jener Gesellschaft seyn.* I shall be in that company. *Bei seiner Ankunft in Deutschland*, on his arrival in Germany. *Ich habe Verrichtungen in Berlīn.* I have some business at Berlin. *Er geht in Ihrem Garten spazīeren.* He is walking in your garden. *Liegen Sie noch im* (instead of *in dem*) *Bette?* Are you a bed still? *Ich traf nie solche feine Sitten in irgend einem fremden Lande an.* I never met with such polite manners in any foreign country. *Sie finden in allen Städtchen auf der Straſse rothen und weiſsen Wein.* You find at all little towns on the road white and red wine. *Das Feuer brūch in allen Straſsen der Stadt auf einmāl aus.* The fire broke out in all

the streets of the town at once *Er warf seine Kleider in der Stube umhér.* He threw his clothes about the room. *In zwei Tagen*, in two days. *In diesen Tagen (dieser Tage)*, within these days. *In den nächsten Tagen (nächster Tage)*, one of these days. *In der vergangénen Zeit*, in time past. *Im Fórtgange der Zeit*, in process of time. *In einer Stunde*, within an hour. *Im Ánfange*, in the beginning. *In einem fort, in einem wég*, continually, always. *In* notes also the state present at any time. Examples: *Sie leben zusámmen in Frieden.* They live in peace together. *Sie stehen in gutem Vernéhmen mit einánder.* They are at peace with one another. *In der Noth erkennt man einen Freund.* A friend is known in time of need. *Ich bin desswégen in keiner Furcht.* I am in no fear about it. *In Geschäften reisen*, to travel on business. *Er ist im Begriffe zu fechten.* He is about to fight. *In vollem Ernste*, in good earnest. *In* stands also instead of *während*, during. Example: *Er schréibt im Réden.* He writes speaking.

In, with the accusative, denotes motion to a place. Examples: *In den Kopf steigen*, to rise into the head. *Wir gehen in die Kirche, in die Schule, in das Schaūspiel.* We go to church, to school, to the play. *Sie warfen seinen Leichnam in das Meer.* They threw his corpse into the sea. *Er schlūg den Feind in die Flucht.* He put the enemy to flight. *Er warf sich in einen Ármstuhl.* He threw himself into an armchair. *Er spie mir in das Gesicht.* He spit upon my face. *Er stürzte sich in den Ábgrund.* He threw himself into the abyss. *In das Wasser fallen*, to fall into the water. *Da er seine Schulden nicht bezahlen konnte: so wurde er in das Gefängniss geworfen.* Being not able to pay his debts, he was thrown into prison. *Er steckte das Buch in seine Tasche.* He put the book into his pocket. *Ihre Lage hat ihn in die grōſste Unruhe gestürzt.* Your situation has thrown him into the greatest trouble. *Er lōbt ihn in das Gesicht.* He commends him to his face. *In das Elend gerathen*, to come

into misery. *Die Wahrheit wird nie in die Köpfe dieser Menschen eīndringen.* Truth shall never penetrate into the heads of these men. *Dieses sticht ihm in die Augen.* That strikes his eyes. *Ich will mich nicht in sein Geschäft mengen.* I will not meddle with his business. *Er drang in mich.* He pressed me. It is also said: *in die Breite*, in breadth. *In die Länge*, in length. *In die Quere*, across. When connected with the particle *bis*, *in* marks extent of space or time. Examples: *bis in das Zimmer*, as far as the chamber. *Bis in die Nacht spielen*, to play till night. *Bis in Ewigkeit*, to eternity. It is also said: *in den Tag hineīn leben*, to live at random.

By means of *in* the adverbs *indéssen*, *darín*, *hierín*, *worín*, are formed. In *indessen*, *in* governs the genitive. It is also said: *in so fern*, *in so weit*, as far as, in as much.

Nében, with the dative, denotes a state of rest. Examples: *Er sāſs neben mir*, *dicht neben mir.* He sat at my side, next to me. *Er ging neben dem Könige.* He went by the side of the king. *Er stand neben mir.* He stood near me. *Er schoss neben dem Ziele vorbei.* He shot beside the mark. *Neben einem anderen dienen*, to serve together with another. *Neben anderen Dingen bekām ich mehrere Bücher.* Besides other things, I received several books.

Neben, with the accusative, marks motion to a place. Examples: *Er lēgte das Papīer neben den Kūchen.* He placed the paper at the side of the cake. *Er setzte sich neben mich.* He sat down near me.

Neben is used as an adverb in the following phrase: *Er ging neben hér.* He went at his side.

By means of *neben* the adverbs *nebenbeī* and *danében* are formed.

Über, with the dative, denotes a state of rest. It signifies:

1. Over, above, with respect to place. Examples: *Über der Thüre stand folgende Inschrift.* Over the door there was the following inscription. *Er wohnt über mir.* He lives over me. *Sein Zimmer ist über dem meinigen.* His room is above mine.

Er blieb über der Erde. He remained above ground. *Eben zu jener Zeit war ich über Meer.* At that very time I was over sea. *Er sieht die Gefahr nicht, welche über seinem Haupte schwebt.* He does not see the danger, that hovers over his head.

Über, with the dative, signifies:

2. Beyond. Example: *Er wohnt über dem Flusse.* He lives beyond the river.

Über, with the dative, signifies:

3. During, at, with respect to time or occupation. Examples: *über Tische*, while at table, at dinner. *Er schlief über dem Lesen ein.* He fell asleep in reading. *Ich schlief über dem Buche ein.* I fell asleep over the book. *Er sass über seiner Arbeit.* He was sitting at his work. *Er war über einer Arbeit.* He was occupied with a work.

Über, with the dative, notes:

4. The cause. Examples: *Ich bin über dem grossen Lärmen aufgewacht.* I was roused from sleep by the great noise. *Über einem Dinge Etwas vergessen*, to forget something on account of another thing.

Über, with the accusative, denotes motion to a place. It signifies:

1. Over. Examples: *Er legte das Messer über die Thüre.* He put the knife over the door. *Er sprang über einen Bach, über einen Stock.* He leapt over a brook, over a stick. *Er lief über die Gasse.* He ran over the street. *Er geht über Meer.* He goes over sea. It is also said: *Er reiset über Cassel nach Amsterdam.* He goes to Amsterdam by the way of Cassel. *Er ist über Land gereiset.* He is gone into the country. *Über Einen kommen*, to come upon one. *Er sieht mich über die Achseln an.* He looks at me over the shoulders. He treats me with contempt. *Er setzt sich über Alles weg.* He does not mind any thing. With the particle *bis*, *über* expresses extent. Examples: *Er fiel in das Wasser bis über die Ohren.* He fell over head and ears into the water. *Er steckt bis über die Ohren in Schulden.* He is over head and ears in debts.

Observation. In the following instance, implying motion to a place, *über* has the dative after it, because I may ask the question: *where? (wo? ubi?) Der Pfeil flog über meinem Kopfe weg.* The arrow flew over my head.

Über, with the accusative, signifies:

2. Above, over, higher in rank, power, or excellence. Examples: *Er erhebt sich über Andere.* He raises himself above others. *Ein Vater hat Gewalt über seine Kinder.* A father has power over his children. *Der Weise herrscht über seine Leidenschaften.* The wise man is master of his passions. *Wir hatten viele Vortheile über unsern Feind.* We had many advantages over our enemy. *Er ist über ihn an Gelehrsamkeit.* He is above him in learning. *Er ist über mich in Allem.* He is above me in every thing.

Über, with the accusative, signifies:

3. Above, beyond, exceeding, more than, besides. Examples: *Er ging über das Ziel hinaus.* He went beyond the mark. *Dieses ist über meine Kräfte.* That is above my strength. *Dieses geht über sein Vermögen.* That is above his power. *Ehre geht über Reichthum.* Honour is more worth than riches. *Ich belohnte ihn über seine Verdienste.* I rewarded him beyond his merits. *Es gefällt ihm über alle Vorstellung.* It pleases him beyond imagination. *Über sechs Ellen lang*, above six yards. *Er focht über eine Stunde.* He fought above an hour. *Die Schlacht dauerte über acht Stunden.* The battle lasted above eight hours. *Es sind schon über drei Wochen*, it is already more than three weeks. *Über die Hälfte*, more than half. *Ich habe ihm zehn Thaler über die Summe gegeben, die ich ihm schuldig war.* I have given him ten dollars besides the sum, which I owed to him. *Über dieses*, besides that. Instead of *über dieses*, it is commonly said and written *überdiess. Überdem* is a fault.

Über, with the accusative, signifies:

4. Future time, when it is placed before its substantive, and duration of time, when it is put after it. Examples: *heute über acht Tage*, from this day

sennight. *Über das (übers) Jahr*, next year. *Über ein Jahr*, in a year hence. *Den Tag über*, during the day. *Die Nacht üben*, during the night. *Den Sommer über*, during the summer. *Das Jahr über*, during the year. *Diese Zeit über*, by that time. It is however said: *über Nacht an irgend einem Orte bleiben*, to stay all night at any place.

Über, with the accusative, notes:

5. The subject of any discourse or writing. Examples: *über einen gewissen Gegenstand schreiben, sprechen, streiten*, to write, to speak, to dispute upon a certain subject *Er schrieb ein Buch über den Kreislauf des Blutes.* He wrote a book about the circulation of blood. *Über einen Vorschlag berathschlagen*, to deliberate upon a proposition. *Ich dachte über das, was er sagte, ernsthaft nach.* I reflected deeply on what he said.

Über, with the accusative, notes:

6. The cause of the action expressed by the verb. Examples: *Ich tröstete Sie über den Verlust ihres Gatten.* I comforted her over the loss of her husband. *Es ist Freude im Himmel über einen Sünder, der Busse thut.* There is joy in heaven over one sinner, that repents. *Sich über eine Sache grämen*, to grieve about something. *Über eine Sache betrübt seyn*, to be afflicted at something. *Sich über eine Sache wundern, freuen, kränken*, to wonder, to rejoice at a thing, to vex one's self about a thing. *Sich über eine Sache erzürnen*, to grow angry on account of a thing. *Sich über eine Sache beleidigt finden*, to take offence at something. *Sich über Einen beklagen*, to complain of one. *Sich über Einen lustig machen*, to make merry with one. *Sich über Einen aufhalten*, to blame one.

Über, governs the accusative:

7. When it is used in exclamations of surprise or indignation. Example: *O über den Thoren!* O what a fool is he!

When *über* is joined with an attributive adjective, it signifies more than, in too great a degree, too. Example: *Überglücklich*, overhappy. *Über und*

über is used as an adverb, and signifies all over, thoroughly, quite. Example: *Ich schwitze über und über.* I am all in sweat.

By means of *über* the adverbs *überáll*, *überaūs*, *darüber*, *herüber*, *hierüber*, *hinüber*, *vorüber*, *worüber*, are formed. For instance: *Der Krieg ist vorüber.* The war is over. *Das Jahr ist vorüber.* The year is past.

Unter, with the dative, notes a state of rest. It signifies:

1. Under, below, beneath, with respect to place. It is then opposed to *über*. In this sense it marks also a state of subjection. Examples: *Der Hund liegt unter dem Tische.* The dog lies under the table. *Unter dem Stuhle hervōr*, from under the chair. *Er sitzt unter einem Baume.* He sits under a tree. *Das Wasser läuft unter der Brücke weg.* The water runs under the bridge. *Alles, was unter dem Himmel ist*, every thing that is under heaven. *Alles unter der Sonne ist vergänglich.* Every thing under the sun is subject to change. *Alles unter dem Monde*, all below the moon. *Unter dem Obdache eines Felsens*, under the shelter of a rock. *Unter der Erde*, under the ground. *Er hält Alles unter Schloss und Schlüssel.* He keeps every thing under lock and key. *Unter den Händen des Barbiers*, under the barber's hands. *Er erlāg unter der Last seiner Jahre.* He sunk under the load of his years. *Unter dem Joche der Leidenschaften*, under the yoke of the passions. *Alle Menschen stehen unter den Gesetzen.* All men are subject to the laws. *Unter meiner eigenen Anweisung*, under my own instruction. *Wir lébten unter seinem Schutze.* We lived under his protection. It is also said: *Was verstehen Sie unter diesem Worte?* What do you mean by this word? *Ich empfing Ihren Brief unter dem sechsten dieses Monats.* I received your letter under the date of the sixth instant. *Unter der Gestalt eines Kindes*, under the figure of a child. *Unter dem Scheine der Gerechtigkeit*, under colour of justice. *Es geschah unter der Hand.* It was done

under hand. *Unter dem nämlichen Namen*, under the same name. *Unter dieser Bedingung*, under this condition. *Unter der Bedingung, dass*, on condition that. *Unter vielem Lachen*, with a great laughter. *Unter Vergiefsung eines Stromes von Thränen*, shedding a torrent of tears.

Unter, with the dative, notes:

2. The time of a sovereign's government. Examples: *unter dem Augustus*, under Augustus. *Unter Trajān*, under Trajan. *Unter der Regierung Königs Lūdwig des Vierzehnten*, under the reign of king Louis XIV. *Unter der Königin Anna*, under the queen Anne. It is also said: *Er wurde unter einem glücklichen Planēten geboren.* He was born under a happy planet.

Unter, with the dative, signifies:

3. Below, beneath, with respect to rank, to dignity, to excellence. Examples: *Sie hat unter ihrem Stande geheirathet.* She has married below herself. *Er ist weit unter mir.* He is far below me. *Er ist unter ihm an Gebūrt, an Ehre, an Wissenschaft.* He is beneath him in honour, in birth, in knowledge. *Es ist unter seiner Würde, so zu handeln.* It is below him to do so.

Unter, with the dative, signifies:

4. Amongst. Examples: *Einer unter ihnen*, one amongst them. *Sokrates war der weiseste Mann unter den Griechen.* Socrates was the wisest man among the Greeks. Instead of *der weiseste Mann der Griechen. Es war unter den Römern der Gebrauch*, it was the custom among the Romans. *Unter* (or *von*) *allen Menschen, die ich kenne, ist er der vōrsichtigste.* Of all the men I know he is the most cautious. *Unter anderen Dingen*, amongst other things.

Unter, with the dative, signifies:

5. During. Examples: *unter der Predigt*, during the sermon. *Unter dem Essen*, during dinner. *Unter dem Lēsen*, while reading. *Unter der Zeit*, in the mean time. *Ich schlief unter der Arbeit ein.* I fell asleep at working.

Unter, with the dative, signifies:

6. For less than. Examples: *Ich kann diesen Hût unter zwei Thalern nicht verkaufen.* I cannot sell this hat under two dollars. *Unter zehn Thalern*, for less than ten dollars. *Kinder unter zwölf Jahren*, children under twelve years.

Unter governs the accusative, when it notes motion to a place, or when I may ask: *wohin? (quem in locum?)* Examples: *Er setzte sich unter einen Baum.* He sat down under a tree. *Ich steckte meine goldene Uhr unter mein Kopfküssen.* I put my golden watch under my pillow. *Die Reichen trêten oft die Armen unter die Füsse.* The rich often tread the poor beneath their feet. *Er tauchte sich unter das Wasser.* He dived under water. *Sie wurden unter das Joch des Tyrannen gebracht.* They were brought under the yoke of the tyrant. *Ich mische mich nie unter die Zūschauer.* I never mix amongst the spectators. *Er rechnet mich unter die Zahl seiner Freunde.* He reckons me amongst the number of his friends. *Es wurde unter sie getheilt.* It was divided amongst them. It is also said: *Er sagte es mir unter die Augen.* He told me it to my face.

In *unterdéssen (indéssen)*, in the mean time, which is used as an adverb, and in *unter Weges*, which is frequently written *unterwēges*, and, of course, in one word, *unter* governs the genitive. *Unterweges* is employed for *auf dem Wege*, on the way.

Unter is used as an adverb in the following phrase: *Es rēgnete mit unter.* It rained sometimes.

By means of *unter* the adverbs *darúnter*, thereunder, *herúnter*, *hinúnter*, downwards, *worúnter*, under which, whereby, amongst which, are formed.

Vōr, with the dative, notes a state of rest. It signifies:

1. Before, with respect to place. Examples: *Er sitzt vor der Thüre.* He sits before the door. **Er stand vor ihm.* He stood before him.

* Another meaning has the phrase: *Er stand für ihn.* He answered for him.

Vor, with the dative, signifies:

2. In the presence of. Examples: *Sie sollten sich dessen vor ihr schämen.* You ought to be ashamed of it in her presence. *Er flieht vor mir.* He flies from me. *Als er in das Zimmer trāt: standen alle Anwesenden vor ihm auf.* When he entered the room, all, who were present, rose to him. *Ich habe den Tōd oft vor den Augen gehābt.* Death has often been present before my sight. *Ich erschrecke vor dem Tode.* I am frightened at death. *Ich fürchte mich vor diesem Menschen.* I am afraid of this man. *Sie würden sich vor einem solchen Anblicke entsetzt haben.* You would have started up at such a sight. *Er zittert vor Ihrem Anblicke.* He trembles at the sight of you. *Er verbirgt seine Liebe vor mir.* He conceals his love from me. *Ich erstaunte vor ihrer Schönheit.* I was surprised at her beauty. *Hüten Sie sich vor ihm.* Beware of him. *Der Menschen Weisheit ist nūr Thorheit vor Gott.* Men's wisdom is but folly to God.

Vor, with the dative, signifies:

3. Against. *Ich fand keinen Schutz vor der Kälte.* I found no shelter against the cold. *Ich habe ihn vor dieser Gefahr gesichert.* I have secured him from that danger. *Dieser Baum wird uns vor dem Regen schützen.* This tree will shelter us from rain. *Diese Mauer wird meine Blumen vor dem Winde beschirmen.* This wall will screen my flowers from wind. *Die Mäfsigkeit bewahrt uns vor Krankheit.* Temperance preserves us from sickness. In all these phrases *vor* stands instead of *gegen*.

Vor, with the dative, signifies:

4. Before, with respect to order. Examples: *Das Pferd geht vor dem Wagen.* The horse goes before the cart. *Der Feldherr geht vor den Soldaten hér.* The captain marches before the soldiers.

Vor, with the dative, signifies:

5. A priority of time. Examples: *Vor Tage*, before day. *Er kam vor der Zeit.* He came before the time. *Vor der Schöpfung der Welt*, before the

creation of the world. It is also said: *Vor der Hand nicht*, not for the present.

Vor, with the dative, denotes:

6. Time past. Examples: *Vor undénklichen Zeiten*, in times out of mind. *Vor einem Jahre*, a year ago. *Vor einigen Jahren*, some years ago. *Als ich vor vier Jahren zu London war*, when I was at London four years since. *Vor einigen Tagen*, a few days since. *Vor acht Tagen*, eight days ago. *Vor ungefähr vierzehn Tagen*, about a fortnight ago. *Vor langer Zeit*, long ago, long since. *Vor kurzem*, not long ago. *Vor diesem*, formerly.

Vor, with the dative, denotes:

7. A preference. Examples: *Ich gébe ihr den Vōrzūg vor allen anderen Frauenzimmern auf der Êrde.* I give her the preference above all other women on earth. *Vor Allem*, above all.

Vor, with the dative, expresses:

8. An efficient cause. Examples: *Er weinte vor Freude.* He wept for joy. *Sie zitterte vor Kälte.* She trembled with cold. *Ich sah ihn vor Furcht zittern.* I saw him quake with fear. *Wir vergingen alle vor Mitleid.* We were all melted with compassion. *Er starb vor Alter.* He died of old age. *Mancher Gelehrte kām vor Hunger um.* Many a learned man perished with hunger. *Er zerplatzte vor Lachen.* He burst with laughing.

Vor, with the accusative, notes motion to a place. Examples: *Er warf es vor die Thüre.* He threw it before the door. *Setzen Sie es vor das Feuer.* Put it before the fire. *Spannen Sie die Pférde vor den Wagen.* Put the horses before the carriage. *Er ging vor das Thōr.* He went out of the towngate. *Er fordert ihn vor die Klinge.* He challenges him to fight a duel. *Ich nehme es vor die Hand.* I take it in hand.

By means of *vor* the following words are formed: *bevōr*, before. *Davōr*, before it; from it. *Hervōr*, forth. *Wovōr*, before which; against which, from which. *Wovor ich mich fürchte*, of which I am afraid. *Zuvōr*, before; formerly. *Zuvörderst*, before all. *Vordn*, before. *Voraūs*, *im voraus*, *zum*

voraus, beforehand. *Vorbei*, *vorüber*, by; over. *Das Gewitter wird bald vorbei seyn.* The storm will soon be over. *Es ist zehn vorbei.* It has struck ten. *Es ist mit ihm vorbei.* He is lost. *Vordém*, formerly. *Vorhér*, before. *Vorhin*, some while ago. *Vorlängst*, a long time ago. *Vorwärts*, forward.

Zwischen, with the dative, notes a state of rest, attended with the question: *where? (wo? ubi?)* Examples: *Er sass zwischen ihm und mir.* He sat between him and me. *Der Fluss läuft zwischen den zwei Hügeln.* The river runs betwixt the two hills. *Es war eine Unterredung zwischen ihnen.* There was a conference between them. *Es entstand ein Streit zwischen dem Vater und dem Sohne.* There arose a quarrel between the father and the son. *Er schwebte lange Zeit zwischen Furcht und Hoffnung.* He was a good while betwixt hope and fear. *Es ist ein grosser Unterschied zwischen den zwei Vorwörtern für und vor.* There is a great difference between the two prepositions *für* and *vor*.

Zwischen, with the accusative, notes motion to a place, attended with the question: *whereto? (wohin? quem in locum?)* Examples: *Er warf seine Bücher zwischen die Stühle.* He threw his books between the chairs. *Er nahm es zwischen zwei Finger.* He took it between two fingers.

By means of *zwischen* the adverbs *dazwischen*, therebetween, and *inzwischen*, in the mean time, are formed.

Additional remarks on the prepositions.

1. The prepositions *an*, *in*, *von*, *zu*, are sometimes united into one word with the dative and accusative of the definite article. It is, of course, said: *am*, instead of *an dém*. *Ans*, instead of *an das*. *Im*, instead of *in dem*. *Ins*, instead of *in das*. *Vom*, instead of *von dem*. *Zum*, instead of *zu dem*. *Zur*, instead of *zu dér*. These prepositions either coalesce with the article, or they are put to the article without being incorporated with it. In some phrases however the contraction alone is admitted.

Such phrases are the following: *am* or *im Anfange. Am Lében. Am bésten, am schönsten. Zur Nōth.* It is also said: *Aufs*, instead of *auf das. Übern*, instead of *über den. Übers*, instead of *über das. Unterm*, instead of *unter dem. Unters*, instead of *unter das. Vōrm*, instead of *vor dem. Vōrs*, instead of *vor das.* But these coalitions ought to be avoided by elegant speakers.

2. When in a phrase two prepositions, which govern the same case, relate to the same substantive, this substantive is put only after the second of these prepositions. Example: *Das Vorwort wegen kann vor und nach seinem Hauptworte stehen.* The preposition *wegen* may stand before and after its substantive. But when these prepositions do not govern the same case, the substantive is put after the first preposition; and after the second the determinative adjective *derséIbe* must be used instead of the substantive. Example: *Er hat mit meiner Hilfe und ohne dieselbe mehrere Bücher geschrieben.* He has written several books with and without my aid. It is said less correctly: *mit und ohne meine Hilfe.* When the word, to which the two prepositions relate, is a pronoun, this pronoun must then twice be put. Example: *Ich werde mit ihm und ohne ihn zu Ihnen kommen.* I shall come to you with and without him. It is said less correctly: *mit und ohne ihn.*

3. When the same preposition belongs to more than one substantive, it is only once put. Example: *von meinem Vater, meinem Bruder und meiner Schwester*, from my father, my brother, and my sister.

4. Also the participles *ánlangend, betreffend*, concerning, *aūsgenommen*, except, *unbeschādet*, without prejudice, are used as prepositions. *Ich sah alle meine Freunde, ausgenommen Ihren Vater.* I saw all my friends, except your father. In the following phrase *ausgenommen* is employed as an adverb, and has therefore the nominative after it: *Alle waren ánwesend, ausgenommen Ihr Vater.* All were present,

except your father. *Unbeschadet* governs the dative, and stands after its case.

5. In English some prepositions may be put at the end of the phrase; and this must always be done, when the connective adjective *which* is omitted. For instance: Whom did you give that to? Whom do you go with? The man I spoke of. For: The man, of whom I spoke. The books he referred to. For: The books, to which he referred. These modes of speaking are usual in English; but in German they do not take place. It must consequently be said in German: *Wém gaben Sie dieses? Mit wem gehen Sie? Der Mann, von welchem ich sprāch. Die Bücher, auf die er verwies.*

Section II.

Exercises on the greatest part of the German prepositions.

I.

He lives within the walls of the town. He came to me about his children. He is come at this moment. He did it for the sake of his uncle. I cannot come to you by reason of the sickness of my father. Notwithstanding your description, I have not found his house. By means of your description, I shall soon find out his garden. He is despised on account of his avarice. I have done it for the sake of her sons. During the space of two hundred and twenty years. She liked him at no time. Ease of mind is necessary for our happiness. You find me at all times at home. He is praised by some, and blamed by others. Every man ought to make use of the reason God has endowed him with. All trees and plants thrive after rain. After two years I shall visit my parents. She has a violent passion for fine arts.

To live, *wohnen.*	to come, **kommen.*
within, *innerhalb.*	to, *zu.*
the wall, *die Mauer,* 7.	about, *um — willen.*
the town, *die Stadt,* 8.	at, *in.*

the moment, *der Augenblick*, 1.
to do, **thün*.
for the sake, *um — willen*.
the uncle, *der Oheim*, 1.
by reason of, *wegen*.
the sickness, *die Krankheit*, 7.
notwithstanding, *ungeächtet*.
the description, *die Beschreibung*, 7.
to find, **finden*.
by means of, *vermittelst*.
soon, *bald*.
to find out, *ausfündig machen, finden*.
avarice, *der Geiz*, 1.
on account of, *halben*.
to despise, *verachten*.
the space, *der Zeitraum*, 1.
of, *von*.
to like, *lieben*.
at, *zu*.
time, *die Zeit*, 7.
ease of mind, *die Seelenruhe*, 7.
for, *für*.
happiness, *die Glückseligkeit*, 7.
necessary, *nöthwendig*.
at, *zu*.
at home, *zu Hause*.
by, *von*.
some, *Einige*.
others, *Andere*.
to blame, *tadeln*.
every man, *jeder Mensch*.
ought to make use, *sollte* or *muss Gebrauch machen*. *Gebrauch machen* is put at the end of the sentence.
of, *von*.
the reason, *die Vernunft*, 8.
with, *mit*. *Which* is here omitted, and must be expressed in German.
to endow, *begaben*.
tree, *der Baum*, 1.
plant, *die Pflanze*, 7.
to thrive, (**treiben*) **wachsen*.
after, *nach*.
rain, *der Regen*, 4.
the parents, *die Ältern*.
to visit, *besuchen*.
violent, *heftig*.
the passion, (*die Leidenschaft*) *die Liebe*, 7.
for, *zu*.
fine arts, *die schönen Künste*.

II.

Grass grows out of the earth. The soft cheese and all other kinds of cheese are prepared from milk. From what country are you? When this boy returns from school, he uses to throw his books behind the stove. She did it through love to me. My uncle lives in the middle of the town, near the townhouse, opposite to the coffee-house. These two men live opposite to each other. In the midst of his discourse he fell sick. In the midst of dangers he was intrepid. He was *in the midst of the enemies. He still continues in this town. My language-master says every day to his scholars: The study of the German language requires much application. The morning is the most proper part of the day for study. I did not receive any comfort from my relations. He had never been at this

sport before. I was received at the door by a servant. This cruel sight shall ever be before my eyes. He threw a heavy stone at me. He wrote after a fair copy. According to some authors, who have written upon him, he died in another year. Heat proceeds from the fire of the sun. I have read of a certain prince, who could neither read nor write. Look at his watch.

Grass, *das Grās*, 2.
to grow, **wachsen*.
out of, *aus*.
the earth, *die Erde*, 7.
the soft cheese, *der weiche Käse*, 1.
the kind, *die Art*, 7.
of, *von*.
from, *aus*.
milk, *Milch*.
to prepare, *bereiten*.
from, *aus*.
the country, *das Land*, 1.
when, *wenn*.
the boy, *der Knabe*, 6.
from, *aus*.
school, *die Schule*, 7.
to return, *zurückkehren*.
to use, *pflegen*.
behind, *hinter*.
the stove, *der Ofen*, 4.
to throw, *zu werfen*.
through love, *aus Liebe*.
to, *gegen*.
to live, *wohnen*.
in the middle of, *mitten in*.
near, *bei*.
the townhouse, *das Räthhaus*, 2.
the coffee-house, *das Kaffeehaus*, 2.
opposite, *gegenüber*.
to each other, *einánder*.
in the midst of, *mitten in*.
discourse, *die Rede*, 7.
to fall sick, *krank werden*.
danger, *die Gefahr*, 7.
intrepid, *unerschrocken*.
**mitten unter*.
the enemy, *der Feind*, 1.
to continue, **bleiben*.
still, *immer noch*.
the language-master, *der Sprāchmeister*, *der Sprāchlehrer*, 4.
to say, *sagen*.
every day, *jeden Tag*, *tāglich*.
to, *zu*.
the scholar, *der Schüler*, 4.
the study, *das Studium*.
to require, *erfordern*.
application, *der Fleifs*, 1.
the morning, *der Morgen*, 4.
proper, *geeignet*.
the part, *der Theil*, 1.
for, *zu*.
study, *das Studīren*. The article must here coalesce with the preposition *zu*.
to do receive, **empfangen*.
not any, *kein*.
comfort, *der Trōst*, 1.
from, *von*.
the relation, *der Verwandte*, 6.
never, *nie*.
at, *bei*.
sport, *die Lústbārkeit*, 7.
before, *zuvōr*.
at, *an*.
by, *von*.
a servant, *ein Bedienter*, 6.
cruel, *grausam*.
sight, *der Ánblick*, 1.
ever, *immer*.
before, *vor*.
eye, *das Auge*, 3.
to throw, **werfen*.
heavy, *schwēr*.
stone, *der Stein*, 1.
at, *nach*.
to write, **schreiben*.

after, *nach.*
fair, *schön.*
a copy, *eine Vorschrift*, 7.
according to, *nach.*
some, *einige.*
the author, *der Schriftsteller*, 4.
upon, *über.*
to die, **sterben.*
another year, *ein anderes Jahr*, 1.
heat, *die Hitze*, 7.
to proceed, *hérrühren. Hér* must be placed at the end of the phrase.
from, *von.*
the fire, *das Feuer*, 3.
the sun, *die Sonne*, 7.
to read, **lésen.*
of, *von.*
a certain prince, *ein gewisser Fürst*, 6.
neither — nor, *weder — noch.*
look, *séhen Sie.*
at, *nach.*

III.

Who knocks at the door? Moles live in the ground. The undertaking was delayed through want of hands. Whence do you come? I come from London, and intend to go to Paris. My brother is safely arrived at Rome. I wrote to him *from time to time; but I have received no answer from him. Wait till another time. Out of two hundred instances I shall name but one. He works with his children **from morning to night. Very excellent verses have been written by several celebrated poets in praise of the fair sex. It was of the finest gold. This cloth has been manufactured from fine wool. Wool grows upon the back of the sheep. It is with us as with the English. This expression is very common with the German writers. This word ought to be written with a double consonant. Man consists of two parts. By that time all will be ready for our journey. He had all the qualifications requisite for such an employment. He professed the protestant religion. He did every thing out of pure generosity. He trembled at all, whom he saw. I did it for many reasons. This gave rise to an uproar. He sold those commodities to our advantage. My brother, whom I saw ***for the last time five weeks ago, died with grief. I shall see you again towards the end of the winter. One hope dies in us, whilst another rises in its stead. We die; but other men are born in our place, who must likewise die in their turn. In the course of a year this rose-tree will bear fresh roses.

To knock, *klopfen.*
at, *an*, with the accusative.
mole, *der Maülwurf*, 1.
the ground, *die Érde*, 7.
the undertaking, *das Unternéhmen*, 4.
through want, *aus Mangel.*
of, *an*, with the dative.
hands, *Hände, Árbeiter.*
to delay, * *aüfschieben.*
whence, *wohér.*
to intend to go, *reisen* * *wollen.*
safely, *glücklich.*
to arrive, * *ánkommen.*
* *von einer Zeit zur anderen.*
but, *aber.*
the answer, *die Ántwort*, 7.
from, *von.*
to receive, * *erhalten.*
to wait, *warten.*
till, *bis zu.*
out of, *von.*
the instance, *das Beïspiel*, 1.
but, *nür.*
to name, *nennen.*
to work, *árbeiten.*
with, *mit.*
** *vom Morgen bis in die Nacht.*
very, *sehr.*
excellent, *vortrefflich.*
the verse, *der Vérs*, 1.
by, *von.*
several, *mehrere.*
celebrated, *berühmt.*
the poet, *der Dichter*, 4.
in praise, *zum Lobe.*
the fair sex, *das schöne Geschlecht*, 2.
of, *von.*
fine, *fein.*
gold, *das Gold*, 1.
the cloth, *das Tüch*, 1.
from, *aus.*
wool, *die Wolle*, 7.
to manufacture, *verfertigen.*
upon, *auf*, with the dative.
the back, *der Rücken*, 4.
the sheep, *das Schäf*, 1.
with, *bei.*
as, *wie.*
the English, *die Engländer*, 4.
the expression, *der Aüsdruck*, 1.
common, *gewöhnlich.*
with, *bei.*
the writer, *der Schrifsteller*, 4.
the word, *das Wort*, 2.
ought, *sollte.*
double, *doppelt.*
the consonant, *der Mítlaut*, 1.
to be written, *geschrieben werden.*
to consist, * *bestehen.*
of, *aus.*
by that time, *unterdéssen.*
all, *Alles.*
for, *zu.*
the journey, *die Reise*, 7.
ready, *bereit, fertig.*
all the, *alle.*
requisite, *erforderlich.*
the qualification, *die Eigenschaft*, 7.
for, *zu.*
such an employment, *ein solches Amt*, 2.
to profess, *sich zu* — * *bekennen.*
the protestant religion, *die protestántische Religiön*, 7.
every thing, *Alles.*
out of, *aus.*
pure, *blöfs.*
generosity, *die Größmuth*, 8.
to tremble, *zittern.*
at, *vör*, with the dative.
all, *Alle.*
to see, * *séhen.*
for, *wegen, aus.*
many, *viele.*
the reason, *die Ürsache*, 7.
to give, * *gében.*
rise, *Ánlass.*
to, *zu.*
an uproar, *ein Aüfruhr*, 1.
to sell, *verkaufen.*
the commodity, *die Waare*, 7.
to, *zu.*
the advantage, *der Vórtheil*, 1.
*** *zum letzten Male.*
ago, *vor.*

the week, *die Woche*, 7.
with grief, *vor Grim.*
to see again, *wieder sehen.*
towards, *gegen.*
the end, *das Ende*, 8.
hope, *die Hoffnung*, 7.
whilst, *während.*
in, *an*, with the dative.
the stead, *die Stelle*, 7.
to rise, **aufsteigen, *entstehen.*
are, *werden.*
in, *an*, with the dative.
the place, *die Stelle*, 7.
born, *geboren.*
likewise, *auf gleiche Art, auch.*
in their turn, *wenn die Reihe an sie kommt.*
in the course of, *über.*
the rose-tree, *der Rösenstock*, 1.
fresh, *neu.*
the rose, *die Rose*, 7.
to bear, **tragen.*

IV.

We must forgive our enemies and act generously towards them. Every good patriot and honest citizen will perform his duty without a spur. The day, on which we die, shuts our eyes for this world. I have sometimes made him a present of useful books. I saw him in several places. A mad dog ran through the town. The prisoners looked through an iron grate. Every thing is subject to decay. In the same manner we men are subject to decay. Many men are hurried on by their passion. Self-defence is as necessary for nations as to single men. If my love for you did not keep me, I would not stay for an hour in this house. By obedience children give the best proofs of their love to their parents. This mark stands for his name, because he *cannot write. I hope you will properly provide for her child. His friend had provided a very good lodging for him. She died in the house of her parents about eight o'clock in the morning. You may wake me at five o'clock. On their return they embraced their little son, and pressed him to their breast, because he had been a very good and obedient boy during their absence. Wrap my feet in this napkin. If our enemies offend us **out of malice, ***we must not likewise act maliciously against them. It is situated towards the north. Lay it upon my stomach. When little Leopold read a book, he left it in the place, to which he carried it. Of course one of them lay on the stairs; another in the parlour; and a third in the garden. When

he undressed himself in the evening, he laid his boots on the table. His hat frequently lay upon the bed, in which he slept. Carry this letter to the postoffice, and do not forget to inquire, whether it must be franked or not.

To forgive one, *Einem *vergében, Einem *verzeihen.*
generously, *grôſsmüthig.*
towards, *gegen.*
to act, *handeln.*
the patriot, *der Väterlands-freund*, 1.
honest, *réchtschaffen.*
the citizen, *der Bürger*, 4.
without, *ohne.*
the spur, (*der Sporn*, 3.) *der Antrieb*, 1.
the duty, *die Pflicht*, 7.
to perform, *erfüllen.*
on, *an*, with the dative.
to shut, *schlieſsen.*
for, *für.*
the world, *die Welt*, 7.
sometimes, *biswéilen.*
the present, *das Geschenk*, 1.
of, *mit.*
useful, *nützlich.*
to make, *machen.*
in, *an*, with the dative.
several, *verschiedene.*
the place, *der Ort*, 2.
mad, *toll.*
the dog, *der Hund*, 1.
to run, **laufen.*
through, *durch.*
the prisoner, *der Gefangene*, 6.
to look, **sehen.*
iron, *eisern.*
the grate, *das Gitter*, 3.
subject to decay, *hinfällig, vergänglich.*
in, *auf*, with the accusative.
the same, *der, die, das nämliche.*
the manner, *die Art*, 7.
we men are, *sind wir Menschen.*
to hurry on, **hinreiſsen.*
by, *durch.*
self-defence, *die Selbstvertheidigung*, 7.
as, *eben so.*
for, *für.*
nation, *das Volk*, 2.
as, *als.*
to, *für.*
single, *einzeln.*
if, *wenn.*
for, *gegen.*
to do keep, **halten.* The subjunctive mood must be put.
for an hour, *eine Stunde.*
in, *in.*
to stay, **bleiben.*
by, *durch.*
obedience, *Gehórsam*, 1.
the proof, *der Beweis*, 1.
of, *von.*
to, *zu, gegen.*
the mark, *das Zeichen*, 4.
to stand, **stehen.*
for, *für, anstátt.*
the name, *der Name*, 5.
because, *weil.*
**nicht schreiben kann.*
to hope, *hoffen.*
properly, *gehórig.*
for, *für.*
to provide, *sorgen.*
a lodging, *eine Wohnung*, 7.
for, *für.*
to provide, *besorgen.*
about eight o' clock, *gegen acht Uhr.*
in the morning, *des Morgens.*
I may, *ich kann.*
at, *um.*
to wake, *wecken.*
on, *bei.*
the return, *die Rückkehr*, 7.
they embraced, *umármten sie.*
little, *klein.*

to press, drücken.
to, *an*, with the accusative.
the breast, *die Brust*, 8.
obedient, *gehōrsam*.
the boy, *der Knabe*, 6.
during, *während*.
the absence, *die Ábwésenheit*, 7.
o wrap, *einwickeln*. *Ein* is put at the end of the phrase.
the foot, *der Fuſs*, 1.
in, *in*, with the accusative.
the napkin, *das Téllertuch*, 2.
to offend, *beleidigen*.
** *aus Bōsheit*.
*** *so dürfen wir nicht*.
against, *gegen*.
maliciously, *bōshaft*.
to be situated, **liegen*.
towards, *gegen*.
the north, *Norden*, 4.
to lay, *legen*.
upon, *auf*.
the stomach, *der Magen*, 4.
when, *wenn*.
little Leopold, *der kleine Leopold*.
to leave, **liegen* **lassen*.
in, *an*.
the place, *der Ort*, 1.
to, *an*.
to carry, **hintragen*.
of course, *dahér*.
to lie, **liegen*.
on, *auf*.
the stairs, *die Treppe*, 7.
the parlour, *der Saal*, 1.
in the evening, *Abends*.
to undress one's self, *sich aüskleiden*, *sich* **aüsziehen*.
the boots, *die Stiefeln*.
on, *auf*.
the table, *der Tisch*, 1.
the hat, *der Hüt*, 1.
frequently, *häufig*, *oft*.
upon, *auf*.
the bed, *das Bett*, 3.
to sleep, **schlafen*.
to carry, **tragen*.
the letter, *der Brief*, 1.
to, *auf*.
the postoffice, *die Post*, 7.
to do forget, **vergessen*.
to inquire, *sich erkundigen*.
whether, *ob*.
to frank, *frei machen*.

V.

My orchard was often robbed by schoolboys. I was hated for my ugly face by him. For this purpose *he travelled through Europe on foot. He generally came **for a few days into our neighbourhood ***once a year. We lived near the road. I do not know, what is become of his children. He had married in his youth a very worthy woman. She soon returned into the room. He desired to be introduced into the family. Sometimes I lend him a horse of small value. I received no answer to any of my letters. After a short supper with his sister, †he retired ††much fatigued to his chamber. Upon my word, you have the finest children in the country. He mourns over a dead friend. I staid there above three days. Away with those prejudices! Whether he did it or got it done by another, *that is all one to me. He knows no

men, who trusts in their promises. **Why won't she do what is required of her? I know a woman, who was ruined at gaming, and still continues to play. He spoke to me but now. Of all passions that of love is the most violent. She left me an hour ago. He died fifty years ago. I saw her brother six months ago. I have not yet spoken to him about it. He kills two birds with one stone. Men in their raillery are less delicate than women. This is the end he aims at. The river ran between the two fields. The gray is between the white and black. That was done between them both. He sat beside the river. Lay my bones beside his bones. The soldier fights for the king. He has the beef for his dinner. My sister went into the cellar. He is rich in books. He put his hat upon his head. He has made notes on many authors. Upon the advice of the approach of the enemy, they fled. He walks within the garden. ***He ran him through the body. We must be useful to our fellow-men by our talents. I tread on the grass with my feet. He made her a present of a beautiful rose-tree on her birthday. She came to her father with a sorrowful countenance. In the head are eyes, ears, nose, and tongue.

The orchard, *der Obstgarten*, 4.
often, *oft*.
by, *von*.
the schoolboy, *der Schūlknabe*, 6.
to rob, *berauben, bestéhlen*.
for, *wegen*.
ugly, *hässlich*.
the face, *das Gesicht*, 2.
by, *von*.
to hate, *hassen*.
for, *zu*.
the purpose, *der Zweck*, 1.
**reisete er*.
through, *durch*.
on foot, *zu Fuſse*.
generally, *gewōhnlich*.
***auf einige Tage*.
****einmal des Jahres*.
into, *in*, with the accusative.
the neighbourhood, *die Nächbarschaft*, 7.
to live, *wohnen*.
near, *naſe an*.
the road, *die Straſse*, 7. *der Weg*, 1.
to do know, **wissen*.
of, *aus*.
to become, **wérden*.
to marry, *heīrathen*. This word is put at the end of the phrase.
youth, *die Jugend*, 7.
worthy, *würdig*.
a woman, *ein Fraūenzimmer*, 4.
to return, *zurückkehren*.
the room, *das Zimmer*, 4.
to desire, *wünschen*.
the family, *die Familie*, 7.
to introduce, *einführen*.

I lend, *leihe ich.*
the horse, *das Pférd*, 1.
of, *von.*
small, *gering.*
the value, *der Wérth*, 1.
to, *auf*, with the accusative.
any, *irgend ein.*
after, *nach.*
short, *kurz.*
supper, *das Abendessen*, 4.
† *begīb er sich.*
†† *sehr ermüdet.*
to, *in.*
the chamber, *das Zimmer*, 4.
upon, *auf*, with the accusative.
fine, *schön.*
the country, *die Gegend*, 7.
to mourn, *trauern.*
over, *über*, with the accusative.
dead, *verstorben.*
to stay, **bleiben.*
there, *da, dort.*
above, *über*, with the accusative.
away, *wég.*
with, *mit.*
prejudice, *das Vōrurtheil*, 1.
whether, *ob.*
by, *von.*
got it done, *thūn liefs.*
**das ist mir Alles eins.*
he, *dér, dérjenige.*
men, *die Menschen.*
in, *auf*, with the accusative.
the promises, *die Versprechungen.*
to trust, *sich * verlassen.*
*** warúm will sie nicht thun.*
of, *von.*
to require, *verlangen.*
at, *in.*
gaming, *das Spiel*, 1.
to ruin, *zu Grunde richten.*
still, *immer noch.*
to continue to play, *zu spielen*
** fórfahren, fórtspielen.*
but now, *ében jetzt.*
to, *mit.*
of, *unter.*
all passions, *alle Leidenschaften.*
that of love, *diejenige der Liebe.*
violent, *heftig.*
to leave, ** verlassen.*
ago, *vōr.*
an hour, *eine Stunde*, 7.
six months, *sechs Mūnate, ein halbes Jahr.*
not yet, *noch nicht.*
to, *mit.*
about it, *darüber.*
to speak, **sprechen.*
to kill, *tödten.*
the bird, *der Vogel*, 4.
man, *der Mann*, 2.
the raillery, *der Scherz*, 1.
less, *weniger.*
delicate, *fein, zārt.*
woman, *die Frau*, 7.
the end, *der Endzweck*, 1.
at, *nāch. Which*, that is here left out, must be expressed in German.
to aim, *strēben.*
the river, *der Fluss*, 1.
to run, **fliefsen.*
between, *zwischen.*
the field, *das Feld*, 2.
the gray, *die graue Farbe*, 7.
the white and black, *die weifse und schwarze Farbe.*
to be done, ** geschéhen.*
both, *beide.*
to sit, ** sitzen.*
beside, *nében, an.*
to lay, *legen.*
the bones, *die Gebeine.*
the soldier, *der Soldāt*, 6.
to fight, ** streiten, kämpfen.*
for, *für.*
the king, *der Kōnig*, 1.
the beef, *das Rindfleisch*, 1.
for, *zu.*
dinner, *das Mittagsessen*, 4.
the cellar, *der Keller*, 4.
rich, *reich.*
in, *an*, with the dative.
to put, *setzen.*
upon, *auf.*
the head, *der Kopf*, 1.
a note, *eine Anmerkung*, 7.
on, *über*, with the accusative.

to make, *machen.*
upon, *auf*, with the accusative.
the advice, *die Nāchricht*, 7.
of, *von.*
the approach, *die Annäherung*, 7.
to flee, **fliehen.*
to walk, *spazīeren* **gehen*, *lústwandeln.*
within, *innerhalb.*
***er stāch ihn.*
through, *durch.*
the body, *der Leib*, 2.
the fellow-man, *der Nébenmensch*, 6.
by, *durch.*
the talents, *die Talente*, 1. *die Geschicklichkeit*, 7.
useful, *nützlich.*
to tread, * *tréten.*
on, *auf*, with the accusative.
of, *mit.*
beautiful, *schān.*
on, *an.*
the birthday, *der Gebürtstag*, 1.
to, *zu.*
a sorrowful countenance, *ein trauriges Gesicht*, 2.
in, *an*, with the dative.
ear, *das Ohr*, 3.
nose, *die Nase*, 7.
tongue, *die Zunge*, 7.

VI.

He leaps over hedges and ditches. He sat down in the yard and cried. The quarrel was about a goose. He was in town about some business. He has done this against my will. We dried the clothes against the fire. The picture hung against the wall. He watered the flowers along the house. There are good people among all nations. You may sell it at the fair. You stood at some distance from me. He let fall a tear at this account. He died an hour before the arrival of the messenger. He had two children by his first wife. This minister was beheaded by order of the king. He was blind by five years. He lives by the church. I shall leave you only for two days. I shall not trust him for all his swearing. This house looks into my garden. *He is still in favour with the prince. He finds fault with every thing. It is a rule with the painters. I have been prisoner of war with the French. I have no pleasure without my family.

To leap, **springen.*
over, *über*, with the accusative.
the hedge, *der Zaun*, 1.
the ditch, *der Graben*, 4.
to sit down, *sich setzen.*
in, *in*, with the accusative.
the yard, *der Hōf*, 1.
to cry, *weinen.*
the quarrel, *der Streit.* 1.
about, *um*, *wegen.*
the goose, *die Gans*, 1.
in town, *in der Stadt.*
about, *wegen.*
some business, *ein Geschäft*, 1.
against, *wider.*
the will, *der Wille*, 5.

to dry, *trocknen.*
the clothes, *die Kleider.*
against, *an*, with the dative.
the fire, *das Feuer*, 4.
the picture, *das Gemälde*, 1.
to hang, **hangen.*
against, *an*, with the dative.
the wall, *die Wand*, 8.
to water, **begießen.*
the flower, *die Blume*, 7.
along, *längs.*
there are, *es giebt.*
people, *Leute.*
among, *unter.*
the nation, *die Natiōn*, 7. *das Volk*, 2.
I may, *ich kann.*
to sell, *verkaufen.*
at, *auf*, with the dative.
the fair, *die Messe*, 7.
to stand, **stehen.*
at, *in*, with the dative.
some distance, *einige Entfernung.* 7.
from, *von.*
to let, **lassen.*
a tear, *eine Thräne.*
at, *bei.*
the account, *die Nächricht*, 7.
to fall, **fallen.*
before, *vor.*
the arrival, *die Ánkunft*, 8.
the messenger, *der Bote*, 6.
by, *von.*
the wife, *(das Weib*, 2.) *die Frau, die Gattin*, 7.
by, *auf*, with the accusative.
order, *der Befehl*, 1.
to behead, *enthaupten.*
by, *gegen.*
blind, *blind.*
to live, *wohnen.*
by, *dicht an.*
to leave, **verlassen.*
only, *bloſs.*
for, *auf*, with the accusative.
to trust one, *Einem trauen.*
for, *ungeachtet.*
swearing, *das Schwören*, 4.
to look *(schauen*, **sehen)*, **gehen.*
**Er steht noch in Gunst.*
with, *bei.*
the prince, *der Fürst*, 6.
to find, *finden.*
with, *an*, with the dative.
every thing, *Alles.*
fault, *einen Féhler.*
a rule, *eine Regel.*
with, *bei.*
the painter, *der Maler*, 4.
prisoner of war, *Kriegsgefangener.*
with, *bei.*
the French, *die Franzōsen.*
pleasure, *das Vergnügen*, 4.
without, *ohne.*

CHAPTER X.

Of the German adverbs.

Containing the five following Sections:

I. Of the nature and use of adverbs.
II. The different kinds of the German adverbs.
III. Position of the German adverbs.
IV. Degrees of comparison of the German adverbs.
V. Exercises on some German adverbs.

Section I.

Of the nature and use of adverbs.

A) *Adverbs (Adverbien)* are so called, because they are *added to verbs* to determine more exactly the idea expressed by them, that is, to indicate how, in what manner, or where, or when, &c. the action, or the suffering, or the state, denoted by verbs, took place, takes place, or will take place. When I say, for instance: *Sie spricht*, she speaks, he who hears these words, does not know, in what manner she speaks. But when I say: *Sie spricht gut*, she speaks well, the action expressed by the verb *sprechen* is determined more exactly by the addition of the adverb *gut*. Hence the adverb ought to be called in German *Bestimmungswort*, and not *Nebenwort*, the adverb not being always placed immediately beside the verb, but also frequently before it.

As adverbs not only denote some modification or circumstance of an action, but also of a quality, they are joined not only to verbs, but also to adjectives to determine more exactly the quality expressed by them. For example: *Er ist gründlich gelehrt.* He is profoundly learned.

Some adverbs are joined to other adverbs to modify their meaning. For example: *Er liebt sie sehr zärtlich.* He loves her very tenderly. Some adverbs are also used as conjunctions.

When the adverb is connected with a verb, it expresses by itself a complete sense, without having another word after it. By this it is essentially distinguished from the preposition, which only by the addition of its case expresses a full sense. When I say, for instance: *Hier bin ich*, here I am, the sense of this phrase is complete. But when I say: *Ich bin ohne*, I am without, I must name an object, to which the preposition *ohne* relates, in order to express a full sense. Only then the meaning of that phrase is clear, when I say: *Ich bin ohne Geld, ohne Freunde*, &c. I am without money, without friends, &c.

Adverbs are, for the most part, no more than an abridged mode of speech, expressing by one word, what might by a circumlocution be resolved into two or more words belonging to the other parts of speech. *Weislich*, wisely, for instance, is the same as: *mit Weisheit*, with wisdom; *sehr*, very, the same as: *in hohem Grade*, in a high degree; *hier*, here, the same as: *an diesem Orte*, in this place; &c.

Adverbs admit of no variation, except that a very great part of them admit the degrees of comparison. Also adverbs have no government, with the exception of those, which at the same time are adjectives, that govern a case, or are used with a preposition. For example: *Er lebt der Vernunft getreu.* He lives according to reason. *Ich handle unabhängig von ihm.* I act independently from him.

The most part of the German attributive adjectives are employed in their absolute state also as adverbs. For example: *Er ist strenge.* He is severe. *Urtheilen Sie nicht so strenge.* Do not judge so severely. In the first instance, *strenge* is an adjective; and in the second, an adverb. There are some adjectives, which cannot be used as adverbs. Such adjectives are, for instance, those, which are derived from adverbs of time, or from a preposition. Examples: *bisherig*, that which has occurred till now; from *bisher*, hitherto. *Gestrig*, of yesterday; from *gestern*, yesterday. *Äußere, hintere, innere*, which are employed only in their constructed state. Also some other adjectives cannot be used as adverbs. Such adjectives are *abschlägig; besonder; geraum;* &c.

Section II.

The different kinds of the German adverbs.

There are ten kinds of German adverbs:

1. *Adverbs of quality (Nebenwörter* or *Umstandswörter der Beschaffenheit).*

2. *Adverbs of quantity (Nebenwörter* or *Umstandswörter der Menge und Vielheit).*

3. *Adverbs of time (Nebenwörter* or *Umstandswörter der Zeit).*

4. *Adverbs of place (Nebenwörter* or *Umstandswörter des Ortes).*

5. *Adverbs of order and number (Nebenwörter* or *Umstandswörter der Ordnung und der Zahl).*

6. *Adverbs of affirmation (Nebenwörter* or *Umstandswörter der Bejahung).*

7. *Adverbs of negation (Nebenwörter* or *Umstandswörter der Verneinung).*

8. *Adverbs of doubt (Nebenwörter* or *Umstandswörter des Zweifels und der Ungewissheit).*

9. *Adverbs of interrogation (fragende Nebenwörter* or *Umstandswörter).*

10. *Adverbs of comparison (vergleichende Nebenwörter* or *Umstandswörter).*

The German adverbs are either *primitive*, or *derivative*. The derivative adverbs are either *simple*, or *compound*. Derivative adverbs are, for instance, the following: **wahrlich*; from *wahr*. *Vornéhmlich*, chiefly, especially; from *vōr* and *néhmen*. **Schönstens*, in the finest manner; from *schōn*. **Öfters*, often; from *oft*. *Abermals*, once more; from *aber* and *Māl*. *Zuletzt*, at last; from *zu* and *letzt*. Those adverbs, which are marked with an asterisk, are simple; and the others, compound.

Only some adverbs terminate in the syllable *lich*, which is joined to the primitive word. Such adverbs are the following: *bōslich*, maliciously; from *böse*. *Ērstlich*, firstly; from *erst*. *Gelegentlich*, occasionally; from *gelegen*. *Hōchlich*, highly; from *hōch*. *Klūglich*, prudently; from *klūg*. *Kürzlich*, shortly; from *kurz*. *Schwērlich*, hardly; from *schwēr*. *Sicherlich*, surely; from *sicher*. *Verschiedentlich*, differently; from *verschieden*. *Weislich*, wisely; from *weise*.

Some adverbs end in *heit*; *s*; *ens*; *lings*; *wärts*; *weise*. Such adverbs are the following: *insónderheit*, particularly. *Besonders*, particularly; from *besonder*. *Eilends*, hastily; from *eilend*. *Unverséhens*, unawares; from *unverséhen*. *Stracks*, immediately.

Erstens, zweitens, &c.; from *erst, zweit. Übrigens* for the rest; from *übrig. Besstens*, in the best manner; from *best. Ehestens*, at the soonest; from *ehest. Blindlings*, blindly; from *blind. Seitwärts*, sideways; from *Seite* and *wärts. Beispielsweise*, for instance; from *Beispiel* and *Weise.*

Adverbs are single words. The following expressions are consequently no adverbs, but only adverbial phrases: *auf einmal; von ungefähr; nach und nach; zum ersten*; &c. It must yet be observed, that those participles, which are used as attributive adjectives, are also employed as adverbs of quality. Examples: *Sie singt entzückend.* She sings enchantingly. *Er ging betrübt aus meinem Hause.* He went sorrowfully out of my house.

List of the principal adverbs.

1.

Adverbs of quality.

* *Böshaft*, maliciously.
* *Glücklich*, happily.
* *Gütig*, kindly.
* *Vortréfflich*, excellently.
Anders, otherwise.
Gern, willingly; fain.
Unvermerkt, imperceptibly, insensibly.
Umsónst, gratis; in vain.
* *Vergéblich, vergébens*, in vain, to no purpose.
So, alsó, so, thus, in such a manner. *So so*, indifferently.
Wohl, well.
Übel, ill.

Observations.

1. The adverbs marked with an asterisk are attributive adjectives, which are also employed as adverbs. The class of adverbs of quality is extremely numerous, and comprehends the greatest part of those adjectives, which are also used as adverbs.

2. By the adverb *gern* the idea expressed by the English verb *to like* is denoted. Examples: *eine Sache gern thun*, to do a thing willingly, to like to do a thing. *Eine Sache gern essen*, to eat a thing willingly, that is, to like it.

3. *So* is also a conjunction. When *also* has not the accent on the last, but on the first syllable, it

is a causal conjunction. Example: *Alsō liebte er mich, dass er mir alle seine Bücher gāb.* He so loved me, that he gave me all his books. *Er ist hōchgesinnt; álso wird er es thun.* He is high-minded; of course he will do it.

4. *Wohl* is often a sort of expletive, which sometimes expresses the notions *perhaps*, *probably*, *indeed*. Examples: *Haben Sie wohl gehört, was man davón sāgt?* Have you perhaps heard, what is said of it? *Es wird wohl regnen.* It is likely to rain. *Ich möchte wohl lêsen.* I should like to read (if I could). *Wohl* cannot therefore always be used in order to express the English adverb *well*. In its stead *gūt* must often be employed. For example: *Ich weifs nicht, wo man diese Sachen gut kauft.* I know not, where one buys these things well. If *wohl* were used in this instance, it would by many readers be accepted with an expletive meaning. *Wohl* stands also for *beināhe*, *fast*, nearly, almost, about. Example: *Es sind wohl drei Jahre*, it is about three years. As the adverbs *beinahe* and *fast* have been named, their use shall be explained by some examples. *Fast, beinahe zêhn Thaler*, about ten dollars. *Ich wäre beinahe gefallen.* I had like to have fallen. *Er hätte beinahe seine Stelle verloren.* He had like to have lost his place. *Es waren so viele Leute in diesem engen Zimmer, dass ich beinahe* (or *fast* or *bald*) *erstickt worden wäre.* There were so many people in that narrow room, that I had like to have been stifled. *Die Pférde fielen fast bei jedem Schritte.* The horses were likely to fall at every step.

2.

Adverbs of quantity.

Sehr, gār, *recht, very.
* ***Hoch***, highly; * ***höchst***, in the highest degree, most; ***höchstens***, at the most.
* ***Äufserst, überaūs***, extremely, exceedingly.
* ***Ungemeīn***, exceedingly. This word properly signifies uncommonly.
* ***Aufserórdentlich***, extraordinarily.
* ***Unéndlich***, infinitely.

Zu, too.
Gröſstentheils (instead of *gröſsten Theils*), *mehrentheils*, *meistentheils* (instead of *mehren Theils*, *meisten Theils*), *meistens*, for the most part, mostly, most.
Wenigstens, at least.
* *Ziemlich*, pretty.
* *Ganz*, *gänzlich*, *völlig*, wholly, totally, entirely, fully, quite.
Genug, enough.
* *Hinlänglich*, * *hinreichend*, sufficiently.

Observations.

* *Gār*, ***recht*, *su*, and *ganz* are used in the following manner: *gar kein Zweifel*, never a doubt. *Gar Keiner*, none at all. *Gar Niemand*, nobody at all. *Gar Nichts*, nothing at all. *Gar zu Viel*, too much. *Gar sehr*, very much. *Gar nicht*, not at all. *Ich dachte gar!* Why truly! *Eine recht groſse Freude*, a very great joy. *Ich befinde mich recht wohl.* I am very well. *Zu weise*, too wise. *Zu sehr neugierig*, too curious. *Ganz und gar*, quite. *Ganz und gar nicht*, not at all. *Ganz wohl*, perfectly well. *Ganz allmälich*, by slow degrees. *Nicht ganz vierhundert*, next to four-hundred.

3.

Adverbs of time.

Allemāl, every time.
Allezeit, *immer*, *immerdār*, *immerfort*, *stets*, always.
Alsbald, *gleich*, *sogleich*, presently, directly, immediately.
* *Augenblicklich*, in a moment.
Bald, soon. *Bald darauf*, soon after. *So bald als möglich*, as soon as possible. *Baldigst*, very soon.
Beizeiten, betimes.
* *Beständig*, continually.
Bishér, *bis hierhér*, hitherto.
Dāmals, at that time.
Dann und wann, now and then.
Ehedem, *ehemals*, *vördem*, *sonst*, formerly, in former times.
Ehestens, *mit ehestem*, at the soonest.
Einst, once; one day. *Dereinst*, *dermaleinst*, one day.
Eben, *erst*, *so eben*, just now.
* *Ewig*, eternally.
* *Früh*, early; in the morning. *Früh oder spät*, soon or late. *Heute früh*, this morning. *Morgen früh*, to-morrow morning.
* *Frühzeitig*, * *zeitig*, in good time, early.
Gestern, yesterday. *Vorgestern*, the day before yesterday.
Hernāch, *nachhér*, *nāchgehends*, after, afterwards.

* *Sogār* signifies even. *Sogar der Name*, the very name.
** As adverb of quality, *recht* signifies right.

Heuer, this year.
Heute, to-day. *Heut' zu Tage*, now-a-days.
Hinführo, henceforth.
**Jährlich*, yearly.
Je eher, je besser, the sooner the better.
Je, jemals, ever.
Jetzt, (*itzt*), now, at present. *Bis jetzt*, till now.
Jüngst, letztens, letzthin, **neulich, kürzlich*, latterly, lately, of late.
**Künftig, künftighin, ins künftige*, in future, in time to come.
**Lange, längst, schön längst*, long ago. *Unlängst*, not long since. *Über kurz oder lang*, soon or late. *Längstens*, at longest.
Lebenslang, during life.
Manchmāl, bisweilen, zuweilen, zu Zeiten, sometimes.
Manchmal, many times.
**Mōnatlich*, monthly, a month.
Morgen, to-morrow. *Übermorgen*, the day after to-morrow.
Nāchmittags, in the after-noon.
Nāchstens, next time.
Nie, niemals, nimmer, never.
Nimmermēhr, never at all.
Noch, yet. *Noch immer, immer noch*, still.
Noch Nichts, nothing yet.
Nun, nunmehr, now.
Oft, öfters, öftmals, **häufig*, often, frequently.
**Plötzlich, auf einmal*, suddenly, all of a sudden.
Schōn, bereits, already.
Seitdém, since that time.
**Selten*, seldom, rarely.
**Spät*, late.
**Stündlich*, hourly, every hour.
**Täglich*, daily, every day; a day.
Unterdéssen, indéssen, inzwischen, by that time, in the mean time.
**Unabläßig*, **unaufhörlich*, incessantly.
**Unverzüglich*, without delay.
Vorhér, zuvōr, before.
Vormittags, in the forenoon.
**Wöchentlich*, weekly, a week.

Observation.

Immer cannot be translated in every instance by the English adverb always. Examples: *Er wird immer schlimmer.* He grows worse and worse. *Es wird immer kleiner.* It gradually diminishes. *Sie mögen immer lachen.* You may laugh as much as you please. *Immer mehr*, still more. *Er bleibt noch immer in London.* He still continues in London. *Nun* is sometimes a particle of connexion. *Nun dieses ist wahr;* now this is true. *Sonst* signifies also *else* and *otherwise.*

4.

Adverbs of place.

Allenthálben, *überáll*, every-where. *Sonst überall*, every-where else.
Anderswo, elsewhere.
Auf und ab, up and down.
Aufwärts, upwards.

Auswärts, abroad.
Da, dort, there.
Daher, from there, thence; hence, from this source.
Dahin, dorthin, thither.
Darin, within.
Draußen, without.
Fern, weit, far. *So weit*, so far.
Heim, home.
Her, hither.
Herab, herunter, down.
Heraus, up.
Heraus, out.
Herein, in; come in.
Herüber, towards this place.
Herwärts, hitherwards.
Hier, here.
Hieraus, hereout, hence.
Hierein, hereinto.
Hierher, hither.
Hierunten (hienieden), herebelow.
Hin, thither; lost. *Hin und her*, to and fro.
Hinab, hinunter, down.
Hinauf, up.
Hinaus, out.
Hinein, in.
Hinten, behind.
Hinterwärts, rückwärts, backwards.
Irgendwo, somewhere.
Links, linkshin, to the left.
Nirgend, nirgends, nowhere. *Sonst nirgend*, nowhere else.
Oben, droben, above; up stairs.
Obenan, in the first place.
Quer über, across.
Rechts, rechtshin, to the right hand.
Seitwärts, sideways.
Unten, drunten, below.
Von innen, from within.
Von wannen, whence.
Vorn, before.
Vorwärts, forewards.
Wo, where. *Sonst wo*, elsewhere, somewhere else.
Woher, whence. *Sonst woher*, from some other place.
Wohin, whither.

Observations.

1. *Daher* is a causal conjunction, signifying hence, in consequence of this, therefore.

2. *Her* denotes motion from any place towards you; *hin*, on the contrary, signifies motion from the place, in which you are, to another. Thus, *er kommt her*, signifies: he comes from any place towards you; and, *er geht hin*, means: he goes from the place, in which you are, to some other place. Therefore, when I desire any one to come towards me, I say: *Kommen Sie her*, and when I desire him to proceed from me, I say: *Gehen Sie hin.*

3. *Wo* is also a conditional conjunction, signifying if, and standing for *wenn.*

5.

Adverbs of order and number.

Abermals, abermal, nochmals, nochmale, once more. *Allerlei*, of all kinds. *Zweierlei*, of two sorts.

**Allmälich*, *nāḥ und nāch*, insensibly, by degrees.
**Anfänglich*, at first.
Dann, alsdánn, then.
Einmal, once. *Zweimal*, twice. *Dreimal*, thrice. *Viermal*, four times.
**Einzeln*, one by one.
**Endlich*, finally, at last.
Erstens, erstlich, zum ērsten, zuērst, in the first place, for the first, first. *Zweitens, zum zweiten*, secondly, in the second place. *Drittens, viertens, fünftens*, &c. thirdly, fourthly, fifthly.
Ferner, weiter, farther. *Und so weiter*, and so on.
Hernāch, hereafter.
Hiernāchst, next.
Wieder, again.
Zuletzt, at last.

6.

Adverbs of affirmation.

Allerdings, (instead of *aller Dinge*), by all means. *Schlechterdings* (instead of *schlechter Dinge*), absolutely.
Freilich, indeed.
**Gewiss*, certainly.
Ja, yes. *Ja nicht*, on no account. *Ja freilich*, to be sure. *Ja wohl*, yes certainly.
Sicherlich, **zuverlässig*, surely, to be sure.
**Unfehlbar*, infallibly.
**Unstreitig*, incontestably.
Währlich, **wāhrhaftig*, truly.
**Wirklich*, really, indeed.

Observation.

Ja has also an expletive faculty. Examples: *Sie kommen ja spāt.* I wonder you come so late. *Sie sind ja recht grofs geworden.* You, indeed, are grown very tall.

7.

Adverbs of negation.

Hingēgen, on the contrary.
Keinesweges (instead of *keines Weges*), *mit nichten, schlechterdings nicht*, by no means.
Nein, no.
Nicht, not. *Noch nicht*, not yet. *Nicht einmāl*, not even.

Observation.

Two negatives, in the same sentence, must be avoided. Example: *Ich habe keinen Freund nicht.*

8.

Adverbs of doubt.

Etwa, peradventure; about, nearly.
Kaum, scarce, scarcely.
Schwērlich, hardly.
Vielleicht, perhaps.
**Wāhrscheinlich*, probably.

Observation.

Etwa and *kaum* are employed in the following manner: *Wenn sie Ihnen etwa nicht gefallen*, if

they should not happen to please you. *Kaum hatte sie aūsgeredet, als er in das Zimmer trāt.* Scarcely had she done speaking, when he entered the room. *Er hatte es kaum gethān, als er zu lachen ānfing.* He had scarcely done it, when he fell a laughing. *Sie hätte kaum den Brief gelēsen, als sie in Ōhnmacht fiel.* She had no sooner read the letter than she swooned away.

9.

Adverbs of interrogation.

Wann? when?
Warúm? Warum das? why? why so?
Weswēgen? wherefore?
Wie? how? *Wie oft?* how often? *Wie vielmal?* how many times? *Wie theuer verkaufen Sie es?* What do you sell it at?
Wo? where?
Woher? von wannen? whence?
Wohīn? whither?

Observation.

1. Instead of *wann*, *wenn* is very often used. When speaking of time, *wann* should always be employed.

2. *Wie* is also used in exclamation. *Wie froh war ich!* How glad I was!

3. It must not be said: *Wo kommen Sie her? Wo gehen Sie hin? Wo soll ich es hin schicken?* It must be said: *Woher kommen Sie?* Where do you come from? *Wohin gehen Sie?* Where are you going to? *Wohin soll ich es schicken?* Where shall I send it to?

10.

Adverbs of comparison.

Als, as. *Wie*, like.
Eben so, just so.
Gleich, equally. *Gleichfalls* (instead of *gleichen Falls*), *ebenfalls*, likewise. *Gleichsam*, as it were.
Mehr, more. *Um so viel mehr*, so much the more. *Vielmehr*, rather. *Am meisten*, most.
Minder, *weniger*, less. *Am wenigsten*, least.
Noch einmal so Viel, as much again.

Observation.

Als denotes equality or reality; *wie*, likeness, resemblance. Example: *Er sprāch als ein Rasen-*

der. Er sprach wie ein Rasender. He spoke like a madman. In the first instance, he who spoke was really a madman; in the second, he resembled only a madman during the time, that he spoke. *Ich als Herr von diesem Hause,* I as master of this house. After *so*, *als* must always be employed. Example: *so rōth als eine Rose*, as red as a rose. *Als* and *wie* are also conjunctions of time.

Section III.

Position of the German adverbs.

The German adverbs are placed in simple tenses after the verb, and in compound tenses after the auxiliary verb and before the past participle and the infinitive. Examples: *Das Kind, welches in der Wiege lāg, weinte bitterlich.* The child, that lay in the cradle, wept bitterly. *Er behandelt den Gegenstand vortrefflich.* He treats the subject excellently. *Ich bin nicht glücklich, sondern unglücklich.* I am not happy, but unhappy. *Ich bin ohne Ihren Hass unglücklich genug.* I am unhappy enough without your hate. *Ich habe vergangene Nacht nicht gut geschlafen.* I have not slept well last night. *Ihr kaltes Herz ist endlich aufgethauet.* Her icy heart is at last thawed. *Es wird alsdann zu spät seyn.* It will be too late at that time. *Es wird morgen rēgnen.* It will rain to-morrow. *Kann ich jetzt nāch Hause gehen?* May I go home now?

When one or more words stand in compound tenses after the auxiliary verb, the adverb relative to the principal verb is usually placed after these words. Examples: *Sein Bruder hat ihm dieses wāhrscheinlich geschrieben.* His brother probably has written that to him. *Dieser Mann wird es vielleicht wissen.* This man perhaps will know it. *Er hat seine Freunde gänzlich vergessen.* He has entirely forgotten his friends. *Ich habe von Ihrer Schwester immer gut gesprochen.* I have always well spoken of your sister.

When a particular stress is laid upon the adverb, it is moved from its place towards the be-

ginning of the sentence, or put quite at the beginning of it. Examples: *Ich habe ehemals viele Freunde gehabt.* I had formerly many friends. *Ich werde niemals sie vergessen.* I shall never forget them. *Nicht Reichthum, sondern Zufriedenheit macht die Menschen glücklich.* Not riches, but contentment makes men happy. *Nicht glücklich, sondern unglücklich bin ich.* Not happy, but unhappy I am. *Morgen wird es regnen.* To-morrow it will rain. *Gestern sāſs ich auf einer Bank beim Mōndscheine.* Yesterday I was sitting on a bench by moonshine. It is seen from the three last examples, that the subject or nominative of the sentence is placed after the verb, when it commences with an adverb.

When *welcher* or *dér* precedes, or a conjunction stands at the beginning of the sentence, the adverb is put before the verb. This is also the case with the infinitive. Examples: *Das Buch, welches ich gestern lās, ist sehr gut geschrieben.* The book I read yesterday is very well written. *Ich weifs, dass sie mich innig liebt.* I know that she loves me intimately. *Er thūt seine Schuldigkeit blofs, damit er dēswegen gelōbt werde.* He does his duty only, that he may be praised for it. *Wenn ich heute nicht schreibe: so werde ich morgen schreiben.* If I do not write to-day, I shall write to-morrow. *Ob er gleich sehr wohl wusste, dass sie ihn hasste: so bestand er gleichwōhl darauf, sie zu hēirathen.* Though he knew very well she hated him, yet he insisted upon marrying her. *Es ist über einen Mōnat, seidém ich Sie * nicht gesēhen habe.* It is above a month, since I have seen you. *Die Wahrheit immer zu sagen, ist unsere Pflicht.* To tell always the truth, is our duty. *Er verliefs die Stadt, ohne mich wieder gesehen zu haben.* He left the town without having seen me again. *Doch, dénnoch,* and *gleichwōhl* are excepted

* Also in German *nicht* should be omitted. This is also the case in the following phrases: *Wie viele Menschen sind (nicht) in diesem Kriege úmgekommen!* How many men have perished in this war! *Wie stolz schien er (nicht)!* How proud did he appear!

to that rule. *Sie ist nicht mehr; doch liebe ich sie noch immer.* She is no more; yet I love her still.

Section IV.

Degrees of comparison of the German adverbs.

It has already been said, that the greatest part of the German attributive adjectives, in their absolute state, are also used as adverbs. This takes also place with regard to their degrees of comparison. Examples: *schön*, beautifully; *schöner*, more beautifully; *schönst*, most beautifully. *Bewúndernswürdig*, admirably; *bewundernswürdiger*, more admirably; *bewundernswürdigst*, most admirably.

Also some adverbs of time have the degrees of comparison, which they form like the adverbs of quality. Example: *oft*, often; *öfter*, oftener; *öfterst* (from *öfter*), oftenest.

The superlative degree of the German adverbs terminates in *st*; but this termination is only used in some words. The following superlatives in *st* are amongst their number: *allerliebst; äußerst; ergébenst; freundlichst; gefälligst; gehórsamst; gnädigst; allengnädigst; gütigst; herzlichst; hochgeneigtest; höchst; höflichst; huldreichst; innigst; jüngst; längst; meist; pflichtschuldigst; unterthánigst; verbindlichst; zärtlichst.*

The superlative degree of the German adverbs is therefore formed in another manner. It is formed by adding to them the syllable *sten*, and by prefixing the compound word *am*; or by adding to them the syllable *ste*, and by prefixing the words *auf das*, for which it may also be said *aufs*. Besides that, the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, are commuted, as in the comparative degree, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, when they occur in the last syllable. It is, of course, said: *am schönsten*, *auf das schönste*. *Am klúgsten*, *auf das klúgste*; from *klúg*, prudent. *Am öftersten*. But there is a difference between the superlative degree, which terminates in *sten*, and that which ends in

ste. The superlative degree, which terminates in *sten*, denotes the supreme degree; but that which ends in *ste*, indicates only an eminent degree. Examples: *Sie tanzt am bewundernswürdigsten.* She dances in a more admirable manner than all the others, her dancing deserves most admiration. *Sie tanzt auf das bewundernswürdigste.* She dances very admirably. *Unter allen Leidenden, die ich kenne, erträgt er seine Leiden am geduldigsten.* Of all the sufferers I know he endures his sufferings with most patience. *Dieser Leidende erträgt seine Leiden auf das geduldigste.* This sufferer endures his sufferings very patiently. *Ich habe mich am längsten in Paris aufgehalten.* I stayed at Paris longer than in any other town. *Ich werde mich auf das längste* or *höchstens drei Mönate in Paris aufhalten.* I shall stay at Paris three months at the most.

The following adverbs form their comparative and superlative degrees in an irregular manner:

Gut, well;	*besser*, better;	*am bessten*, best.
Viel, much;	*mehr*, more;	*am meisten*, most.
Hoch, highly;	*höher*, higher;	*am höchsten*, highest.
Nahe, nearly;	*näher*, nearer;	*am nächsten*, nearest.
Gern, willingly; gladly;	*lieber*, more willingly; rather;	*am liebsten*, with most pleasure.
Bald, soon; almost;	*eher*, sooner; rather;	*am ehesten*, soonest.

Lieber and *am liebsten* are the comparative and superlative degrees of *lieb*, dear, which is not used as adverb. *Ich trinke Braunbier lieber als Weisbier.* I like brown beer better than white beer. *Er wollte lieber gut seyn als gut scheinen.* He had rather be than appear good. *Er beschloss, lieber* (or *eher*) *zu sterben, als eine solche niedrige Handlung zu begehen.* He determined to die rather than commit so base an action. *Welche Jahreszeit haben Sie am liebsten?* Which season do you prefer? *Dieses isst er am liebsten.* That he likes best.

The regular comparative and superlative degrees of *bald* are *balder* and *baldest*, *am baldesten*; but they are no more in use. *Eher* and *am ehesten* are

the comparative and superlative degrees of *ehe*, before. *Er würde eher ihr Tyrann als ihr Gatte seyn.* He would be her tyrant rather than her husband. *Sie war eher eitel als stolz.* She was rather vain than proud. *Sie sollten es um desto eher thun.* You should do it rather for that.

Section V.

Exercises on some German adverbs.

I.

She is passionately in love with him. My sister plays sometimes on the harp. He totally ruined him. Strange things happen at present. I had almost forgot you. I was always very fond of music. I have spoken very well German; but *for want of exercise I have forgot all. I shall amply write to him **by the first opportunity. I shall seriously speak to him ***one of these days.

Passionately, *leidenschaftlich, heftig.*
with, *in*, with the accusative.
in love, *verliebt.*
to play, *spielen.*
on, *auf*, with the dative.
the harp, *die Harfe*, 7.
to ruin, *zu Grunde richten.*
strange, *seltsam.*
to happen, *sich *zutragen.*
at present, *jetzt.*
to be fond of a thing, *ein Ding lieben.*
music, *die Musik*, 7.
**aus Mangel an Übung.*
all, *Alles.*
to forget, **vergessen.*
***mit ehester Gelegenheit.*
amply, *weitläufig, ausführlich.*
seriously, *ernstlich.*
*** *ehester Tage.*

II.

You did wrong in not observing better your duty. We sincerely repent of not having followed your advice. It thundered yesterday dreadfully. It lightened, and it grew so dark, that we could scarcely see our road. This prospect pleases me extremely; and I already rejoice beforehand at the pleasant hours, which we shall spend together in this garden. I see your sister more frequently this year than formerly.

To do, **thun.*
wrong, *unrecht.*
in not, *dass Sie nicht.*
duty, *die Pflicht*, 7.

to observe, *beōbachten*. The preterimperfect tense must be put in German.
to repent, *bedauern*.
sincerely, *aūfrichtig*.
of not, *dass wir nicht*.
advice, *der Rāth*, 1.
having followed, *befolgt haben*.
to thunder, *donnern*.
dreadfully, *entsetzlich*.
to lighten, *blitzen*.
to grow, **werden*.
dark, *finster*.
the road, *der Wēg*, 1.
the prospect, *die Aūssicht*, 7.
to please one, *Einem* **gefallen*.
extremely, *überaūs*.
to rejoice, *sich frēuen*.
beforehand, *im voraūs*.
at, *über*, with the accusative.
pleasant, *angenehm*.
together, *mit einander*.
to spend, **zūbringen*.
frequently, *häufig*, *oft*.
formerly, *sonst*.

CHAPTER XI.

Of the German conjunctions.

Containing:

I. The different classes of the German conjunctions.
II. Exercises on some German conjunctions.

Section I.

The different classes of the German conjunctions.

Conjunctions are so called, because they bind or connect words and sentences, or members of sentences and bring them into a close relation with one another. As this connection and relation may be effected in different ways, the conjunctions are, accordingly, divided into eleven classes. These eleven classes are:

1. *Copulative conjunctions (verknüpfende Bindewörter)*, which merely join more members of a sentence.

2. *Disjunctive conjunctions (trennende* or *sondernde Bindewörter)*, which separate two things from each other, and affirm, though in an indefinite manner, only one of them.

3. *Exclusive conjunctions (aūsschliefsende Bindewörter)*, which mark an exclusion.

4. *Adversative conjunctions (entgegensetzende Bin-*

dewörter), which make an opposition between the sentence, which precedes, and that which follows.

5. *Concessive* or *granting conjunctions (einräumende Bindewörter)*, which note a concession, a grant.

6. *Causal conjunctions (ürsachliche Bindewörter)*, which note a cause.

7. *Conclusive conjunctions (folgernde Bindewörter)*, which note a conclusion.

8. *Conditional conjunctions (bedingende Bindewörter)*, which express a condition.

9. *Comparative conjunctions (vergleichende Bindewörter)*, which make a comparison.

10. *Conjunctions of time (Zeitbindewörter)*, which refer to time, and note the succession of events.

11. *Circumscriptive* and *final conjunctions (begränzende und bezweckende Bindewörter)*, which note a circumscription, or the end or motive.

The conjunctions are either *simple*, or *compound*. The simple conjunctions are either *primitive*, or *derivative*. The compound conjunctions consist all of two words.

List of the principal conjunctions.

I.

Copulative conjunctions.

Und, and.
Auch, also, too.
Nicht allein or *nicht nür, sondern auch*, not only, but also.
Sowöhl als *auch*, as well as, both — and.
Bald — bald, now — now.
Theils — theils, partly — partly.
So.

Observations.

1. *Auch* is placed either at the beginning, or after one or more words. *Er ist gelehrt; auch hat er viele gute Eigenschaften.* He is learned; he has many good qualities too. It may also be said: *er hat auch viele* &c. *Auch überlébte er nicht lange seine Niederlage.* Nor did he long survive his defeat. *Ist sie auch reich?* Is she also rich? Instead of *nicht nür, sondern auch*, is sometimes said *nicht nur, sondern. Er hasst mich nicht nur, sondern*

verfolgt mich. He hates me not only, but persecutes me. It may be said: *Sie ist sowohl reich als auch schön*, or: *Sie ist sowohl reich als schön.* She is both rich and beautiful.

When *auch* is joined with *so*, it is to be rendered in English by *however*. Example: *So grofs die Schrecken des Krieges auch seyn mögen: so konnten sie doch seinen Sinn nicht bändigen.* However great the terrors of war may be, yet they could not curb his spirit.

2. *Theils* is the genitive case of *Theil*, which is absolutely employed, that is to say, without being governed by any other word.

3. *So* is used to connect the second part of a compound sentence with the first part of it, when it begins with a concessive, or causal, or conditional conjunction. Examples: *Ob er gleich mein Vetter ist: so kommt er doch nicht zu mir.* Though he is my cousin, he comes not to me. *Weil* or *da ich Ihnen keine Geschenke machen kann: so lieben Sie mich nicht.* Because I cannot make you any presents, you do not love me. *Wenn der Knabe fleifsig ist: so kann er zu gröfsen Ehren gelangen.* If the boy be diligent, he may arrive at great honours. *Bezahlt er Sie nicht: so sagen Sie es mir.* If he pay you not, tell it me. *Wenn mein Bruder kommt: so sagen Sie es ihm.* When my brother comes, tell it him. But when a compound sentence begins with the conjunctions of time *als*, *da*, *ehe*, *indém*, *nachdém*, the conjunction *so* is not put. Examples: *Als* or *da er sich der Stadt näherte: fand er die Wälle von dem Feinde besetzt.* When he approached the town, he found the ramparts occupied by the enemy. *Sobald als ich ihn sah: kannte ich ihn.* As soon as I saw him, I knew him. *Ehe die Glocke aūsgeschlagen hat, ist mein Brief geendigt.* Before the clock has done striking, my letter is finished. *Indem ich davón sprāch: trāt mein Bruder in das Zimmer.* Whilst I was speaking of it, my brother entered the room. *Nachdem er Alles wohl unter-*

sūcht hatte: verliefs er das Zimmer. After having well examined every thing, he left the room.

2.

Disjunctive conjunctions.

Oder, or.
* *Entweder — oder*, either — or.
* *Ob — oder*, whether — or.

* Examples: *Er hat es entweder gethān, oder wird es thūn.* He has either done it, or will do it *Es liegt Nichts darán, ob ihr mein Freund seyd, oder nicht.* It is no matter, whether you are my friend, or not. When *ob* is not followed by *oder*, it expresses a doubt, an uncertainty. Example: *Antworten Sie mir auf Ihre Ehre, ob Sie mir die Wahrheit gesāgt haben.* Answer me on your honour, whether you have told me the truth.

3.

Exclusive conjunctions.

* *Weder — noch*, neither — nor.

* Examples: *Ich kenne weder seinen Vater, noch seinen Bruder.* I know neither his father, nor his brother. *Sie wissen weder seine Geduld noch seine Grofsmuth nāchzuahmen.* You know to imitate neither his patience, nor his generosity.

4.

Adversative conjunctions.

Aber, allein, but.
Sondern, but.
Da hingegen, when on the contrary, whereas.
Doch, dennoch, gleichwohl, yet.
Jedoch, however.

Observations.

1. *Aber* is employed:

a. To express an objection, or to pass from one subject to another. Examples: *Aber vielleicht werden Sie dagegen einwenden*, but perhaps you will object against it. *Aber lassen Sie uns von einem anderen Gegenstande sprechen.* But let us speak of another subject.

Aber is used:

b. To affirm or deny one of two things. Ex-

amples: *Ich bin nicht hier gewesen, aber dort.* I have not been here, but there. *Sie ist reich, aber hässlich.* She is rich, but ugly. *Er ist reich, aber nicht gelehrt.* He is rich, but not learned.

Aber is employed;

c. After *zwār*, it is true, indeed. Example: *Er hat mir zwar nicht geschrieben; aber ich zweifle nicht, dass er es noch thun wird.* He has, indeed, not written to me; but I do not doubt, that he will yet do it.

Aber may also be placed after one or more words. Examples: *Nūn aber befiehlt es der König.* But now the king commands it. *Da er aber nicht kommt*, but since he does not come. *Dieses wünschen wir aber nicht.* But this we do not wish. *Das Geld verlange ich aber.* But the money I demand.

2. *Allein*, which is always placed at the beginning, is employed to justify an action. Example: *Es ist wahr, ich liebe Sie nicht; allein Sie verdienen meine Liebe nicht.* It is true, I do not love you; but you do not deserve my love.

3. *Sondern* is used, when something is denied, and the contrary maintained. Examples: *Es friert nicht; sondern es thaut.* It does not freeze; but it thaws. *Gott ist kein unerbittlicher Richter, sondern ein verzeihender Vater.* God is no inexorable judge, but a father, who forgives.

4. *Da hingegen* answers to the English *whereas.* Example: *Mein Vater spricht mehrere Sprachen, da ich hingegen nur eine spreche.* My father speaks several languages, whereas I speak but one.

5. *Doch*, *dennoch*, and *gleichwohl* are used in the following manner: *Er ist reich, und doch* or *und dennoch* or *und gleichwohl giebt er Nichts den Armen.* He is rich, and yet he gives nothing to the poor. *So unbedeutend dieses Ereigniss an sich war: so scheint es doch das Kriegsglück geändert zu haben.* Unimportant as this event was in itself, it seems to have changed the fortune of the war. *Wenn ich gleich Geld hätte: so würde ich ihm doch*

or *dennoch* or *gleichwohl Nichts gēben.* Though I had money, yet I would give him nothing. *Doch* is also used after *da. Da Sie doch wussten, dass es zu Ihrem Nāchtheile war*, when you knew, that it was to your prejudice. When *doch* is employed after an imperative, it has the power of entreating and exhorting. Examples: *Seyn Sie doch so gütig*, pray, be so kind. *Sagen Sie mir doch*, pray, tell me. It is also used in questions and exclamations. Examples: *Was sāgte er doch?* Pray, what did he say? *War das doch ein Lärm!* What a noise that was!

6. *Jedoch* is put either before or after the subject. Example: *Das Buch steht in geringer Achtung; jedoch bin ich begierig, es zu lēsen*, or *ich bin jedoch begierig, es zu lesen.* The book is in little esteem; however, I am desirous of reading it.

5.

Concessive conjunctions.

Obgleich, obschōn, obwōhl, ob zwār, ungeāchtet, wenn auch, *wenn gleich, wenn schon, wiewōhl,* although, though.

Observation.

The two words, out of which these conjunctions consist, are parted, when the subject of the sentence is *ich, du, er, sie, wir, ihr, sie*, the subject or nominative of the sentence being placed between them both. But when the subject of the sentence is not one of those pronouns, that separation does not take place. Examples: *ob ich mich gleich ünwohl befand*, although I was ill. *Ob er schōn zu Hause war*, though he was at home. *Ob sie wohl nicht weiss*, though she does not know. *Ob wir ihm zwar geschrieben haben*, though we have written to him. *Wenn er gleich jung ist*, although he is young. *Wenn sie sich ihm gleich gezeigt haben*, though they have shown themselves to him. But it must be said: *Obgleich, obschon, obwohl, ob zwar, wenn auch, wenn gleich meine Mutter alt ist: so hat sie immer noch den völligen Gebrauch ihrer Geīsteskräfte.* Al-

though my mother is old, she still has the perfect use of her mental faculties. The conjunctions *ungeachtet* and *wiewohl* are never divided. Example: *Ungeachtet* or *wiewohl ich froh bin*, though I am glad. All concessive conjunctions are followed in German by the indicative mood.

6.

Causal conjunctions.

Denn, for.
Weil, *dieweil*, *immāſsen*, because.
Da, as, since.
Sintemal, because, since.

Observations.

1. *Denn* is not to be confounded with *dann*, then. Examples: *Er kommt nicht; denn er ist unwohl.* He does not come; for he is ill. *Dann ist es zu spät.* Then it is too late. *Denn* is used after *es sey*, it be. Example: *Ich werde es nicht thun, es sey denn, dass die Nōth mich zwänge.* I shall not do it, unless it be that necessity should compel me. *Denn* is also employed in asking. *Was soll ich denn thun?* What shall I do then?

2. *Dieweil*, *immāſsen*, and *sintemal* are at present no more in use.

3. *Weil* indicates the cause or result of an action. Examples: *Ich liebe Ihren Sohn, weil er ein vortreffliches Herz hat.* I love your son, because he has an excellent heart. *Wēr schöne Thaten verrichtet, weil sie gepriesen werden, dēr kann nicht ein wāhrhaft tugendhāfter Mensch genannt werden.* He who performs fine actions, because they are praised, cannot be called a truly virtuous man. *Da* indicates the reason, why we do, believe, hope something. It is, of course, also used to prove the truth of a judgment. Examples: *da er eine besondere Liebe zu diesem Kinde hatte*, as he had a particular love for that child. *Da ich Ihnen nichts Neues erzählen kann: so will ich Ihnen gār Nichts erzählen.* Since I can tell you nothing new, I will tell you nothing at all. *Da Sie so Viel für ihn gethān haben: so sollten*

Sie nūn auch an sich denken. Having done so much for him, you should now think of yourself too.

7.

Conclusive conjunctions.

Álso, folglich, mithín, of course, consequently.
Dahér, dārum, désshalb, déswegen, hence, therefore, wherefore.
Démnach, (accordingly to this) consequently.
Wie, so wie, as.

Observation.

Also, folglich, mithin, and *demnach* note a necessary consequence. Example: *Alle Menschen sind dem Irrthume unterwórfen; also auch der gröſste Weise.* All men are liable to error; consequently also the wisest man. *Daher, darum*, and *desswegen*, on the contrary, express an arbitrary consequence. *Alle Menschen sind dem Irrthume unterworfen; daher wollen wir uns nicht thörichter Weise für untrüglich halten.* All men are liable to error; therefore let us not think foolishly ourselves infallible. These conjunctions may also be placed after the subject. Examples: *Er ist reich; er kann es Ihnen also gében.* He is rich; he can, consequently, give you it. *Ich liebe sie nicht; ich vermeide daher* or *darum ihre Gesellschaft.* I do not love her; I shun therefore her company. *Wie* forms an inserted member of a sentence. *Wie zu erwarten war*, as was to have been expected.

8.

Conditional conjunctions.

Wenn, wo, woférn, if.
Daférn, provided.
Falls, in case that.

Observations.

Wenn is used with the preterimperfect and preterpluperfect tenses of the conjunctive mood, which are followed by one of the conditional tenses in the second part of the sentence. Examples: *Wenn ich viele gute Bücher hätte: so würde ich gelehrter seyn.* If I had many good books, I would be more

learned. *Wenn ich nur nicht dort seyn müsste!* If I were only not obliged to be there! *Wenn er etwa die Schlacht verlieren sollte,* if peradventure he should lose the battle. *Wenn ich wahre Freunde gehābt hätte: so würde ich glücklicher gewēsen seyn.* If I had had true friends, I would have been happier. *Wenn Sie auch* or *wenn Sie gleich Freunde hätten: so würden Sie doch nicht zufrieden seyn.* Though you had friends, yet you would not be content. *Wenn* may also be omitted. Examples: *Liebte ich sie nicht: so würde ich sie nicht geheirathet haben.* Did I not love her, I would not have married her. Instead of *wenn ich sie nicht liebte. Hätte ich sie nicht geliebt,* had I not loved her. Instead of *wenn ich sie nicht geliebt hätte.* When *wenn* is employed with another tense, the indicative mood is put. Examples: *Wenn Sie hier bleiben* (instead of *bleiben werden*), or *bleiben Sie hier: so werden die Sachen besser stehen.* If you stay here, affairs will be in a better condition. *Wenn ich hier war: so geschah dieses nicht.* If I was here, this did not happen. *Wenn dieses ausgenommen wird,* or *wird dieses ausgenommen,* if this is excepted. I may also say: *dieses ausgenommen,* this being excepted. *Wenn dieser Umstand vorausgesetzt wird,* or *wird dieser Umstand vorausgesetzt,* if this circumstance is supposed. I may also say: *diesen Umstand vorausgesetzt,* this circumstance being supposed.

2. *Wo, wofern, dafern,* and *falls,* have almost the same meaning. *Wo ich mich nicht irre,* if I mistake not. *Wofern Sie kommen,* in case that you come. *Dafern* (or *wenn*) *es wahr ist, was Sie sagen: so will ich das Geld vorschiefsen.* Provided it be true what you say, I will advance the money. *Falls es geschehen sollte,* in case it should happen. *Falls* is the genitive of *Fall,* and stands for *im Falle dass.*

9.

Comparative conjunctions.

Als, as; than. *Als ob, als wenn,* as if.

So wie — so, gleichwie — eben so, as — so. *Je — desto*, the — the. *Je nachdém*, according as.

Observations.

1. *Als*, as comparative conjunction, is preceded either by *so*, or by a comparative degree. Examples: *Es ist so warm als im Sommer.* It is as warm as in summer. *Er ist reicher als Crösus.* He is more rich than Croesus. *Als ob* and *als wenn* are employed with the conjunctive mood. Example: *Eilf wird aüsgesprochen, als ob* or *als wenn elf geschrieben wäre. Eilf* is pronounced as if it were written *elf.*

2. *So wie* begins the first part of the sentence, and *so* the second part of it. Example: *So wie manche Menschen die Farben einer Tülpe oder eines Schmetterlinges bewündern: so bewundere ich ein schönes menschliches Antlitz.* As some men admire the colours of a tulip or a butterfly, so I admire a fair human face.

3. *Je — desto* stand always before a comparative degree. Examples: *Je ruhiger das Lében ist: desto geeigneter ist es zum Nächdenken.* The more quiet life is, the more fit it is for reflection. *Je vollkommener ein Künstwerk ist: desto schöner ist es.* The more perfect a work of art is, the more beautiful it is. In a similar manner it is said: *Ich erwartete Ihre Ankunft nicht: und desto gröfser ist meine Freude.* I did not expect your arrival, and the greater is my joy.

10.

Conjunctions of time.

Als, da, when, as.
Sobáld als, sobáld, as soon as.
So lange als, so lange, as long as, while.
Bevör, ehe, before.
Bis, till.
Indém, indéssen, inzwischen, mittlerweile, während, while, whilst.
Nachdém, after.
Seit, seitdém, from the time, since which.
Wenn, when.

Observations.

1. *Als* is only used of time, which is not the

case with *da*. *Als* or *da ich in Berlin ankām: fand ich ihn nicht zu Hause.* When I arrived in Berlin, I did not find him at home. *Als* or *da er sie küsste*, as he kissed her. *Als* or *da er einige Zeit darauf von seinem Vetter einen Besūch erhielt: frāgte er ihn, was Unmäfsigkeit bedeutete.* Some time after receiving a visit from his cousin, he asked him, what intemperance signified. Instead of *als*, *wie* must not be used. *Wie (als) er dieses sah: rief er aus.* When he saw that, he exclaimed. Instead of *sobald als* and *so lange als*, simply *sobald* and *so lange* are frequently said. *Sobald als* or *sobald es vier geschlagen hat*, as soon as it has struck four. *So lange als* or *so lange* or *während dass mein Vater lebt*, while my father lives.

2. *Bevor* and *ehe* have the same signification. *Bevor* or *ehe Sie zurückkommen*, before you come back.

3. *Bis* is not only an adverb, but also a conjunction of time. *Bis er sich bekehrt*, till he repents.

4. *Indem* is expressed in English by *whilst;* but it is also frequently used, where a participle is employed in English. Examples: *indem ich dieses sāgte*, whilst I was saying this. *Indem sein Gesicht nach Morgen gewendet war*, his face being turned to the east. *Indem seine Blicke nach seinem Vāterlande gerichtet waren*, his looks being turned towards his country. I may also say: *sein Gesicht nach Morgen gewendet; seine Blicke nach seinem Vaterlande gerichtet.*

5. *Wenn* refers to what is present, or future, whereas *als* and *da* generally declare an action, that is passed. Examples: *Wenn ich zu ihm komme: so finde ich ihn immer bei seinen Büchern.* When I come to him, I always find him at his books. *Wenn Sie nach Rom kommen* (instead of *kommen werden*): *so werden Sie den Pāpst sehen.* When you come to Rome, you will see the pope. *Wenn ich dieses Buch gelesen habe* (instead of *gelesen haben werde*): *so will ich meinem Bruder schreiben.* When I have read this book, I will write to my brother.

11.

Circumscriptive and final conjunctions.

Dass, that; in order that. *Dass nicht*, lest.

Auf dass, damit, that, in order that. *Damit nicht*, lest.

Observations.

1. *Dass* is used with the indicative mood, when it is spoken positively of something. It is employed with the conjunctive mood after the verbs, which express a wish, a doubt, a fear. Examples: *Ich wünschte, dass ich Sie auf dem Balle tanzen sehen könnte.* I wish I could see you dance at the ball. *Ich wünschte, dass er sich in Acht nähme.* I wish he would take care. *Dass ich es thun könnte!* I wish I could do it. *Man hat mir gesāgt, dass er es wisse.* I have been told, that he knows it. *Ich dachte immer, dass es am Ende dazū kommen würde.* I thought always it would come at last to that. *Er könnte auf der That ergriffen werden, ohne dass er erröthen würde.* He could be taken in the fact; yet he would not blush. *Er ging hin zu den Hohenprīestern, dass er ihn ihnen verriethe.* He went to the chief priests to betray him to them. *Dass* is also sometimes omitted. Examples: *Ich behaupte, es wird nicht frieren.* I maintain it will not freeze. *Er glaubt, sie werde nicht kommen.* He thinks she will not come. *Ich glaube, es sey Zeit,* I believe it is time. Instead of *dass es nicht frieren wird; dass sie nicht kommen werde; dass es Zeit sey.*

2. *Auf dass*, which is very seldom used, and *damit* are employed with the conjunctive mood. Examples: *Ich thue es, damit sie mich liebe.* I do it, that she may love me. *Er kommt, damit er einen Brief schreibe.* He comes in order to write a letter. *Machen Sie geschwind, damit mein Mann nicht komme.* Make haste lest my husband should come. *Ich sage es Ihnen, damit Sie Nichts verlieren.* I tell you it, lest you should lose any thing. *Beruhigen Sie sich; denn ich war es, welcher Ihre Uhr und Ihren Geldbeutel nahm, damit Sie Ihre Thüre ein anderes Māl besser zūschliefsen möchten, wenn*

Sie aũsgehen. Compose yourself; for it was I who took your watch and your purse, that you might lock your door better another time, when you go out.

Section II.

Exercises on some German conjunctions.

I.

He was not at home; for his room-door was shut. He resolved always to follow his advice, because he saw, that it was for his good. Let me leave this town, since neither my love to you, nor the force of reason can convince you, that you render yourself unhappy. Though I love every man, yet all my neighbours take me for a man-hater. If grief for my loss had not rendered me insensible to all pleasures, I should have partaken in the rejoicings of your family. You may go to town, provided you promise to return as soon as possible.

The room-door, *die Stubenthũre*, 7.
to shut, **verschlieſsen.*
to resolve, *sich* **vörnehmen.*
the advice, *der Rath*, 1.
to follow, *befolgen.*
for, *zu.*
the good, *das Beſste*, 6.
let me, *lassen Sie mich.*
the town, *die Stadt*, 8.
to leave, **verlassen.*
since, *da.*
to, *zu.*
the force, *die Macht*, 8.
reason, *die Vernunft*, 8.
you, *Sie.*
to convince, *überzeũgen.*
yourself, *sich.*
unhappy, *unglücklich.*
to render, *machen.*
to take, **halten.*
the neighbour, *der Nachbar*, 4.
for, *für.*
a man-hater, *(ein Menschenhasser) ein Menschenfeind*, 1.
grief, *der Grãm*, 1. *der Kummer*, 4.
for, *über*, with the accusative.
loss, *der Verlust*, 1.
insensible, *unempfindlich.*
to, *gegen.*
the pleasure, *die Freude*, 7.
in, *an*, with the dative.
the rejoicing, *die Lústbãrkeit*, 7.
the family, *die Familie*, 7.
to partake, *Antheil* **nehmen.*
I may, *ich kann.*
to town, *in die Stadt.*
provided, *dafern.*
to promise, **versprechen.*
to return, **zurückkommen.*

II.

If the countryman had not the plough and the ox, he would be obliged to break up the field with a hough. I should speak better German, if I were

less timorous. Would he not have avoided this dreadful fate, if he had told the truth? I wish you had done it. We were all happy, while the father of the now king reigned. It will not be otherwise, while the world lasts. This happened, when I was yet very young. When he perceived him, he ran away. He was yet a child, when his mother died. Being lately at the play, I saw *the mourning Bride represented.

The countryman, *der Landmann*, 2.
the plough, *der Pflūg*, 1.
the ox, *der Ochs*, 6.
the field, *das Feld*, 2.
a hough, *eine Hacke*, 7.
to break up, **aūfbrechen*.
to be obliged, **müssen*.
less, *weniger*.
timorous, *furchtsam*.
dreadful, *schrecklich*.
fate, *das Schicksal*, 1.
to avoid, **vermeiden*.
to tell the truth, *die Wahrheit sagen*.
I wish, *ich wünsche*.
while, *so lange als*.
now, *jetzig*.
to reign, *regieren*.
otherwise, *anders*.
to last, (*währen*) **stehen*.
to happen, **geschehen*, *sich ereignen*, **sich zūtragen*.
when, *als*.
yet, *noch*.
to perceive, *erblicken*, *gewahren*, *gewahr werden*.
to run away, **fórtlaufen*.
to die, **sterben*.
lately, *letzthin*, *neulich*.
at, *in*.
the play, *das Schaūspiel*, 1.
**die Braut in Trauer*.
represented, *aūffūhren*.

III.

I always tell the truth; wherefore you may believe me, that I am in the right. He was not inclined to do it, because he did not love him. He is not only an eminent poet, but also an excellent historian. She has done me wrong; yet I will forgive her. My advice was for his good; yet he did not follow it. She is ugly, and yet he loves her. I repeat it, that I hate such men. This does not prove, that I love you less. *He is of that humour, that none can agree with him. I am sorry for not having seen your sister. Either work, or be gone.

To believe one, *Einem glauben*.
to be in the right, *Recht haben*.
inclined, *geneigt*.
eminent, *aūsgezeichnet*.
the poet, *der Dichter*, 4.
excellent, *vortréfflich*.
the historian, *der Geschichtschreiber*, 4.
wrong, *Unrecht*.

to forgive one, *Einem *vergében, Einem *verzeihen.*
ugly, *hässlich.*
to repeat, *wiederhölen.*
to hate, *hassen.*
such, *solche, dergleichen.*
to prove, **beweisen.*
**er hat einen solchen Kopf.*
none, *(Keiner) Niemand.*
to agree, **aüskommen.*
I am sorry for, *es thut mir leid, dass ich.*
to work, *árbeiten.*
be gone, *gehen Sie Ihren Wēg.*

IV.

He was afraid of being punished for it. Would one think it was possible? He was still in hopes, that his father would pay him a visit. He was afraid that he might beat him. Take care lest you lose your living. If you come in good time, we will go together. If not, I must go alone. Though you be very rich, yet I doubt whether you are as rich as my father. Though you deny it, yet I know *it to be true. Though his proposition met with some opposition, yet it was accepted. Raillery is no longer agreeable than while the whole company is pleased with it. While he kept himself within the bounds of modesty, I was his sincerest friend.

To be afraid, *fürchten.*
of, *dass er.*
for it, *dafür.*
to punish, *bestrafen.*
one, *man.*
to think, *glauben.*
it, *dass es.*
possible, *mōglich.*
was must be translated by the conjunctive mood.
to be in hopes, *hoffen.*
still, *immer noch.*
to pay one a visit, *Einem einen Besūch ábstatten.*
to beat, **schlagen.*
I may, *ich mág.*
to take care, *sich in Acht nehmen.*
to lose one's living, *sein Brōt *verlieren.*
in good time, *zu rechter Zeit.*
together, *zusámmen.*
alone, *allein.*
to doubt, *zweifeln.*
whether, *ob.*
as rich as, *so reich als.*
to deny, *läugnen.*
**dass es wahr ist.*
the proposition, *der Vōrschlag*, 1.
to meet with, **ántreffen, finden*, with the accusative.
some opposition, *einiger Widerstand*, 1.
to accept, **ánnehmen.*
raillery, *der Scherz*, 1.
no longer, *(nicht länger) nūr so lange.*
agreeable, *ángenehm.*
than while, *(als so lange) als.*
whole, *ganz.*
the company, *die Gesellschaft*, 7.
to be pleased with something, *ein Wōhlgefallen an einem Dinge haben.*
while, *so lange.*
himself, *sich.*
within, *innerhalb, in.*
the bounds of modesty, *die*

Schranken der Bescheidenheit. to keep, **halten.*
sincere, *aufrichtig.*

V.

*The richer we are, **the kinder we ought to be. I am the more obliged to serve him, being my best friend. This is the more foolish in him, being not rich. The higher we mount, the deeper we will fall. The end of his travels was not to stock his mind with learning, but to study mankind. His riches made him neither incivil, nor negligent. If the weather continues favourable, my friend comes in a few days. Because time passes quickly, the wise man turns every moment to profit. Scarcely had he finished his speech, when a sudden horror seized him. If I catch him, I will murder him *without mercy. After I had read the book, I sent it away. He is, indeed, not my friend, but also not my enemy. Man is not created *to be lazy, but **to work. I believed that he was my friend.

**je.*
** *desto.*
kind, *gütig.*
I ought to be, *ich sollte seyn.*
the more, *um desto mehr.*
obliged, *verbunden, verpflichtet.*
to serve one, *Einem dienen.*
the more foolish, *um so thörichter.*
in, *von.*
high, *hoch.*
to mount, * *steigen.*
deep, *tief.*
to fall, * *fallen.*
the end, *der Zweck*, 1.
the travel, *die Reise*, 7.
mind, *der Geist*, 2.
to stock, (*versehen*) *anfüllen.*
to study mankind, *die Menschen studiren.*
riches, *der Reichthum*, 2.
incivil, *unhöflich.*
negligent, *nachlässig.*
the weather, *das Wetter*, 4.
favourable, *günstig.*
to continue, * *bleiben.*
a few days, *wenige Tage.*
to pass quickly, *schnell* * *vergehen.*
to turn to profit, *benutzen.*
the wise man, *der Weise*, 6.
scarcely, *kaum.*
speech, *die Rede*, 7.
to finish, *endigen.*
when, *als.*
sudden, *plötzlich.*
horror, *das Grausen*, 4.
to seize, * *ergreifen.*
to catch, *erwischen.*
* *ohne Erbarmung.*
to murder, *ermorden*, * *umbringen.*
after, *nachdem.*
to send away, *fortschicken.*
indeed, *zwar.*
to create, * *erschaffen.*
* *zum Müssiggange.*
** *zur Arbeit.*
was must be translated by the conjunctive mood.

CHAPTER XII.

Of the interjections.

Interjections are so called, because they are *thrown in* between the parts of a sentence without making any alteration in it. They may be classed according to the different passions, the emotions of which they express. Some of them express joy; others note sorrow or distress; others serve to express astonishment or admiration; others are used in order to express an aversion; others are employed in order to inspire with courage; others command silence.

CHAPTER XIII.

Of German orthography.

German orthography (die deutsche Rechtschreibungslehre) is that part of German grammar, which teaches the right way of writing the words of the German language. There are general and particular rules of German orthography.

I.

General rules of German orthography.

First general rule.

The German words must be written as they are pronounced by correct and elegant speakers.

By this rule the right way of writing the following words will easily be found.

A.

Aal, *der* 1. the eel.
Aas, *das* 2. the carrion.
* *Abblasen*, to blow off.
Abblatten, to unleave.
* *Ablesen* to take away; to read.
All, *das* 1. the universe.
Ass, *das* 1. the ace.
* *Ablassen*, to let off.
* *Abladen*, to unload.
Ablösen, to sever.

Ábreisen, to set off, to depart.
Ábspielen, to pay by playing at cards.
**Ábstechen*, to kill.
Ahnen, to have a presension.
Áhre, *die* 7. the ear, corn-ear.
Ándern, to change.
Áufsern, to utter.
Armée, *die* 7. army.

**Áusreiten*, to ride out.
Áusspielen, to play out; to play first.
Axt, *die* 8. the axe.

**Ábreifsen*, to tear off.
Ábspülen, to wash away.
Ábstecken, to unpin.
Ahnden, to punish.
Ehre, *die* 7. honour.
Entern, to board.
Eisern, iron, of iron.
Arme, *die* (from *der Arm*, 1.) the arms. *Der Arme*, 6. the poor man.
Áusreuten, to root up.
Áusspülen, to rinse, to wash.

Achse, *die* 7. the axle-tree.

B

Backen, to bake.
Baden, to bathe.

baten, *sie*, they begged.

Bállast, *der* 1. the ballast.
Bann, *der* 1. the ban.
Bannen, to banish.

Bären, *die* (plural of *der Bär*, 6.) the bears.
Bass, *der* 1. the bass.
Bast, *der* 1. the bast.
Becken, *das* 4. the basin.

Bedacht, *mit*, considerately.
Beet, *das* 1. the bed in a garden.
Beete, *die* 7. the beet.

Beide, both.
Beile, *die* (plural of *das Beil*, 1.) the hatchets.
Bein, *das* 1. the leg.
Beräuchern, to besmoke.
Beschweren, to molest, to trouble.
Bésen, *der* 4. the broom.
Besser better.
béte, *ich*, I pray (to God).

Béten, to pray (to God).
**Beweisen*, to prove.

Packen, to pack.
baten, *sie* (from **bitten*) they begged.
Pathen, *die* (plural of *der Pathe*, 6.) the godfather; the godson.
Palást, *der* 1. the palace.
Bahn, *die* 7. the path.
bahnen, *einen Weg*, to beat a path.
Beeren, *die* (plural of *die Beere*, 7.) the berries.
Pass, *der* 1. the passport.
passt, *er*, he fits.
Böcken, *den* (from *der Bock*, 1.) to the he-goats.
Betágt, aged old.
Bett, *das* 3. the bed.
Böte, *die* (plural of *das Boot*, 1.) the boats.
Beute, *die* 7. the booty.
Beule, *die* 7. the bile.

Pein, *die* 7. the torment.
Bereichern, to enrich.
Beschwören, to affirm by an oath
Bösen, *die*, the wicked.
Böser, more wicked.
böte, *ich* (from **bieten*) I would offer. *Ich bette*, I make the bed.
Betten, *die*, the beds.
Beweifsen, to whiten.

Biene, die 7. the bee.
Bis, till.
Blässe, die 7. the paleness.
Blatt, das 2. the leaf.
Bräute, die (plural of *die Braut*, 8.) the brides
Bricke, die 7. the river-lamprey.
Brillen, die (plural of *die Brille*) 7. the spectacles.
Bund, der 1. alliance.

Bühne, die 7. the stage.
Biss, der 1. the bite.
Blöſse, die 7. the nakedness.
Platt, plat.
Breite, die 7. the breadth.
Brücke, die 7. the bridge.
Brüllen, to roar.
Bunt, party-coloured.

D.

Dachs, der 1. the badger.
Daube, die 7. the staff.
Deich, der 1. the dike.

Den, the; to the.
Dér, this; that.
Dicke, die 7. the thickness.
Dienen, to serve.
**Dingen*, to hire.
Dinger, der 4. the hirer.
Dogge, die 7. the bull-dog.
Dorf, das 2. the village.
Drang, der 1. an ardent desire.
Draht, der 1. the wire.
Dreier, der 4. the name of a small coin.
Dritte, der, the third.

Drohnen, die (plural of *die Drohne*, 7.) the drones.

Dróst, der 6. the name of a high place.
Drüber (instead of *darüber*), over it.

Tax, der 1. yew.
Taube, die 7. the pigeon.
Teich, der 1. the pond. *Der Teig*, 1. the dough.
Denn, for.
Theer, der 1. the tar.
Tücke, die 7. malice.
Dünen, die, the downs.
Düngen, to dung.
Dünger, der 4. the dung.
Docke, die 7. the doll.
Torf, der 1. the turf.
Trank, der 1. the potion.
trāt, ich (from **tréten*) I trod.
Treuer (from *treu*), faithful.

Tritte, die (plural of *der Tritt*, 1.) the steps.

Thronen, die (plural of *der Thrōn*) the thrones. Better *die Throne.*

Trōst, der 1. consolation, comfort.
Trüber (from *trübe*), troubled; cloudy, dark; sad.

E.

Ecke, die 7. the corner.
Eichen, oaken.
Eile, die 7. haste.
Eiter, der 4. the matter.

Ende, das 3. the end.
Erdichte (from *erdichten*), feign, invent.
Erfreien, to obtain by marriage.
Ermahnen, to exhort.

Erzeigen, Ehre, to do honour.

Egge, die 7. the harrow.
Eigen, own.
Eule, die 7. the owl.
Euter, das 4. the udder. *Der Eider*, 4. the eider-duck.
Ente, die 7. the duck.
Érdichte (from *érdicht*), earthy.

Erfreuen, to rejoice.
Ermannen, sich, to call forth all one's powers.
Erzeugen, to produce.

F.

Fällt, er (from **fallen*) he falls.
Falz, der 1. the fold.
Fahl, fallow.
Fähre, die 7. the ferry.
fährt, er (from **fahren*) he drives the horses.
fand, ich (from *finden*) I found.
Fäule, die 7. putrefaction.
Fäuste, die (plural of *die Faust*, 8.) the fists.
Feier, die 7. the celebration.
Feile, die 7. the file.
fiel, ich (from *fallen*) I fell.
fielen, wir, we fell.
Flagge, die 7. the flag.
Flehen, to implore.
flicht, er (from *flechten*) he plaits.
Flicken, to mend.
**Fliegen*, to fly.
Flüg, der 1. the flight.
forscht, er (from *forschen*) he makes inquiries.
Freien, to marry.
Für, for.
Fuder, das 4. the load.
Fund, der 1. the found.

Feld, das 2. the field.
Pfalz, die 7. the Palatinate.
Pfahl, der 1. the pale.
Föhre, die 7. the pine.
Pférd, das 1. the horse.
Pfand, das 2. the pawn.
Feile, die 7. the file.
Feiste (plural of *feist*), fat.
Feuer, das 4. the fire.
Pfeile, die (plural of *der Pfeil*, 1.) the arrows.
Pfühl, der 1. the bolster, the pillow.
Fühlen, to feel. *Das Füllen*, 4. the foal.
Flache (from *flach*), flat.
Flöhen, to flea.
Pflicht, die 7. the duty.
Pflücken, to gather.
Pflügen, to plough.
Pflūg, der 1. the plough. *Der Flūch*, 1. curse.
Forst, der 1. the forest.
Freuen, sich, to rejoice.
Vier, four.
Futter, das 4. the provender.
Pfund, das 1. the pound.

G.

Gans, die 8. the goose.
Gār, very.
gefiel, ich (from **gefallen*) I pleased.
Geisel, der 4. the hostage.
Geläute, das 1. the ringing of bells.
Geld, das 2. money.
Geliebte, die 7. a mistress, sweetheart.
Gericht, das 1. a dish, a mess.
gewährt, er (from *gewähren*) he affords.
Gewand, das 2. the garment.
glimmen, unter der Asche, to lurk under the ashes.

Ganz, whole.
Jahr, das 1. the year.
Gefühl, das 1. feeling.
Geiſsel, die 7. the scourge.
Geleite, das 1. the conduct.
Gelt? is it not true?
Gelübde, das 1. the vow.
Gerücht, das 1. report, rumour.
Gewehrt, past participle of *wehren*, to defend.
Gewandt, agile.
Klimmen, to climb.

Grām, der 1. grief.
graut, der Tag, it dawns.
Greis, der 1. the old man.
Griechen, die, the Greeks.
Gucken, to look.
Gunst, die 7. favour.
Gute Menschen, good men.

Krām, der 1. the shop.
Kraut, das 2. herb; cabbage.
Kreis, der 1. the circle.
Kriechen, to creep.
Jucken, to itch.
Kunst, die 8. art.
Jude, der 6. the Jew.

H.

Hacken, die, the hoes.
Häfen, die (from *der Hafen*, 4.) the ports.
hält, er (from **halten*) he holds.
Häuser, die (from *das Haus*, 2.) the houses.
Häute, die (from *die Haut*, 8.) the hides.
Hehlen, to conceal.

Heilen, to heal.
Helle, die 7. clearness.

Herr, der 6. the master.

Höcker, der 4. the bunch.
Hütchen, das 4. a little hat.

Haken, der 4. the hook.
Hefen, die, barm.

Held, der 6. the hero.
Heiser, hoarse. *Heifser* (from *heifs*), hotter.
Heute, to-day.

Höhlen, die (from *die Höhle*, 7.) the caverns.
Heulen, to howl.
Hölle, die 7. the hell. *Höhle, die* 7. the cavern.
Heer, das 1. the army. *Hér*, hither. *Hôr' ihn*, hear him.
Höker, der 4. the higgler.
Hüttchen, das 4. a little cottage.

I.

Jácht, die 7. yacht.
Jahr, das 1. the year.
Jänner (instead of *Januar*, 1.) *der* 4. January.
ist, er, he is.

Jägd, die 7. chase.
Gār, very.
Jener, that. *Der Gönner*, 4. the fautor.
isst (isset), er, he eats.

K.

kām, ich (from **kommen*) I came.
Kärrner, der 4. the carrier.

Käufer, der 4. the buyer.
Keile, die (plural of *der Keil*, 1.) the wedges.
**Kennen*, to know.
Kenner, der 4. the knower.
Kerbe, die 7. the notch.

Kernicht, pithy.
Kiefer, der 4. the jawbone.
Kien, der 1. resinous wood.
Kiste, die 7. the chest.
Klinge, die 7. the blade.

Kamm, der 1. the comb.

Körner, die (plural of *das Korn*, 2.) the grains.
Keifer, der 4. he that scolds.
Keule, die 7. the club.

**Können*, to be able.
Gönner, der 4. the fautor.
Körbe, die (plural of *der Korb*, 1.) the baskets.
Körnicht, corny.
Küfer, der 4. the cooper.
Kühn, bold; boldly.
Küste, die 7. the coast.
Klinke, die 7. the latch.

Kobalt, der 1. cobalt.	*Kōbold, der* 1. the goblin.
* *Kriechen*, to creep.	*Kriegen*, to make war.
Kuppel, die 7. the cupola.	*Koppel Hunde, eine* 7. a pack of hounds.
Küste, die 7. the coast.	*küsste, ich*, I kissed.
L.	
Lāche, die 7. the plash.	*Láche, die* 7. laughter. *Die Lage*, 7. the situation.
Lahm, lame.	*Lamm, das* 2. the lamb.
Laie, der 6. layman.	*Leue, der* 6. the lion.
lasen, wir (from **lesen*) we read.	* *Lassen*, to let; to leave.
Last, die 7. the load.	*Lasst* (from **lassen*), let.
Läuse, die (plural of *die Laus*, 8.) the lice.	*Leise*, soft; softly.
läuten, die Glocken, to ring the bells.	*Leiten*, to lead, to guide. *Den Leuten*, to the people.
Leichter (from *leicht*), easier.	*Leuchter, der* 4. the candlestick.
leide, ich, I suffer; I endure.	*leite, ich*, I lead. *Die Leute*, people.
* *Leiden*, to suffer.	*Leiten*, to lead.
* *Lésen*, to read.	*Lösen*, to loosen; to solve.
Licht, das 2. light.	*liegt, er*, he lies.
* *Liegen*, to lie; to be situated.	* *Lügen*, to lie, to tell a lie, a falsehood.
liesest, du, thou readest.	*liessest, du*, thou letst.
Liste, die 7. the list.	*Lüste, die* (plural of *die Lust*, 8.) the lusts.
M.	
Machen, to make.	*Magen, der* 4. the stomach.
Mácht, die 8. might.	*Māgd, die* 8. the maid-servant.
Mähre, die 7. a jade.	*Möhre, die* 7. the carrot.
Mandel, die 7. the almond.	*Mantel, der* 4. the cloak.
Marder, der 4. the marten.	*Marter, die* 7. the torment.
Mäſse, die (plural of *das Maſs*, 1.) the measures.	*Masse, die* 7. the mass.
Mäuler, die (plural of *das Maul*, 2.) the mouths.	*Meiler, ein* 4. a pile of wood in order to burn it to coals.
Mäuse, die (plural of *die Maus*, 8.) the mice.	*Meise, die* 7. the titmouse.
Mausen, to mouse.	*Mauzen*, to mew.
Mehren, to multiply; to augment.	*Möhren, die* (plural of *die Möhre*, 7.) the carrots.
Miethe, die 7. hire.	*Mitte, die* 7. the middle.
Missen, to miss.	* *Müssen*, to be obliged.
Müs, das 1. pap; marmalade.	*Muss, der* 1. necessity.
Muse, die 7. muse.	*Müſse, die* 7. leisure.
N.	
Nachen, der 4. the cockboat.	*Nagen*, to gnaw.

Nächtheile, die (from *der Nachtheil*, 1.) the disadvantages.
Nächtisch, der 1. dessert.
Nein, no.
Nessel, die 7. the nettle.
Nisse, die (plural of *die Niss*, 8.) the nits.

Nächteule, die 7. the night-owl.
Náchttisch, der 1. toilet.
Neun, nine.
Nöfsel, das 4. the pint.
Nüsse, die (plural of *die Nuss*, 8.) the nuts.

O.

Ofen, der 4. the stove.

Offen, open.

P.

Paar, das 1. pair.
Picken, to peck.

**Preisen*, to praise.

Baar, bar, ready.
Piken, die (plural of *die Pike*, 7.) the pikes.
Preufsen, Prussia.

R.

Rabe, der 6. the raven.
Räd, das 2. the wheel.

Räthe, die (plural of *der Räth*, 1.) the counsellors.
Rauben, to rob.

Räume, die (plural of *der Raum*, 1.) the spaces.
Räumen, to void.
Recht, right.
Redlich, honest, upright.
Reisen, to travel; to go.

Reihe, die 7. the row.
**Reiten*, to go on horseback.
Riemen, der 4. the strap.
Rinder, die (plural of *das Rind*, 2.) the oxen.
Riss, der 1. the cleft.
Ruhm, der 1. glory.

Rappe, der 6. the black horse.
Räth, der 1. the advice; the counsellor.
Röthe, die 7. redness. *Die Rede*, 7. discourse.
Raupen, to clear of caterpillars.
Reime, die (plural of *der Reim*, 1.) the rhymes.
Reimen, to rhyme.
rēgt, er (from *regen*) he moves.
Röthlich, reddish.
Reusen, die (plural of *die Reuse*, 7.) the weels. **Reifsen*, to burst.
Reue, die 7. repentance.
Reuten, to root out.
Rühmen, to praise.
Ründer (comparative degree of *rund*), rounder.
Rieſs, das 1. the ream.
Rúm, der 1. rum.

S.

Saat, die 7. the seed.
Sägen, to saw.
Sammet, der 1. the velvet.
sang, ich (from **singen*) I sung.
Säule, die 7. the column.

Säumen, to hem; to tarry.
**Scheinen*, to shine; to seem.

Scherbe, die 7. the sherd.

Satt, satiate, satiated.
Segen, der 4. the benediction.
Sammt, with.
sank, ich (from **sinken*) I sunk.
Seile, die (plural of *das Seil*, 1.) the ropes.
Seimen, to strain, to filter.
Scheunen, die (plural of *die Scheune*, 7.) the barns.
Schärpe, die 7. the scarf.

Schiefer, *der* 4. the splinter; the slate.
Schieler, *der* 4. one who squints.
Schild, *der* 1. the shield.
Schlāf, *der* 1. sleep.
schlägt, *er* (from **schlagen*) he beats.
Schooſs, *der* 1. the lap.
**Schwären*, to suppurate.
Schwiele, *die* 7. callosity.
Seen, *die* (plural of *der See*, 3.) the lakes.
Séhne, *die* 7. the sinew, tendon.
Seide, *die* 7. the silk.
Seigen, to filter.
Seit, since.
Sicher, sure.
Siech, sickly.
Siechen, to be sickly.
**Sieden*, to seeth.
Siegel, *das* 4. the seal.
singt, *er*, he sings.
Sparen, to spare.
Spielen, to play.
Spucken, to spit.
Stadt, *die* 8. the town.
Ställe, *die* (plural of *der Stall*, 1.) the stables.
**Stéhlen*, to steal.
Sticken, to embroider.
Stiele, *die* (plural of *der Stiel*, 1.) the stalks.
Sträuche, *die* (plural of *der Strauch*, 1.) the shrubs.

Schiffer, *der* 4. the navigator.
Schüler, *der* 4. the scholar, the disciple.
schilt, *er* (from **schelten*) he scolds.
Schlaff, slack.
Schlecht, bad.
Schoss, *der* 1. the scot.
**Schwören*, to swear.
Schwüle, *die* 7. sultriness.
**Séhen*, to see.
Söhne, *die* (plural of *der Sohn*, 1.) the sons.
Seite, *die* 7. the side.
Zeigen, to show.
seyd, *ihr*, you are.
Siecher (from *siech*), more sickly.
Sieg, *der* 1. the victory.
Siegen, to get the victory.
Süden, *der* 4. the south.
Ziegel, *der* 4. the tile.
sinkt, *er*, he sinks.
Sparren, *der* 4. the rafter.
Spülen, to rinse.
Spuken, *es spükt hier*, this place is haunted.
Staat, *der* 3. the state.
stéhle, *ich* (from **stéhlen*) I steal.
Stellen, to place.
Stücken, to piece.
Stühle, *die* (plural of *der Stuhl*, 1.) the chairs. *Die Stille*, 7. stillness.
Streiche, *die* (plural of *der Streich*, 1.) the strokes.

T.

Tauchen, to dip.
Teich, *der* 1. the pond.
Thiere, *die* (plural of *das Thier*, 1.) animals.
Tōd, *der* 1. death.
Triebe, *die* (plural of *der Trieb*, 1.) inclinations.

Taugen, to be fit.
Teig, *der* 1. the dough.
Thüre, *die* 7. the door.
Tōdt (contracted from the obsolete participle *getodet*), dead.
Trübe, troubled, muddy; dim, dark.

V.

Verheeren, to ravage.	*Verhören*, to try.
Versehren, to hurt.	*Verzehren*, to consume.

W.

Wachen, to watch.	*Wagen*, to risk.
Wade, *die* 7. the calf of the leg.	*wate*, *ich* (from *waten*) I wade.
Wägen, to weigh.	*Wegen*, on account of.
wähle, *ich* (from *wählen*) I choose.	*Wälle*, *die* (plural of *der Wall*, 1.) the ramparts. *Die Welle*, 7. the billow.
Wahn, *der* 1. an erroneous opinion.	*Wann*, when.
Währen, to last.	*Wehren*, to forbid.
Wärter, *der* 4. the tender.	*Wörter*, *die* (from *Word*) the words.
**Weisen*, to show.	*Weifsen*, to whiten.
Weiser (from *weise*), wiser.	*Weifser* (from *weifs*), whiter.
Weislich, wisely.	*Weifslich*, whitely.
Wen? whom?	*Wenn*, if.
Werg, *das* 1. the tow.	*Werk*, *das* 1. the work.
Werth, *der* 1. the worth.	*wehrt*, *er*, he forbids.
Widder, *der* 4. the ram.	*Wider*, against.
wird, *er*, he becomes.	*Wirth*, *der* 1. the host.
Wüste, *die* 7. the desert.	*wüsste*, *ich* (from **wissen*) I knew.

Z.

Zähe, tough.	*Zehe*, *die* 7. the toe.
Zähren, *die* (plural of *die Zähre*, 7.) the tears.	*zehren*, *von Etwas*, to live upon something. *Zerren*, to pull about.
Zeichen, *das* 4. the sign, the token.	*Zeigen*, to show.
Zeigen, to show.	*Zeugen*, to procreate.
Zelle, *die* 7. the cell.	*Zölle*, *die* (plural of *der Zoll*, 1) custom.
Ziege, *die* 7. the goat.	*Züge*, *die* (plural of *der Zug*, 1.) the pulls; the features.
Ziegel, *der* 4. the tile.	*Zügel*, *der* 4. the rein.
Ziemer, *der* 4. the fieldfare; the pizzle.	*Zimmer*, *das* 4. the room.

All these words are easily written in a just manner, when they are rightly pronounced. Many other words, on the contrary, which are differently written, are pronounced either in the same manner, or nearly in the same manner. Consequently, the right way of writing them cannot be learned by their pronunciation, but only by attending to the manner,

in which they are written and distinguished one from another. The first general rule of German orthography: *The words must be written as they are pronounced*, is, of course, not applicable to them. The following words belong to those which, though differently written, have the same sound, or nearly the same sound.

A.

Aale, die (plural of *der Aal*, 1.) the eels.	*Ahle, die* 7. the awl.
Aas, das 2. the carrion.	*aſs, ich* (from * *essen*) I eat.
Äckern, den (from *der Acker*, 4.) to the fields.	*Eckern, die* (from *die Ecker*, 7.) the acorns.

B.

Baare Münze, ready money.	*Bahre, die* 7. the bier.
Bald, soon.	*ballt, er* (from *ballen*) he clinches.
Bälle, die (plural of *der Ball*, 1.) the balls.	*belle, ich* (from *bellen*) I bark.
bäte, ich (from * *bitten*) I begged.	*bête, ich* (from *beten*) I pray to God.
Bay, die 7. the bay.	*Bei*, by, near.

D.

Dänen, die (plural of *der Däne*, 6.) the Danes.	*Dénen*, to those. *Déhnen*, to stretch out.

F.

Fälle, die (plural of *der Fall*, 1.) the cases.	*Felle, die* (plural of *das Fell*, 1.) the skins.
Färse, die 7. the heifer.	*Férse, die* 7. the heel. *Die Vérse* (plural of *der Vérs*, 1.) the verses.
fasst, er (from *fassen*) he holds, takes.	*Fast*, almost.
Feilchen, das 4 a little file.	*Veilchen, das* 4. the violet.
Fetter (from *fett*), fatter.	*Vetter, der* 4. the cousin.
Fiber, die 7. the fibre.	*Fieber, das* 4. the fever.
fiel, ich (from * *fallen*) I fell.	*Viel*, much.

G.

Geleert (from *leeren*), emptied.	*Gelehrt*, learned.

H.

Harrte, ich (from *harren*) I tarried; I hoped.	*Harte* (from *hart*), hard.
Heer, das 1. the army.	*Hehr*, dear.
Hérde, die 7. the herd.	*Hérde, auf dem* (from *der Herd*, 1.) upon the hearth.
Hohle (from *hohl*), hollow.	*Hole, ich* (from *holen*) I fetch.

K.

Kälter (from *kalt*), colder.
Kälter, die 7. the press.
Küssen (Kissen), das 4. the cushion.
Küssen, to kiss.

L.

Laichen, to spawn.
Leichen, die (from *die Leiche*, 7.) the corpses.
Leere, die 7. emptiness.
Lehre, die 7. the doctrine.
Loos, das 1. the lot.
Lös, loose.

M.

Maal, das 2. the mark; the mole.
Mahl, das 2. the meal, the repast. *Das erste Mal*, 1. the first time.
Mädchen, das 4. the girl. From *die Magd*, 8. the maid.
Mädchen, das 4. (from *die Made*, 7.) the little mite.
**Mahlen*, to grind.
Malen, to paint.
Main, der 1. the Main.
Mein, my.
† *Man*, one.
Mann, der 2. man; husband.
Meer, das 1. the sea.
Mehr, nicht, no more.
Miene, die 7. the mien.
Mine, die 7. the mine.
Miethe, die 7. the hire.
Mythe, die 7. mythus.
Moor, der 6. the moor, black-a-moor.
Moor, das 1. the moor, the marsh.

† For instance: *Man mag sagen, was man will.* One may say what one will.

P.

Phiole, die 7. the phial.
Viole, die 7. the violet.

R.

Rächt, er (from *rächen*) he revenges.
Recht, right.
Rain, der 1. the ridge.
Rein, pure. *Der Rhein*, 1. the Rhine.
Rede, die 7. discourse.
Rhede, die 7. the road.
Reis, das 2. the scion.
Reiß, der 1. the rice.

S.

Säen, to sow.
* *Sehen*, to see.
Saite, die 7. the string.
Seite, die 7. the side.
Schlächter, der 4. the butcher.
Schlechter (from *schlecht*), worse.
Sein, his.
Seyn, to be.
Stadt, die 8. the town.
Statt, instead.
Städte, die, the towns.
Stätte, die 7. the place.
Stählen, to steel.
* *Stehlen*, to steal.
Stil, der 1. the style.
Stiel, der 1. the pedicle.
Stränge, die (plural of *der Strang*, 1.) the traces.
Strenge (streng), severe.

T.

Tau, das 1. the cable.
Thau, der 1. the dew.

Taucht, *er* (from *tauchen*) he dips.
Thōn, *der* 1. the clay.

Taugt, *er* (from *taugen*) he is fit, he is proper.
Tōn, *der* 1. the tune.

W.

Waare, *die* 7. the ware.
Waaren, *die*, the wares.
Wāhr, true.
Währt, *er*, he lasts.
Waid, *der* 1. the woad.
Waise, *die* 7. the orphan.

Wahre (from *wahr*), true.
Waren, *wir*, we were.
Wār, *er*, he was.
Wérth, *der* 1. the worth.
Weit, wide.
Weise, *die* 7. the manner, the way. *Der Weise*, 6. the wise man.

Wälle, *die* (plural of *der Wall*, 1.) the ramparts.
Wände, *die* (from *die Wand*, 8.), the walls.
Walte, *ich* (from *walten*) I rule.
Weiſs, white.

Welle, *die* 7. the billow.
Wende, *ich* (from **wenden*) I turn.
Wallte, *ich* (instead of *ich wallete*, from *wallen*) I bubbled.
Weiſs, *ich* (from **wissen*) I know.

Wider, against.
Wieder, again.

Second general rule.

As the just pronunciation of words does not always teach, how they are to be written, write them according to their next and true derivation.

The radical letters of a word must, consequently, also then be retained, when it undergoes an alteration, or when two syllables are contracted into one. Examples: *ich befahl*, I commanded, from *befehlen*. **Diess*, this, contracted from *dieses*. *Beredt*, eloquent, contracted from *beredet*. *Gescheidt*, discreet, prudent, contracted from the regular past participle ***gescheidet*, which is not used. *Ich sägte*, I said, contracted from *sagete*. *Ich sandte*, I sent, contracted from *sendete*.

When one of the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, occurs in a substantive, they are frequently commuted into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, when this word is put in the plural number. This is also done in derivative words. Examples:

*) This word is also written *dies*. In this case the last syllable *es* is retrenched.

**) This is the true derivation of the word *gescheidt*. According to this derivation from *scheiden*, to discern it is formed like the Latin *discretus*.

der Mann, *die Männer*. *Das Aas*, *die Äser*. *Das Haus*, *die Häuser*. *Der Schooſs*, *die Schöſse*. *Der Zūg*, *die Züge*. *Männlich*, manly. *Häuslich*, domestic.

The following examples will put the second general rule of German orthography into its proper light.

Ältêrn, *die*, the parents; from *alt*, old.

Anwalt, *der* 1. the attorney; from the unusual verb *anwalten*. *Anwalt* is contracted from *Anwalter*.

Äpfel, *die*, plural of *der Apfel*, 4. the apple.

Ärmel, *der* 4. the sleeve; from *der Arm*, 1. the arm.

Älmosen, *das* 4. a charitable gift; from *eleèmosyna*.

Aūfwärter, *der* 4. the waiter; from *aūfwarten*, to wait on.

Bäcker, *der* 4. the baker; from **backen*, to bake.

Beharrlich, perseverant; from *beharren*, to persevere.

Beräuchern, to besmoke; from *der Rauch*, 1. smoke.

Beredtsamkeit, *die* 7. eloquence; from *beredt*, eloquent.

Bereichern, to enrich; from *reich*, rich.

Beschämen, to make ashamed; from *die Schām*, 7. shame.

Beschränken, to bound, to limit; from *die Schranke*, a bound, limit.

Betttuch, *das* 2. the sheet; from *Bett* and *Tūch*.

Dämpfen, to damp; from *dampfen*, to fume.

Draht, *der* 1. the wire; from *drehen*, to turn.

Endzweck, *der* 1. the scope; from *das Ende*, 3. the end.

Erklären, to explain; from *klār*, clear.

Erträglich, supportable; from **ertragen*, to support.

Fasslich, comprehensible; from *fassen*, to comprehend.

Fröhlich, merry; from *froh*, glad.

Gärtchen, *ein* 4. a little garden; from *der Garten*, 4. the garden.

Gefängniss, *das* 1. the prison; from **fangen*, to catch.

Gemälde, das 1. the picture; from *malen* to paint.
Göttlich, divine; from *Gott*, 2. God.
Gränze, die 7. the limit; from *Granitz.*
Grö̈ßer, greater; from *große*, great.
Herrschen, to rule; from *der Herr*, 6. the master.
Hoffnung, die 7. hope; from *hoffen*, to hope.
Köln, (Cöln), Colen; from *Colonia Agrippina.*
Kräfte, die, plural of *die Kraft*, 8. the power.
Kürfürst, der 6. the elector; from *küren*, to elect.
Länge, die 7. the length; from *lang*, long.
Lieblich, lovely; from *die Liebe*, 7. love.
Mächtig, powerful; from *die Macht*, 8. the power.
Mittwoche, die 7. wednesday; from *Mitte* and *Woche.*
Nähterin, die 7. the seamstress; from *nähen*, to sew.
Nämlich, namely; from *der Name*, 5. the name.
Palást, der 1. the palace; from *palatium.*
Räuber, der 4. the robber; from *rauben*, to rob.
Rohheit, die 7. rawness; from *roh*, raw.
Römisch, Roman; from *Röm*, Rome.
Rühmen, to praise; from *der Ruhm*, 1. glory.
Schifffahrt, die 7. navigation; from *Schiff* and *Fahrt.*
Schlämmen, to clear of mud; from *der Schlamm*, 1. the mud.
Schmied, der 1. the smith; from *schmieden*, to forge. *Schmied* is contracted from *Schmieder.*
Stängel, der 4. the stalk; from *die Stange*, 7. the pole.
Vörmünder, die, plural of *der Vörmund*, 2. the guardian.
Vornéhmlich, principally, chiefly; from *vör* and *néhmen.* This adverb answers to the Latin *praecipue* (from *prae* and *capio*).
Vortréfflich, excellent; from *vor* and *treffen*
Wöhlfahrt, die, welfare, weal; from *wohl* and *Fahrt.*
Zierrath, der 3. the ornament; from *Zier* and *Räth.* In the same manner the word *Hausrath* is formed.

Third general rule.

As in writing the words of the German tongue regard must be had to their derivation, have, consequently, also regard in words of foreign origin to their etymology; and write, of course, those foreign words, which are used in German, with the letters they have in the language, from which they are taken.

According to this rule, the following and many similar words must be written. *Abenteuer*, (from *aventura*), and not *Abentheuer*. *Accusativ* (from *accusativus*), and not *Akkusativ*. *Charakter* (from χαρακτήρ), and not *Karakter*. *Conjugation* (from *conjugatio*), and not *Konjugazion*. *Conjunction* (from *conjunctio*), and not *Konjunkzion*. *Declination* (from *declinatio*), and not *Deklinazion*. *Declinīren* (from *declinare*), and not *deklíniren*. *Marcus*, and not *Markus*. *Öl* (from *oleum*), and not *Öhl*. *Pāpst* (from *papa*), and not *Pabst*. *Parteī* (from *parti*), and not *Parthei*. *Parteiisch*, and not *partheiisch*. *Philosophīe*, and not *Filosofie*. *Physīk*, and not *Fisik*. *Scepter* (from *sceptrum*), and not *Zepter*. *Sylbe* (from συλλαβή), and not *Silbe*. *Stil* (from *stilus*), and not *Styl*. *Tinte* (from *tinta*), and not *Dinte*. *Witwe* (one word with *vidua*), and not *Wittwe*. However, some words are almost generally written without respect to their origin. *Phantasīe* and *Phasān*, for instance, are written by most Germans *Fantasie* and *Fasan*, though these words come from φαντασία and φασιανός.

Fourth general rule.

Write all foreign words, which are sometimes used in German, with German characters.

Fifth general rule.

As custom has introduced many exceptions to the second and third general rule of German orthography, and, consequently, many words are not written according to their derivation, write most of these words as they are written by the best German writers.

In many words, according to their derivation, an *ä* ought to be employed. Examples: *einhellig*, from *hallen*. *Esel*, from *asellus*. *Henne*, from *Hahn*. *Netzen*, from *nass*. *Verwègen*, from *wagen*.

Also the following and several other words are not written according to their derivation. *Achte*, instead of *achtte*. *Blume*, *Blüthe*, instead of *Bluhme*, *Blühte*; from *blühen*. *Funfzehn*, instead of *fünfzehn*. *Funfzig*, instead of *fünfzig*. *Hoheit*, instead of *Hohheit*. *Kapitel*, instead of *Capitel*. *Krone*, instead of *Crone*. *Manche*, instead of *mange*, contracted from *mannige*. *Männichfaltig*, instead of *mannigfaltig*. *Mittag*, instead of *Mitttag*. *Ich mochte*, *ich möchte*, instead of *ich mogte*, *ich mögte*; from *mögen*. *Trophäe*, instead of *Tropäe*. *Verdrießlich*, instead of *verdrüsslich*, from *Verdruss*.

Sixth general rule.

Choose, when words are differently written, that way of writing, which is more correct, or seems to be more correct.

This rule is of importance, because by the different way of writing these words their pronunciation is, for the most part, altered. Such words are, for instance, the following:

Abgefäumt, *abgefeimt*, arrant. Only the first way of writing this word is correct, as it derives from *abfäumen*, to scum off.

Belege (from *der Belēg*), *Beläge* (from *der Beldg*), receipts, vouchers. The first way of writing this word is more correct than the second.

Brōd, *Brōdt*, *Brōt*, bread. The German word *Brot*, and the Greek word βρωτός seem to be one and the same word. Consequently, neither *Brod* nor *Brodt* must be written.

Fest, *vest*, fast. Only the first way of writing this word is now in use.

Fürséhung, *Vōrséhung*, Providence. The latter way of writing this word is more usual than the former.

Giltig, *gültig*, valid. *Hilfe*, *Hülfe*, help. The

first way of writing these words is preferable, because they derive from *gelten* and *helfen*, the *e* of the radical words being usually changed in the derivative ones into *i*.

Italiänisch, *italienisch*, Italian. The first way of writing this word is preferable, because it is not formed from *Italien*, but from *Italiano*.

Keichen, *keuchen*, to pant. The first way of writing this word seems to have been produced by the easier pronunciation. *Keuchen* must, consequently, be written and pronounced. The same may be observed of *flistern* and *flüstern*, to whisper.

Läugnen, *leugnen*, to deny. Only the first way of writing this word is correct, as it derives from the old word *laugan*.

Pachter, *Pächter*, farmer. Only *Pächter* is the just form, because in this and similar derivative words the vowel *a* is commuted into *ä*.

Scheel, *schêl*, squinting. Only the last manner of writing this word is correct, because it is conform to its pronunciation.

Schlieſslich, *schlüsslich*, in conclusion. This word, though it is commonly written and pronounced in the first manner, ought to be written and pronounced *schlüsslich*, as it derives from *Schluss*, conclusion.

Sprichwort, *Sprüchwort*, proverb. *Sprichwort* comes from *sprechen* and *Wort*, and signifies, consequently, *ein Wort*, *welches man spricht*, a word, which is spoken, that is, a saying, a proverb, an adage. *Sprüchwort* must not be written and pronounced; for if *Sprüchwort* were composed of *Spruch* and *Wort*, then *Spruchwort* should be said.

Spritzen, *sprützen*, to syringe. The first manner of writing this word is better, because *spritzen* seems to come from *sprengen*, to sprinkle.

Verläumden, *verleumden*, to defame, to backbite. Only the last way of writing this word is correct, as it derives from the old word *Leūmund*, fame, reputation. *Leumund (Liumat)* derives from the old *leumen*, to talk.

Vorsorge, *Fürsorge*, care. As it is said: *für Einen sorgen*, to take care of one, and not: *vor Einen sorgen*, only the last form of this word is admissible.

Observation.

The verbs of foreign origin, which end in *iren*, are not to be written *ieren*. Examples: *musicīren*, to make music. *Studiren*, to study. *Syllabiren*, to name the syllables of a word. An exception is *regieren*, to govern. Those verbs, on the contrary, which are of German origin, must be written *ieren*. Examples: *verlieren*, to lose. *Zieren*, to adorn. Excepted is *buchstabiren*, to spell.

Seventh general rule.

Lengthen the word, in order to know what letters must be used at the end of it.

The masculine and neuter substantives are made longer by the genitive singular, and the feminine ones by the plural number. Thus the masculine substantive *der Schall*, 1. the sound, is written at the end with a double *l*, because this double *l* is distinctly heard in the genitive *des Schalles*. The feminine substantive *die Schuld*, 7. the debt, is written at the end with *d*, because this *d* is distinctly heard in the plural number *die Schulden*. The feminine substantives ending in *in* are written at the end only with one *n*. This *n* is then changed in the plural number into a double *n*. For instance: *die Königin*, the queen; *die Königinnen*, the queens. If the feminine substantive be not in use in the plural number, it must be changed into an attributive adjective. For example: *die Geduld — geduldig*.

In order to know what letters must be used at the end of an attributive adjective, one of the terminations, by which it is declined, is given to it. Examples: *grob — ein grober Mensch. Plump — ein plumpes Weib. Voll — ein volles Glas. Lang — ein langer Tisch. Krank — eine kranke Frau. Teig — eine teige Birn. Reich — ein reicher Mann.*

When the final syllable *ig* is not preceded by an *l*, *ig* is always written. Examples: *fleiſsig*, diligent. *Gütig*, kind. *Würdig*, worthy. The final syllable *lich* is written with *ch;* but when *l* belongs to the radical syllable, *ig* is written. Examples: *göttlich*, divine. *Menschlich*, human. *Zärtlich*, tender, fond. But it is written: *adelig*, noble; from *Adel*, nobility. *Gefällig*, pleasing; from *gefallen*, to please. *Nächtheilig*, disadvantageous; from *Nachtheil*, disadvantage. *Zufällig*, accidental; from *Zufall*, accident. The right way of writing the syllables *ig* and *lich* may also easily be found by adding an *e* to them, where then an ear, that is somewhat exercised, easily distinguishes the *g* and *ch* from each other. For instance: *gütige Menschen*, kind men. *Göttliche Freuden*, divine joys.

The termination *icht* is always written with *ch*. Examples: *salzicht*, saltish. *Thöricht*, foolish.

The final syllable of the diminutives is written *chen*, and not *gen*. For instance: *ein Kätzchen*, a kitten.

When the two final letters *gt* have been formed by the contraction of the final syllable *get*, *cht* must never be written. For instance: *er wägt*, he weighs; for *er wäget*. In the contrary case, *cht* must always be written. For instance: *die Pflicht*, the duty. *Feucht*, moist.

In order to know what letters must be used at the end of the first and third person singular of the preterimperfect tense of the indicative mood of many irregular verbs, the verbs must be put in the second person singular of it. Examples: *ich biss, er biss — du bissest;* from *beiſsen*, to bite. *Ich fand, er fand — du fandest;* from *finden*, to find. *Ich gab, er gab — du gabest;* from *gében*, to give.

II.

Particular rules of German orthography.

First particular rule.

Of the use of the capital letters.

Capital letters are employed at the beginning of

every sentence, and after an interrogation, and an exclamation, when they perfectly finish a phrase or sentence. Also at the beginning of each line of a poem a capital letter is used.

Besides, a capital letter is employed, when a substantive, or any other word, which is used as substantive, is written. Examples: *der Zucker*, 4. the sugar. *Die Stächelbeere*, 7. the gooseberry. *Die Armen sollen Weniger* (instead of *Wenigeres*) *geben als die Reichen.* The poor shall give less than the rich. *Wir müssen das Nützliche dem bloſs Angenéhmen vörziehen.* We must prefer that which is useful to that which is merely agreeable. *Er theilte das Ganze in drei Theile.* He divided the whole into three parts. *Er ist eines von dén sterblichen Wésen, dêren einzige Glückseligkeit im Essen und Trinken besteht.* He is one of those mortal beings, the only happiness of which consists in eating and drinking.

Also the pronouns, when they are employed in addressing somebody, begin in German with a capital letter. This is also the case with the possessive adjectives, when they refer to the person, that is addressed. Examples: *Bestrêben Sie sich, ihm zu gefallen.* Study to please him. *Ich bin Ihnen sehr verbunden, und Ihrer gütigen Einladung zufolge komme ich, mit Ihnen zu frühstücken.* I am much obliged to you, and according to your kind invitation I come to breakfast with you. *Sich* and *selbst* do not commence with a capital letter.

Also the numeral noun *ein*, when a particular stress is laid upon it, begins with a capital letter, in order to be distinguished from the indefinite article. Example: *Es ist nur Ein Gott.* There is but one God.

Second particular rule.

Of the use of the small letters.

Only the substantives, and those words, which are employed as substantives, begin with a capital letter; all the other words commence with a small

one. Also those attributive adjectives, which are derived from proper names, or which begin with a substantive, commence with a small letter. Examples: *die deutsche Sprache*, the German language; *himmelblau*, skycoloured; *wonnevoll*, delightful; *würdevoll*, full of dignity. The same must be observed of those adverbial expressions, in which no substantive occurs. Examples: *am bessten*, best; *auf das gütigste*, in the most kind manner; *in kurzem*, in a short time; *im voraus*, beforehand; *von neuem*, anew. Here many Germans employ a capital letter; but this should not be done, as these and similar expressions are used adverbially.

Third particular rule.

Of the use of the simple vowels.

The use of the simple vowels is determined by the derivation of words. Examples: *das Gebirge*, 1. the mountains; from *Berg*, 1. *Der Geisel*, 4. hostage; from the old *Gisel*, warranter.

In all the words, which are derived from the Greek, and have in this language an *y*, this *y* must be retained. Besides these words, the *y* is now used only in the auxiliary verb *seyn*, in order to be distinguished from the possessive adjective *sein*.

Fourth particular rule.

Of the use of the double vowels.

The double vowels *aa*, *ee*, *ie*, *oo*, are employed in order to lengthen the sound of a syllable. They are, of course, pronounced like long *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*. Examples: *das Haar*, 1. the hair. *Das Meer*, 1. the sea. *Der Theer*, 1. the tar. *Das Glied*, 2. the limb. *Das Knie*, 1. the knee. *Das Boot*, 1. the boat. *Das Loos*, 1. the lot. *Das Moos*, 1. the moss. However, many syllables, in which the vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, are not doubled, are long. Examples: *er sprach*, he spoke. *Schwer*, difficult. *Wir*, we. *Schon*, already. Several words, in which the double vowel *aa* was

formerly employed, are now written with a single *a*. Examples: *die Qual*, 7. the torment. *Die Scham*, 7. shame. *Das Schaf*, 1. the sheep. The double vowel of the radical word is also retained in the words derived from it. Examples: *haarig*, hairy. *Theerig*, soiled with tar. *Stárkgliederig*, strong-limbed. *Loosen*, to draw lots. *Moosig*, mossy. However, there are some exceptions. For instance: *der Morást*, 1. (from *das Moor*, 1. the moor) the morass.

Fifth particular rule.

Of the use of the simple consonants.

C. This consonant is used neither in words, which are not derived from the Latin or French language, nor in those which have almost lost their Roman shape. Examples: *Karl*; *Sklave*; *Kanone*; *Kanzel*; *Kapitel*; *Keller*; *Klōster*; *Körper*; *Kranz*; *Kreuz*; *Krone*. But the following and many other words must be written with *c*. *Cato*; *Casus*; *Capelle*; *Classe*; *Contrácт*; *Creatūr*; *Caserne*; *Clavīer*; *Commode*; *Communicánt*; *Communiōn*; *corréct*; *Credīt*; *Ceder*; *Censūr*; *Centner*; *Cirkel*; *Cisterne*; *Citadelle*; *Cither*; *Citrone*; *exerciren*. Many Germans, however, employ the *z* instead of the *c* in several words of foreign origin, when the *c* is followed by an *e* or an *i*. They write consequently: *Zeder*; *Zentner*; *Zirkel*; *Zither*; *Zitrone*.

H. This consonant lengthens the sound of syllables. However, there are many long syllables, in which the letter *h* is not subjoined to the vowels *a*, *e*, *o*, *u*. Examples: *einmal*; *weder*; *getrost*; *urált*. *H* is never put after *ie*, because the length of the *i* is sufficiently denoted by the *e*, if the derivation of the word does not require the addition of the *h*. In this case, an *h* is subjoined to the *ie*. For instance: *du befiehlst*; from *beféhlen*.

K. This consonant must be used in all those words, which are derived from the Greek. Examples: *Dialékt*; *Dialéktik*; *Katechēt*; *katechisīren*; *Katóptrik*; *Klystīer*; *Kōnik*. But when a word derived from

the Greek has a Latin termination, it must be written with *c*. Examples: *Catechismus; Diaconus; Syndicus.* A simple *k* is always employed after a consonant, and a long vowel. Examples: *Schrank; Ekel; Haken; ich erschrāk.*

S. When German characters are employed in writing and printing, the long *s* (in printing ſ) is always used at the beginning of a syllable. For example: *sehen, furchtsam, diese.* It is also then used, when an *e* is omitted. For instance: *er ras't* (instead of *er rasset:*), he rages. *Er reis't* (instead of *er reiset:*), he travels. *Sie kos'ten* (instead of *sie kosten:*), they spoke familiarly with one another. These words are pronounced long. But *kosten*, to cost, or to taste, is pronounced short.

The short or round *s* (s) is employed at the end of a syllable, and, when the word is lengthened, it is commuted into a long *s*, (ſ). Examples: *Dasselbe* (not *dasselbe:*). *Der Greis — des Greises.* The short *s* is also used, when the word, in which it occurs, is derived from a word, that is written

with a long *ſ*. Examples: *böſlich*; from *böſe*. *Weiblich*; from *weiſe*.

When *das* is the article, or stands for *dieses* or *welches*, it is written with a simple *s*, in order to be distinguished from the conjunction *dass*, which is written with a double *s*. Examples: *Das ist gār nicht zu machen.* That is not at all to be done. Here *das* stands for *dieses*. *Das Weib, das er heīrathete, ist sehr schōn gewēsen.* The woman he married has been very beautiful. Here *das* stands for *welches*. *Ich bin lange überzeūgt gewesen, dass er meiner Achtung únwürdig ist.* I have long been convinced, that he is unworthy of my regard.

T. This consonant must be retained in the words, which are taken from the Latin language. It must, consequently, be written *Motiōn; Natiōn;* &c. When a Latin word or a Latin proper name is used in an abridged form in German, the two letters *ti* are changed into *z*. Examples: *Excellénz*, from *excellentia*. *Justīz*, from *justitia*. *Horāz*, from *Horatius*. *Lucrēz*, from *Lucretius*. *Propérz*, from *Propertius*.

Z. A simple *z* is always used after a consonant, and a long vowel. Examples: *Herz; Holz; Tanz; Justīz; Milīz; Reiz; Weizen.*

Sixth particular rule.

Of the use of the double consonants.

The double consonants are *ck, ff, ll, mm, nn, rr, ss, ſs, tt, tz.* Examples: *glücklich*, lucky. *Schlaff*, slack. *Der Fall*, 1. the fall. *Das Lamm*, 2. the lamb. *Das Kinn*, 1. the chin. *Der Narr*, 6. the fool. *Der Hass*, 1. hate. *Der Stoſs*, 1. the push. *Matt*, faint. *Der Sitz*, 1. the seat.

Ck stands for a double *k*. For this reason it cannot be employed at the beginning, but only after a short vowel in the middle and at the end of a word. Examples: *die Locke*, 7. the lock. *Die Mücke*,

7. the gnat. *Der Schmuck*, 1. the ornament. *Der Stock*, 1. the cane.

Instead of *ck*, in the middle and at the end of a word, some German writers use a double *k*. For instance: *der Rükken*, 4. the back. *Das Stükk*, 1. the piece. The general practice, however, is for *ck*. Only in compound words a double *k* is employed. For example: *die Denkkraft*, 8. the faculty of thinking, instead of *die Kraft zu denken.*

When the two consonants *ss* are preceded by a short vowel, and stand in the middle of a word, they are printed and written with German characters thus: ſſ, . For instance: haſſen, , to hate. At the end of a word or syllable instead of ſſ and the following characters are commonly used in printing and writing: ß, . But instead of and ß, when they have a hard sound, ſſ and ought to be always used in printing and writing. For instance: ich muß, , I must. These characters are also employed, when the vowel *e* is omitted before the *t* in verbs having an *ss*. Examples: er faßt, , he apprehends; instead of *er fasset.* Er ißt, , he eats; instead of *er isset.* Er läßt, , he lets; instead of *er lässet.* Er mißt, , he measures; instead of *er misset.* Ihr müßt, , you must; instead of *ihr müsset.*

When the German character ß, ſs (*ſs*), after a long vowel or a diphthong, occurs in the middle or at the end of a word or syllable, it is pronounced in a soft manner. Examples: ſie aßen, ſie aßen, they eat. Außer, außer, besides. Weißen, weißen, to whiten. Genießen, genießen, to enjoy, or to eat. Ein Spaß, ein Spaß, a sport. Der Fuß, der Fuß, the foot. Süß, ſüß, sweet. All these words must be printed and written with ß, ſs (*ſs*), which is not to be confounded with ſſ, ſſ (*ss*), that has always a hard or strong sound.

Tz stands for *zz*, and is used after a short vowel. Examples: *schätzen*, to esteem. *Setzen*, to set. *Sitzen*, to sit. *Trotzen*, to brave. *Der Nutzen*, 4. utility. Those who write *zz* instead of *tz*, have not the general practice for them.

It is yet to be observed, that after a short vowel a double consonant is used, and that a word, having at the end a double consonant, retains it also in the words derived from it, or composed of it. Examples: *wenn*, if. *Hoffen*, to hope; *die Hoffnung*, 7. hope. **Spinnen*, to spin; *ein Hirngespinnst*, 1. a phantom. *Die Waffen*, arms; *bewaffnen*, to arm. *Stumm*, dumb; *die Stummheit*, dumbness. *Das Schiff*, 1. the ship; *die Schifffahrt*, 7. navigation. Those verbs, which have in the infinitive a double consonant, retain it, consequently, in each tense. Examples: **kennen*, to know; *ich kannte*, I knew. **Können*, to be able; *ich konnte*, I could.

Of the division of words.

A word is divided, when it cannot be finished at the end of a line for want of space. This division (*Theilung* or *Brechung*) takes place only in those words, which have at least two syllables.

Words are divided at the end of a line conformably to their composition, according to which they are, for the most part, pronounced. Examples: *Erb-lasser; er-blassen; Mikro-skop; Ob-acht; beob-achten; em-pfinden; ein-ander.* However, the pronunciation does not always agree with the composition of words. Also in this case the word is divided according to its composition. Examples: *dar-aus; dar-über; dar-um; her-über; hier-in; voll-enden.* Several foreign words are, however, divided only according to their pronunciation, without having a regard to their composition. Examples: *E-vangelium; Phi-lippus; Pos-tille; Pro-selyt; Pro-sodie; Sy-nonym; Sy-node; a-doptiren.*

The English divide their words conformably to their etymology. For instance: *declaim-er; giv-ing; liv-ed; lov-ed.* But this is not done in German, in which the division of words is determined by the pronunciation. When there is in a German word a consonant between two vowels, it is generally assigned, as the beginning letter, to the second syllable. Examples: *Va-ter; heili-ge Re-den; lü-gen.* When two consonants stand between two vowels, the first of them belongs to the first, and the second, to the second syllable. Example: *Schwer-ter.*

When three consonants stand between two vowels, the two first consonants belong to the first syllable, and the third consonant belongs to the second syllable. Examples: *Erb-se; Ern-te.* Some foreign words are, however, excepted to this rule. Such words are, for instance, *Am-bra; Am-brosia.* Also those wodrs, in which an *e* is fallen out between the two first consonants of the last syllable, are excepted. Examples: *Verwan-dlung*, instead of *Verwandelung. An-dre*, instead of *andere. Wan-*

dre, instead of *wandere*. Lastly, those words, which have between two vowels three consonants, the two last of which are *pf* or *st*, are excepted. Examples: *rüm-pfen*; *bür-sten*.

When an *e* is fallen out between two consonants, these consonants must be given to the second syllable. Examples: *nie-drig*, instead of *niederig*; from *nieder*. *Ü-brig*, instead of *überig*; from *über*.

With regard to the double and compound consonants, the following rules are to be observed:

1. When they stand between two vowels, and belong to two syllables, they must be divided at the end of a line. Examples: *bac-ken*, not *ba-cken*. *Fas-sen*, not *fa-ssen*. *Blit-zen*, not *bli-tzen*. *Knöpfe*, not *Knö-pfe*. *Töd-ten*, not *tö-dten*.

2. When they are not divided in pronouncing, they are also not divided in writing. Examples: *em-pfinden*; *köst-lich*; *schätz-bar*.

3. When the compound consonants *ch*, *sch*, *th*, stand between two vowels, they are not divided but belong to the following syllable. Examples: *Kü-che*; *Ta-sche*; *ra-then*.

Rules for writing compound words.

Compound words are, for the most part, written in one word, without uniting them by the sign of hyphen. Examples: *Gesetzgeber*; *Krīegsrath*; *Oberconsistoriālrath*; *Regimentsarzt*; *Realschūlbuchhandlung*; *Kleināsien*; *Neūpreußen*; *Silberbergwerk*; *Knallluft*; *hellroth*. It is seen from these examples that, when compound substantives are written without the sign of hyphen, and, consequently, in one word, only the first substantive begins with a capital letter. However, some Germans give also then, when they write a compound word having three and more parts without the sign of hyphen, and, consequently, in one word, to each substantive, which is a constituent part of it, a capital letter. For instance: *Kammer Commissiōns Rath*; *Haupt Instituten- und Communal Casse*.

Only when an ambiguity is to be feared, the sign of hyphen may be employed, though it is also here unnecessary, as the context removes the ambiguity. For instance: *Saugäste*, which may be read *Sau-Gäste* and *Saug-Äste*.

Several words must be written with the sign of hyphen. For instance: *Hessen-Darmstadt*; *Sachsen-Gotha*. In this case every substantive begins with a capital letter.

Observations.

1. The words *Herz zerreïssend*, *Geist erhebend*, &c. are usually written *herzzerreissend*, *geisterhebend*. Thus written, these words are to be regarded as adjectives, and begin therefore with a small letter.

2. Some Germans unite compound substantives, when either one or both constituent parts of them are foreign words, by the sign of hyphen. Examples: *Reichs-collegium*, council of the empire. *Criminal-gericht*, criminal court of justice. *Justiz-Rath*, counsellor of justice. *Intelligenz-Comptoir*, intelligence-office. *Justiz-Collegium*, court of justice.

3. Also when a compound word is very long, some Germans employ the sign of hyphen. Examples: *Generäl-Feldzeügmeister*, master general of the ordnance. *Reichs-Generäl-Feldmarschall*, field-marshal general of the empire.

CHAPTER XIV.

Of the signs of punctuation.

Punctuation (die Zeichensetzung) is that part of grammar, which treats of the use of the signs, which are put in writing and printing between one or more words, whole sentences, and a complete series of thoughts, in order to distinguish those words from each other, that must be separated in sense, and in order to denote the places, in which a greater or

smaller pause must be made, and an elevation or a depression of voice takes place.

In order to put rightly the signs of punctuation, we must justly think, and combine our ideas together according to the laws of human understanding. Punctuation facilitates, therefore, in a high degree the right taking up of the sense of written composition, and is, of course, most important for just and beautiful reading.

The signs of punctuation (*die Scheīdezeichen*), that are used in writing and printing, are the following:

I.

The comma (das Komma or *der Beīstrich* or simply *der Strich).*

The *comma* (,) marks the smallest pause, and is placed:

1. After two or more substantives, adjectives or adverbs, when they are not united by *und* or *oder*. Examples: *Das Jahr hat vier Theile, welche Frühling, Sommer, Herbst, Winter, genannt werden.* The year has four parts, which are called spring, summer, autumn, winter. *Dieser König war weise, tugendhaft, fromm, gerecht, gütig.* This king was wise, virtuous, pious, just, kind. *Mein Freund betrūg sich klūg, bescheiden, tugendhaft.* My friend behaved himself prudently, modestly, virtuously.

2. Before *und* and *oder*, when they connect two different ideas, and have their peculiar verb. Examples: *Ein wāhrhaft aūfgeklärtes Volk verletzt nie das Völkerrecht, und entheiliget nicht den Namen Gottes durch feierliche Meīneide.* A truly enlightened people never violates the law of nations, and profanes not the name of God by solemn perjuries. *Entweder sind wir für eine andere Welt geboren, oder unsere Vernunft täuscht uns.* We are either born for another world, or our reason deceives us.

Observation. When *und* and *oder* unite two subjects or predicates, they admit of no comma. Ex-

amples: *Die Phantasīe und die Úrtheilskraft stimmen nicht immer überein.* The imagination and the judgment do not always agree. *Er ist gut und weise.* He is good and wise. *Der Weise beneidet nicht diejenigen, welche die Gebūrt oder das Glück über ihn gestellt hat.* The wise man does not envy those whom birth or fortune has placed above him.

3. Before the infinitive, when it is accompanied with other words governed by it. Examples: *Ich freue mich, Sie zu sehen.* I rejoice to see you. *Der Haūptzweck der Lust- und Trauerspiele sollte seyn, die Menschen tugendhaft zu machen,* or *die Menschen tugendhaft zu machen, sollte der Hauptzweck der Lust- und Trauerspiele seyn.* To render men virtuous, ought to be the chief design of comedies and tragedies. *Es ist sehr shwēr, die Vōrurtheile der gemeinen Leute wégzuräumen.* It is very hard to remove the prejudices of the common people. *Er fürchtet, seinen Vater zu beleidigen.* He fears to offend his father. *Ich glaube, diesen Satz bewiesen zu haben.* I think I have demonstrated this position. Also then a comma stands before the infinitive, when it is accompanied with *ohne.* For instance: *Er grūſste mich, ohne zu sprechen.* He saluted me without speaking.

Observation. When the infinitive stands alone with *zu,* the use of the comma does not take place. Examples: *das Vergnügen zu tanzen,* the pleasure of dancing. *Der Wunsch gelōbt zu werden,* the wish of being praised. *Hören Sie auf zu reden.* Cease to talk. *Ich verlange zu wissen,* I desire to know. *Ich wünsche zu schlafen,* I wish to sleep. *Er wāgt zu reiten.* He ventures to ride.

4. Before *welcher* and *dér.* Examples: *Er hat einen Sohn, welcher gern lieset.* He has a son, who likes to read. *Gott ist es, der uns glücklich macht. Er ist es, dessen helfende Hand uns von der Gefahr befreiet.* It is God, who makes us happy. It is he, whose helping hand delivers us from danger.

5. Before the conjunctions *als, da, weil, indém, wenn, nachdém, dass, sondern auch,* &c. Examples: *Die Sonne war schōn aūfgegangen, als* or *da ich er-*

wachte. The sun had already risen, when I awoke. *Er verdient Achtung, weil er ein gelehrter und weiser Mann ist.* He deserves regard, because he is a wise and learned man. *Er sāgte zu ihnen, indem er sie beide an der Hand anfasste,* he said to them, seizing them both by the hand. *Der Handel würde blühen, wenn der Fluss schiffbar wäre.* Trade would flourish, if the river were navigable. *Ich zitterte, nachdem ich seinen Brief gelēsen hatte.* I trembled, after I had read his letter. *Sie wissen, dass ich immer die Wahrheit spreche.* You know I always speak the truth. *Ich habe ihn nicht nūr gesēhen, sondern er hat auch mehrere Male mit mir gesprochen.* I have not only seen him, but he has also spoken several times to me. In the following and similar instances the comma does not take place: *sowohl mein Bruder als ich,* or *mein Bruder sowohl als ich,* my brother as well as I. *Er ist ärmer als meine Ältern.* He is poorer than my parents.

6. Before and after an added or inserted member of a sentence and in those sentences, where several words are added by opposition. Examples: *Die französische Stāātsumwälzung ist ein Ereigniss, an welches man sich stēts erinnern wird, und welches Europas Völker immer noch empfinden.* The French revolution is an event, which will ever be remembered, and is still felt by the nations of Europe. *Ich bin nie weniger allēin, sagte ein weiser Römer, als wenn Niemand bei mir ist.* I am never less alone, said a wise Roman, than when there is nobody with me. *Heinrich der Vierte, König von Frankreich, wār der ērste unter den Königen aus dem Hause Bourbon.* Henry the fourth, king of France, was the first of the kings of the house of Bourbon.

7. Before and after the vocative case. Example: *Dieses, mein Freund, ist wahr.* This, my friend, is true. But after the vocative case a note of exclamation should be placed.

II.

*The semicolon (das *Semicolon or der **Strichpunct).*

The *semicolon* (;) notes a greater pause than that of a comma, and is placed

1. Between the different members of a simple sentence, in order to separate them from each other. Example: *Er sprach drei oder vier Sprachen, spielte mehrere Instrumente, und war sehr wohl mit der Literatur bekannt; kurz, er besafs so viele Talente, dass Jedermann gleichsam gezwungen wurde, ihn zu bewundern und zu achten.* He spoke three or four languages, performed upon several instruments, and was very well versed in literature; in short, he was possessed of so many talents that every body was, as it were, forced to admire and esteem him.

2. After those members of a compound sentence, which precede the last member of its first principal part. Example: *Da die Menschen das Unglück, welches ihnen begegnet, immer für gröfser ansehen, als es wirklich ist; da uns alle unsere Leiden von Gott aus weisen und gütigen Absichten zugeschickt werden, und am Ende immer zu unserem Bessten gereichen; da also ein Gott lebt, der die Menschen, sein schönstes Werk auf Erden, mit väterlicher Huld und Weisheit liebt: so müssen wir uns dem Willen der Vorsehung ohne Murren unterwerfen, und unser Herz den sanften Tröstungen der Religion öffnen.* As men always consider the misfortunes, which befall them, greater than they really are; as all our sufferings are sent us from God for wise and good purposes, and at last always turn to our advantage; as, consequently, there lives a God, who loves mankind, his finest work on earth, with fatherly grace and wisdom: we must resign ourselves to the will of Providence.

* This note of distinction is called *semicolon* or *half a colon*, because the pause marked by it is half as great as that which is marked by the colon.

** The semicolon is so called in German, because it is formed of a little stroke, and a point standing above it.

without murmuring, and open our heart to the soft consolations of religion.

3. Before the words *aber*, *allein*, *denn*, *doch*, *dénnoch*, *hingégen*, *indessen*, &c. Example: *Ein dummer Mensch verspottete einen verständigen Mann wegen der Gröſse seiner Ohren. Ich will zúgében, ságte der letztere, dass sie zu groſs für einen Menschen sind; allein Sie wérden auch nicht in Ábrede seyn, dass die Ihrigen zu klein für einen Esel sind.* A silly man rallied a man of sense on the size of his ears. I will admit, said the latter, that they are too large for a man; but you will also agree, that yours are too little for an ass. In the following sentence a comma is placed before *aber*, because it is united with the preceding words by means of one verb. *Ich werde Ihnen eine sonderbare, aber wahre Begébenheit erzählen.* I will tell you a strange, but true event.

III.

The colon (das Kolon or *der Dóppelpunct).*

The *colon* (:), which marks a pause greater than that of a semicolon, is placed:

1. At the end of the first principal part of a compound sentence. Example: *Da die wahre Religion keine verzehrende Flamme, sondern ein mildes und wóhlthätiges Licht ist: so verfolgt sie nicht, sondern greift bloſs den Irrthum und das Laster an.* As true religion is not a consuming flame, but a gentle and beneficent light, it does not persecute, but only attacks error and vice.

2. When we announce the subject of any discourse or writing, or when we explain a notion, or when we name the parts, into which a whole is divided. Examples: *Beántwortung der Frage: Warum sind so wenige Menschen mit ihrem Loose zufrieden*?* Answer to the question: Why so few men are contented with their own lot? *Die Kunst*

* When I say: *Beantwortung der Frage, warum so wenige Menschen mit ihrem Loose zufrieden sind*, only a comma must be put after *Frage*.

zu lēsen kann auf folgende Ārt erklārt werden: Die Kunst zu lesen trāgt alle die Regeln im Zusammenhange vōr, welche uns die schriftliche Rede mit Richtigkeit, Kraft, Abwechselung und Leichtigkeit vōrtragen lehren. The art of reading may be defined in the following manner: The art of reading is that system of rules, which teaches us to pronounce written composition with justness, energy, variety, and ease. *Eine Woche besteht aus sieben Tagen, welche heifsen: Sōnntag, Mōntag, Dienstag, Mittwoche, Dōnnerstag, Freītag, Sōnnabend.* A week consists of seven days, which are called: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday.

3. When we quote our own words, or those of another. Examples: *Als ich ihn sah, sagte ich zu ihm: Verlieren Sie den Mūth nicht.* When I saw him, I said to him: Do not lose courage. *Philippus, König von Macedonien, schrieb den Lacedämoniern, dass er, wenn er einst nach Laconien käme, ihr Land verwūsten würde. Die Lacedämonier schrieben, als Ántwort auf diesen Brief, blofs dieses einzelne Wort: Wenn.* Philip, king of Macedonia, wrote to the Lacedemonians that, if he once entered into Laconia, he would ravage their country. The Lacedemonians, in answer to this letter, only wrote this single word: If.

IV.

The full stop (der Punct or der Schlüsspunct).

The *full stop* (.) is placed at the end of a sentence perfectly finished.

V.

The note of interrogation (das Frāgezeichen).

The *note of interrogation* (?) is put after a direct question. For instance: *Wie befindet sich Ihre Schwester?* How is your sister? But after an indirect question, that is only quoted by way of telling,

the note of interrogation must not be put. For example: *Als ich nāch Hause kām: frāgte er mich, wo ich gewēsen wäre.* When I came home, he asked me where I had been.

VI.

The note of exclamation (das Aūsrufungszeichen).

The *note of exclamation* (!) is put in phrases, which express an exclamation or admiration. Example: *Was sēhe ich! Ein schwarzes Siegel! Ach! ich bin der ünglücklichste Mensch! Mein Vater ist tōdt. Nichts in der Welt kann mir diesen Verlust ersetzen.* What do I see! A black seal! Alas! I am the most unhappy man! My father is dead. Nothing in the world can make me amends for this loss.

Observation. Some phrases, which are quite the same, have sometimes a note of interrogation, and sometimes a note of exclamation, according as the sense requires the one, or the other. For instance: *Wann wird unser Unglück endigen? O Gott! wann wird unser Unglück endigen!* When will our misfortunes have an end? O God! when will our misfortunes have an end!

VII.

The parenthesis (die Parenthēse or das Ēinschliefsungszeichen).

The *parenthesis* ( ) encloses in the body of a sentence a member inserted into it, which is neither necessary to the sense, nor at all affects the construction. It marks a moderate depression of the voice, with a pause greater than a comma. Example: *Ihr Bruder ist ein schlechter Mensch; allein (zu Ihrem Lobe muss es gesāgt werden) Sie sind ein ganz anderer Mensch.* Your brother is a bad man; but (in your praise it must be said) you are quite another man.

VIII.

The dash (der Gedankenstrich).

The *dash* (—) is used in order to turn the attention of the reader upon the words which follow.

Observation. When the speech is broken off, this mark is used: — — —, or .... For instance: *Ein sterbender Vater sāgte zu seinen Kindern: Nie liebte ein Vater seine Kinder zārtlicher — — — Hier hielt er inne, und liefs eine Thräne fallen.* A dying father said to his children: Never a father loved his children more tenderly — — — Here he paused, and dropped a tear.

Of the other marks, which are used in writing.

1. The *note of division (das Theilungszeichen).* It is employed, when a word is divided at the end of a line. The division of words is marked thus: (- -).

II. The *hyphen* or *note of conjunction (das Bindezeichen)*, having the same form with the preceding sign. It is used in order to unite two notions in one, and after a word, the termination of which is omitted, because it is the same of the following word. Examples: *Der Mensch ist ein körperlich-geistiges Wesen.* Man is a corporeal-spiritual being. *Die Schreib- und Redekunst*, the art of writing and speaking. *Der Ein- und Aūsgang*, the entrance and exit. *Auf- und zūschliefsen*, to open and shut.

III. The *apostrophe (das Aūslassungszeichen).* It indicates the omission of an *e* or *i*, and is marked thus: (’). Examples: *Gott ist’s, dém wir unser Lében verdanken.* It is God, to whom we owe our life. Instead of *Gott ist es. Der Tugendhafte ist ein glückseliger Mensch.* The virtuous man is a happy man. Instead of *ein glückseliger Mensch.*

Observation. When two letters are omitted, the apostrophe must not be used. For instance: *aufs beste*, in the best manner. Instead of *auf das beste.*

IV. The *diæresis (die Trénnungspuncte).* It notes the separation or disjunction of syllables, and is marked thus: (¨). For instance: *Phaëton.*

V. The *note of quotation (das Anführungszeichen* or *die Gänseaugen).* It is employed, when we quote the words of another, and is formed by inverted commas: („ “).

VI. The *asterisk* or the *mark of reference (das Sternchen* or *das Verweisungszeichen).* It is used in order to refer the reader to a remark, and is formed thus: (*).

VII. The *paragraph (der Paragraph* or *das Abschnittszeichen).* It marks the sections or the small and distinct parts of a writing or book, and is formed thus: (§).

Observation. These seven and some other similar marks are not signs of punctuation, as they serve other purposes.

CHAPTER XV.

Of German versification.

Versification (die Verskunst) teaches the rules, according to which verses are made. The substance of verse consists in the just measure of syllables. Two or more syllables justly measured form a *metrical foot*, and a certain number of metrical feet rhythmically combined produce a *verse.* Versification is, therefore, divided into *five* sections. The *first* section determines the *just measure of syllables;* the *second* treats of the *metrical feet;* the *third*, of the *most usual sorts of verses;* the *fourth*, of the *pauses;* and the *fifth*, of the *rhyme.*

Section I.

Of the measure of syllables.

Among the Greeks and Romans most syllables had a fixed quantity; and their manner of pronouncing rendered this so sensible to the ear, that a long syllable was counted precisely equal in time to two short ones. They rested, consequently, their versification chiefly upon the quantities, that is, the

length or shortness of their syllables. Their measure was not, of course, determined by the accent. In German, on the contrary, the measure of syllables is chiefly founded upon the accent, though it is also determined in many cases by the quantity. A syllable, therefore, that has the accent, is long, and all unaccented syllables are short. Thus the first syllable of the word *Altar* is long, when it is accented; but short, when the accent, according to the Latin pronunciation, is placed upon the second syllable. In the first case, the word *Altar* consists of two long syllables, and in the last, of a short syllable and a long one.

Of that syllable of a word, upon which the rhythmical accent is placed, the German term *Hebung*, that is, *elevation*, *rise*, is used; of the other syllables the term *Senkung*, that is, *fall*, is employed. The accented syllable, that is, that which is in the act of rising *(welche in der Hebung steht)*, is marked thus: (′). For instance: *freudetrunken*, drunken with joy. In this word the first and third syllable have the rhythmical accent, because they are in the act of rising. The second and fourth are in the act of falling *(stehen in der Senkung)*.

With respect to time, the pronunciation of a long syllable requires *two* particles of time, and that of a short syllable *one* particle of time. Consequently, the time, which the pronunciation of a long syllable demands, is equal to the time, which that of two short syllables requires. The voice spends, therefore, a longer time in pronouncing a long syllable, than in pronouncing a short one, over which it swiftly glides away. This is called the *measure of time* or the *quantity* of syllables *(das Zeitmaß der Sylben)*. The short syllable in verse is marked thus: (⏑). To express a long syllable in it, a horizontal line (–) is used.

The syllable, which is pronounced with a rising voice, is usually long, and that which is pronounced with a falling voice, short. However, this is not always the case; for also a short syllable may

be used long, when it stands next to another, which is still shorter.

A syllable has either a *sharp* sound, or a *soft* one. In the former case, it is called in German *eine geschärfte Sylbe;* in the latter, *eine gedehnte Sylbe.* But the sharp sound does not shorten those words, which are long of themselves. Thus *Herr* and *Stadt* are long, though they are sharply pronounced.

Besides the long and short syllables, there are also such as stand, as it were, in the midst of them, and, therefore, are used, according to circumstances, either long or short. For this reason they are called in German *mittelzeitige Sylben,* that is to say, such as half incline to length, and half to brevity. They are also named in German *zweizeitige Sylben,* that is to say, such as have two quantities; but this appellation is given to them in general only, as they always are, in particular cases, either long or short.

As the German language, in its accentuation, has regard chiefly to the understanding, and, of course, does not measure the words, but weighs the notions, the measure of syllables, consequently, depends, in most cases, upon their logical significance. From the logical significancy of syllables the *verbal* accent *(der Wörttön)*, arises, by which one syllable in a word, as the most important, is distinguished from the rest. The rules, which relate to the measure or the quantity of syllables, are called with a Greek word *prosody (Prosodie* or *Sylbenmessung).* I shall now point out the principal rules of German prosody.

First rule of German prosody.

All the substantives, which have only one syllable, are always long.

Second rule of German prosody.

In words of more than one syllable that syllable is long, which has the principal accent.

Third rule of German prosody.

In compound substantives that word, which expresses the chief idea, has the principal accent, and is, consequently, always long. When the compound substantive consists of two or three substantives, the first of them has usually the principal, and the second and third the secondary accent, and all three form a long syllable. This is also the case, when the compound substantive begins with an ** attributive adjective, or with a *** separable preposition, or with † ant or ur.*

* Examples: *Baumfrucht; Fruchtbaum; Schifffahrt; Flussschifffahrt.* The second and third substantive may, however, be used short, principally when they are followed by a long syllable. For instance: *Der Standpunct, den ich nahm.*

** Examples: *Festland; Hochschule; Neubau.*

*** Examples: *Beiwort; Unterhalt; Widerruf.* Excepted are those substantives which, though they begin with a separable preposition, are formed from a compound verb by a syllable of derivation. These words retain the accent of the verb. For instance: *Unterhaltung*, from *unterhalten.*

† Examples: *Antwort; Urtheil.* Also the verbs derived from such a compound substantive retain the accent of it.

Fourth rule of German prosody.

All those monosyllables, which are not substantives, are either long or short, according as they have their place in verse, or are affected by the oratorial accent.

Fifth rule of German prosody.

Syllables, that have the demi-accent, are either long or short, because they have not the full length, but half incline to brevity.

Sixth rule of German prosody.

Unaccented syllables, that is to say, those which

never admit an accent, are short. However, also these syllables are not unfrequently used long, when they are preceded by a syllable, which is still shorter.

Seventh rule of German prosody.

According to the preceding rule, the syllables of inflection and derivation, and the initial syllables be, ent, er, ge, ver, zer, are short. Excepted are the final syllables am, heit, keit, niss, schaft, thūm, ung. These syllables are long before and after a short syllable, and short before and after a long one. The syllable bar is properly always long. Isch is long, when it is preceded by a short syllable.

Section II.

Of the poetical feet.

A certain number of syllables constituting a distinct part of a verse is called a *poetical foot (ein Versfuſs)*.

There are *four* poetical feet of *two*, *eight* of *three*, and *sixteen* of *four* syllables.

I.

Feet of two syllables.

(zweisylbige Füſse).

1. The *trochee (der Trochäus* or *Choreus)*. The first syllable of this foot is long, and the second, short (–⏑). Examples: *Liebĕ; Mēnschĕn; ēwĭg; frāgĕn.*

2. The *iambus* or *iambic foot (der Jambus* or *der Jambe)*. The first syllable of this foot is short, and the second, long (⏑–). Examples: *Vĕrstānd; gĕsūnd; gĕliebt.*

3. The *spondee (der Spondeus)*. This foot consists of two long syllables (––). Examples: *Ānmūth; Laūfbāhn; Mīssgūnst; Tūnzkūnst.*

4. The *pyrrhic (der Pyrrhichius)*. This foot consists of two short syllables (⏑⏑). Example: *weisĕrĕ.*

Observation. It is said in the plural number: *die Trochäen, Jamben, Spondeen, Pyrrhichien.*

II.

Feet of three syllables (dreïsylbige Füſse).

1. The *dactyle (der Dactylus).* This foot consists of one long syllable and two short ones (–⏑⏑). Examples: *Könĭgĕ; bēssĕrĕ; vätĕrlĭch.*

2. The *anapaest (der Anapäst).* The two first syllables of this foot, which is the reverse of the dactyle, are short, and the third syllable of it is long (⏑⏑–). Examples: *ŭnĕrhört; ŭbĕraŭs; ŭngĕmeïn.*

3. The *amphibrachys.* The first and third syllable of this foot are short, and the second syllable of it is long (⏑–⏑). Examples: *Vĕrgnügĕn; zŭfrïedĕn; vĕrsïchĕrn.*

4. The *amphimacer* or *creticus.* The first and third syllable of this foot are long, and the second of it is short (–⏑–). Example: *Zärtlĭchkeït.*

5. The *molossus (der Molòss).* This foot consists of three long syllables (–––). Examples: *Dänkt, lübt Gütt.*

6. The *tribrachys.* This foot consists of three short syllables (⏑⏑⏑). Example: *dringĕndĕrĕ.*

7. The *bacchius.* The first syllable of this foot is short, and the two last syllables of it are long (⏑––). Example: *Ĕr gēht schnēll.*

8. The *antibacchius.* The two first syllables of this foot are long, and the third syllable of it is short (––⏑). Example: *Hēērschārĕn.*

Observation. It is said in the plural number: *die Dactylen, Anapäste, Amphibrachen, Molosse, Tribrachen, Bacchien, Antibacchien.*

III.

Feet of four syllables or compound feet (vïersylbige Füſse or zusämmengesetzte Füſse).

1. The *choriambus.* The first and fourth syllable of this foot composed of a choreus and an

iambus are long, and the second and third syllable of it are short (–⏑⏑–). Example: *wönnĕbĕraüscht.*

2. The *ditrochaeus* or *dichoreus.* The first and third syllable of this foot composed of two trochees are long, and the second and fourth syllable of it are short (–⏑–⏑). Example: *wünschĕnswürdĭg.*

3. The *diiambus.* The first and third syllable of this foot composed of two iambic feet are short, and the second and fourth syllable of it are long (⏑–⏑–). Example: *Gĕrēchtĭgkeīt.*

4. The *dispondeus.* This foot composed of two spondees consists of four long syllables (––––). Example: *Dünkt, preīst Gütt laüt.*

5. The *antispast.* The first and fourth syllable of this foot are short, and the second and third syllable of it are long (⏑––⏑). Example: *Vĕrgnügüngĕn.*

6. The *proceleusmaticus* or *dipyrrhichius.* This foot, forming a double pyrrhic, consists of four short syllables (⏑⏑⏑⏑). Example: *ein lieblĭchĕrĕr Gĕruch.*

7. The *ionicus a majori (der sinkende Joniker).* The two first syllables of this foot are long, and the two last, short (––⏑⏑). Example: *ēhrwürdĭgĕr.*

8. The *ionicus a minori (der steigende Joniker).* The two first syllables of this foot are short, and the two last, long (⏑⏑––). Example: *eine bessĕrĕ Laüfbähn.*

9. The *first epitrite (der erste Epitrit).* The first syllable of this foot is short, and the three last syllables of it are long (⏑–––). Example: *Dĕr Laüfbähn näht.*

10. The *second epitrite (der zweite Epitrit).* The first, third and fourth syllable of this foot are long, and the second of it is short (–⏑––). Example: *der Sönnĕnaüfgäng.*

11. The *third epitrite (der dritte Epitrit).* The first, second and fourth syllable of this foot are long, and the third of it is short (––⏑–). Example: *der Änfäng dĕr Nächt.*

12. The *fourth epitrite (der vierte Epitrit).* The three first syllables of this foot are long, and the

last syllable of it is short (– – – ⏑). Example: *die Hāndlāngerzweīgĕ.*

13. The *first paeon (der erste Päon).* The first syllable of this foot is long, and the three last syllables of it are short (– ⏑ ⏑ ⏑). Example: *Gebrāuchlichĕrĕ Wörter.*

14. The *second paeon (der zweite Päon).* The first, third and fourth syllable of this foot are short, and the second of it is long (⏑ – ⏑ ⏑). Example: *gĕnēhmīgĕn.*

15. The *third paeon (der dritte Päon).* The first, second and fourth syllable of this foot are short, and the third syllable of it is long (⏑ ⏑ – ⏑). Example: *dĕr Bĕsiegĕr.*

16. The *fourth paeon (der vierte Päon).* The three first syllables of this foot are short, and the fourth syllable of it is long (⏑ ⏑ ⏑ –). Example: *die Rĕligiōn.*

Section III.

Of the most usual sorts of verses.

When the poetical feet are joined together according to determined rules, which are called in German *die Mētrik* or *die Vērsmessung*, a *verse* is made. A verse is, consequently, a line consisting of a certain succession of sounds, and a greater or less number of feet. It is said to be *scanned*, when the feet of it are counted or measured according to its rhythmical construction. The act or practice of scanning a verse is called *scansion (das Scandīren).* In the rhythmical combination of a certain number of feet in making a verse consists the *metre (das Vērsmafs)*, from which, therefore, most verses receive their name. A measured whole of several verses, returning in the same number, is called a *strophe* or *stanza (eine Strophe* or *Stanze).* The strophes of a poem consist of *two*, *three*, *four*, and more lines *(zweīzeilige, drēizeilige, vierzeilige Strophen).*

The most usual sorts of verses are the following:

1.

The trochaical verse
(der trochäische Vers).

This kind of verse consists of trochees. Example:

Frōmmĕr | Stāb, ŏ | hāttʼ ĭch | nīmmĕr |
Mīt dĕm | Schwērtĕ | dĭch vĕr | taūscht!
Hūtʼ ĕs | nīe ĭn | deīnĕn | Zweīgĕn, |
Heīlʼgĕ | Eīchĕ, | mīr gĕ | raūscht!
Wārst dū | nīmmĕr | mīr ĕr | schīenĕn, |
Hōhĕ | Hīmmĕls | kōnĭ | gīn!
Nīmm, ĭch | kānn sīe | nīcht vĕr | dīenĕn, |
Deīnĕ | Krōnĕ, | nīmm sīe | hīn!

2.

The iambic verse
(der jambische Vers).

This kind of verse is composed of iambic feet. Example:

Dīe Wāf | fĕn rūhn, | dĕs Krīe | gĕs Stūr | mĕ schweī | gĕn.
Aŭf blūtʼ | gĕ Schlāch | tĕn fōlgt Gĕsāng | ŭnd Tānz; |
Dŭrch āl | lĕ Strāf | sĕn tönt | dĕr mūn | trĕ Reī | gĕn;
Āltār | ŭnd Kīr | chĕ prūngt | ĭn Fēs | tĕsglānz; |
Ūnd Pfōr | tĕn baū | ĕn sīch | aŭs grū | nĕn Zweī | gĕn;
Ūnd ūm | dīe Säū | lĕ wīn | dĕt sīch | dĕr Krānz. |
Dŭs weī | tĕ Rheīms | fŭsst nīcht | dīe Zāhl | dĕr Gās | tĕ,
Dīe wāl | lĕnd strō | mĕn zū | dĕm Vŏl | kĕrfēs | tĕ.

Observations.

1. The iambic verse without rhyme is used in dramatic compositions. Then it is composed of five feet, and has either eleven or ten syllables. Example:

Ertragen muss man, was der Himmel sendet;
Unbilliges erträgt kein edles Herz.

2. The iambic verse consisting of six feet, or thirteen and twelve syllables, is called *alexandrine (Alexandriner).*

3.

The verse composed of dactyles
(der daktylische Vers).

Example:

Ehrĕt die | Frauĕn! Sie | flĕchtĕn und | wĕbĕn
Himmlischĕ | Rosĕn ins | irdischĕ | Lebĕn,
Flechtĕn dĕr | Liebĕ bĕ | glückendĕs | Band.

4.

*The *hexameter.*

This verse invented by the Greeks consists, as also its name *(Séchsmafs)* teaches, of *six* feet, which may be either dactyles or spondees (as the musical time of both these is the same), with this restriction only, that the fifth foot is regularly to be a dactyle, and the last a spondee. However, the first four and the sixth foot may also be trochees, the number of perfect German spondees being very small. Also the fifth foot is sometimes a spondee. Example:

Vielĕs sŏ | gār wīrd | bĕsser ĭn | nächtlichĕr | Kühlĕ vŏll | ēndĕt, |
Ōdĕr wĕnn | frühĕ dĕr | Tāg die gĕ | röthetĕn | Fēldĕr bĕ | thaūt. |

5.

*The *pentameter.*

This verse, which never stands alone, but always is united with the hexameter, consists, as also its name *(Fúnfmafs)* indicates, of *five* feet, which divide it into two equal parts. The first part has two and half a foot. The two entire feet are either dactyles, or spondees, and half the foot consists of a long syllable. Instead of a dactyle or spondee the first foot may also be a trochee. The second part has, likewise, two and half a foot. The two entire feet are dactyles, and half the foot consists, as in the first part, of a long syllable. Example:

Glücklichĕr | Sāuglīng! dĭr | īst eĭn ŭn | ēndlichĕr. |
Raūm nŏch die | Wiegĕ. |
Wērdĕ | Mānn, ŭnd dĭr | wīrd || ēng die ŭn | ĕndlichĕ | Wēlt. ||

* The two kinds of verse marked with an asterisk admit of no rhyme.

6.

The anapaestic verse (der anapästische Vers).

This verse admits of spondees, by which it loses its monotony. Examples:

Wĕlch frō | hĕs Entzūc | kĕn ĕrfūl | lĕt dĭe Brūst, |
Wĕnn ĭm grū | nĕndĕn, sprōs | sĕndĕn, blū | hĕndĕn Haīn |
Dăs Gĕzweīg | sĭch vĕrjūngt, | ŭnd dĕr Dūft | sĭch ĕrneūt! |

Wĕlch ān | mūthvōl | lĕs Entzūc | kĕn gĕwāhrt |
In dĕm Lēn | zĕ, wĕnn neū | dăs Gĕzweīg | aūfsprōsst, |
Frīschgrū | nĕndĕr Bäū | mĕ bălsā | mĭschĕr Dūft! |

Observation. There are yet several other kinds of verses, which, for want of space, must be omitted. The German language is capable of producing all the metrical feet and, consequently, all the species of versification without rhyme, which were known to the Greek and Roman poets. It is not only suited to hexameter and pentameter, but avails itself also of all the ancient measures in lyrical compositions. This is not the case with the English language, which revolts at these metres. The introduction of the ancient metrical feet into English verse would, consequently, be altogether out of place; for the genius of the English language corresponds not in this respect to the Greek or Latin.

Section IV.

Of the pauses.

By *pauses (Rūhepuncte)* are meant those places of a longer verse, in which it is cut or divided into smaller parts. The pause is, therefore, called by the Latin grammarians *caesura (der Ēinschnitt)*. The caesura is either *masculine (männlich)*, or *feminine (weiblich)*. It is masculine, when it finishes with the syllable having the full accent, by which it receives a vigorous sound. For example, in the following hexameter:

Über das | hohe Ge- | wölk || sich der | fliegende |
Reiher em | porschwingt. |

It is feminine, when the syllable having the full accent is followed by a short syllable, by which its sound becomes smooth and gentle. For example, in the following hexameter:-

Oft auch | siehest du | Ster || ne, so | bald her- |
drünget der | Sturmwind. |

In the same sense also the close of a verse is either *masculine*, or *feminine*. Example:

Wohl uns! der grofse Lebensquell
Versiegt dem Geiste nimmer.

In longer trochaical verses the pause may fall after the fourth or sixth syllable. In the verse composed of five iambic feet the pause may fall after the fourth, the sixth, or the eighth syllable.

An essential circumstance in the constitution of the alexandrian verse is the caesural pause, which in every line just after the sixth syllable regularly and indispensibly takes place, and divides it into two equal hemistichs, so that the one half of the line always answers to the other, and the same chime returns incessantly on the ear without intermission or change. This uniformity of sound is the reason, why German poets use the alexandrian verse no more alone.

There is also an iambic verse of six feet, called by the Greek grammarians the *iambic trimeter*, which is not divided into two equal portions, but has the caesural pause after the fourth and eighth syllable. Example:

Ein weiser Fürst | beschützet Kunst | und Wissen-
schaft.

Commuted into an alexandrine, this verse would run thus:

Ein weiser Fürst beschützt | die Kunst und Wis-
senschaft.

The hexameter has in the third foot a caesura, which is either masculine, or feminine, so that after

the first syllable of it there is a pause. This foot then finishes in the middle of a word, or, at least, with a word, which inseparably is connected with the following. Examples:

Weiden um | sprossen den | Bach; || es eut | steigt die | Erle dem | Sumpfe. |
Flechte das | Blumenge | wind || in der | blonden | Lockan Ge | ringel. |
Doch ver | mag nicht | Al || las dir | jeglicher | Boden zu | tragen. |

The hexameter has also frequently a caesura in the fourth foot, in which it is but masculine. Also the second foot then has either a masculine or feminine caesura. In this case the first syllable of both these feet becomes a pause. Example:

Ob in dem | Hain || auch | sauste der | Sturm: || doch | waren sie | fröhlich. |

Observations.

1. The hexameter is only then well sounding, when the single words are twisted together by its members. The hexameter, on the contrary, has an insupportable sound, when each single word finishes a foot. This is, for instance, the case in the following hexameter:

Fernhin | hauchten | tausend | Blumen | liebliche | Düfte. |

2. That hexameter is blameworthy, the second and fourth foot of which finish a word. Such a reprehensible hexameter is, for example, the following, the alternate dactyles and spondees of which form three *adonic verses:

Labender Weintrank, | tilge des Missmuths | quälende Krankheit. |

Section V.

Of the rhyme.

By *rhyme* is understood the consonance of one

*The *adonic verse (der adonische Vers)* consists of a dactyle and a spondee or trochee.

or two or three syllables, at the end of two or more verses.

Rhyme is then produced, when in two or more words all the letters, which stand after the vowel or diphthong of the accented syllable, are the same. What, consequently, follows the vowel or diphthong of the accented syllable, must wholly agree in sound; but what precedes them still in the same syllable, is either entirely different, or not entirely the same; or, when in a monosyllable no consonant at all precedes the vowel or diphthong, one or two consonants precede them in the following rhyme. Examples: *kehren, verehren, lehren. Breiten, leiten, schreiten. Gůt, Blůt. Hand, Tand. Eis, Reis, Gleis, Kreis.* When in the rhyming syllable of words of more syllables the same consonant precedes the rhyming vowel or diphthong, such a rhyme is called a *rich* or *perfect* rhyme *(ein reicher* or *vollkommener Reim)*. Examples: *behalten, erhalten. Persönlich, versöhnlich.* When the same rhyming word is repeated, it then forms an *equal* rhyme.

Two words but then rhyme together, when they are accented in the same manner. If this be not the case, they rhyme not, though they have the same sounds. Thus *verblich* and *verglich* rhyme together, because in both these words the accent is placed on the last syllable; *verblich* and *verdérblich*, on the contrary, rhyme not together, though their final sounds are the same, because they have not the accent on the same syllable.

As the substance of rhyme does not depend upon the letters for the eye, but upon the sound for the ear, the justness of rhymes, consequently, is not determined by the manner, in which words are written, but only by the right pronunciation of them. For this reason rhyming words, which, though sometimes differently written, yet are pronounced in the same manner, are called *pure* or *true* rhymes *(reine* or *echte Reime)*. Examples: *hören, stören. Heer, mehr. Verheeren, verzehren.* Those words, on the contrary, in the rhyming syllable of which

the vowels or the diphthongs or the consonants agree not completely in sound, form *impure* or *false* rhymes (*unreine* or *unechte Reime*). Examples: *sehr, Bär. Lehren, nähren. Leiden, Freuden. Weihen, scheuen. Lieben, üben.* Those words rhyme not together at all, in which not only the vowels or diphthongs, but also the consonants are different. Examples: *leiden, läuten. Krieg, sich: Krieger, sicher.* Also those words, the rhyming vowels of which have not the same long or short sound, form false rhymes. Example: *büſsen, küssen.*

Rhymes must be well sounding, noble, natural and correct, and are not to be formed by one and the same word. This is only then permitted, when it is interrupted by another rhyme. Example: *Būt, Nōth, bōt.* Also only then two words consisting of the same letters and entirely agreeing in sound may be used as rhyme, when they mark two different notions. Example: *weiſs* (white); *ich weiſs* (I know).

There are in German *three* kinds of rhymes, which are called *männliche, weibliche, gleitende Reime*, masculine, feminine, gliding rhymes.

Masculine rhymes are called those which extend only to the last syllable, and which, therefore, frequently consist of a monosyllable. It is clear, that this syllable must always be accented. Examples: *Gewicht, verspricht. Reich, weich.*

Feminine rhymes are called those which extend to two syllables, the first of which is accented, and the second, unaccented. Examples: *Beute, heute. Denkbar, lenkbar. Scheinen, weinen.*

Gliding rhymes are called those which extend to three syllables, the first of which is accented, and the two last are unaccented. Examples: *peinigen, reinigen. Berechtigen, ermächtigen.*

Rhyme is sometimes cause, that the sense is not finished at the end of a line, but is completed in the following. Then takes place what the French call *enjambement*, and the Germans *Überschreitung.*

The simplest manner of arranging rhymes then

takes place, when they immediately follow one another. Examples:

Hat dir der Himmel kein Talent gegeben;
Empfingst du nicht als Dichter einst dein Leben:
Dann, Unbesonnener, erklimmst du nie
Den Musenberg mit aller deiner Müh'.
Dann ist dein Geist beengt, so oft du singest.
Umsonst, dass du nach Ruhm im Dichten ringest.

In most poems rhymes are mixed one among another. Examples:

In kurzem netzt der Morgenduft
Mein frühes Grab mit seinen Thränen;
Und bald verschließet mein heißes Sehnen
Und alle Seufzer meine Gruft.

Schmeckt, so lang' es Gott erlaubt,
Kues- und süße Trauben,
Bis der Tod, der Alles raubt,
Kommt, auch sie zu rauben.

Arion war der Töne Meister;
Die Cither lebt' in seiner Hand.
Damit ergötzt' er alle Geister,
Und gern empfing ihn jedes Land.
Er schiffte goldbeladen
Jetzt von Tarents Gestaden,
Zum schönen Hellas hingewandt.

CHAPTER XVI.

Some familiar dialogues.

Einige Umgangsgespräche.

First dialogue.

Different questions and answers.

Erstes Gespräch.

Verschiedene Fragen und Antworten.

Guten Morgen, mein Herr.	Good morrow, Sir.
Wie befinden Sie sich? Wie steht es um Ihre Gesundheit?	How do you do? How is it with your health?

Ich befinde mich, Gott Lób, sehr wohl.
I am very well, God be praised.

Ich bin darüber sehr erfreut.
I am very glad of it.

Ich bin sehr erfreut, dass ich Sie in vóllkommener Gesundheit sehe.
I am very glad to see you in perfect health.

Ich danke Ihnen herzlich.
I thank you heartily.

Ich bin Ihnen verbunden.
I am obliged to you.

Wie haben Sie sich befunden, seit ich Sie zulétzt sah?
How have you done since I saw you last?

Nicht sehr wohl.
Not very well.

Überaüs wohl.
Extremely well.

Wie befindet sich Ihre Frau Gemahlin?
How is your lady?

Sie befindet sich wohl.
She is well.

Ich freue mich darüber.
I rejoice at it.

Sie befand sich gestern früh sehr únwohl, und ist noch krank.
She was very unwell yesterday morning, and is still sick.

Ich bin darüber traurig.
I am sorry for it.

Versichern Sie Ihre Frau Mütter meiner Höchachtung.
Present my respects to my lady your mother.

Ich werde nicht ermángeln.
I will not fail.

Wie befindet sich mein Bruder, mein Sohn, meine Tochter?
How does my brother, my son, my daughter do?

Ich glaube, dass sie sich wohl befinden.
I believe they are well.

Wie befindet sich Ihr Freund?
How is your friend?

Er wär gestern Abends ein wenig únpass. Auch ich war ein wenig únwohl.
He was a little indisposed last night. Also I was a little out of order.

Empfélden Sie mich Ihrem Freunde.
Commend me to your friend.

Setzen Sie sich ein wenig nieder.
Sit down a little.

Verweilen Sie doch ein wenig.
Pray, stay a little.

Ich kann wirklich nicht. Ich habe dringende Geschäfte, und muss dahér nách Hause zurückkehren; aber ich wérde morgen wiederkommen. Jetzt kām ich blóss, um zu wissen, wie Sie sich befánden.
Indeed I cannot. I have earnest business, and must, therefore, return home; but I'll come again to-morrow. Now I only came to know how you did.

Wollen Sie so bald fórtgehen? Sie sind sehr eilig.
Will you be gone so soon? You are in great haste.

Ich habe dazu dringende Úrsachen.
I have pressing reasons for it.

Wann werde ich Sie wiedersehen?
When shall I see you again?

In wenigen Tagen.
In a few days.

Welchen Tag und um wie
What day and at what o'clock

viel Uhr werden Sie kommen? Des Morgens oder des Abends?

Künftigen Möntag um zwei Uhr.

Wollen Sie mit mīr zu Mittage, zu Abende essen?

Es ist mir únmöglich. Ich versichere Ihnen, es thūt mir sehr leid.

Werden Sie in das Schaūspiel oder in das Concért gehen?

Nein; ich werde auf den Ball gehen.

Sind Sie schōn oft auf dem Balle gewésen?

Sehr viele Male.

Haben Sie eine Loge im Schaūspielhause bekommen?

Neīn; ich kam zu spät.

Ist der Saal grōſs und schön?

Er ist der grōſste und schönste, dén ich jémals sah.

KennenSie diesenSonderling?

Ich kenne ihn nicht.

Wo ist Ihre Schwester? Ist sie zu Hause, oder ist sie aūsgegangen? Ist sie in der Stadt oder auf dem Lande?

Hier kommt sie.

Kennen Sie sie?

Ich habe sie oft geséhen; aber ich habe nie mit ihr gesprochen.

Ist sie verheīrathet?

Sie ist eine Witwe.

Seit wann?

Seit einem Vierteljähre.

Dieser junge Mann ist ein Spieler.

Das ist traurig.

Er ist verheirathet und hat Kinder.

Desto schlimmer.

Wollen Sie so gütig seyn, mir Ihre Adresse zu geben?

Hier ist sie.

Wann werden Sie nach London ábreisen?

Die künftige Woche.

Dürfte ich Sie mit einem Briefe beschweren?

will you come? In the morning or evening?

Next monday at two o'clock.

Will you dine, will you sup with me?

It is impossible for me. I assure you, I am very sorry for it.

Will you go to the play or to the concert?

No; I'll go to the ball.

Have you already frequently been at the ball?

Very many times.

Have you got a box in the playhouse?

No; I came too late.

Is the hall large and fine?

It is the largest and finest I ever saw.

Do you know this strange man?

I don't know him.

Where is your sister? Is she at home, or is she gone out? Is she in town or in the country?

Here she is a coming.

Do you know her?

I have often seen her; but I have never spoken to her.

Is she married?

She is a widow.

How long since?

Since three months.

This young man is a gamester.

That is unfortunate.

He is married, and has children.

So much the worse.

Will you be so kind as to give me your direction?

Here it is.

When will you set off for London?

Next week.

Might I trouble you with a letter?

Ich bin sehr glücklich, dass ich eine Gelegenheit finde, Ihnen einen kleinen Dienst zu leisten.

Wann kann ich Ihnen den Brief schicken?

Ich werde wiederkommen und den Brief holen.

Sie sind zu gütig.

Lieben Sie die Musīk?

Ich liebe sie sehr.

Wie gefällt Ihnen diese Musik?

Mich dünkt, sie ist sehr schön.

Lieben Sie den Tanz?

Ich liebe ihn nicht mehr.

Diese junge Frau ist sehr liebenswürdig. Sie hat eine schöne Stimme, und singt sehr gut.

Spielt Sie das Pianoforte gut?

Sehr gut. Sie spielt auch die Harfe schön.

Tanzt sie gut?

Vortréfflich.

Können Sie ein Instrument spielen?

Ich spiele Clavier und blase Flöte.

Sprechen Sie Deutsch?

Ich spreche es ein wenig.

Verstehen Sie mich?

Ich verstehe das Deutsche besser, als ich es sprechen kann.

Sie müssen einen Sprächlehrer néhmen.

Spreche ich richtig aus?

Ihre Aüssprache ist richtig.

Die Aussprache des Deutschen ist viel leichter als die des Englischen. Und dénnoch wird die Erlernung der deutschen Sprāche den Engländern sehr schwēr.

Wie alt sind Sie?

Ich bin vierzig Jahre alt.

Was mich betrifft, ich bin ein und dreifsig Jahre alt.

Ist Ihre Mutter sehr alt?

Sie ist fast neunzig Jahre alt.

I am very happy in finding an opportunity of rendering you a trifling service.

When may I send you the letter?

I will return and fetch the letter.

You are too kind.

Do you like music?

I like it very much.

How do you like that music?

Methinks 'tis very fine.

Do you like dancing?

I like it no more.

This young woman is very lovely. She has a fine voice, and sings very well.

Does she play well on the pianoforte?

Very well. She plays well on the harp too.

Does she dance well?

Excellently.

Can you play upon any instrument?

I play on the harpsichord and on the flute.

Do you speak German?

I speak it a little.

Do you understand me?

I understand the German better than I can speak it.

You must take a master.

Do I pronounce right?

Your pronunciation is right.

The pronunciation of the German is much easier than that of the English. And yet the German language is very hard for Englishmen to learn.

How old are you?

I am forty years old.

For my part, I am one and thirty years old.

Is your mother very old?

She is almost ninety years old.

Wenn diese Kinder sich etwa zanken sollten, so thün Sie es mir zu wissen.

Mich friert. Meine Hände sind so kalt, dass ich nicht schreiben kann.

Friert Sie auch?

Im Gegentheile, mir ist sehr warm; aber ich bin müde.

Ruhen Sie aus.

Ich glaube, dass viele Menschen stets an den Kopf frieren; denn sie nehmen selten ihren Hut ab.

Ich bin hungrig.

Und ich bin sehr durstig.

Meine Schwester hatte vergangene Woche einen sehr bösen Schnupfen und eine böse Nase; jetzt hat sie böse Lippen.

Ich wünsche, dass sie eine böse Zunge hätte.

Wer ist jener Herr?

Er ist ein Engländer.

Ich hielt ihn für einen Franzosen.

Dann irrten Sie sich.

Wo wohnt er?

Er wohnt auf der Königsstrasse.

Bei wem wohnt er?

Ich kann es Ihnen nicht sagen.

Wie alt ist er?

Ich glaube, dass er fünf und zwanzig Jahre alt ist.

Ich hielt ihn nicht für so alt.

Er kann nicht viel jünger seyn.

Ist er verheirathet?

Nein; er ist ein unverheiratheter Mann.

Sind sein Vater und seine Mutter am Leben?

Seine Mutter lebt noch; aber sein Vater ist seit zwei Jahren todt.

Hat er Brüder und Schwestern?

If these children should happen to quarrel, let me know of it.

I am cold. My hands are so cold that I cannot write.

Are you cold too?

On the contrary, I am very warm; but I am tired.

Rest yourself.

I believe the head of many men is always cold; for they seldom put their hat off.

I am hungry.

And I am very dry.

My sister had a very bad rheum and a sore nose last week; now she has sore lips.

I wish she had a sore tongue.

Who is that gentleman?

He is an Englishman.

I took him for a Frenchman.

Then you were mistaken.

Where does he live?

He lives in the royal street.

At whose house does he lodge?

I cannot tell it you.

How old is he?

I believe he is five-and-twenty years old.

I did not take him to be so old.

He cannot be much younger.

Is he married?

No; he is an unmarried man.

Are his father and mother alive?

His mother is still living; but his father has been dead these two years.

Has he any brothers and sisters?

Er hat zwei Brüder und eine Schwester.

Ist seine Schwester verheirathet?

Ja, mein Herr.

Mit wem?

Mit dem Grafen von Schwerin.

Kennen Sie ihn schon lange?

Seit ungefähr drei Jahren.

Wo wurden Sie mit ihm bekannt?

Ich wurde mit ihm in Rom bekannt.

Seine Gestalt ist leicht und ungezwungen. Er ist sehr angenehm, und hat eine schöne Gesichtsbildung, und einen edlen Gang. Auch kleidet er sich sehr gut. Wie gefällt er Ihnen?

Sehr wohl. Er sieht sehr gut aus, und man kann ihn einen wahrhaft schönen Mann nennen.

Er ist höflich, artig, und gegen Jedermann gefällig. Er hat viel Verstand, und ist im Umgange sehr munter.

Sie schildern ihn auf eine so vortheilhafte Art, dass Sie das Verlangen in mir erwecken, ihn kennen zu lernen.

Ich werde Sie mit ihm bekannt machen.

Ich werde Ihnen dafür verbunden seyn.

He has two brothers and a sister.

Is his sister married?

Yes, Sir.

To whom?

To the count of Schwerin.

Is it long since you know him?

It is about three years.

Where got you acquainted with him?

I got acquainted with him at Rome.

His shape is easy and free. He is very genteel, and has a fine presence, and a noble gait. He also dresses very well How do you like him?

Very well. He looks very well, and one may call him a truly handsome man.

He is civil, courteous, and complaisant to every body. He has a great deal of wit, and is very sprightly in conversation.

You draw his picture to so much advantage, that you make me have a mind to know him.

I shall make you acquainted with him.

I shall be obliged to you for it.

Second dialogue.

Between a governess and a girl of eight years of age.

Zweites Gespräch.

Zwischen einer Hofmeisterin und einem achtjährigen Mädchen.

Nun, Fräulein, Sie müssen aufstehen.

Come, Miss, you must rise.

Ziehen Sie sich Ihre Strümpfe und Schuhe an.

Put on your stockings and shoes.

Sagen Sie jetzt Ihr Gebét.
Kommen Sie hér, ich will Sie ánkleiden und Ihren Kopf kämmen.
Wollen Sie frühstücken?
Essen Sie nicht so geschwind.
Sie sitzen in einer linkischen Stellung.
Ihre Füfse sind einwärts. Setzen Sie sie aüswärts.
Sie neigen sich zu sehr auf die rechte oder linke Seite.
Halten Sie Ihren Kopf in die Höhe; halten Sie sich gerade.
Sie können jetzt spielen.
Was súchen Sie?
Sie verlieren immer alle Ihre Spielsachen. Wenn Sie sorgsamer wären: so würden Sie nicht einen grofsen Theil des Tages mit lángweiligem Suchen verlieren.
Machen Sie nicht so vielen Lärm.
Sprechen Sie nicht so laut.
Widerspréchen Sie nicht Ihrer Schwester.
Seyn Sie doch ein wenig höflicher und sanfter gegen einánder.
Kommen Sie hierhér.
Kommen Sie ein wenig näher.
Holen Sie mir jenes Büch.
Wollen Sie árbeiten? Wollen Sie nähen? Wollen Sie stricken?
Néhmen Sie Ihre Árbeit vör.
Zeigen Sie mir Ihre Arbeit.
Fangen Sie sie wieder an.
Séhen Sie zu, gében Sie Acht, wie ich es mache.
Wo ist Ihr Fingerhüt und Ihre Nähnadel? Wo ist Ihre Schére? Wo sind Ihre Stricknadeln?
Néhmen Sie sich in Acht, dass Sie sich nicht schneiden.
Fädeln Sie Ihre Nähnadel ein. Machen Sie einen Knoten an Ihren Zwirn, an Ihre Seide.

Now say your prayers.
Come hither, I will dress you and comb your head.

Do you want to breakfast?
Do not eat so fast.
You sit in an awkward posture.
Your feet are turned inward. Turn them out.
You lean too much on the right or left side.
Lift up your head; keep yourself straight.
You may play now.
What are you seeking?
You always lose all your playthings. If you were more careful, you would not lose a great part of the day in tiresome searches.

Don't make so much noise.

Don't speak so loudly.
Don't contradict your sister.

Pray, be a little more polite and gentle to one another.

Come this way.
Come a little nearer.
Fetch me that book.
Do you want to work? Do you want to sew? Do you want to knit?
Take up your work.
Show me your work.
Begin it again.
Look, take notice how I do it.

Where is your thimble and your needle? Where are your scissors? Where are your knitting needles?
Take care not to cut yourself.
Thread your needle. Knot your thread, your silk.

Machen Sie einen Saum, eine Näth.
Make a hem, a seam.

Hören Sie auf zu arbeiten. Legen Sie Ihre Arbeit zusámmen. Legen Sie sie wég.
Leave off working. Fold up your work. Put it aside.

Ihr Schreíblehrer kommt.
Your writingmaster is coming.

Gében Sie sich Mühe. Sie geben sich gār keine Mühe.
Take pains. You do not take any pains at all.

Wenn Sie eine Únterrichtsstunde haben: so mûssen Sie nicht sprechen.
When you have a lesson, you must not talk.

Hier ist Ihr Tánzlehrer.
Here is your dancingmaster.

Ántworten Sie auf eine höflichere Weise.
Answer in a more polite manner.

Wollen Sie Französisch lesen?
Will you read French?

Sie sprechen nicht gūt aus.
You do not pronounce well.

Hören Sie auf mich. Sie müssen auf diese Árt aūssprechen.
Listen to me. You must pronounce in this manner.

Sie lesen zu geschwind.
You read too fast.

Sie lesen sehr gut. Fahren Sie so fort.
You read very well. Continue in that manner.

Verstehen Sie mich, wenn ich Französisch mit Ihnen spreche?
Do you understand me, when I speak to you French?

Ich verstehe Sie sehr wohl.
I understand you very well.

Das Essen ist aūfgetragen. Setzen wir uns zu Tische.
The dinner is served up. Let us sit down to table.

Essen Sie auf eine ánständigere Art.
Eat in a more becoming manner.

Sie essen zu geschwind. Sie müssen langsamer essen.
You eat too fast. You must eat more slowly.

Haben Sie getrunken?
Have you drunk?

Wir wollen spazieren gehen. Es ist das angenehmste Wetter, und kaum ein Wölkchen ist am Himmel. So lassen Sie uns denn gehen, und frische Luft schöpfen.
Let us go and take a walk. It is the most agreeable weather, and there is hardly a little cloud in the sky. Let us go then, and take the fresh air.

Setzen Sie Ihren Hūt auf.
Put on your hat.

Wo sind Ihre Handschuhe?
Where are your gloves?

Jetzt sind wir auf dem Felde. Sie können ein wenig laufen, wenn Sie wollen.
We are now in the fields. You may run a little, if you please.

Kehren Sie wieder zurück. Bleíben Sie stehen.
Return again. Stop.

Ist Ihnen warm?
Are you warm?

Sie sind aufser Athem.
You are out of breath.

Wohin laufen Sie so geschwind?	Whither do you run so fast?
Tanzen Sie nicht im Gehen.	Don't dance in walking.
Machen Sie sich mit Blumenpflücken einen Zeitvertreib.	Divert yourself with gathering flowers.
Setzen wir uns nieder.	Let us sit down.
Sind Sie müde?	Are you tired?
Ich bin ganz müde. Ich muss mich niedersetzen, und ein wenig ruhen.	I am quite tired. I must sit down, and rest a little.
Friert Sie?	Are you cold?
Gehen Sie nicht diesen Weg.	Don't walk that way.
Gehen Sie nicht auf dem Grase, und nehmen Sie sich in Acht, dass Sie sich nicht schmuzig machen. Nehmen Sie Ihr Kleid in die Höhe.	Don't walk upon the grass, and take care not to soil yourself. Take up your gown.
Geben Sie mir Ihre Hand.	Give me your hand.
Sind Ihre Füfse nass?	Are your feet wet?
Es wird spät. Lassen Sie uns nach Hause gehen.	It grows late. Let us go home.
Kehren wir wieder nach Hause zurück.	Let us return home again.
Nehmen Sie sich in Acht, dass Sie nicht fallen.	Take care not to fall.
Sie gehen mir zu schnell.	You walk too fast for me.
Wo ist Ihr Schnüpftuch?	Where is your handkerchief?
Schnauben Sie sich.	Blow your nose.
Gehen wir jetzt zum Abendessen.	Let us now go to supper.
Wir wollen zu Bette gehen.	Let us go to bed.

Third Dialogue.

On rising in the morning.

Drittes Gespräch.

Bei dem Aufstehen des Morgens.

Wer ist da?	Who is there?
Liegen Sie noch im Bette?	Are you a bed still?
Schlafen Sie? Schlafen Sie noch?	Do you sleep? Are you still asleep?
Wachen Sie auf.	Awake.
Ich bin munter.	I am awake.
Wer hat Sie geweckt?	Who waked you?
Ich erwache jeden Morgen um fünf Uhr.	I awake every morning at five o'clock.
Stehen Sie auf. Auf, auf!	Rise. Up! get up!
Ist es Zeit aufzustehen?	Is it time to rise?

Es ist heller Tag. Es ist acht Uhr.
Ich stehe auf. Ich bin im Begriffe aufzustehen.
Um wie viel Uhr sind Sie heute aufgestanden?
Ich bin mit Tagesanbruch aufgestanden.
Machen Sie die Thüre auf. Sie ist zugeschlossen. Sie ist verriegelt.
Der Schlüssel steckt. Heben Sie die Klinke auf.
Warten Sie ein wenig.

'Tis broad day. 'Tis eight o'clock.
I am rising. I am going to rise.
At what o'clock did you rise to-day.
I rose at break of day.

Open the door. It is locked. It is bolted.

The key is in the door. Lift up the latch.
Wait a little.

Fourth Dialogue.
Before going to bed.
Viertes Gespräch.
Eht man zu Bette geht.

Es wird dunkel. Es fängt an, dunkel zu werden. Die Nacht kommt herân. Die Nacht nähert sich.
Es wird Nacht. Es ist fast Nacht.
Es ist sehr spät. Es ist Zeit, zu Bette zu gehen.
Sie kommen sehr spät nach Hause. Ich gehe gern zeitig zu Bette.
Ich werde noch nicht zu Bette gehen.
Sitzen Sie so lange auf, als Sie wollen.
Sie schlafen gern.
Das Bett ist kalt.
Lassen Sie es wärmen.
Wo ist die Wärmpfanne?
Gute Nacht. Ich wünsche Ihnen eine gute Nacht, eine ruhige Nacht.
Haben Sie mein Bett gemacht? Haben Sie mir gebettet? Ist mein Bett gemacht?
Das Bett ist gut gemacht.
Sie müssen das Bett noch einmäl machen; denn das Bett ist zu schlecht gemacht.

It grows dark. It begins to grow dark. Night comes on. Night draws near.

It grows night. 'Tis almost night.
It is very late. It is time to go to bed.
You come home very late. I like to go to bed betimes.

I will not yet go to bed.

Sit up as long as you will.

You love to sleep.
The bed is cold.
Get it warmed.
Where is the warmingpan?
Good night. I wish you a good night, a quiet night.

Have you made my bed? Is my bed made?

The bed is well made.
You shall make the bed again; for the bed is too ill made.

Schütteln Sie das Féderbett auf.	Beat up the featherbed.
Ziehen Sie die Vörhänge herünter.	Draw the curtains.
Geben Sie mir eine Schlāfmütze.	Give me a nightcap.
Setzen Sie sie doch auf.	Pray, put it on.
Kleiden Sie sich aus.	Undress yourself.
Ziehen Sie Ihre Schuhe und Strümpfe aus.	Pull off your shoes and stockings.
Helfen Sie mir meinen Rock aüsziehen.	Help me to pull off my coat.
Holen Sie sogleīch das Licht.	Fetch directly the candle.
Néhmen Sie das Licht wég.	Take the candle away.
Lassen Sie das Licht da.	Leave the candle there.
Ich lése gern im Bette.	I like to read in bed.
Löschen Sie das Licht aus.	Put out the candle.
Ich werde es aüslöschen.	I 'll put it out.
Gehen Sie in Ihr Zimmer.	Go into your room.
Wecken Sie mich doch morgen zeitig. Ich muss mit Tagesánbruch aüfstehen.	Pray, wake me to-morrow betimes. I must rise by break of day.
Ja, ich werde Sie wecken.	Yes, I 'll wake you.
Um wie viel Uhr pflegen Sie aufzustehen?	At what o'clock do you use to rise?
Um vier Uhr im Sommer.	At four o'clock in the summer.

Fifth Dialogue.

To dress one's self.

Fünftes Gespräch.

Um sich anzukleiden.

Ich muss mich geschwind ánkleiden. Geben Sie mir meine Beīnkleider, meine seidenen Strümpfe und meine Strúmpfbänder.	I must make haste in dressing myself. Give me my breeches, my silk stockings and my garters.
Geben Sie mir meine Pantóffeln und meinen Schlāfrock.	Give me my slippers and my nightgown.
Wo ist mein Hemd?	Where is my shirt?
Hier ist es.	Here it is.
Dieses Hemd ist noch ganz kalt. Es ist nicht rein. Es ist schmuzig.	This shirt is quite cold still. It is not clean. It is foul.
Hier ist ein reines.	Here is a clean one.
Geben Sie mir das Schnúpftūch, welches in meiner Rócktasche ist.	Give me the handkerchief, which is in my coat-pocket.

Ich habe es der Wäscherin gegeben. Es war schmuzig.
Sie haben wohl gethān.
Hat sie meine Wäsche gebracht?
Ja, mein Herr. Es fehlt Nichts darān.
Geben Sie mir das Wáschbecken und ein wenig Seife. Ich muss mir die Hände und das Gesicht waschen. Meine Hände sind sehr schmuzig.
Trocknen Sie Ihre Hände an diesem Hándtuche ab.
Wo ist Ihre Seīfenkugel?
Ich habe sie verloren.
Geben Sie mir meine Schuhe.
Ich muss sie ērst ábwischen.
Lassen Sie meine Schuhe aūsbessern.
Geben Sie mir einen Kamm.
Wollen Sie den élfenbeinernen Kamm haben?
Nein, sondern den hörnernen Kamm.
Es hat Jēmand fünf oder sechs Zähne aus meinem Kamme gebrochen.
Bürsten Sie meine Kleider gut aus. Hier ist die Bürste.
Bringen Sie mir meinen Stock und meinen Mantel.
Es klopft Jemand an die Thüre. Sehen Sie, wér es ist.
Es ist der Schneider.
Lassen Sie ihn herein kommen.

I have given it to the laundress. It was dirty.
You have done well.
Has she brought my linen?

Yes, Sir. There is nothing wanting.
Give me the basin and a little soap. I must wash my hands and my face. My hands are very dirty.

Dry your hands on this towel.

Where is your washball?
I have lost it.
Give me my shoes.
I must first wipe them.
Get my shoes mended.

Give me a comb.
Will you have the ivory comb?
No, but the horncomb.

Somebody has broken five or six teeth out of my comb.

Brush my clothes well. Here is the brush.
Bring me my cane and my cloak.
Somebody knocks at the door. See who it is.
'Tis the tailor.
Let him come in.

Sixth Dialogue.

Between a lady and her waitingwoman.

Sechstes Gespräch.

Zwischen einer Dame und ihrer Kámmerfrau.

Rufen Sie, Madām?
Ja. Wie viel Uhr ist es?
Ich weiss nicht, Madam.
Sehen Sie nach meiner Uhr.

Do you call, Madam?
Yes. What o'clock is it?
I do not know, Madam.
Look at my watch.

Sie geht nicht. Sie ist abgelaufen.	It does not go. It is down.
Geben Sie mir sie, damit ich sie aufziehe.	Give it me, that I may wind it up.
Es schlug eben jetzt zehn.	It struck just now ten.
Hörten Sie es schlagen?	Did you hear it strike?
Es hat noch nicht geschlagen; aber es wird gleich schlagen.	It has not yet struck; but it will strike immediately.
Ich glaube, dass es nicht so spät ist.	I think it is not so late.
Es ist sechs vorbei.	It is past six.
Geben Sie mir mein Hemd.	Give me my shift.
Es ist nicht warm. Ich bin im Begriffe, es zu wärmen.	It is not warm. I am going to warm it.
Ist ein gutes Feuer in meinem Stübchen?	Is there a good fire in my closet?
Ein sehr gutes.	A very good one.
Geben Sie mir mein Morgenkleid.	Give me my morninggown.
Ich kann es nicht finden.	I cannot find it.
Suchen Sie es.	Seek it.
Ich suche es überall.	I am seeking it every where.
Sie lassen alle Dinge in Unordnung liegen.	You leave every thing in disorder.
Geben Sie mir einen Stuhl.	Give me a chair.
Reinigen Sie meine Kämme.	Clean my combs.
Sie sind rein, Madam.	They are clean, Madam.
Wischen Sie diesen Spiegel ab. Er ist ganz schmuzig.	Wipe that looking-glass. It is quite dirty.
Geben Sie mir eine Stecknadel.	Give me a pin.
Hier ist das Nädelkissen.	Here is the pincushion.
Schnüren Sie mich sehr fest.	Lace me very tight.
Geben Sie mir meine Händkrausen und meinen Fächer.	Give me my ruffles and my fan.

Seventh Dialogue.

To breakfast.

Siebentes Gespräch.

Um zu frühstücken.

Geben Sie mir Etwas zu essen. Mich hungert; denn ich habe gestern Abends gar Nichts gegessen.	Give me something to eat. I am hungry; for I have eaten nothing at all last night.
Sie sollen, mein Herr, Alles, was Sie verlangen, bekommen.	You shall have, Sir, any thing you like.

Was möchten Sie gern haben? Ich werde augenblicklich Kaffee machen lassen.

Sie wissen, dass ich lieber Chocolate trinke.

Diese Chocolate taugt nichts.

Sie sind sehr schwēr zu befriedigen.

Ist Ihnen eine Schale Kaffee oder Thee gefällig?

Eine Schale Thee.

Der Thee ist sehr schwach. Geben Sie mir eine Schale Kaffee; aber er muss stark seyn.

Der Kaffee ist vortréfflich.

Ich muss vier Tassen haben.

Was für Weine haben Sie?

Haben Sie Rheīnwein?

Geben Sie mir frische Butter und Weizenbrot.

Haben Sie schweizer Käse, hólländischen Käse, Parmesānkäse? Haben Sie Obst?

Bringen Sie mir Kirschen, Erdbeeren, Stachelbeeren, rothe und weisse Johánnisbeeren, Pflaumen, Äpfel, Birnen, Pfirsichen.

What would you choose to have? I shall get coffee made in a moment.

You know I rather drink chocolate.

This chocolate is good for nothing.

You are very hard to be pleased.

Do you choose to have a cup of coffee or tea?

A cup of tea.

The tea is very weak. Give me a cup of coffee; but it must be strong.

The coffee is excellent.

I want four cups.

What wines have you?

Have you Rhenish wine?

Give me some fresh butter and wheaten bread.

Have you Swiss cheese, Dutch cheese, Parmesan cheese? Have you any fruit?

Bring me some cherries, strawberries, gooseberries, red and white currants, plums, apples, pears, peaches.

Eighth Dialogue.

At table.

Achtes Gespräch.

Bei Tische.

Decken Sie den Tisch.

Wir wollen uns zu Tische setzen.

Setzen Sie die Stühle um den Tisch herum.

Haben Sie keine feineren Tellertücher (Servietten)? Geben Sie uns.

Haben Sie keine anderen Löffel als zinnerne?

Nehmen Sie diese Schüssel weg, und geben Sie mir einen anderen Teller.

Lay the cloth.

Let us sit down to table.

Set the chairs in order round the table.

Have you no finer napkins? Let us have them.

Have you no spoons besides pewter ones?

Take that dish away, and let me have another plate.

Wir brauchen mehr Teller.
We want more plates.

Haben Sie keine anderen Gabeln? Diese Gabeln haben nür zwei Zinken.
Have you no other forks? These forks have only two prongs.

Geben Sie mir ein Messer, welches gut schneidet. Ich will dieses Rindfleisch vörschneiden.
Give me a knife that cuts well. I will carve this beef.

Bringen Sie uns Öl und Essig.
Bring us some oil and vinegar.

Dieses Öl taugt nichts. Geben Sie uns besseres.
This oil is good for nothing. Give us some better.

Dieser Essig ist zu schwach. Haben Sie nicht stärkeren? Bringen Sie uns welchen.
This vinegar is too weak. Have not you any stronger? Bring us some.

Es ist kein Brōt mehr da.
There is no more bread.

Darf ich Ihnen von diesem Gerichte vörlegen?
May I help you to this dish?

Was wünschen Sie?
What do you wish?

Was verlangen Sie?
What do you desire?

Sie essen nicht. Ich sehe die Leute gern essen, wenn sie bei Tische sind.
You do not eat. I love to see people eat, when they are at table.

Ich habe schōn genug gegessen.
I have eaten enough already.

Sie scherzen bloſs. Sie haben gār Nichts gegessen.
You only jest. You have eaten nothing at all.

Ich habe keine Esslust. Meine Esslust ist bald gestillt.
I have no stomach. My stomach is soon staid.

Darf ich Ihnen ein Glas von diesem Weine ánbieten?
May I offer you a glass of this wine?

Er ist sehr gut. Dieses ist ein starker Wein.
It is very good. This is a strong-bodied wine.

Dieser Wein ist funfzig Jahre alt.
This wine is fifty years old.

Alter Wein und alte Freunde sind am bessten.
Old wine and old friends are best.

Kosten Sie doch diesen Burgúnder.
Pray, taste this Burgundy.

Stellen Sie die Flaschen und die Gläser nében uns. Wir wollen uns selbst bedienen.
Place the bottles and glasses next us. We will help ourselves.

Wie schmeckt Ihnen dieser Wein?
How do you like that wine?

Ich trinke nicht gern süſsen Wein.
I do not like sweet wine.

Sie trinken nicht.
You do not drink.

Ich trinke keinen Wein. Ich trinke auch nie Liqueurs.
I do not drink any wine. I also never drink liquors.

Ich habe gutes Bier.
I have some good beer.

Lassen Sie mich Ihr Bier kosten. — Let me taste your beer.

Es schmeckt mir ziemlich gut. — I like it pretty well.

Ich trinke nicht gern Bier. Es ist zu nahrhaft. — I don't like beer. It is too nourishing.

Ich werde mit Ihrer Erlaubniss diese fette Henne vorschneiden. — I will carve this fat hen by your leave.

Wollen Sie so gütig seyn, diesen Teller herúmzugeben? — Will you be so kind as to hand about this plate?

Darf ich Ihnen noch Etwas vorlegen? — May I help you to some more?

Nein, mein Herr, ich danke Ihnen. — No, Sir, I thank you.

Seyn Sie so gütig, ein wenig nach jener Seite zuzurücken. Ich habe nicht Platz genug. — Be so kind as to move a little to that side. I have not room enough.

Ich bitte Sie um Verzeihung, es ist kein Platz übrig. — I ask your pardon, there is no place left.

Ich werde mich an einen andern Tisch setzen. — I will sit at another table.

Seyn Sie doch so gütig, mir haüsgebackenes (hausbacken) Brot zu geben. — Pray, be so kind as to give me some household bread.

Nehmen Sie Weifsbrot. — Take some white bread.

Ich esse lieber schwarzes Brot. — I like brown bread better.

Geben Sie mir neügebackenes (neubacken) Brot, wenn ich Sie bitten darf. — Give me some new bread, if I may pray you.

Ninth Dialogue.

On letter-writing.

Neuntes Gespräch.

Vom Briefschreiben.

Ich möchte gern schreiben. — I want to write.

Bringen Sie mir Papīer, Fédern, Tinte und Siegellack. — Bring me some paper, pens, ink and sealingwax.

Lassen Sie mir diese Federn verbessern. — Get these pens mended for me.

KönnenSieFedernschneiden? — Can you make pens?

Wie haben Sie sie gern? — How do you like to have them?

Ich habe sie gern sehr fein. — I like them very fine.

Sind sie nach Ihrem Sinne? — Are they to your mind?

Geben Sie mir ein Féder-messer. Ich möchte gern eine Feder verbessern.

Give me a penknife. I want to mend a pen.

Wo ist das Tintenfass?
Wo ist die Streusandbüchse?
Holen Sie mir Sand.

Where is the inkstand?
Where is the sandbox?
Fetch me some sand.

Wollen Sie feinen Sand oder Góldstaub haben?

Do you choose to have fine sand, or gold-dust?

Haben Sie ein Pētschaft?
Hier ist das meinige.

Have you a seal?
Here is mine.

Zünden Sie ein Licht an; denn ich muss meine Briefe süsiegeln.

Light a candle; for I must seal up my letters.

Ist die Post weit von diesem Hause?

Is the postoffice far from this house?

Wie Viel muss ich für das Freimachen dieser Briefe bezahlen?

How much must I pay for franking these letters?

Haben Sie meine Briefe auf der Post ábgegében? Haben Sie sie frei gemacht?

Have you delivered my letters at the postoffice? Have you franked them?

Gehen Sie sogleich auf die Post, und erkundigen Sie sich nach meinen Briefen.

Go immediately to the postoffice, and inquire for my letters.

Tenth Dialogue.

O n d r e s s.

Zéhntes Gespräch.

Ü b e r, d i e K l e i d u n g.

Ich brauche einen Rock.
Wollen Sie mir Maſs néhmen?

I want a coat.
Will you take my measure?

Haben Sie das Tūch schón gekauft?

Have you bought the cloth already?

Ich weiſs nicht, wo gutes Tuch zu bekommen ist. Also werde ich es Ihnen überlássen. Aber ich bitte, setzen Sie mir nicht zu Viel dafür an.

I do not know where to get good cloth. So I shall leave it to you. But pray, don't overrate me.

Sie sollen es so gut und so wohlfeil als möglich haben.

You shall have it as good and as cheap as possible.

Wann werde ich meinen Rock bekommen?

When shall I get my coat?

Übermorgen.

The day after to-morrow.

Sehr wohl. Bringen Sie Ihre Rechnung mit; denn ich werde Sie sogleich bezahlen.

Very well. Bring your bill along with you; for I shall pay you immediately.

Wie theuer verkaufen Sie diesen Zeug?

Das ist sehr theuer.

Ich werde nicht mehr als... geben. Er ist nicht mehr wérth.

Überlégen Sie, ob Sie mir ihn für diesen Preis lassen können. Ich werde das ganze Stück kaufen. Wollen Sie so gütig seyn, es zu messen?

Ich werde zéhn Ellen néhmen.

Ich möchte gern Tüch kaufen. Wie Viel kostet die deutsche Elle?

Schneiden Sie zwölf Ellen ab.

Haben Sie gute Leinwand zu Hemden oder Taschentüchern (Schnupftüchern)?

Hier ist der Schühmacher, dén Sie haben rufen lassen.

Man hat mir gesägt, mein Herr, dass Sie ein Paar Stiefeln brauchen.

Nein, ich brauche keine Stiefeln, sondern bloſs ein Paar Schuhe. Haben Sie fertige Schuhe? Bringen Sie mir einige Paare von verschiedener Gröſse.

Wie theuer sind diese?

Ich will sie anversuchen.

Sie drücken mich.

Mein Herr, ich werde Ihnen ein Paar sehr gute Schuhe machen, und übermorgen werden Sie dieselben bekommen. Beféhlen Sie dicke oder dünne Sohlen?

Machen Sie sie nicht sehr dick.

Sollen die Absätze höch oder niedrig seyn?

Nicht zu hoch.

Sollen die Riemen breit oder schmal seyn?

Sie müssen zu der Gröſse dieser Schnallen passen.

Ich wünsche Pélzschuhe zu haben. Machen Sie sie weit genug, damit ich sie über meine anderen Schuhe bringen kann.

How do you sell this stuff?

That is very dear.

I shall give no more than... It is not worth more.

Consider, whether you can let me have it at that price. I will buy the whole piece. Will you be so kind as to measure it?

I will take ten ells.

I want to buy some cloth. How much does the German ell cost?

Cut off twelve ells.

Have you any good linen for shirts or handkerchiefs?

Here is the shoemaker whom you ordered to be called.

I have been told, Sir, that you want a pair of boots.

No, I want no boots, but a pair of shoes only. Have you any shoes ready made? Bring me some pairs of different sizes.

How dear are these?

I will try them on.

They pinch me.

Sir, I shall make you a pair of very good shoes, and you shall have them the day after to-morrow. Would you have thick or thin soles?

Don't make them very thick.

Shall the heels be high or low?

Not too high.

Are the straps to be broad or small?

They are to fit the size of these buckles.

I wish to have shoes lined with fur. Make them wide enough, that I may get them over my other shoes.

Ich hätte gern einen runden oder dreïeckigen Hüt.

Hier sind einige sehr schöne und feine Hüte. Hier ist einer, mein Herr, der Ihnen, wie ich glaube, passen wird.

Lassen Sie mich sie sehen,

Ja, sie scheinen gute Hüte zu seyn.

Dieser Hut paßt mir nicht, er ist zu enge.

Haben Sie die Güte, diesen zu versuchen. Er ist weiter.

Ja, dieser wird gehen. Wie Viel fordern Sie für denselben?

Fünf Thaler, mein Herr.

Ich werde ihn nehmen.

I want a round or three-cornered hat.

Here are some very beautiful and fine hats. Here is one, Sir, that I believe will fit you.

Let me see them.

Yes, they seem to be good hats.

This hat does not fit me, it is too narrow.

Please to try this. It is wider.

Yes, this will do. How much do you ask for it.

Five dollars, Sir.

I will take it.

Eleventh Dialogue.

With a watchmaker.

Elftes Gespräch.

Mit einem Ührmacher.

Ich möchte gern eine Täschenuhr kaufen.

Ist diese Uhr gut?

Wollen Sie mir sie auf die Probe geben? Ich werde sie nur unter dieser Bedingung nehmen.

Nehmen Sie die diamantenen Zeiger weg, und setzen Sie goldene an ihre Stelle.

Ich möchte gern meine Uhr gegen eine andere vertauschen.

Wie viel wollen Sie heraüs haben?

Sie fordern zu Viel. Diese Uhr hat mir seohzig Thaler gekostet, und ist vortrefflich.

Wenn Sie es zufrieden sind: so will ich die Uhr nehmen, die Sie mir zum Tausche anbieten; und Sie sollen mir bloſs sieben Thaler heraus geben.

Ich muss ein neues Glas an

I want to purchase a watch.

Is this watch good?

Will you let me have it upon trial? I will only take it on those terms.

Take the diamond-hands away, and put golden ones in their stead.

I should like to exchange my watch for another.

How much do you want back?

You ask too much. This watch has cost me sixty dollars, and is an excellent one.

If you are contented, I will take the watch you offer me in exchange, and you shall give me only seven dollars back.

I must get a new glass set to

meine Uhr setzen lassen. Ich habe mein Uhrglas zerbrochen.

Diese Uhr geht unrichtig. Ist sie aufgezogen worden?

Diese Uhr ist viel zu theuer. Sie ist nicht schön.

Ich mache mir Nichts aus einer schönen Uhr, wenn sie nur gut ist.

Welches ist der Name dieses Uhrmachers?

Meine Uhr ist in Unordnung. Ich bitte Sie, sie zu reinigen, sie wieder in den Stand zu setzen, und mir unterdessen eine andere zu leihen.

Verkaufen Sie Brillen, Vergrösserungsgläser, Operngläser?

Dieses Glas vergrössert die Gegenstände zu sehr. Es vergrössert nicht genug.

my watch. I have broken my watchglass.

This watch goes wrong. Has it been wound up?

This watch is much too dear. It is not fine.

I don't regard a fine watch, if it be only a good one.

What is the name of this watchmaker?

My watch is out of order. I beg you to clean it, to put it to rights again, and in the mean time to lend me another.

Do you sell spectacles, microscopes, opera-glasses?

This glass magnifies the objects too much. It does not magnify enough.

Twelfth Dialogue.

With a laundress.

Zwölftes Gespräch.

Mit einer Wäscherin.

Wann werden Sie meine Wäsche wiederbringen?

Waschen Sie sie ja mit Sorgfalt. Thun Sie keine Stärke darán, wenn Sie meine Nachthauben waschen.

Dieses Kleid muss gewaschen und geglättet werden.

Meine seidenen Strümpfe müssen ausgebessert, werden. Können Sie sie ausbessern?

Bringen Sie schon meine Wäsche?

Ich will meine Wäsche dürchzählen. Zwei Paar Betttücher, funfzehn Hemden, drei Röcke, Ein Kleid, fünf Halstücher, sechs Náchthauben, acht Paar

When will you bring my linen back?

Pray, wash it carefully. Don't put any starch in washing my nightcaps.

This gown must be washed and calendered.

My silk stockings must be mended. Can you mend them?

Bring you my linen already?

I will count over my linen. Two pair of sheets, fifteen shirts, three petticoats, one gown, five neck-handkerchiefs (five neck-cloths), six night-

Strümpfe, zwölf Schnupftücher, vier Schürzen, Ein Paar Handschuhe, drei Tischtücher, sieben Handtücher, zwanzig Servietten, zwei Paar Unterzichhosen.

Es fehlen zwei Stücke.

Da ist ein Schnupftuch, welches mir nicht gehört. Es ist nicht mein Zeichen.

Dieses ist nicht gut gewaschen. Dieses hingegen ist sehr schön gewaschen.

Diese Falten sind nicht gut gemacht. Diess ist schlecht geplättet.

Es hat Jemand einen Brief auf der Strāſse fallen lassen. Heben Sie ihn auf.

caps, eight pair of stockings, twelve pocket-handkerchiefs, four aprons, one pair of gloves, three table-cloths, seven towels, twenty napkins, two pair of drawers.

There are two pieces wanting.

There is a pocket-handkerchief which does not belong to me. It is not my mark.

This is not well washed. This, on the contrary, is very nicely washed.

These folds are not well made. That is badly ironed.

Somebody has dropped a letter in the street. Take it up.

Errors of the Press.

Page 8 line 12 read Das Öhr, instead of Das Ohr.
P. 9 l. 30 read Der Cönobit, instead of Cönobit.
P. 10 l. *1 read signifies, instead of signifie.
P. 45 l. 35 read Menschenfreundlich, instead of Menschenfreunlich.
P. 49 l. 33 read final, instead of finale.
P. 55 l. 8 read metals, instead of metalls.
P. 63 l. 2 read venereal, instead of veneral.
P. 70 l. 20, 21 read das Bund, instead of das Band.
P. 115 l. 12 read mätter, instead of münter.
P. 270 l. 22 read to endeavour to obtain, instead of to endeavour; to obtain.
P. 272 l. 10 read particle, instead of participle.
P. 499 l. 35 read Geben Sie sie uns, instead of Geben Sie uns.

INDEX.

A.

Aber, 421, 422.
Abgefäumt, 449.
Ahnen, 308, 435.
All, 186, 187.
Allein, 419, 422.
Allenthalben, 343, 344.
Allerliebst, 151, 152.
Als, 151, 412, 413, 426, 427, 428.
Als wenn, als ob, 283.
Also, 406, 407, 425.
An, 371, 372, 373, 374.
Andere, 121. 132, 133, 155.
Anstatt, 342.
Auch, 419, 420.
Auf, 371, 374, 375, 376, 377, 378.
Aus, 348, 349, 350.
Ausser, 348, 350, 351.
Ausserhalb, 342, 344.

B.

Bald, 407, 408, 416, 419.
Begegnen, 226, 227.
Bei, 348, 351, 352, 353.
Beide, 155.
Beinahe, 407.
Besage, 342, 343.
Bevor, 427, 428.
Binnen, 348, 353.
Bis, 427, 428.
Brot, 449.

D.

Da, 424, 427, 428.
Da hingegen, 421, 422.
Dafern, 425, 426.
Daher, 410, 425.
Damit, 429.
Darum, 425.
Dass, 283, 429.
Demnach, 425.
Denn, 424.
Dennoch, 422.
Der, 276.
Deshalb, 425.
Desswegen, 425.
Diesseit, 342, 344.
Doch, 422.
Durch, 363, 364.
Dürfen, 286, 287, 312.

E.

Ehe, 427, 428.
Eher, 416, 417.
Einiger, 187.
Entgegen, 348, 353.
Entlang, 363, 364.
Erstere, der 158.
Etliche, 187.
Etwa, 411, 412.
Etwas, 185.

F.

Falls, 425, 426.
Falten, 273.

Fast, 407.
Folgen, 226, 227.
Folglich, 425.
Für, 363, 364, 365, 366.

G.

Ganz, 187, 188, 408.
Gänzlich, 408.
Gar, 407, 408.
Gegen, 363, 366, 367, 368.
Gegenüber, 348, 353.
Geisel, der 437, 454.
Gelten, 308.
Gemäfs, 348, 353.
Genieſsen, 301.
Gern, 406.
Gewiss, 188.
Gleichwie — eben so, 427.
Gleichwohl, 422.
Gut, 116, 117, 416.

H.

Haben is suppressed, 222.
Halben, halber, 342, 343.
Heiſsen, 286, 309.
Helfen, 286, 287.
Her, hin, 410.
Hilfe, die 449, 450.
Hindurch, 363.
Hinsichtlich, 342, 345.
Hinter, 371, 378.
Hoch, 116, 416.
Hören, 286, 287.

I.

Ich, 178, 179.
Ihm, 179.
Immer, 409.
In, 371, 378, 379, 380.
Indem, 427, 428.
Innerhalb, 342, 344.

J.

Ja, 411.
Je — desto, 427.
Jeder, 188.
Jedermann, 186.
Jedoch, 421, 423.
Jemand, 186.
Jenseit, 342, 344.

K.

Kaum, 411, 412.
Keuchen, 450.
Können, 286, 287, 312, 313.
Kraft, 342, 345.

L.

Längs, 348, 353, 354.
Lassen, 286, 287, 313, 314.
Läugnen, 450.
Laut, 342, 345.
Lehren, 286, 287, 305.
Lernen, 286, 287.
Letzt, 132, 133.
Letztere, der 158.
Lieb, 416.

M.

Man, 185, 186.
Mancher, 189.
Manchmal, 409.
Mehrere, 189, 190.
Mir, 179.
Mit, 348, 354, 355.
Mithin, 425.
Mittelst, 342, 345.
Mögen, 286, 287, 314.
Müssen, 286, 287, 314, 315.

N.

Nach, 348, 355, 356, 357.
Nachahmen, 307.
Nächst, 348, 357.
Nahe, 117, 416.
Neben, 371, 380.
Nebst, 348, 357.
Nicht nur — sondern auch, 275.
Nichts, 185.
Niemand, 186.
Nun, 409.
Nutzen, 307.

O.

Ob, 348, 357, 358.
Ob — oder, 421.
Ob zwar, 423.
Oberhalb, 342, 344.
Obgleich, obschon, obwohl, 423, 424. Before the words: All concessive conjunctions, &c.

the following words have been omitted: Also *obgleich, obschon* and *obwohl* ought not to be divided. It is, consequently, better to say: *Obgleich ich mich unwohl befand; obschon er zu Hause war; obwohl sie nicht weiss.*
Oder, 275.
Ohne, 363, 368.

R.

Recht, 407, 407.
Rücksichtlich, 342, 345.

S.

Sammt, 348, 358.
Sehen, 286, 287.
Seit, 348, 358, 427.
Seyn is suppressed, 222.
So, 406, 420.
Sobald als, so lange als, 427, 428.
So wie, 275.
So wie — so, 427.
Sowohl als, 275.
Solcher, 190.
Sollen, 286, 287, 315, 316.
Sonder, 363, 368.
Sondern, 419, 421, 422.
Spalten, 273.
Spielen, 309.
Sprichwort, 450.
Statt, 342.

T.

Theils, 419, 420.
Trotz, 348.

U.

Über, 371, 380—384.
Um, 363, 369, 370.
Um — willen, 342, 345, 346.
Unbeschadet, 390, 391.
Unfern, unweit, 342, 346.
Ungeachtet, 342, 346, 423, 424.
Unter, 371, 384, 385, 386.
Unterhalb, 342, 344.

V.

Vergessen, 302.
Verleumden, 450.
Vermittelst, 342, 345.
Vermöge, 342, 346.
Verschieden, 190.
Versichern, 302.
Viel, 190, 191.
Von, 348, 358, 359, 360.
Vor, 371, 386—389.

W.

Während, 342, 346, 427.
Wahrnehmen, 302.
Wann, 412.
Weder — noch, 275.
Wegen, 342, 346, 347.
Weil, 424.
Wenig, 191.
Wenn, 283, 425—428.
Wenn auch, 283, 423.
Wenn gleich, 423.
Wenn schon, 423.
Wider, 363, 370, 371.
Wie, 412, 418, 425.
Wiewohl, 423, 424.
Wo, 410, 425, 426.
Wofern, 425, 426.
Woher, wohin, 412.
Wohl, 407.
Wollen, 286, 287, 316.

Z.

Zu, 348, 360, 361, 362, 363, 408.
Zufolge, 348.
Zunächst, 348, 357.
Zuwider, 348, 363.
Zwischen, 371, 389.

Publications for the scholar of German and English by *J. C. Hinrichs* at Leipsic:

Schade, C. B. (Author of the present Grammar) New and complete Pocket-Dictionary of the English and German languages. 2vols. 4th ed. (3350 pages.) 8vo sewed. 2½ Rthlr.

— — Grammaire Allemande à l'usage des Français. Dixième édition. 8vo sewed. 1 Rthlr.

— — Grammaire de poche. 8vo sewed. 6 Gr.

— — Nuovo Dizionario Manuale Italiano e Tedesco. 2 vols. (about 4000 pages) 8vo sewed. 3⅔ Rthlr.

English and German Dialogues. 8vo. Strasburg. 16 Gr.

Flügel, Dr. J. G., Triglot or Commercial Dictionary in 3 lang. Comprehending the technical expressions in trade, manufactures, navigation and law. Vol. I. German-English-French. 8vo bds. 1836. 1 Rthlr. 8 Gr.

— — Vol. II. English-French-German and Vol. III. French-German-English in the press.

— — complete English and German Phraseology; or a copious collection of English proper expressions; comprising all the verbs and other parts of speech of the English language with the prepositions they govern; exemplified by analogous German phrases. 8vo sewed. 1832. 1 Rthlr. 6 Gr.

— — Budget of Mirth; or the jester's multum in parvo: containing a great variety of interesting Anecdotes, Puns, Bulls, Bon mots, Jeux d'esprit, &c. to which are added a choice collection of Riddles, Charades, Conundrums, Paradoxes &c. — Sparks of Wit or the quintessence of language: offered as an entertaining Parlour-Companion. Vol. I. Prose. Vol. II. Verse. Vellum bds. 1831. 1 Rthlr. 4 Gr.

Horne, Thom., Dialogues for the head and the heart, with 21 engravings. bd. 20 Gr.

— — English and German Dialogues for beginners. 8vo sewed. 9 Gr.

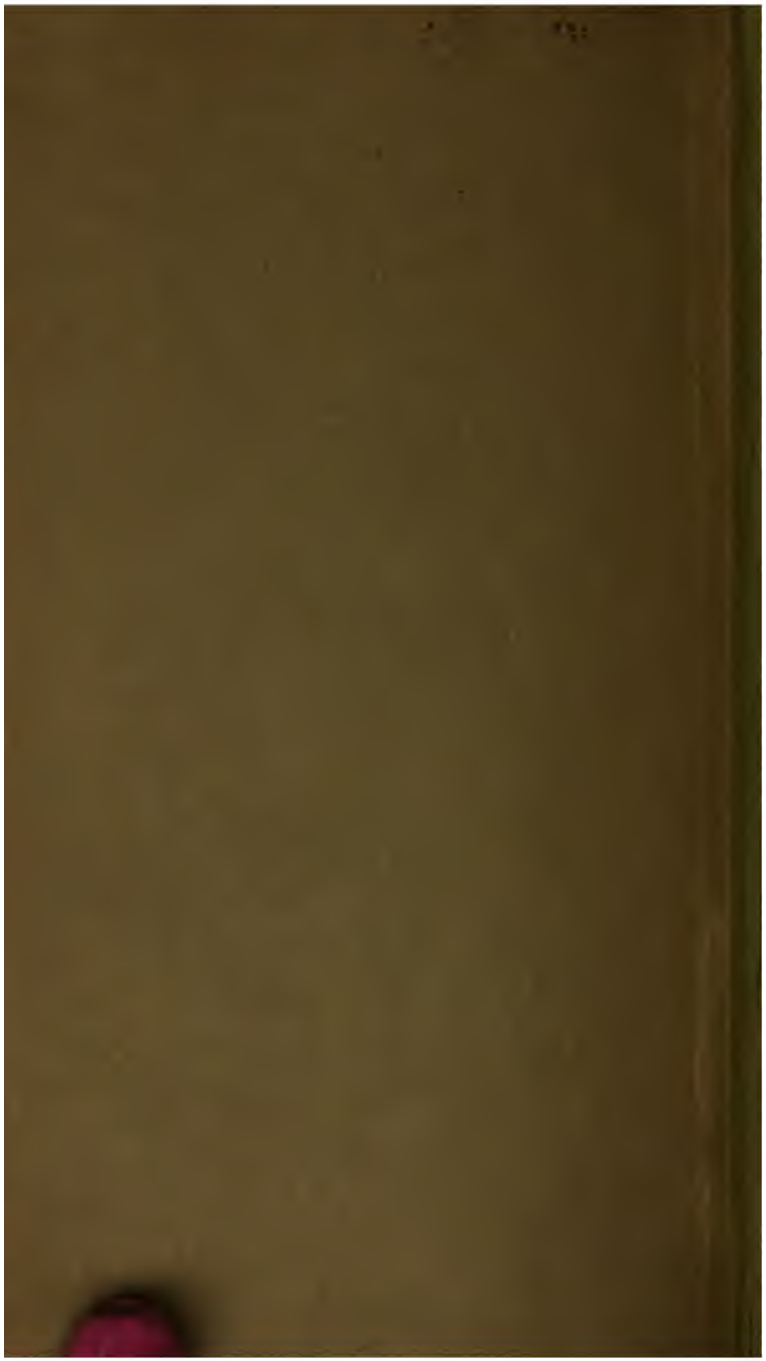
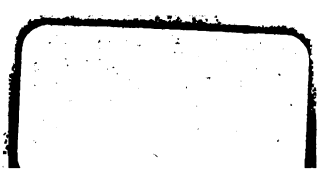
Manual or familiar Guide to the English tongue by G. A. Müller. 8vo. sewed. 1 Rthlr.

Müller, G. A. a concise German Grammar. 12mo. br. 8 Gr.

Pocket-Book for Conversation being a collection of such expressions as occur most frequently in traveling and in the different situations of life. Composed after the Traveler's companion of Mad. de Genlis and others. In 6 lang. English, German, French, Italian, Spanish and Russian. Sixth edition. 16mo. 1834. bds. 1½ Rthlr.

— — the same work in 6 lang. with New-Greek. Sixth ed. 16mo. 1834. bds. 1½ Rthlr.

Smith, Charl., Rural Walks in dialogues intended for the use of young persons. 2 vols. 8vo. 18 Gr.



JAN 4 - 1934